The original of this book is in the Cornell University Library.

There are no known copyright restrictions in the United States on the use of the text.

http://www.archive.org/details/cu31924074483664
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR
From a bust in the British Museum
CAESAR'S GALIC WAR

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, VOCABULARY AND GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

BY

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER, Ph.D.
PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF KANSAS

A REVISION OF THE EDITION BY
C. M. LOWE, Ph.D., AND J. T. EWING, M.A.

CHICAGO—NEW YORK
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY
PREFACE

In its general plan the present edition of Caesar is based on that of Lowe and Ewing, first published in 1891. It retains the features which gave distinction to that book, the most important of which are thus described in its preface:

"The vocabularies, notes, illustrations, and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self-reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I, chaps. 30-54) may be omitted and the valuable and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V-VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books."

While the general plan of the earlier edition has been followed, in all details the book has been rewritten from beginning to end. In its preparation three definite purposes have been kept steadily in mind:

1. To help the pupil to follow the narrative understandingly.
2. To give the pupil, especially at the beginning of his reading, a systematic drill on all the common syntactical principles.
3. To exclude all bits of antiquarian and grammatical lore which, however valuable in themselves, have no direct bearing on an appreciation of Caesar's language or story.

The Study of Caesar's Narrative. It is surely a pedagogical mistake to let a pupil carry away from the study of Caesar nothing but a memory of ablatives absolute and indirect discourse. These things he must learn as a preparation for further reading, it is true, and the language must be his chief study; but there is danger that
a year of grammar only will not tempt him to the further reading for which he has been preparing. Caesar tells an interesting story and tells it well. The universal testimony of the ages to the greatness of his writing is not founded on a universal love for grammar. The interest in finding out what Caesar did should serve as an incentive to solve his sentences. Moreover, a neglect of Caesar's thought is wrong on principle. The habit of careful attention to the subject-matter is the one thing best worth cultivating, whether one reads English or a foreign language; and this should not be forgotten in teaching Caesar.

Therefore as much as possible has been done in the notes and maps to assist in an understanding of the narrative, without introducing any discussion of disputed points. Every effort has been made to adopt the most reasonable theory for each campaign, and to make every note, plan, and map consistent with that theory.

The pupil's progress through the story must be slow, and, however well he understands each move in Caesar's game, he will have difficulty in grasping the whole. It is hoped that the campaign maps may lessen this difficulty by putting before the eyes the total results of the campaigns. In each map the route is laid out on a map of all Gaul, because only in this way can the relation of any one campaign to the whole of Caesar's task be kept constantly before the mind. The system of coloring shows the condition of Gaul at the end of each campaign,—how much had been reduced by fighting, how much had yielded without fighting, and how much was yet untouched. A comparison of any two maps will show the results of the intervening operations.

System in Grammar References. An attempt has been made to facilitate and even insure, early in the study of Caesar, a systematic drill on the more important case and mode constructions. In the notes on Book I, 1-29, it is believed that references are given for all the most common constructions. In general, the cases are emphasized during the earlier chapters, and the modes during the later. To each construction reference is made three times, two
sets of references being given close together, that they may re-
enforce each other, and the third after a few chapters, that the point
may be clinched by review. And these references are made not
only to the grammatical Appendix given in this book, but also to
five leading grammars.

In Book II the same references are given, as nearly as possible
in the same order; but the references for each chapter are grouped
together after the notes of that chapter. In this way opportunities
for the same grammatical drill are afforded, whether the class be-
gins with Book I or Book II; but, if the class begins with Book I,
these references in Book II may be omitted as unnecessary.

With such a system it is natural and right to postpone to later
chapters or books the consideration of certain constructions.
Thus, conditions and the details of indirect discourse are post-
poned to Book I, 30-54, tenses to Book III. If the teacher does
not like the order of presentation he can easily supply needed refer-
ences; but if he will insist on the study of the references as they
come in the notes, it is believed that he will find the necessary
ground covered thoroughly and systematically.

Exclusion of Non-essentials. Many things are known or are
guessed about ancient military science which in no way help the
pupil to understand Caesar. Many facts and theories of grammar
are suggested by Caesar's language which the pupil might find use-
ful at some later day, but which help him neither in translating
Caesar nor in writing the Latin composition which should accom-
pany the reading. An honest attempt has been made to give what
is helpful and to exclude the useless lumber, though it is not hoped,
much less expected, that all teachers would draw the line where
the editor has drawn it.

Beginning with Book II. The most dreaded portions of Caesar
are his indirect discourse, and unfortunately the majority of the
speeches are found in the first book. Though the fear of indirect
discourse is largely traditional, and though the construction is not
really difficult for one who is properly grounded in the essentials
of Latin, yet it is clearly a misfortune that the pupil should en-
counter its full difficulties at a time when the ordinary narrative
gives him trouble enough. Moreover, it is questionable whether
it is worth while to drill the pupil on all details of the construction,
since he will see very little indirect discourse elsewhere in his pre-
paratory course. For these reasons many teachers seek to make
the pupil’s path easier by reading the second book before the first,
or by omitting chapters 30–54 of the first book, in which chapters
the construction chiefly abounds. In preparing this edition every-
thing possible has been done to make feasible either of these plans,
without throwing any obstacles in the way of a consecutive reading
from the first. But the editor feels strongly that Book I, 1–29
should be read first. The latter part of the book may well be
omitted entirely, and one or more of the very interesting annotated
portions of the last three books may be substituted for it.

No editor of Caesar can escape a debt of gratitude to Mr. T. Rice Holmes for having discussed with such impartiality and
thoroughness the geographical and military questions of the Gallic
War. *Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul*, by Mr. Holmes, should be in the
hands of every teacher of Caesar. Though the present editor has
found it impossible to agree with all its conclusions, the book is
so fair in its discussions that he is under equal obligations whether
he agrees or disagrees with the author.

The text of the Lowe and Ewing edition was Kraner’s. In the
present edition Meusel’s readings have been substituted for the
most part, but not completely. The quantities are marked in ac-
cordance with the revised edition of Lane’s Grammar. A few
doubtful words were submitted to the decision of Professor Hanns
Oertel, of Yale University, who prepared the chapter on Sound in
that Grammar. For his ready assistance, thanks are due.

It would be impossible to mention by name all who have assisted
the editor by suggestion and in various ways. The labor of pre-
paring the Vocabulary was largely performed by Mr. Earl W. Murray,
a former graduate student, now Assistant Professor in the Univer-
sity of Kansas. Mr. Murray also prepared the first draft of the
systematized references for Book I, 1-29, and Book II. For the
preparation of the Index the editor is indebted to Miss Martha Whitney. Professor Charles Knapp, of Columbia University, gave the early part of the book the benefit of a most searching and helpful criticism. From beginning to end the editor has been under deep obligations to the editors-in-chief of the series.

ARTHUR TAPPAN WALKER.
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Preface</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Maps and Illustrations</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I. The Importance of the Gallic Campaigns</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. Life of Caesar</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. Chronological Table</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. Caesar as General</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. Caesar as Author</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. The Gauls</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. Caesar's Army</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A Brief Bibliography</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Abbreviations</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 1-29</td>
<td>41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book I, 30-54</td>
<td>115</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book II</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book III</td>
<td>215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book IV</td>
<td>252</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book V</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VI</td>
<td>329</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Book VII</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Direct Form of the Indirect Discourse in Books I and II</td>
<td>412</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grammatical Appendix</td>
<td>423</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocabulary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# MAPS AND ILLUSTRATIONS

| General Map of Gaul                        | Front Cover    |
| ---                                        |               |
| Caesar (Bust in British Museum)            | Frontispiece  |
| Pila                                        | 24            |
| Gladius and Vagina                         | 24            |
| Roman Soldiers                             | Facing 27     |
| Plan of a Roman Camp                       | 29            |
| Camp on the Axona                          | 29            |
| Vallum and Fossa                           | 30            |
| Roman Officers and Gauls                   | Facing 31     |
| Gallic Wall                                | 33            |
| Storming a City                            | Facing 34     |
| Agger                                      | 34            |
| Plutei                                     | 34            |
| Musculus                                   | 34            |
| Vinea                                      | 35            |
| Catapulta                                  | 35            |
| Prow of Galley                             | 36            |
| Campaign Map for Book I, 1-29              | Facing 42     |
| Fortifications on the Rhone                | 70            |
| Battle with the Helvetii, first stage       | 104           |
| Battle with the Helvetii, second stage      | 108           |
| Campaign Map for Book I, 30-54             | Facing 117    |
| Battle with Ariovistus                     | 153           |
| Campaign Map for Book II                  | Facing 162    |
| Battle on the Axona                        | 177           |
| Battle on the Sabis                        | 191           |
| The Town of the Atuatuci                   | 207           |
| Campaign Map for Book III                 | Facing 217    |
| Galba's Camp                               | 219           |
| Operations against the Veneti              | 232           |
| Campaign Map for Book IV                  | Facing 254    |
| Caesar's Bridge                            | 272           |
| Pile-driver                                | 273           |
| Second Invasion of Britain                 | 294           |
| Caesar's Geography                         | 305           |
| Caesar's Lines around Alesia               | 392           |
| Details of Fortifications around Alesia    | 396           |
| Stimulus                                   | 398           |
INTRODUCTION

I. THE IMPORTANCE OF THE GALIC CAMPAIGNS

The Commentaries on the Gallic War are Caesar’s own story of how he conquered the peoples living in what is now France and some of the lands bordering on France. He has told his story simply and directly. It was his genius that made the conquest possible, and the story could not be true without making this evident; but he has spoken of himself as if the writer and the general were different men, and there is no boasting. He has not explained to us the great importance of the war to the Roman state; there is no suggestion of its importance to his personal career; much less has he hinted at his own importance in the history of Rome and the world. These things must be learned from a study of history, not from Caesar’s story.

Effect on Rome. Rome was the governing nation of ancient times. In Caesar’s time she had conquered the other nations which touched the Mediterranean, and was governing most of them as provinces; that is, she sent Roman governors to them and collected taxes from them. In this way she governed a comparatively narrow strip of land in southern Gaul; and as this was the particular province which Caesar was sent to govern, he calls it simply “the Province,” Pròvincia (see map). This province was only partially protected by mountains and rivers from the semicivilized and warlike Gauls on the north; and for this reason it could never be sure of peace and safety until the rest of Gaul was conquered. Moreover, the land on the north was productive and well worth having.
Therefore Caesar's conquest of Gaul was justified, from a Roman point of view, both by the value of the land and by the necessity of protecting the Province.

3 Effect on Gaul. But there was a better reason for that conquest. Though the Gauls were brave they were no match for the less civilized Germans, who lived across the Rhine. Just at the time when Caesar took command of his province the Germans had begun crossing the Rhine in great numbers and were driving the Gauls out of their homes. If this movement had not been checked, the homeless Gauls would have been driven to attack Roman territory; and if the Gauls had been exterminated between the Germans and the Romans, then the Romans would have found the Germans still more dangerous neighbors than the Gauls. For the Gauls themselves, too, it was far better to be conquered by the civilized Romans than by the uncivilized Germans. The one means of safety for both Gauls and Romans was that the Romans should govern all the country west of the Rhine and should hold the Germans at bay on the other side of that great river. This was the result of Caesar's conquest of Gaul; and this result is the great justification of his bloody warfare there.

4 Effect on Caesar. In their effect on Caesar's own career the Gallic campaigns were all-important, and his career changed the course of history. In Gaul he gained military experience and the devotion of his army. By the aid of that army he overthrew a constitution under which the Roman state was going to ruin, and laid the foundations of an empire which lived for centuries. No doubt he did this from selfish and ambitious motives; but his ambition was so great that it could never have been satisfied until he had brought the empire he ruled to the highest possible degree of excellence, and his genius was so great that he saw the needful measures and the means to carry them out. The daggers of his assassins gave him too short a time to complete his work; but he did enough to prove himself the greatest man in Roman history.
Early Years, and Choice of Party. Gaius Julius Caesar was born in the year 102 B.C., on the 12th day of the month which was then called Quintilis, but which we now, in his honor, call July. Tradition traced the descent of the Julian family back beyond the foundation of Rome, and even to the goddess Venus as its remote ancestor. Caesar, therefore, belonged to the Roman nobility, and in the continuous strife between the Senatorial, or Aristocratic, and the Democratic parties, might have been expected to side with the aristocrats. But none of his own family had been very conspicuous in the state, and his aunt had married Marius, the greatest leader of the Democratic party, the great general who had saved Rome by his victories over the Cimbri and Teutoni. It was natural that his ambition should be fired by his uncle's career, and that his sympathies should incline toward the Democratic party. When he was only fifteen Marius made him priest of Jupiter, an office of some honor and few duties; and in 83, after the death of Marius, he deliberately identified himself with the Democratic party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of the new leader of that party, Cinna.

Overthrow of Caesar's Party. But the power of the Democratic party was almost at an end. In 83 Sulla, the leader of the Aristocratic party, returned to Italy with his victorious army, after fighting for several years against Mithradates, in the East. A bloody contest drove the Democrats from power; and in 82 the victor, determined to make a revival of that party impossible, slaughtered its eminent men and so changed the constitution of the state that the Senate was in full control. The young Caesar, as nephew of Marius and son-in-law of Cinna, was too conspicuous to be overlooked. Sulla ordered him to divorce Cornelia. Caesar refused, and had to flee for his life until influential friends persuaded Sulla to

1 Or perhaps in the year 100 B.C.
pardon him. Sulla’s grudging consent is said to have been coupled with the warning that Caesar would prove as dangerous as many Mariuses.

7 Weakness of Opposite Party. But the form of government set up by Sulla did not stand long, and the years which followed his death made more and more clear the need of some strong man who should give order and stability to the state. During those same years Caesar was testing and developing the powers which were to make him the man to do this work.

8 Revival of Caesar’s Party. When Sulla died, in 78, the Senate was in complete control: the Democratic party had neither a leader nor any chance to use its strength. Gradually the Senate lost this control, until, in 70, under the consuls Pompey and Crassus, the changes made by Sulla were completely done away with and the Democratic party again had an opportunity, if it could but find a leader. For a time Pompey seemed likely to be this leader. In 66 the people, contrary to the wishes of the Senatorial party, elected him general to serve against Mithradates. This gave him supreme control in Asia Minor, but kept him out of Rome for the next four years.

9 Development of Caesar’s Powers. During all this time Caesar was developing his powers of leadership. He got a taste of military service in Asia Minor, and at twenty-two he won the civic crown of oak leaves for saving the life of a fellow citizen in battle; but as yet he seems to have had no thought of gaining distinction as general. A born politician, he loved the game of politics for its own sake as well as for its rewards. An excellent orator, both by nature and by training, he used his oratorical powers in furthering the plans of his party. He made friends easily, and his influence over them was strong. Therefore, before he was old enough to take office he was a great favorite with the people and a much sought for ally in political scheming; and at the earliest age permitted by law he was elected without difficulty to the offices of Quaestor (for 68), Aedile (for 65), and Praetor (for 62). The greatest test
of his popularity came in 63, when the office of Pontifex Maximus fell vacant and Caesar was elected to this most honorable position over the strongest candidate the Senatorial party could put forward.

**Caesar’s First Military Command.** But in spite of his ability and popularity, in the year 63 Caesar was thought of as only a shrewd politician. Rome looked upon Pompey as her greatest man, because he was her greatest general; and Caesar knew that if he should come into conflict with Pompey his shrewdness could never prove a match for Pompey’s army and generalship. Caesar felt that he too must be a general, but he did not know whether he could be; for he had never had an opportunity to try his powers. The opportunity offered itself in 61, when he was sent to govern a part of Spain. There he fought with great success against some of the native tribes. His victories were not very important in themselves, and they attracted no great attention in Rome; but they showed Caesar what he could do and made him anxious for a larger field of operations.

**Caesar’s Consulship.** Caesar now wanted the consulship, the highest office in the state: if he got it he intended to carry through some measures which would be opposed by the Senatorial party. He therefore needed strong friends. Pompey had returned in triumph from the war with Mithradates, but the Senate had refused to grant some reasonable requests which he had made of it. Crassus too had a grievance against the Senate. With these two men Caesar made a secret agreement that each should further the interests of the others; and thus Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus formed what is known in history as the First Triumvirate, a mere personal agreement, with no public sanction. The influence of Pompey and Crassus helped in securing Caesar’s election to the consulship for the year 59, and also assisted him, when consul, in passing measures which were for the advantage of each of the three allies. For himself Caesar took a five-year term of office as governor of Cisal-
pine Gaul (the northern part of Italy), Illyricum (north and east of the Adriatic Sea), and Transalpine Gaul (then including only the southern part of France). To protect these provinces he was given an army of four legions.

12 Caesar's Command in Gaul. In 58, therefore, Caesar entered upon his command. Partly because it was best for the province and the state (cf. 2 and 3), and partly because he needed the training and the reputation of a general (cf. 10), he determined to conquer all the rest of Gaul. How he did this he tells us himself in the Commentaries; and a brief summary prefixed to each book in this edition makes it unnecessary to tell the story here. Since he found the five years originally given him too short for the full accomplishment of his purpose, he secured an additional five years. By the year 50 the last trace of resistance to Roman authority had been crushed, and Caesar's great task was completed. Moreover, he now had a perfectly disciplined, veteran army, enthusiastically devoted to its leader.

13 Outbreak of Civil War. It was high time that Caesar should have his hands free, for a greater task lay before him. For several years Pompey and Crassus had looked out for his interests in Rome. But in 53 Crassus was killed in battle; and at about the same time Pompey began to feel jealous of Caesar's success and fearful of his power. He gradually turned away from Caesar and attached himself to the Senatorial party, which had always hated Caesar. On the first day of the year 49 the Senate voted that Caesar should lay down his command and return to Rome as a private citizen, though the time for which the command had been given him had not yet expired. Caesar was then in Cisalpine Gaul, and his reply was an immediate march toward Rome.

14 Weakness of the Constitutional Government. But during Caesar's absence from Rome the complete failure of the constitutional form of government had shown that the so-called republic could not exist much longer. Trials and elections were decided by bribery and bloodshed. The governing party
had been so weak that for one entire year a succession of riots had prevented the holding of elections. Now when it was attacked by Caesar it again showed its weakness. Although it had taken steps which were sure to bring on civil war it had done nothing to prepare for that war, except to appoint Pompey its commander-in-chief. In about two months from the time when Caesar marched into northern Italy, Pompey set sail from southern Italy with his army and most of the Senate leaving Rome and Italy in Caesar’s hands.

Civil War Makes Caesar Master of Rome. But the hardest fighting of his life lay before Caesar. Pompey had crossed the Adriatic only to gain time for preparation. Besides, while Pompey’s strong army lay on the east of Italy, there was another large army of Caesar’s enemies in Spain, on the west. But Caesar’s magnificent army and wonderful generalship carried him through all difficulties. In 49 he marched to Spain and defeated his enemies there. In 48 he followed Pompey across the Adriatic and utterly routed his army in the great battle of Pharsalus. Pompey himself fled to Egypt and was assassinated by order of the counselors of the Egyptian king. Caesar followed him to Egypt with an insufficient force and was blockaded for several months in the city of Alexandria by the Egyptian army. Meanwhile the remnants of Pompey’s army made their way to the northern coast of Africa, and a new army was there organized to oppose Caesar. In 46 Caesar defeated this army too, at Thapsus, so decisively that he is said to have lost but fifty men while fifty thousand of the enemy fell. Then the sons of Pompey rallied the last opponents of Caesar, in Spain, for a final struggle, and Caesar’s victory at Munda in 45 made him the undisputed master of the Roman world.

Caesar as Statesman. Caesar was no mere soldier, and it was from no choice of his own that he spent all these years in fighting. He became a general because that was the only way to achieve his purpose of becoming sole ruler of Rome. But that purpose was not prompted wholly by personal ambition.
He had begun as a politician and had matured into a great statesman. There had been many abuses in the state, and the civil war had brought in confusion as well. With characteristic energy and clear-sightedness he set himself to bring order out of chaos, to organize the whole empire, and to improve its details. To carry out this work he needed the best men in the state, regardless of party: hence he pardoned those who had fought against him and gave some of them positions of high honor and great responsibility. He reformed the calendar. He took measures to remedy the financial disorders of the country. He planned a codification of the laws. He intended to carry out some great engineering feats, among others the cutting of a canal through the isthmus of Corinth. In order to protect the frontiers of the empire he planned military expeditions against the Parthians and the nations along the Danube.

Assassination of Caesar. Such enormous plans needed time for their execution, and time was denied to Caesar. A form of government which had stood for centuries could not be overthrown without grieving some true lovers of their country. One man could not make himself the master of all others, who had previously been his equals, without arousing jealousy. One man could not select the men to fill all offices without disappointing many. Men of all these classes, patriots, would-be rivals, and disappointed office seekers, joined in a conspiracy, and on the fifteenth of March, 44 B.C., Caesar fell beneath their daggers while presiding over a meeting of the Senate. The history of the following years shows the folly of this murder. For themselves the assassins reaped only death, since in a very few years every one whose fate is known had died by violence. For the state the deed was equally disastrous, since the assassination of Caesar merely caused a bloody civil war to intervene between his rule and that of Augustus.
### III. CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B.C.</th>
<th>Caesar's Age</th>
<th>Event</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Marius defeats the Cimbri.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>87</td>
<td>86</td>
<td>Marius appoints Caesar Priest of Jupiter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>86</td>
<td>85</td>
<td>Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>83</td>
<td>82</td>
<td>Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>80</td>
<td>79</td>
<td>22 Caesar wins the civic crown at Mytilene.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>78</td>
<td>77</td>
<td>Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>24 Caesar sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>74</td>
<td>73</td>
<td>28 Caesar is elected Military Tribune and Pontifex.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>69</td>
<td>32 Consulship of Pompey and Crassus. The Sullan constitution is overthrown.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>67</td>
<td>34 Caesar is Quaestor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>37 Caesar is Curule Aedile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>61</td>
<td>40 Caesar is Praetor. Pompey returns from the East.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>41 Caesar is Propraetor in Farther Spain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>59</td>
<td>42 Caesar is elected Consul. “First Triumvirate” is formed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>58</td>
<td>43 Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>44 Caesar becomes Proconsul of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>56</td>
<td>45 Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>46 Caesar’s campaign in Brittany.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>47 Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompey and Crassus are joint Consuls for the second time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>53</td>
<td>48 Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>52</td>
<td>49 The northeastern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>51</td>
<td>50 General revolt of the Gauls. Alienation of Pompey.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>51 Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>49</td>
<td>52 The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>48</td>
<td>53 Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>54 Caesar defeats Pompey at Pharsalus. Pompey is killed in Egypt. The “Alexandrian War.”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>46</td>
<td>55 Caesar, again Dictator, reorganizes the government.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>56 The “African War.” The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>44</td>
<td>57 The “Spanish War.” Battle of Munda.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>58 Caesar Dictator for life. Assassinated March 15th.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19 The Commentaries present Caesar to our view as a military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

20 Characteristics as General. The Commentaries reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. When it best suited his purpose he was deliberate and cautious, watching for the best opportunity to strike a crushing blow. Yet in an emergency he would coolly carry out the most daring plans, so that he sometimes appears even reckless; but this apparent recklessness was the result of swift and unerring decision, based on a keen insight into the character and probable action of his opponents. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

21 Power over his Men. Caesar won the entire devotion of his army, and this was one of the secrets of his success. He was careful of the comfort and lives of his men. He saw
to it that they had an abundance of supplies. He cautioned them against unnecessary risk in battle, and sometimes refused to allow them to fight in dangerous places even when they wished to do so. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. But such statements only partially account for his ascendancy over their minds. He possessed in the fullest measure that combination of natural qualities which makes a man a born leader. Therefore his army was the obedient instrument of his will and endured unexampled hardships without a murmur.

V. CAESAR AS AUTHOR

Caesar's genius was many-sided, and he might have been no less eminent as an orator and an author than as a statesman and a general, if he had chosen those fields of activity for their own sake. Even as it was, though he spoke and wrote mainly for political effect, he was recognized by his contemporaries as an orator second only to Cicero, and the simplicity, clearness, and terseness of his Commentaries have made them a classic from his day to our own. In the purity of their Latinity they rank with Cicero's works as the best that have come down to us. The interest of the narrative and the quality of the generalship shown in it have made the book a favorite with some of the world's greatest generals. The great Napoleon, for example, recommended it to his officers and himself wrote an abstract of it.

Purpose in Writing the Commentaries on the Gallic War. Yet the book was written hastily, probably in the winter of 52-51, after the events narrated in Book VII; and it was written for a political purpose. Absent from Rome and deprived of his two chief supporters by the death of Crassus and the alienation of Pompey, Caesar wished to put himself in a good light before the Roman people. With such a purpose
he might have been expected to misstate some facts; and there have been many attempts to show that he did so. But a fair examination of these attempts shows that not one of them is well-founded. There may be occasional mistakes, where Caesar was forced to rely on information furnished him by the Gauls; but it can not be proved that there is a single intentional false statement in the whole work.

24 Caesar's Other Writings. In addition to the Commentaries on the Gallic War, in seven books, we have Caesar's Commentaries on the Civil War, in three books. Besides these we know of other works, now lost. We hear of some poetry and a collection of jests. He wrote a treatise on grammar while traveling rapidly from Rome to Spain. He wrote a treatise on astronomy when he reformed the calendar. He wrote an attack on Cato to counteract the effect of certain books which in praising Cato attacked Caesar. All this shows his versatility; but probably no one of these works would have been very valuable if it had been preserved.

VI. THE GAULES

25 First Appearance of the Gauls in History. Some seven centuries before Christ, a tall, fair-haired race of men, the Gauls, began crossing the Rhine and conquering the original inhabitants of the country on its west. In time they overran everything as far as the Pyrenees, partly destroying the original inhabitants, partly uniting with them. About five centuries before Christ they began crossing the Alps and settling in northern Italy, and in 390 B.C. they took Rome and burned it. Rome was then but a small city, governing only the part of Italy which immediately surrounded it.

26 First Decline of Gallic Power. But from that time on the power of Rome increased and that of the Gauls decreased. A little more than two centuries before Christ, after desperate fighting, the Romans conquered and held northern Italy, Cisalpine Gaul. Again in the years from 123 to 118 there was
THE GAULS

hard fighting with Gauls, and at the end Rome controlled that part of Gaul which Caesar calls Prövincia (see 2).

Invasion of Cimbri and Teutoni. In 113 began the invasion 27 of the Cimbri and Teutoni, the most terrible danger of Rome since the day when the Gauls burned the city. It is not known whether they were Germans or Gauls, and probably the Romans of the time did not discriminate between the two races. They crossed the Rhine with their women and children, and marched slowly through Gaul, leaving a waste wherever they had passed. Several Roman armies met them and were cut to pieces. At last they made ready to invade Italy, the Teutoni by the western Alps, the Cimbri by the eastern. But the great Marius was now in command of a Roman army. In 102 he met the Teutoni and destroyed them. In 101 he joined the other Roman army and destroyed the Cimbri.

Geographical Divisions of Gaul in Caesar's Time. In Caesar's 28 time Cisalpine Gaul was almost as Roman as any other part of Italy. From it Caesar recruited his legions and levied new ones; and later he gave its inhabitants the right of Roman citizenship. The Province was peaceable and loyal to Rome, although the Allobroges had rebelled only a few years before. Caesar's task was the subjugation of all the rest of the Gauls, the inhabitants of all the country lying north of the Province and west of the Rhine. This is the country which he calls Gallia. However, he divides it into three parts and often uses the name Gallia of only the great central part, Gallia Celtica, where the Gallic stock was purest. In the southwestern part, Aquitania, fewer of the Gallic invaders had settled, and the population consisted largely of descendants of the original inhabitants. In the northeastern part, Belgium, Germans had settled in large numbers.

Factions in Gaul. If Caesar had found Gaul a compact 29 nation his task would have been more difficult than it was. But faction and division seem to have been a part of the Gallic nature, and he took advantage of this characteristic. Gaul
was cut up into many small states, each feeling itself rightfully independent. These states fought frequently with one another, and the weaker of them were either forced into dependence on the stronger or voluntarily attached themselves to stronger states for protection. In this way loose leagues or confederations were formed, between which rivalry and warfare went on. In Gallia Celtica the chief confederations were the one headed by the Haedui and the one formerly headed by the Arverni, but in Caesar’s time headed by the Sequani. But the evils of faction did not stop here. The individual states, for the most part, had no strong governments. Apparently most of them had been governed by kings one or two generations before Caesar’s time; but a series of revolutions had generally abolished the kingly office and had substituted magistrates elected yearly. The real power lay in the hands of rich nobles, or equites as Caesar calls them. Each of these nobles lived surrounded by numerous slaves and retainers; and as there was no power strong enough to keep them in order, individual nobles or leagues of nobles sometimes pushed their continuous rivalries to the point of civil war.

30 Caesar’s Use of the Gallic Factions. This factional spirit was of great assistance to Caesar, for he usually found means to attach one faction or the other to himself. For example, at the outset he found two factions in the state of the Haedui, headed by two brothers, Diviciacus, friendly to the Romans, and Dumnorix, hostile to them. By strengthening Diviciacus and checking Dumnorix he secured the help of the state. The state was the leader of one of the two leagues in Celtic Gaul, and Caesar thus secured the submission of all the states in that league without fighting for it. In fact, not only did he have their passive submission, but he obtained from them provisions and men to use in conquering other parts of Gaul.

31 Gallic Civilization. The details of the Gallic manners and customs can be learned best from Chapters 11-20 of Book VI. It will be enough to say here that in Caesar’s time the Gauls
were not wild barbarians, but had attained a considerable degree of civilization. They had long passed the stage of roaming about from one part of the country to another; though we find, in the first book of the Commentaries, that for special reasons the Helvetii intended to leave their homes and find new ones. They had roads and bridges and towns of considerable size, fortified by well built walls.

VII. CAESAR'S ARMY

THE LEGIONS

The legions formed the strength of Caesar's army. When 32 the enemy met him in hand to hand battle the legions bore the brunt of the fighting and won him the victory. But since they consisted of heavily armed, and therefore comparatively slow, foot soldiers, and since their weapons were useless at any considerable distance, the legions needed the assistance of cavalry and light-armed infantry, to complete their success.

Organization of the Legion. In theory a legion consisted of 33 6000 men; but battles, accidents, and disease so reduced this number that Caesar's legions probably averaged about 4000 men, or even less. The following table gives the divisions of a legion and their theoretical strength:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Division</th>
<th>Theoretical Strength</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>century [centum, hundred]</td>
<td>= 100 men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 centuries = 1 maniple</td>
<td>= 200 men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 maniples = 1 cohort</td>
<td>= 600 men</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 cohorts = 1 legion</td>
<td>= 6000 men</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In theory, again, the legions were made up of Roman citizens; but in fact a large part of Caesar's legionary soldiers came from Cisalpine Gaul, which had not yet received the right of citizenship. However, it was thoroughly Romanized, and, in spirit at least, Caesar's legionaries were Roman citizens.
34 Clothing.  
   a. A sleeveless woolen shirt, reaching nearly to the knees.
   
   b. Tight-fitting leather trousers, or perhaps merely bandages wrapped about the legs.
   
   c. Shoes or sandals.
   
   d. A heavy cloak for bad weather. This served also as a blanket at night.

35 Armor.  
   a. A helmet of leather (galea) or metal (cassis).
   
   b. A leather coat (lorica), strengthened by bands of metal across the shoulders, breast, and back.
   
   c. A curved wooden shield (scutum), covered with leather, and having a metal boss in the center. It was about four feet high and two and a half feet wide.
   
   d. Perhaps a greave on the right leg, though Caesar does not mention it. This was very much like a football shin-guard, but made of metal.

Arms.  
   a. A heavy wooden javelin (pilum, Fig. 1), with a long iron point which was strong enough to pierce any armor but was likely to bend as it did so. Therefore it could not easily be withdrawn when it had pierced a shield, and could not be thrown back by the enemy. After the battle the javelins were gathered and straightened by the Romans. Each soldier carried but one javelin.

   b. A straight, heavy, two-edged sword (gladius, Fig. 2), about two feet long, adapted for either cutting or thrusting. Its scabbard (vagina) hung from a belt (balteus) which passed over the left.
shoulder. The sword was thus on the right side, out of the way of the shield. But the higher officers, who carried no shield, wore the sword on the left side.

**Individual Baggage.** Besides his personal belongings each soldier carried his share of the picks, spades, baskets, etc., used in entrenching the camp; cooking utensils; and several days' rations of grain, which seems to have been apportioned out only twice a month. All this, weighing from thirty to forty-five pounds, was made into a pack (sarcina) and strapped on a forked stick; this the soldier carried on his shoulder. While thus encumbered the soldiers were said to be (impediti.) If the army was attacked on the march the packs were stacked in one place under guard, and the soldiers were then (expediti.)

**Officers of the Legions**

**Légatus.** All governors of provinces were given several (lēgāti, deputies or assistants.) These legates were not strictly military officers, but were to be employed by the governors in any way they saw fit. Caesar introduced the innovation of putting a legate in command of each legion just before a battle. When one or more legions were detached from the main army for special service, Caesar put a legate in command; and legates were left in command of the winter quarters during Caesar's absence. But no one legate was in permanent command of any one legion.

**Quaestor.** The quaestors were financial officers, elected yearly by the people at Rome. One was chosen by lot to take charge of the finances of each province, so that Caesar always had one with him. He took charge of the pay and the supplies of the army. When he was competent Caesar employed him in battle as he did his legates, putting him in command of a legion.

**Praefectus Fabrum.** The chief of engineers had charge of such matters as the building of bridges, construction of camps, erection of siege works, repair of artillery, and the refitting of
ships. He probably had special assistants, but the actual labor was performed by skilled men detailed from the ranks.

41 Tribūnus. No single officer permanently commanded a legion, as our colonels command regiments. Each legion had six tribunes, who took the chief command in rotation, while the rest probably commanded groups of cohorts or were assigned to special service. In Caesar's army many of the tribunes were experienced and capable officers, who did good service; but others were young men without military experience, who had been appointed only because they were friends or relatives of influential men at Rome whom Caesar wished to please. It was for this reason that Caesar put his legates and quaestor in command of the legions in battle. On the march or in camp a tribune was in command.

42 Centuriō. The centurions commanded centuries, and there were therefore sixty in each legion. On them fell the immediate management of the men in battle. They fought in the ranks like the men and were expected to set the men an example of conspicuous bravery. They were therefore promoted from the ranks on the basis of their strength and size as well as their skill and gallantry. They could hope for no promotion above the rank of centurion; but there were grades of centurions from one to the other of which they rose. The highest of all was the first centurion of the first cohort, the primipilus. He and a few others, just how many is not known, were called centurions of the first rank (centurīōnēs primōrum ordinum, or primi ordinēs), and were commonly summoned to councils of war along with the tribunes and legates.

STANDARDS AND SIGNALS OF THE LEGIONS

43 Aquila. Each legion had as its standard a bronze or silver eagle (aquila), carried on the top of a wooden staff. It was regarded with almost religious respect, and its loss was the deepest disgrace that could befall the legion. It was in charge of the first centurion of the first cohort, and was carried by a
Roman Soldiers

1. funditor
2. levis armuturae milites
3. legionarii
4. vexillum
5. signiferi
6. aquilifer
7. tubicen
8. bucinator
man of conspicuous strength and bravery, the *aquilifer* (Plate I, 6).

**Signum.** Each cohort had its own standard (*signum*), carried by a *signifer* (Plate I, 5). These standards were of various forms—an open hand, the figure of an animal, etc. On the staff, below the figure, were fastened the decorations of honor which had been bestowed on the cohort—disks, half moons, wreaths, and tassels. The diversity of form was necessary in order that each soldier might recognize easily the standard of his own cohort. In hasty preparation for battle each man found his place by looking for his standard; and all through the battle he regulated his movements by those of his standard. For this reason the technical terms for such maneuvers as advancing and retreating are signa *inferre*, signa *referre*, etc.

**Musical Instruments.** There were no bands, and the only use made of musical instruments was in the giving of signals. The only instrument mentioned by Caesar in the Gallic War is the *tuba*, a straight brazen trumpet, blown by a *tubicen*, but others were probably used as well (Plate I, 7, 8).

**Baggage of the Legion**

The heavy baggage (*impedimenta*) consisted of tents, provisions, hand-mills for grinding grain, engines of war, etc., and was carried on pack horses or mules (*iūmenta*). These were driven or led by the drivers (*mūliōnēs*) and camp servants (*cālōnēs*), who were probably slaves.

**Auxiliary Infantry and Cavalry**

**Infantry.** The light armed infantry (Plate I, 1 and 2), which Caesar usually calls *auxilia*, contained no Roman citizens. Caesar had slingers (*funditōrēs*) from the Balearic Islands, and archers (*sagittārii*) from Crete and Numidia; but most of his light armed infantry was drawn from friendly Gallic tribes and was armed in the native fashion. He put little reliance on them for serious fighting, but made them
useful in various ways: as skirmishers, to delay the enemy’s attack; as raiders; in making fortifications at a critical time; for mere show, to impress the enemy with his numbers; and in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were prefects (praefecti). Their standard was a banner (vexillum, Plate I, 4) attached to a horizontal cross-piece at the end of a staff.

48 Cavalry. Caesar had no Roman cavalry. During his first six years in Gaul he had none but Gallic cavalry, but in the seventh year he secured some Germans and found them much more effective. They were useless against a line of infantry, but met the enemy’s cavalry. Caesar employed them especially as scouts and raiders, or in pursuit of a routed enemy. Their higher officers were praefecti, and their standards were vexilla (cf. 47).

THE CAMP

49 A Roman army never halted even for one night without fortifying its camp (castra) with a wall and trench. This must have cost two or three hours of hard work; but it made the army safe from attack, and so allowed the general to choose his own time and place for battle; and in case of defeat the camp was a place of refuge.

50 Location and Form of Camp. Whenever it was possible the camp was built on a hill sloping gently toward the enemy, so that the Roman army could form its line of battle in front of the camp and make the enemy charge up hill. The normal shape of the camp was a square or oblong, but it had to be accommodated to the shape of the hill. Fig. 3 shows the normal shape, while Fig. 4 shows the actual shape of one of Caesar’s camps. Within the camp, streets were laid out in accordance with a fixed plan, and every legion, every cohort, every maniple had always the same location. Fig. 3 shows the normal arrangement for a camp which would accommodate five legions.
Fortifications of Camp (Fig. 5). The size of the trench 51 (fossa) varied, but was usually about nine feet wide and seven deep. The earth, dug out with spades and carried in baskets, was piled up just inside the trench to make the wall (vallum). This wall was faced partly with sods, partly with bundles of sticks (fascines), so that it was quite steep on the outside. Other fascines were put inside the wall, to strengthen it. It stood about six feet high, was wide enough on top to let the soldiers move about comfortably in fighting, and sloped so gradually toward the inside that soldiers could easily ascend it. Sometimes this slope was faced with logs, so as to make steps. On the outer
edge of the top stood a row of palisades (vallii), about four feet high, which served as a breastwork. In case of an attack the

enemy would be halted by the ditch several feet from the wall, and be completely exposed to the Roman javelins, while the defenders stood on a higher position, protected by a breastwork, and could throw their missiles with great effect. In times of especial danger, towers (turrēs) were erected at intervals on top of the wall.

52 Gates of Camp. Usually there was one gate (porta) on each of the four sides; but in the camp represented in Fig. 4 there were two gates in front, where the soldiers had most occasion to pass in and out. The gates were mere openings in the wall, about forty feet wide as a rule. Fig. 4 shows how they were protected. A short curved wall projected into the camp from the left side of the gate. A line of soldiers stood in the gate, and another manned this wall. If the enemy got into the opening they would be exposed on their shieldless side to a shower of missiles from the wall. Ordinarily this was a sufficient protection, and it left the gates open for a sudden charge from within. But in times of great emergency the gates could be walled up solidly.
1. imperator  
2. legatus  
3. centurio  
4. lictor  
5. Gallic warrior  
6. Gallic standard bearer  
7. Gallic chief

Roman Officers and Gauls
CAESAR'S ARMY

THE MARCH

**Line of March.** The vanguard usually consisted of cavalry and light armed infantry. Under ordinary circumstances each legion was followed by a train of pack animals carrying its baggage; but in the near neighborhood of the enemy all the baggage was brought together, preceded by most of the legions and followed by the rest.

**Length of March.** The length of a day's march of course varied greatly, according to the nature of the country and the need for haste. As the soldier had to carry from forty-five to sixty pounds of arms and baggage, and as the army had to halt early in the afternoon to give time for making camp, the rate of march of the army could be nothing like that of an unencumbered individual. Probably when there was no need of haste the average march was no more than twelve to fifteen miles, and a day of rest was given about every fifth day. But Caesar, like Napoleon, owed much of his success to his power of inspiring his army to great efforts on the march. When he speaks of forced marches (*magna itinera, maxima itinera*), we are to think of marches of from eighteen to twenty-five miles a day, or even more. On one occasion he marched four legions, without baggage, fifty Roman miles in less than thirty hours, including all stops.

THE BATTLE

Since the legions had to do the serious work of fighting, the line of battle was arranged solely with reference to their tactics. When the enemy were within the short range of the Roman javelins they were met by a volley of these deadly missiles and their ranks were thus broken. Immediately the Romans charged, and the rest of the battle was fought out at close quarters with the sword. When possible, therefore, the line of battle was drawn up facing down a gentle slope. This gave greater range to the javelins and greater impetus to the charge; while the enemy must begin the battle breathless from
a charge up the hill. The auxiliary infantry might be posted in front of the line, but it was expected to do no more than delay the attack of the enemy. More often it was posted on the flanks, sometimes merely as a show of strength. The cavalry might meet the cavalry of the enemy. Otherwise it usually merely awaited the rout of the enemy, when it pursued and cut to pieces the fugitives.

56 Line of Battle. The line of battle was commonly triple (triplex aciēs), though sometimes only double (duplex aciēs). In the triple line of battle the first line was composed of the first four cohorts of each legion, standing side by side, with no intervals between the cohorts. Three cohorts of each legion formed the second line, which stood a short distance behind the first, ready to relieve it when it became exhausted in the battle. The remaining three cohorts of each legion formed the third line, in the rear, and were held as a reserve for any emergency. Each of these lines was eight or ten men deep, and only the front rank of the first line could engage in the battle at any one moment. But that rank would fight vigorously for a few moments, then fall back and be relieved by the next rank, and so on until all the men of the first line had been engaged. Then it was relieved as a whole by the second line.

57 Orbis. When surrounded by the enemy and hard pressed, a body of men would form what is now called a hollow square, and what the Romans called a circle (orbis), with the baggage and camp servants inside the ring of armed men.

THE CAPTURE OF TOWNS

58 A great part of Caesar's military operations consisted in the capture of walled towns. The fortification of these towns was rather primitive, but it was quite effective (Fig. 6). The face of the wall showed regular rows of log ends separated by huge stones. No one log could be grappled and pulled out, for they were all fastened together far within the wall. The logs
would not burn, for they were each imbedded in stone and earth. A battering-ram could demolish a solid stone wall, but the framework of timbers defied it. Therefore Caesar relied little on making breaches in the walls and entering in that way. But there were three other possible methods—a blockade, a sudden assault, and a formal siege.

Blockade (obsidiō). A ring of fortifications could be built around the town, and the place starved into submission. But this was too slow a method to be employed unless all other methods were hopeless, and Caesar used it only once in the Gallic War.

Sudden Assault (oppugnātiō repentina). If a town had low walls and few defenders, it might be taken by a sudden assault. Archers and slingers kept the wall partly clear of defenders. Soldiers approached the wall in safety by holding their shields over their heads and letting them overlap, forming a testudō (tortoise, Plate III, 3). If there was a trench around the wall, they filled it with bundles of brushwood (crātēs, fascines). Then they mounted the wall by means of scaling ladders (scālæ, Plate III). But such towns would usually surrender without a struggle, so that the method was little used.

Formal Siege (oppugnātiō). The favorite method was by the use of the agger and tower (turris). The agger was a great causeway, built of logs and earth, which sloped gradually up toward the top of the wall. Generally it was not intended to be as high as the wall. In that case a tower, several stories high, was pushed up the causeway on rollers. From the upper stories, which rose higher than the wall, archers and slingers and artillery shot down the defenders. When the tower was near enough, a drawbridge was let down from one of the lower stories to the top of the wall, and the Romans charged across
it. Sometimes the causeway was as high as the wall, and thus itself gave access to its top (Fig. 7). Sometimes, if the wall was low and the ground about it level, no causeway was built, and the tower was pushed over the ground to the wall. Then a battering-ram might be hung in the lowest story, and the drawbridge was let down from one of the upper stories. Plate III illustrates this method of using the tower, as well as several other devices; but the city is not a Gallic town.

62 Means of Protecting the Besiegers. In building the agger and carrying on the other operations of a siege the assailants had to approach within easy range of missiles from the wall; hence they made use of several forms of protection.

a. The pluteus (Fig. 8) was a heavy shield, several feet high, mounted on wheels. A line of these, parallel to the wall, gave protection to men working immediately behind it; and it could be moved forward at pleasure.

b. The musculus (Fig. 9) was a hut with one end open and the other end partially closed. Its roof was strong enough to withstand the
1. turris  2. testudo arietaria  3. testuda  4. onager  5. ballista
shock of great stones which might be dropped upon it from the wall. It could be pushed up to the wall, and under its shelter men could dig out the foundation of the wall.

C. The testūdō arietāria (Plate III, 2) was a similar hut in which hung a battering-ram (ariēs), a heavy timber capped with iron, intended to be swung against the wall.

d. The vinea (Fig. 10) was a lighter hut, open at both ends. A number of these placed end to end made a safe covered gallery extending from a point out of range up to the musculi, testūdinēs, or pluteī.

All these huts were pushed forward on rollers.

The Artillery.—Caesar had with him engines of war, the 63 purpose of which corresponded to that of modern artillery. They were too heavy and clumsy to be of much service in battle: hence their chief use was in siege operations. The general name tormenta is derived from torqueō, to twist, and was applied to them because the propelling force was obtained by twisting a stick between two tightly stretched horse-hair ropes.

a. The ballista
(Plate III, 5) threw heavy stones at a considerable angle from
the horizontal.

b. The catapult (catapulta) threw great arrows nearly hori-
zontally. Fig. 11 makes most of its mechanism clear without
explanation. (A) is an arrangement for raising or lowering
the rear of the nearly horizontal track, thus regulating the
range. The track is grooved to hold a long sliding carriage, on
the rear portion of which is the trigger (b). The operation of
firing was as follows: The carriage was pushed forward till the
claws of the trigger were over the bowstring; a block (c) was
shoved under the heavy rear end of the trigger, and the claws
were thus held down on the string; the carriage was drawn
back by means of the windlass, and held in place by the hook
(d); the arrow was laid on the grooved upper surface of the
carriage, with its end resting on the string between the claws
of the trigger; the block (c) was withdrawn and the rear end
of the trigger fell by its own
weight, thus releasing the
string.
c. The scorpio was a small
catapult.
d. The onager (Plate III,
4) threw stones, like the
ballista, but was of different
construction.

THE FLEET

The fleet is to be consid-
ered as belonging to the
army, rather than as a sep-
arate organization; for when
Caesar had need of it he
manned it with his legiona-
ries, put tribunes and centu-
rions in command of indi-
individual ships, and made one of his legates its admiral. The ships of war were about eight times as long as they were broad, and were therefore called nāvēs longae, in distinction from the transports (nāvēs onerāriae), which were shorter and wider. They had a mast and single sail, but in battle depended on oars for their propulsion. Their prows (Fig. 12) were armed with metal beaks (rōstra), with which to ram the ships of the enemy. If the Romans failed in this they sought to make the battle as much as possible like a battle on land, their special object being to grapple one of the enemy’s ships and board it.
A BRIEF BIBLIOGRAPHY

The following list of books will suggest those which are most helpful to pupils and teachers who read only English. Those who wish to make a more detailed study of special points will find that Holmes gives references to almost everything of importance in the enormous literature of Caesar, except on the linguistic side.

Editions

A. Holder. (Freiburg and Tübingen, 1882.) This may be useful for its (inaccurate) index of words, which is intended to be complete.


H. Rheinhard. (Stuttgart, 1896.) Useful for its illustrations.

Of the following English editions the first two are useful:


A. G. Peskett. (Cambridge, 1878-1882.)

St. George Stock. (The Clarendon Press, Oxford, 1898.) Usually good when it follows good authorities.

Caesar’s Life and Campaigns

Col. T. A. Dodge. Caesar. (Houghton, Mifflin & Co., 1894.) Useful if Napoleon can not be obtained, but without much independent value.


T. Rice Holmes. Caesar’s Conquest of Gaul. (Macmillan

Napoleon III. *History of Julius Caesar.* (Out of print, but can be obtained at second hand. If possible get the Atlas with the two volumes. The French edition is more easily obtained.) Volume II gives a more complete narrative and explanation of Caesar's campaigns in Gaul than can be found elsewhere, but without much discussion of disputed points.

C. W. C. Oman. *Seven Roman Statesmen.* (Edward Arnold, London, 1902.) The characterization of Caesar is too violent a reaction against the views of Mommsen and Froude.

Plutarch's Lives. Every pupil should read the life of Caesar.

Anthony Trollope. *The Commentaries of Caesar.* (In the series, Ancient Classics for English Readers.)

Much that is valuable will be found in the following histories:

Duruy. *History of Rome.*

Long. *The Decline of the Roman Republic.* This is especially good in its treatment of Caesar's campaigns.

Merivale. *History of the Romans under the Empire.*

Mommsen. *History of Rome.* The chief defect of this extraordinary work is its too great partiality for Caesar.

**Miscellaneous**

H. P. Judson. *Caesar's Army.* (Ginn & Co., 1888.) This gives much fuller information about the organization and tactics of the Roman army than can be given in the introduction of an edition. It should be at hand for reference.

R. Oehler. *Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de Bello Gallico.* (Leipzig, 1890.)

W. Rüstow. *Atlas zu Cäsars Gallischem Krieg.* (Stuttgart.)

A. Van Kampen. *Quindecim ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae.* (Gotha.)
REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS

In the grammatical references, App. = Appendix (following Book VII); G.-L. = Gildersleeve-Lodge; A. = Allen and Greenough; B. = Bennett; H.-B. = Hale and Buck; H. = Harkness. In each case the latest revision has been followed.

References are made to books of the text in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic numerals, to lines in plain-faced Arabic numerals. Thus, III, 2, 11 = Book III, chapter 2, line 11.

In the page vocabularies, the figures 1, 2, 3, and 4, following definitions, indicate the number of times the word is used in Books I-IV. * indicates that the word is used 5 or more times in those books.

For the explanation of some other details, see p. 2 of the general vocabulary at the end of the book.

abbr. = abbreviation.
abl. = ablative.
acc. = accusative.
act. = active.
adj. = adjective.
adv. = adverb, adverbal.
card. = cardinal.
cf. = confer, compare.
chap. = chapter.
comp. = comparative.
conj. = conjunction.
dat. = dative.
def. = defective.
dem. = demonstrative.
dim. = diminutive.
distr. = distributive.
e.g. = exempli gratia, for example.
ecit. = enclitic.
etc. = et cetera, and so forth.
f. = feminine.
fig. = figure, figuratively.
freq. = frequentative.
fut. = future.
gen. = genitive.
I.e. = id est, that is.
imp. = imperative.
impers. = impersonal.
impf. = imperfect.
incept = inceptive.
ind. = indicative.
indcl. = indeclinable.
indef. = indefinite.
inf. = infinitive.
int. = introduction.
terrog = interrogative.
intr. = intransitive.
irr. = irregular.
l., ll. = line, lines.
lit. = literally.
m. = masculine.
neg. = negative.
n. = neuter.
(n. (in grammatical references) = note.
nom. = nominative.
num. = numeral.
ord. = ordinal.
p., pp. = page, pages.
part. = participle.
pass. = passive.
pers. = personal.
pf. = perfect.
pl. = plural.
plupf. = pluperfect.
poss. = possessive.
prep. = preposition.
pres. = present.
pron. = pronoun.
reflex. = reflexive.
rel. = relative.
s. = sicilicet, supply.
sing. = singular.
subj. = subjunctive.
sup. = superlative.
tr. = transitive.
CHAPTERS 1 TO 29. WAR WITH THE HELVETII

The Helvetii were a Gallic people living in northern Switzerland. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. During the invasion of Gaul by the Cimbri a part of the Helvetii had left their country independently and defeated a Roman army in 107 B.C. Many of the Helvetii had joined the Cimbri and Teutoni in their attempted invasion of Italy in 102 and 101 B.C. After the disastrous result of these attempts the Helvetii had remained comparatively quiet for a long time; but now, dissatisfied with the narrow limits of their country, they determined to seek wider fields.

The originator of this plan was Orgetorix, their most powerful nobleman. But the Helvetii soon learned that he was trying to further ambitious plans of his own and to use them as tools; that he intended to make himself their king, and then to unite with two neighboring states in the subjugation of all Gaul. The penalty for the crime of aiming at royal power was death, but Orgetorix anticipated the punishment by committing suicide. Yet the Helvetii persisted in the plans which they had adopted at his suggestion. They made all preparations, then burned their homes and gathered near the western end of Lake Geneva, ready to set out.

But Rome had been watching their preparations in some alarm. If the Helvetii marched through the province, they could not fail to give trouble to the Romans. And what was a more serious matter, if the Helvetii left their country vacant it would be occupied by the Germans; and the Germans were dangerous neighbors. Caesar’s term of office as governor of Gaul began in the year of their departure. Learning that the Helvetii intended to set out sooner than he had expected, he hurried to Geneva, so that when they gathered he was there to meet them. He destroyed the bridge across the Rhone, which they had failed to secure, and with his one legion hastily made and manned a line of defenses on the south bank of the river. He then forbade their crossing, and easily checked their attempts to disobey his orders.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. The great host, with its women and children and thousands of wagons, marched slowly through this to the Saone, and its van crossed the river and began plundering the land of
the Haedui. Meanwhile Caesar had hastened back to northern Italy and returned with five legions. The Haedui, who had been nominal allies of the Romans for many years, now appealed to Caesar. He was not sorry to appear as the champion of Gallic freedom, for he thus gained a footing in Gaul. Finding that one of the four divisions of the Helvetii had not yet crossed the Saone, he fell upon it and cut it to pieces. Immediately he crossed the river in pursuit of the main body. For fifteen days he followed it, but on account of the nature of the country he was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Believing that this action was due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. In a hard fought battle he defeated them with immense loss; and the remnant of the once proud and mighty people sadly returned to its mountain home.

EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates the part of Transalpine Gaul which belonged to Rome when Caesar entered upon his command.

Red indicates the states whose submission Caesar secured by conquering them in battle. The Boii are shown in the homes given them after their defeat. The Latobrigi and the Tulingi lived across the Rhine and are not shown on this map. The Cenrones, the Graioceli, and the Caturiges were forced to permit the passage of the army, but were probably not reduced to submission, and are therefore left uncolored.

Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. In chap. 30 we are told that envoys from "nearly all Gaul" came to Caesar as a result of his victory over the Helvetii. It is certain that Celtic Gaul is meant; therefore Aquitania and Belgium are left uncolored. In chap. 31 we are told that Ariovistus held a part of the territory of the Sequani; this is left uncolored. In II, 34 we are given a list of states which did not submit till 57; these also are left uncolored. All the rest of Celtic Gaul may be supposed to have submitted at the close of the war with the Helvetii; it is therefore colored blue.

The line of march shows Caesar's route in crossing the Alps the second time, with the five legions. It also shows the route of the Helvetii after they left their territory. After crossing the Arar Caesar's route coincides with that of the Helvetii.

Crossed sabers indicate battlefields. Colonel Stoffel's identification of the main battlefield (Histoire de Jules César: Guerre Civile, II, 439-453) is almost certainly right and is indicated on this map.
1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam

sumnum in cruciātum venire, be severely punished. With adj. (1) of rest or motion within a place, in among, over, within, throughout; on, upon: (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on: (3) other uses, in, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; in Ararī, over the Arar; in ëō, in his case; in ancoris, at anchor; in opere esse, be engaged in the work. *

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. *

trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. *

qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quois), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quō, with comparatives, the; quō . . . ëō, the . . . the. *

unus, ūna, ūnum, gen. ūnus (App. 32), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. *

omnis, "as a whole," shows that Gallia here has meaning (1) of the vocabulary.

divisa: the adjective.

partēs trēs: on the divisions of Gaul, see Int. 28.

The grammar references should al-

*The asterisk, in the vocabulary, shows that the word occurs five or more times in Books I–IV. A figure, 1, 2, 3, or 4, similarly placed, is used when the word occurs less than five times.
2. incolō, -olerē, -olui, —, tr. and intr. (colō, cultivāre), inhabit, dwell in; live. *

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. *

alius, -a, -ud, gen. alius (App. 32), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquitania, Aquitanian; pl. as noun, the Aquitani (sk'wi-tā'ni), possibly Aquitani, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. *

tertius, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. *

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59), intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sē, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. *

lingua, -ae, f., tongue, language. 3.

3. Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better, the Celts. 1.

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. (nōs, we), our, ours, our own; in pl. as noun, our men, our troops. *

ways be looked up and studied. In the notes on I. 1-29, for each of the most common principles of syntax grammar references are given three times, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.

2. Belgae: It is impossible to understand and appreciate Caesar's story unless one follows it on the map. The letters in parentheses which follow geographical names, in the vocabulary, correspond to the letters on the margin of the map in the front of the book. By their aid places can easily be found.  

aliam, tertiam; sc. partem incolunt.

quila = iī quà; a nominative pronoun antecedent is often omitted.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj., of Gaul, Gallic; pl. as noun, the Gauls, inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc. *

appelliō, 1, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time, or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; abl. sing. hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparative); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former.  

See App. 170, a.

institūtum, -i, n. (instituteō, set up, establish), a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. 3.

4. lex, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. 4.

inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among; (2) of time, during, within, for; (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action (App. 166), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē differunt, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, co-


linguā, institūtia, lēgibus, "in language, institutions, and laws." Notice the absence of a conjunction. Latin usually says either "a, b, c," or "a and b and c," while English usually says "a, b, and c." For case see App. 149: G.-L. 397: A. 418: B. 226: H.-B. 441: H. 480.

4. Garumna fīmen: sc. dividit-  

flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānītāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minīmēque ad eōs mercā-

hortāti inter sē, encouraging one another. *

sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron. of 3d person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself; themselves: he, she, they, etc.; inter sē, see inter and App. 166. *

differē, differre, distuli, dilātum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, different. 1.

ā (before consonant), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; a fergā, in the rear: (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab millibus passuum duōbus, two miles away: (4) with the pass. voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by: (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. *

Garamna, -ae, m. (DEcd), the Garamna (ga-rūm'na), or Garonne, a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul. 3.

5. flūmen, -inis, n. [fūō, flow], river.

Matrona, -ae, m. (Bef), the river Matrona (mā'trō-nā), now the Marne. 1. et, conj., and: also, too, even: et... et, both... and. *

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCdef), the river Sequana (sēk'wā-na), better, Seine. 1.

6. fortīs, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. *

propterea, adv. [propter, because of], on this account; propterea quod, because. *

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter of qui, who, which], as to which, in that, that; as to the fact that, inasmuch as; because; quod si, but if; propterea quod, because. *

cultus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. 2.

atque, ac (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. *

hūmānītās, -tātis, f. [hūmānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. 2.

7. prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of a province; province, a territory subject to Rome and governed by a Roman governor; especially the Province, the southern part of France. *

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātāque, far and wide. *

absūm, absse, āfūi, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. *

minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least.
tórès saepe commentat atque ea quae ad effeminandós animós pertinent important, proximique sunt Germáni, qui trans Rhénum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt.

very little; by no means, not at all. 4.
-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que ... que, or que ... et, both ... and. *
ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward; (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of: (2) denoting position, at, by, near: (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for: (4) with numerals, up to, about: (5) of time, up to, until; at, on: (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. *
is, ea, id gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quò, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eó, with comp., the; eó magis, all the more; eó ... quó, with comparatives, the ... the. *
mercator, -ōris, m. (mercor, trade), merchant, trader. *
8. saepe, adv., often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numeró, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. *
commétó, 1, intr. [meó, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to, visit. 1.
effeminó, 1, tr. [ex + fēmina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 1.
animus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animi causā, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. *
9. pertinēō, -tinēre, -tīnui, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. *
importō, 1, tr. [in- + portō, carry], carry or bring in, import. 3.
proximus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), nearest, next; last, previous; with acc. (App. 123, b), next to. *
Germāni, -ōrum, m., the Germani (jēr-mā'ni), better, Germans. *
trān, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāne or trā, across, over, through. *
10. Rhēnum, -i, m. (ABCfgh), the river Rhenum (rē'nūs), better, the Rhine. *
cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. *
continenter, adv. [continēne, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. 3.
bellum, -i, n., war. *
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum, tr., bear, carry, wield; (of war) carry on, 

mercātōrēs: Roman traders had for some time penetrated the interior of Gaul, bringing, among other things, strong wines, of which the Gauls were very fond.
8. quae ... pertinent: notice that in relative clauses the relative almost always stands first and the verb last; everything that stands between the relative and the first finite verb which follows usually belongs to the relative clause.

ad effeminandós animós, "to weaken the courage"; the gerundive construction will be treated later.
10. quibuscum: use and position of cum? App. 140; 60, b: G.-L. 392; 413, 1: A. 413, b; 150, d; B. 229; 142, 4: H.-B. 418, a; 419, 4: H. 473, 1; 182, 2.
Quâ dé causâ Helvëtii quoque reliquos Gallös virtûte præce-dunt, quod fere cotidiânis proeliis cum Germânis contendunt, cum aut sui sunt finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus perform, wage, conduct; pass., be done, go on, occur. *

11. dé, pretn. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about: (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. *

causa, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case, cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causâ, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. *

Helvëtius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgh), of the Helveti (hēl-ve'šhi), Helvetic; as noun, one of the Helveti, an Helvetic; pl., the Helveti, possibly Helvetians. *

quoque, conj., following the word emphasized, also, too, likewise. *

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquo, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; n. as noun, remainder, rest. *

virtûs, -ütis, f. [vir, man], manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. *

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. [cēdō, go], go before; surpass, excel. 1.

12. fere, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotidiâneus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē, daily], every day, daily; usual, customary. *

proelium, -li, n., battle, contest, engagement; proelium commissere, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. *

contendē, -tendere, -tendi, -tendum, tr. and intr. [tendo, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maltreat, insist. *

13. cum, conj.; when, as. while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; cum ... tum, not only ... but also, both ... and; cum primum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. *

aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or; aut ... aut, either ... or. *

suus, -a, -um, reflex. pronominal adj. [suius, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; sua, n. pl. as noun, one's property; sui, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). *

finis, -is, m., boundary, limit, border, end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. *

prohibēō, 2. tr. [habēō, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. *

11. quâ dé causâ, "(and) for this reason." The relative is often used to connect independent sentences in Latin, but is not so used in English. We must in such cases translate by a personal or demonstrative pronoun, and we may render the connective force of the relative by using "and" or "but," if we like: App. 173, a: G.-L. 610, 1: A. 308, f: B. 251, 6: H.-B. 284, 8: H. 510.

Helvëtii: although the rest of the chapter is concerned with the larger divisions of Gaul, Caesar speaks of this tribe in particular, because it is to be prominent in the following chapters. virtûte: ablative of manner.

12. proeliis, "in battle"; but it is an ablative of means.

13. suis finibus: the reflexives sui and suus regularly refer to the subject:
bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dicitum est, initium capit ad flumine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flumine, Oceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus orientur; perti-

15. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [tenēō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. *
dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum, tr., say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; causam dicere, plead a case; inā dicere, administer justice. *

16. Ōceanus, -i, m. (Cdfg), the river Oceanus, (rōd'ānūs), better, Rhone. *

suis therefore refers to the Helvetii. For case see App. 134: G.-L. 390, 2: A. 400; 401: B. 214, 2: H.-B. 408, 2: H. 464, 1; and notice that the preposition ab is often used in the same sense, as in ab Aquitānīs, i. 4.


15. eōrum refers back to the Gauls as a whole, not to the Helvetii, who have just been mentioned.

quam is the object, Gallōs the subject of obtinēre: App. 123: G.-L. 343, 2: A. 397, e: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H. 415. The infinitive clause, quam . . . obtinēre, is the subject of dicitum est:

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. *
etiam, conj., and also, also, even, yet. *

17. Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj. of or belonging to the Sequani; pl. as noun, Sēquani (Cdfg), the Sequani (sēk'wānī). *

ergō, -ere, —, —, intr., look or lie towards, be situated; slope. 3.

septentriones, -um, m. [septem, seven +triōnēs, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the north. *

18. extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; extrēmi (as noun), the rear; ad extrēmum, at last, at the end; as a last resort. *
orior, orīrī, ortus sum, intr., arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; he born, descend; oriēns sōl, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. *
ament ad inferiorem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia à Garumnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Oceanī quae est ad Hispāniam pertinet; spectat inter occasum sōlis et septentrionēs.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā, M. Piso consūlībus, rēgni cupidītās, -ātīs, f. [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice.

1. apud, prep. with acc., at, among, near, with; (with personis) at the house of, in the presence of. * nōbilis, -is, adj. [nōscō, know], well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; as noun, a noble. * dives, divītis, adj., wealthy, rich. Sup., ditissimus. 1.


Piso, -ōnis, m., Marcus Pupiūs Piso Calpurnianus (mār'kūs pū'pi-ūs pī'sō kāl-pēr-nī-ā'nūs), consūl with Messala, 61 B.C. 2.

cōnsul, -ulis, m., a consūl, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. * regnum, -i, n. [rēx, king], kingly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. * cupidītās, -ātīs, f. [cupidus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice.

19. in septentrionēs . . . sōlem: i.e., toward the northeast.

22. ad Hispāniam, “near Spain”; the reference is to the Bay of Biscay.

inter occasum . . . septentrionēs: i.e., toward the northwest.

Chap. 2-4. The ambition and downfall of Orgetorix.

Chap. 2. Orgetorix persuades the Helvetīi to invade Gaul.


2. M. Messālā . . . consūlībus, “in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso.” Case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419, a; 420, 1: B. 227, 1, 2: a: H.-B. 421, 1: H. 489, 1. These men were consuls in the year 61 B.C., three years before Caesar went to Gaul. In giving dates the Romans designated the year by naming the consuls of that year.

ditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit ut de finibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent:

5 Perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae

3. coniūrātiōnem: the real purpose of the conspiracy was to make Orgetorix king, although the Helvetii, like most Gallic peoples, had no king. See Int. 29. His real reasons for wishing the people to emigrate were (1) that by making himself leader of the emigration he could get power enough to make himself king; and (2) that as king he wished to conquer the other states of Gaul.


cōpiīs here includes the women and children.

5. perfacilīs eīs . . . potīrī is indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in persuāsīt. Indirect discourse (App. 265) is very common in Caesar, and for this reason its essential principles should be grasped as soon as possible. No reference to details of the construction will be given in I, 1-29. The most essential fact to grasp is that when a declarative sentence is turned into indirect discourse the verb of the principal clause becomes an infinitive: App. 266: G.-L. 648; 650: A. 580, a: B. 314, 1, 2: H.-B. 589: H. 642, 1. This infinitive, however, cannot properly be translated by an English infinitive. In the present instance, what Orgetorix said was, perfacile est . . . potīrī, “it is very easy to get control.” The est has become esse, but the English equivalent is “(saying) that it was very easy to get control.”

impēria potēri. Id hōc facilius iis persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētii continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, qui agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte, Iūrā altissimō, qui est inter praestō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; imper., praestat, it is better or more advisable.

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. tōtius (App. 33), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all, with force of adv., wholly, entirely. *

6. imperium, -ī, n. (imperō, command), command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *
potior, 4, intr. [potis, powerful], become master of, get control or possession of, obtain, capture. *
facile, adv. [facillis, easy], easily, readily. Comp. facilius; sup., faciliōmē (App. 41). *

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. *

7. locus, -ī, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidum locō, as hostages. *

nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor, be born], nature; natural disposition, character; constitution. *

ē (only before consonants), ex (before vowels and some consonants), prep. with ab., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from, away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; ūnā ex parte, on one side: (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march: (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; ē regione, opposite. *

8. lātus, -a, -um, adj., broad, wide, extensive. 4.

altus, -a, -um, adj., high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. *

ager, agrī, m., field, land; district, territory. *

9. alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 32), the other (of two); second; the one: alter . . . alter, the one . . . the other; alterī . . . alterī, the one party . . . the other. *

Īrā, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jū'ra) mountains. 3.

tōtius . . . potēri: L. e., the Helvētii were to do what the Haeduī and the Sequani were trying to do. See Int. 29. imperiō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 499: H. 477, I.

6. id . . . persuāsit, lit. "he persuaded this (id) to them more easily on this account (hōc)" = "he persuaded them to this course more easily."


ile: cf. civitātī, 1. 3.


10. lacus, -ús, m., lake. 3.
Lemannus, -i (with or without lacus), m. (Cg), Lake Lemannus (lē-mānˈús), better, Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. 3.
12. rés, rei, f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case, act, action, deed; reason, ground; rés familiarís, property; rés frumen-
táriás, supplies; rés militáriás, warfare; novae rés, revolution; rés públicas, state; rés áctas, deeds, achievements; quam ob rem, see qui and quis. *
minus, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quóminus. *
lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longē lātēque, far and wide. 4.
vagor, 1. intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. 4.
finimíus, -a, -um, adj. [finis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl. as noun, neighbors. *
13. inferō, inferre, intuill, illātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflict, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causa ilia tā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. *
possum, posse, potui, —, (App. 80), intr. [pōtis, able + sum, be], be able, can; to have power or influence, have strength, be strong; *quam and sup., as possible, e.g. *quam plúrimás possunt, as many as possible; multum posse, plúas posse, and plúrum posse, see multum. *
homō, -inis, m., human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl., mankind, humanity, men. *
bellō, 1. intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, wage war. 3.
14. cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [cupíō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. 2.
magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive, loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. naut.), of great importance; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. Comp., maior; sup., maximus. *
dolor, -órís, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (physical or mental), vexation, annoyance. 3.
afficīō, -ācere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ad + faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolore afficere, to annoy greatly. 3.
prō, prep. with abl. [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in

10. tertiā: sc. ex parte. The fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.
11. his . . . fiēbat, lit. "by these things it was brought about" = "the result was."
minus, "less" than they desired.
finimíus: for case cf. omnibus, 15.
hominēs . . . cupidī, "being men who were desirous of fighting." bel-
14. prō . . . hominum, "considering the great size of the population."
hominum et prō gloriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sé finēs habēre arbitrabantur, qui in longitūdinem mīlia-passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. His rebus adductī et auctoritāte Orgetorīgis permōti

---


angustōs finēs, "(too) narrow limits." finēs: case? App. 124: G.-L. 330: A. 387: B. 172: H.-B. 390: H. 404. Caesar has somewhat overstated the size of Helvetia, because he had to depend on the reports of the Gauls. It comprised rather more than half of modern Switzerland. According to chap. 29 the population was 283,000, while Switzerland now has a population of about 8,000,000.

constituērunt ea quae ad proficiscendum pertinērent comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmenti suppeteret, cum proximīs civitātibus pācem et amicitiam confīrmāre. Ad eās rēs conficiendās biennium sībi satis esse dūxē-

2. cōnstitūō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. [statūō, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). * proficiscor, proficisci, prefectus sum, intr. [cf. prōfīcīō, advance], set out, start, depart; set out for, start forth; go. proceed. * comparā, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure; prepare for. *

3. iūmentum, -ī, n. [lūngō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. 2.

carās, -ī, m., cart. *

quām, (1) adv., (a) interrog., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as ... as possible, very; quām diū, as long as; (2) conj. with comp., than; prīus ... quām, before; posē ... quām, posteā ... quām, after. *

maximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of magnus, great. App. 42], greatest, largest.* numerus, -ī, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numerō, with gen., among, as. *

cōmēō, -erēre, -ēmī, -ēmtum, tr. [smō, buy], buy, buy up. 1.

4. sēmentis, -īs, f. [sēmen, seed], sowing. 1.

iter, itineris, n. (sē, go), route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnīs itineribus, by forced marches. *

frūmentum, -ī, n., grain; pl., crops. *

5. suppētō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, intr. [sub+petō, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. 2.

pāx, pācis, f., peace; favor. 2.

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship. *

cōnfīrmō, 1, tr. [firmō, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. *

6. cōnfiōcī,-ficere,-fēcī,-fēctum, tr. [facīō, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish

4. ut cōpia suppeteret, "in order that a supply might be at hand": mode? App. 225, a, 3: G.-L. 544, 1; 545, 1, 3: A. 531, 1: B. 382, 1: H.-B. 503, 2: H. 568.

5. cum ... cōnfīrmāre: although the Helvetii were warlike they wished to march peaceably while encumbered with their women and children and baggage train.


6. ad ... conficiendās, lit. "for these things to be completed" = "for completing these preparations." Study

Chap. 3. The Helvetii make preparations. Orgetorix conspires with other chiefs.


comparāre, coēmēre, facere, cōnfīrmāre all depend on cōnstituērunt; "they decided to get ready ... to buy ... to sow ... and to establish ..."


quām maximum numerum,"as great a number as possible" or "as many ... as possible."
runt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lège cōnfirmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorix dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad civitātēs suscipit. In eō itinerē persuādet Castiō, Catamantaloedis filiō, Sēquanō, cuius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs 10 annōs obtinuerat et a senatori populi Rōmānī amīcus appellātus

up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). *
biennium, -nī, n. [bis, twice—an-nus, year], two years. 1.
satis, adv. and indecl. adj. and noun; (1) as adv., enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) as adj., sufficient; (3) as noun, enough. *
dūco, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *
7. annus, -ī, m., year. *
profectiō, -ōnis, f. [profectōr, set out], a settling out, start, departure. 3.
dōlīgō, -ligere, -līgī, -lēctum, tr. [lōgō, choose], pick out, select, choose. *
lōgātiō, -ōnis, f. [lōgō, delegate], embassy, legation; commission. *
suscipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [su(b)s-capiō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. *
Casticus, -ī, m., Casticus (kās'ti-kūs). 1.
Catamantaloedis, -īs, m., Catamantaloedis (kāt'ā-mānt'ā-lō'dīs). 1.
pater, -tris, m., father; in pl., forefathers, ancestors; pater familiæ, father or head of a family. *
multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl., many; with abl. denoting time when, late; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plu'rīs, plu'ris, more; as noun, more; pl., more, several, many; sup., plu'ri'mus, -a, -um, most; pl., very many. *
11. senātus, -ūs, m. [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. *
populus, -ī, m., the people, the mass.

carefully this very common gerundive construction: App. 288; 293: G.-L. 427; 433: A. 503; 506: B. 359, 1, 2: H.-B. 609; 610; 613, III: H. 623; 628. Compare with it the gerund in 1. 2. Notice that ad governs rēs and that cōnficiendās is an adjective in agreement with rēs. App. 117: G.-L. 289: A. 288: B. 234: H.-B. 820: H. 394. But cōnficiendās must be translated as if it were a verbal noun (gerund) governing rēs as its object.
biennium ... dāxērunt, "they judged that two years were sufficient." Dūco with this meaning is followed by indirect discourse: cf. 2, 5. The Helvetii intended to spend the years 60 and 59 in preparation and to leave home in the spring of 58.

7. cōnfirmant: tense? App. 190, a: G.-L. 229: A. 469: B. 259, 3: H.-B. 491, 1: H. 532, 3. Caesar uses the historical present much more freely than English idiom permits it to be used in translating. It is best always to translate by a past.
sibi suscipit, "he took on himself." For case cf. omnībus, 2, 5.
obtinuerat, "had held." Always be suspicious of a translation which sounds like the Latin word. It may be
erat, ut régnum in civitáte suá occupáret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnoriúl Haeduó, frátrí Diviciáci, qui eó tempore principátem in civitáte obtinébat ac máximé plébí acceptus erat, ut idem cónárétur persuádet, eíque filiam suam

the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. * 
Rómanus, -a, -um, adj. [Róma, Rome], Roman; as noun, a Roman. * 
amícus, -a, -um, adj. [amó, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, a friend, an ally. * 
12. occupó, 1, tr. [ob-+capíó, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. * 
ante, (1) adv., before, above, previously; (2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. * 
13. ítem, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. * 
Dumnoríx, -ígis, m., Dumnoríx (dum'nó-ríks), a Haeduán chieftain, brother of Diviciácius. * 
Haeduus, -a, -um, adj. (Cef), of the Haeduí (hèd'ú-i); Haeduán; as noun, a Haeduán; pl., the Haeduí, possibly Haeduí, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. * 
fráter, -trís, m., brother. * 
Diviciácius, -i, m., Diviciácius (dív'i-

right, but it would likely be wrong. "Obtained" would be wrong here.

amicus: an honoraj title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests.
12. ut occupáret, "to seize." This clause is the object of persuádet in l. 10: mode? App. 228, a: G.-L. 546, 1, 2: A. 563: B. 295, 1: H.-B. 502, 3, a: H. 563, 1; 568. Cf. ut suppeteret, 1, 4, which is not used as an object.
13. Dumnoriúl: younger than Diviciácius, and a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Haeduí.

Haeduó: the Haeduí were the rivals of the Sequani for the leadership among the Gallic states. See map, and Int. 29.
qui: i.e. Dumnoríx.
principátem, "the leading position"; but he was not a magistrate.
15. ut idem cónárétur, "to attempt the same thing"; i.e. attempt to overthrow the constitutional government and make himself king.
in matrium dat. Perfacile factū esse illis probat cōnāta perficere, propērēa quod ipse suae civitātis imperium obtentūrus esset. Nōn esse dubium quīn tōtius Galliāe plurimum Helvētiī possent: sē suīs cópiis suōque exercītū illis rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfirmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī ūnter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum

16. mātrinōnum, -ni, n. [māter, mother], marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in matrium dare, to give in marriage; in matrium dūcere, to marry (said of the man). 2.

dō, dare, dedī, datum (App. 85), tr., give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negotium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dō are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put).

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illī (App. 56), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former, see App. 170, a. 4.

probō, 1, tr. [probābō, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. 3.

cōnātum, -ī, n. [cōnōr, try], attempt, undertaking. 1.

17. perāciō, -āciere, -ācēi, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. *

18. nōn (App. 168, a), adv., not; no. * dubius, -a, -um, adj., uncertain, doubtful. 1.

quin, conj. [qui, who or how + ne, negative], that not, but that; after negative words of doubt or hindrance, but that, that, from, to; quīn etiam, nay even, moreover. *

multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plus, more; plūs posse, be more able or powerful, have more influence; mūr. plurimum, most, very; plurimum posse, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. *

19. exercītus, -ūs, m. [exercēō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. *

conciliō, 1, tr. [conciliām, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, conciliate. 1.

20. ērātiō, -ānis, f. [ērō, speak], a speaking, speech, language, words, address, argument. *

fidēs, -ei, f. [fidō, confide], faith, con-

16. perāciō . . . perāciere, lit. "he shows to them to accomplish the attempts to very easy to do [factū, the supine]" = "he showed them that it was very easy to carry out the undertaking," esse: cf. 2, 5.

17. propterēa quod obtentūrus esset, lit. "because he was about to seize upon" = "because he intended to seize upon." The clause is causal, like propterēa quod absunt in 1, 6; but the subjunctive is used because it is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The second important fact about indirect discourse (cf. 2, 5) is that all subordinate verbs which in the direct form were either indicatives or subjunctives must be subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 269: G.-L. 660: A. 580: B. 314, 1: H.-B. 534, 2, 1; 535, 2: H. 643.

18. nōn . . . quīn, "(he proved that) there was no doubt that."

19. sē illis conciliātūrum (sc. esse), "that he would win for them." Esse is usually omitted from the future infinitive.

illīs: i.e. for Casticus and Dumnōrīx.

20. hāc ērātiōne, "by this argument."

inter sē, "to one another."
dant et, regnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtiūs Galliae sēsē potiri posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium enūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam diēre coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequi oportēbat, ut ignī cremārētur. Dicere, convincere, give a pledge; fidem sequi, surrender. *

21. rēgnō occupātō potiri posse spērant, "they hoped that after they had seized the royal power [each in his own land] they could get control of." regnō occupātō: case? App. 150: G.-L. 409; 410: A. 419: B. 227, 2; a: H.-B. 421, 3: H. 489, 1. Latin is very fond of the ablative absolute: English very seldom uses its corresponding idiom, the nominative absolute. Never translate an ablative absolute literally. "The royal power having been seized" is wretched English.

per trēs populōs: i.e. the Helvetii, the Sequani, and the Haedu!


Chap. 4. Orgetorigix is tried for conspiracy, but escapes. His sudden death.


2. ex vinculis, "in chains." Cf. note on 1, 15.

3. damnātum . . . cremārētur, lit. "it was necessary for the punishment to
cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mālia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxīt; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē eripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequi cōnārētūr, multitudinemque hominum ex agris

4. dictiō, -ōnis, f. [dīco, say], speaking, pleading. 1.

iūdicium, -iō, n. [ĳūdeces, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdicīō, by design, purposely. 4.

5. familia, -ae, f., household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. 2.

decem (X), indesol. card. num., ten. *

6. cliēns, -entis, m., f. [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, renter. 3.

obārātus, -a, -um, adj. [aes, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. 1.

7. eōdem, adv. [old dative of idem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). *

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dīcō, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. 4.

nē (App. 188, b), (1) conj. with subj., that . . . not, so that . . . not, in order that . . . not, lest; after verbs of fearing, that, lest: (2) adv., not; nē . . . quidem (enclosing the emphatic word), not even. *

8. eripō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr. [rapio, seize], wrest or take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *

ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. *

incitō, 1, tr. [citō, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate; exasperate; cursū incitātō, at full speed. *

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. *

iūs, fūris, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. *

9. exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. 1.

follow (him) condemned that he should be burned with fire" = "if condemned it was necessary that the punishment of being burned he inflicted upon him." damnedum: use of participle? App. 283: G.-L. 667: A. 496: B. 337, 2, b: H.-B. 604, 3: H. 638, 2. ut cremārētūr is a substantive clause in apposition with poenam; it is perhaps best taken as a substantive clause of result.


5. ad, "about."

6. obaeratōs: those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7. per eōs, "by their help."


8. cum cōnārētūr ... quae magistrātūs cōgerent, "when the state was attempting . . . and the magistrates were collecting": mode? App. 240, 242, a: G.-L. 568: A. 546, notes 2, 2, 3: B. 288, b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II, 1.
10 magistratūs cōgerēnt, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspiciō, ut Helvētīi arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnsēcīverit.

5. Post eius mortem nihilō minus Helvētī i id quod cōn-stituerant facere cōnāntur, ut ē finibus suis ēxеant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vicīs ad quadringentōs, reliqua privātā aedīfīcia incendīunt; frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum

10. magistrātus, -ae, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. * mōrō, mōri, mortuōs sum, intr. [mōres, death], die. 2. neque (neqō) (App. 188, a), conj. [neque], and not, nor, but not: neque ... neque, neither ... nor. *

11. suspiciō, -ōnis, f. [suspicor, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. * mōres, -tis, f., death; sībi mortem cōnsēcīsere, commit suicide. 4.

12. cōnsēcāre, -eiscere, -eiscī, -eiscītum, tr. [eiscō, resolve], resolve upon; sībi mortem cōnsēcīsere, commit suicide. 2. 1. post, adv., and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., later, afterwards; (2) as prep., behind, after; post tergum or post sē, in the rear. *

nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētīus, none the less, nevertheless. 3.

11. ut with the indicative usually means either "as", or "when." quīn ... cōnsēcīverit, "that he committed suicide." 

Chap. 5-8. Caesar thwarts the efforts of the Helvetii to cross the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

Chap. 5. The Helvetii burn their dwellings and secure allies.


2. ubi, adv.(1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi prīnum, as soon as. *

iam, adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. *

3. parā, l.tr., prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for; parātus, pf. part. as adj., ready, prepared; equipped. *

oppidum, -i, n., fortified town, town, stronghold. *

4. duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. 2.

vicus, -i, m., hamlet, village. *

quadringenti, -ae, -a, card. num, adj., four hundred. 2.

privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. 3.

5. aedīfīcium, -ī, n. [aedificō, build], building, house. *

incendē, -cendere, -cendi, -cēn-

ut exeat, "(namely) to go forth," is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause in apposition with id.

3. ad eam rem, "for the enterprise." parātōs is the adjective.

esse, "were": indirect discourse.

oppida, vicīs, aedīfīcia: notice the absence of conjunctions, and cf. note on 1, 3.

ad, "about."

sum, tr. [cf. candēō, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. *
praeterquam, adv., besides, except. 1.
6. portō, 1, tr., carry, transport, bring, take. 3.
combūrō, -ārere, -āsī, -āustum, tr.
[com(b) + ārō, burn], burn up. 1.
domus, -ūs (App. 29, d), f., house; home; native country. *
reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō, return], return. 1.
spēs, -ī, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. *
tollō, tollere, sustulē, sublātum, tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; sublātus, pf. part. as adj., elated. *
7. periculum, -i, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. *
subēō, -ēre, -ēsī, -ētum, tr. [sē̄, go, App. 84], come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. 4.
mēnsis, -is, m., month. 8.
8. molē, -ere, -ūsī, -ētum, tr., grind. 1.
cibārius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; n. pl. as noun, provisions; molīta cibāriā, meal, flour. 2.
quīisque, quidque, and quisque, quaeque, quodquae, universal indef. pron. (App. 62), each one, each; every one, all. *
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, tr. [ex-ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. 2.
tubēō, tubēs, iussē, iussum, tr., order, bid, command, enjoin. *
9. Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (Cg), the Rauraci (rauv'ra-si). 2.
Tulingī, -ōrum, m. (Cgh), the Tulingi (tu-līng'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 4.
Latobrīgī, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Latobrigi (īa-tō-brī'ji), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. 3.
ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; ūsus, pf. part. often translated with. *

6. portātūrī erant, lit. "they were about to take" = "they intended to take." 
ut essent is a purpose clause.
spē sublātā: translate the ablative absolute by a temporal clause.
trium mēnsium cibāria, "supplies for three months." mēnsium: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. Napoleon III estimates that 8,500 wagons, drawn by 34,000 draft animals, were needed to transport the necessary provisions and baggage of the Helvetician host: even this is probably an underestimate.
9. uti ... proficiēscantur, lit. "that having used the same plan, their towns ... having been burned, they set out along with them" = "to adopt ... to burn ... and to set out." cōnsiliō: case? App. 145: G.-L. 407: A. 410: B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H. 477.
10 cōnsiliō, oppidis suīs vicisque exustīs, ūnā cum iīs pro-
ficiscantur; Bōiōsque, qui trānsum Rhēnum incoluerant, et in
agrum Noricum trānsierant Norēiamque oppugnābant, receptōs
ad sē sociōs sibi asciuncunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus itineribus domō exīre

10. cōnsilium, -lī, n., consultation, deliberation; counsel, advice; plan, design; measure, course of action; judgment; prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, council, council of war; commūnī cōnsilliō, by, or in accordance with, general action; pūblicō cōnsilliō, by action of the state; cōnsilium cap-
erē or iniōre, form or adopt a plan; cōnsilium habēre, think, consider.

* exūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr. [ārō, burn], burn up.
ūnā, adv. [ūnus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place; (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also.

11. Boūi, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Boii (bō'yi), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map.

12. Norīcus, -a,-um, adj., pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican.

trānseō, -ire, -iī, -itum, tr. and intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of time, pass by. *
Norēia, -ae, f. (Ck), Noreia (nō-rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt.

1. oppugnō, 1, tr. [ob+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. *
recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re+-cipiō, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self.

13. sociēs, -ci, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. *
asciscō, -sciscērēs, -scīvi, -scītum, tr. [ad+sciscē, approve], approve; admit or receive (as allies). 2.

1. omnīnō, adv. [omnīs, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only.

duo, duae, duo (App. 49), card. num. adj., two.

called to the fact; and if the pupil has not yet mastered the construction he
should do so immediately.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Direct object
Ablative of specification

Chap. 6. The Helvetii decide to

1. erant, "there were."
quibus itineribus, "by which." Cae-
sar sometimes repeats the antecedent in
the relative clause, where English usage
requires its omission. Case? App. 144:
G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426,
a: H. 476.
quibus . . . possant, "by which they
possent:  ámbum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carri dūcērentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpauci prohibēre possent: alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterēa quod inter finēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, qui nūper pācāti erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullīs locīs vadō trānsītur. **Extrēmum oppidum**

2. difficilis, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. 3.
3. vix, adv. with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. 4.
quā, adv. [abl. fem. of quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. *
singulī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annōs singulōs, annually. *
4. impendē, -pendēre, —, —, intr. [in+pendēō, hang], overhang, impend. 2.
5. perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [paucī, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. 4.
6. multō, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much. 4.

2. ánum (iter) and alterum (iter) are appositives of itinera duo; App. 95, b: G.-L. 320: A. 281; 283, a: B. 169, 1, 2, 5: H.-B. 317, 2: 319, I, a: H. 393, 4. Study the two routes on the map, p. 70. The one involved passing through Pas de l’Écluse, the other involved crossing the Rhone.
3. vix: notice its emphatic position before the relative, and cf. note on quae pertinent, 1, 8.
4. dūcērentur, "could be drawn." This is another subjunctive of characteristic, but it differs from possent in that here the subjunctive mode has the potential meaning "could": App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 517, 2. The place referred to is Pas de l’Écluse: see map, p. 70.
5. prohibēre: sc. ēōs.
7. nūper pācāti erant: in 61 B.C., after a desperate struggle to regain their independence.
vadō trānsītur, lit. "is crossed by a ford" = "is fordable." **Extrēmum**: i.e. It is on the northern frontier.
Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genava.

9. Genava, -ae, f. (Cg), Genava (jōn'a-vā), a city of the Allobroges, now Geneva. 3.
10. póns, pontis, m., bridge. *
11. nōndum, adv. [nōn, not + dum], not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as noun, bonum, -i, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. Comp., melior; sup., optimus (App. 42). *

12. videō, videre, vidi, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., be seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. *

existimō, 1, tr. [aestimō], estimate, reckon, think, consider. *
vel, conj. and adv. (1) as conj., or; vel ... vel, either ... or; (2) as adv., even. *

vis, vis (App. 37), f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., vīrēs, strength, force; vīm facere, use violence. *

13. eō, ire, ī, ī(ī) (īvi), itum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. *
patiōr, patiō, passus, sum, tr. and intr., endure, withstand, suffer; permit, allow. *

14. ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). *
15. conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-

ut paterentur is a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, the object of both persuāsūrōs and coactūrōs.

13. omnibus rébus comparātīs, "when they had made everything ready."


15. a. d. V. Kal. Aprilis = ante diem quinto Kalendas Aprilis = die quinto ante Kalendas Aprilīs. The former phrase is idiomatic but can not be parsed. In all such reckonings the Romans counted both ends, while we count but one.

The date here meant is the twenty-eighth of March, which we should consider the fourth day before the
7. Caesarī cum id nuntiātum esset, ęōs per provīnciam nostram iter fācere nōnāri, mātūrat ab urbe proficiēs, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliām ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest

tum, tr. and intr. [venīō, come], come to- gether; assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; he agreed upon; imper- sonal, he convenient, suitable, necessary. *

quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quinque, five], fifth. 3.

Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -ārum, f., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. 1.

April., abbr. for Aprilīis, -ē, adj., of April, April. 2.

L., abbr. for Lucius, Lucius (lū-/shyūs), a Roman praenomen. *

Pīso, -ōnis, m., Lucius Calpurnius Pīso (lū/shyūs kāl-per'nī-ūs pī'sō), Caesar’s father-in-law, consul 58 B.C. 2.

A., abbr. for Aulus (aw'lı̂ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.

16. Gabīnus, -īnīs, Gabīnius, first of April, instead of the fifth.

L. Pīsōne ... cōnsulibus: cf. note on 2, 2.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Apposition

Purpose clauses

Chap. 7. Caesar hastens to Gaul and delays the Helvetii by a pretext.

1. Caesarī: he had been consul in the year 59, and at the end of his year of office he had immediately become pro- consul of Gaul. See Int. 11, 12. He was at this time near Rome, preparing to leave for his province. The news merely hastened his movements.


id, “this fact,” is explained by its ap- positve, the clause, ęōs ... nōnāri, “that they were planning, etc.” ęōs: case? App. 123: G.-L. 203, R. 1; 433, 2: A. 307, c: B. 184: H.-B. 398: H.415. nōnāri: construc-

2. ab urbe, “from [near] the city,” instead of ex urbe, because one who held a military command could not legally be in the city.

quam maximis potest itineribus, fit. “by (as great) day’s journeys as the greatest he can” = “by as long day’s journeys as possible.” quam maximis itineribus would have meant the same thing. These two idioms are very com- mon in Caesar. We learn from Plu- tarch that Caesar traveled about ninety miles a day. itineribus: case? App.142: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 290, 1: H.-B. 445, 2: H. 473, 3.

3. ulteriōrem = trānbalpınam, “be- yond the Alps” from Rome.

4. ad Genavam: use of preposition?


prōvinciae imperat, “he levied upon the province.”
5. miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equites); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. *

imperō, 1, tr. and intr. [in+parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. *

6. legiō, -ōnis, f. [legō, choose], a legion. *

ræscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, tr. [re-+scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. 2.

7. adventus, -ūs, m. [venīo, come], coming, arrival, approach. *

certus, -ā, -um, adj. [for crēstus, pf. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certīōrem facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fārī, be informed. *

lægātus, -i, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated power; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

8. mittō, mittere, misi, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. *


12. voluntātēs, -tātis, f. [volē, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will, favor; consent, approval. *
licet, licēre, licuit and licītum est, intr., impera., it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; licet mihi, I may; pereuter ut licet, to ask permission. *
memoria, -ae, f. [memor, mindful], the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoria tenēre, remember; patrum memoria, in the time of our fathers. *
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tenterum, tr., hold, keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; sē tenēre, remain; memoria tenēre, remember. *
13. Cassius, -ī, m., Lucius Cassius Longinus (lū'shyūs kāsh'yūs lō'n-gi'niūs), consul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigurini. 3.
occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr. [ob+caedō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. *
14. peilō, pellere, pepulli, pulsum, tr., beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. *
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc., (a) with verbs of motion, under, beneath; up to; (b) of time, just at, about, toward. (2) With abl., (a) of position, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of; (b) of time, during, within: in compounds, sub or subs, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; In succession; slightly. *
igum, -ī, n. [lungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. *
concēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. *
putō, i, tr., think, consider, believe. *
15. inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in+-amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. 3.
facultās, -tātis, f. [old adj., facultās, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. *

12. voluntāte is an ablative of accordance.
13. occisum, pulsum, missum are perfect passive infinitives in indirect discourse, and depend on memoria tenēbat, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. The perfect infinitive represents the action as past at the time of tenēbat; "that Lucius Cassius had been slain," etc.
ab Helvetīs: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401: A. 405; B. 216; H.-B. 406, 1: H. 468. 14. sub igum, "under the yoke." This "yoke" was made of three spears, two planted in the ground and the third fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this, the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass, in token of submission and degradation. concēdendum (esse), "that permission ought to be granted." 
15. hominēs temperātūrōs (esse), "that men would refrain." The future infinitive shows that a future indicative was used in the direct form. Caesar thought nōn temperābunt, "they will not refrain."
datā facultāte may be translated by a conditional clause; "if an opportunity should be given."
itinerum faciendi, temperatur produced ab iniuriæ et maleficio existimatur. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milités quos imperáverat conveniunt, legátis respondit diem sē ad déliberandum súmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

16. temperō, 1. intr., restrain or control one's self, refrain; temperátus, adj., temperate, mild. 2. iniuriā, -ae, f. [in-iūs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. *

17. tamen, adv. (opposed to some expressed or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however; at least. *

spatium, -ti, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. *

intercedō, -cedere, -cese, -cessum, intr. [cedēdō, go, go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. 4. dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. *

18. respondeō, -spondere, -spōndi, -spōnseum, tr. and intr. [spondeō, promise], reply, answer. *

19. dēliberō, 1. tr. [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. 2. sūmō, sūmère, sūmpe, sūmpsum, tr. [sub-emō, take], take away, take; assume; with supplicium, inflict; with labor, spend. *

eī, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod sī, but if, now if. *

quia, quid, 'and qui, quae, quod (App. 61 and 62), (1) interrogr. pron., who? which? what? quam ob rem, why? quem ad modum, how? (2) indef. pron., especially after si, nisi, né, num, any one, anything, any; somebody, something, some. *

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire; prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sībī vellet, what did he intend or mean? *

idūs, -uum, f., pl., the Ides: the 15th of March, May, July and October, and the 15th of other months. 1.

20. revertō, -verte, -vēri, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses, and revertor, -vēri, -versus sum, intr., used in the tenses direct form. Caesar said sī quid vultis, revertimini, "if you want anything, come again." The third (cf. 2, 5 and 17) important fact about indirect discourse is that all imperatives of the direct form become subjunctives in the indirect form: App. 267: G.-L. 652: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 643.

Third References:
Predicate nouns and adjectives
Agreement of adjectives
Partitive genitive
Subject of infinitive
Substantive volitive (or purpose) clause
Causal clauses with quod, etc.
Infinitive in indirect discourse
Gerund
Gerundive
8. Interea eá legiône quam sècum, habèbat militibusque quí ex pròvinciâ convènerant, à lácù Lemannò, quí in flûmen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Íúram, quí finès Sèquanórum ab Helvètìis dìvidit, mília passuum xíx mùrum in altitúdinem pedum sèdecim fossamque perdúcit. Eò opere perfectò praesidìa dispònit, castella commùnit, quò facilius, si sè invitò tránsire

formed on the present stem [re-+vertó, trun], turn back, come back, return. *
1. interés, adv., in the meantime, meanwhile. 4.
3. influé, -fluere, -fluxi, —, intr. [fluó, flow], flow into, empty into. *
4. undéviginti (XIX), card. num. adj., indecl. [únus, one+dé, from + viginti, twenty], nineteen. 2.
márus, -i, m., a wall. *
altitúdó, -inis, f. [altús, high, deep], height; depth; thickness (of timber). *
5. pé, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot;
pedam referre, retreat. *
sédécim (XVI), card. num. adj., indecl., sixteen. 2.
foesa, -as, f. [p.f. part. fem. of fodíó, dig], trench, ditch. *
perdúcō, -dúcere, -dúxi, -ductum, tr. [dúcō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. 4.
opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; nátàra et opere, by nature and art; opera, crafts. *
praesidìum, -di, n. [praesídēō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. *
dispònē, -pônerē, -posuí, -positum, tr. [pônō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. 2.
castellum, -i, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. *
commùniō, 4, tr. [mùniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. 1.
quō, conj. [abl. case form of quí, who, who.

Chap. 8. Caesar prevents the Helvetii from crossing the Rhone.
2. à lácù . . . ad montem: see map, p. 70.
4. mília: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335:
mília passuum xíx = about 17½ English miles. This is the distance from the lake to Pas de l’Écluse, following the windings of the river. Caesars plain statement is that he constructed a wall and a trench nineteen miles in length. Napoleon III believed that the banks of the river were so steep for most of the distance that no artificial fortifications were needed, and the map on p. 70 shows the only places where he believed that Caesar con-
structed the wall and trench—a total of about three miles. Napoleon’s view is generally accepted, but there are good grounds for doubting its correctness.
in altitúdinem pedum sèdecim, lit. “of sixteen feet into height” = “sixteen feet high.” pedum: App. 100: G.-L.
365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3. The “section of Caesar’s wall,” set into the map, p. 70, makes clear the method of constructing this wall. The top of the bank was cut down so as to make a steep front sixteen feet high: this was the mùrus. The earth which was dug out was simply thrown down the hill. A line of palisades was set on top, to serve as a breastwork for the Roman soldiers.
6. dispònít, “stationed at several points.” Caesar had too few men to man the entire line. He therefore sta-
conarentur, prohibère posset. Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum légātīs vēnit et légātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē móre et exemplō populi Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciae dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibītūrum ostendit. Helvētīi

which, in order that, so that, that. ∗
invitus, -a, -um, adj., against one's wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sē invitō, against his will. ∗
8. veniō, venire,vēnī,ventum,intr.,
come, arrive, go, advance; in spem venire, have hopes; pass. often imper.,
as ventum est, they came, it came, etc. ∗

negō, 1, tr. and intr., say no, refuse, say... not. 1.
9. exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. 2.
10. ostendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendī, -tendi, -tendūm, tr. [obs+tendō, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. ∗

tioned detachments (praesidia) in casella, at suitable points, and of course had pickets all along the line. At an alarm the nearest detachments were to run to the threatened point.

Cáesar’s Fortifications on the Rhone

sī conārentur, "if they should try." sē invitō: construction? App. 150:

S. negat sē posse, "he said that he could not."
móre et exemplō: case? App. 142, a:

10. sī... conārentur, "if they should try to use force.."
prohibītūrum (sc. sē... esse), "that he would stop them."
9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs

11. dēiclo, -icēs, -icī, -iectum, tr. [lacī, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; fail, disappoint. *

nāvis, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvis longa, galley, ship of war; nāvis onerrāria, transport. *

iungō, iungere, iunxī, iunctum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. 4.

ratīs, -is, f., raft. 2.

complūres, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. *

12. parvus, -a, -um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, least, very small. *

13. numquam, adv. [ne-um<iuam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. 3.

interdiū, adv. [diēs, day], during the day, by day. 1.

11. eā spē dēlectī, nāvibus iūncīs rātibusque complūribus factīs, alī ē audis Rhodani, quà mínima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū sī perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnitione et militum concursū et tēlis repulsi hoc cōnātū dēsitīrunt.

15. cōnātū is an ablative of separation.
invitis propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuāderē nōn possent, légātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dépreqcātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent.

5 Dumnorix grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plurīnum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex ēa civitāte Orgetorīgis filiam in mātrimōnium duxerat, et cupiditātē rēgnī adductus novis rēbus studebat et quam plurīmās civitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs

tum, tr. [re-+linquō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; pass., be left. remain. *

via, -ae, f., way, road, route; journey, march. *

2. propter, prep. with acc. [prope, near], on account of, because of, in consequence of. *

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. spontis, gen. and sponte, abl. (obsoleto nom., spōns), f., of one’s own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one’s self. 2.

4. déppecātor, m. [déprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. 1.

impetrō, 1. tr. [in+-patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one’s request); impetrāre (ab), gain permission from, persuade. *

5. grātiā, -ae, f. [grātus, pleasing].


Sēquanīs invītīs, “if the Sequani should refuse.” Ablative absolute. 1.


suā sponte, “by their own efforts” or “by themselves.” The phrase usually means “of their own accord.”

3. Dumnorīgēm: this is the Dum- norix who is mentioned in 3, 13 as having conspired with Orgetorīx. Although that plot had failed he was still seeking a chance to make himself king.
impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque uti inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquani, né itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniuriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere, quī nōn longē à Tolosātium finibus absunt, quae civitās est in prōvinciā. Id si fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum pēriculō prōvinciāe

-strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. 2. itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *
10. obsēs, -īdis, m. and f. [osēdeo, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. *
1. renūntiō, i, tr. [renūntiō, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. *

10. obsidēs: all through Caesar’s narrative we find that states were obliged to bind themselves to carry out their agreements by giving hostages. The hostages were usually the children of the most influential men of the state, and were liable to enslavement or death if the state failed to fulfill its agreement.

11. Sēquani, Helvētiī: sc. obsidēs dent; i.e. the Sequani bound themselves not to stop the Helvetii, etc. The clauses are substantive volitive clauses, objects of the implied phrase “bind themselves.”

Third References:
Dative with special verbs
Dative with adjectives

Chap. 10. Caesar brings more troops from Italy.

esse is the subject of renūntiātur.
2. Santoni, -örum, or Santonēs, -um, m. (Dcd), the Santoni (sān’tō-nī), or Santones (sān’tō-nēz). 3. Tolosātēs, -īum, m., the Tolosates (tōlō-sātēz), the people of Tolosa. 1.
4. interleggō, -legere, -lēxi,-lectum, tr. [inter+leggō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. *

3. nōn longē: the distance is really about 130 miles, but the Helvetii would be more dangerous in the territory of the Santones than in their own country, because they would no longer be hemmed in by natural barriers. Caesar had reason to fear that either the Helvetii or the Gauls whom they should drive from their homes would raid the Province; and since it was his duty to protect the Province he was justified in forcing the Helvetii to remain at home. He does not choose to add, however, that this movement of the Helvetii gave him an excellent opportunity to interfere in the affairs of Gaul, and thereby fitted in with his plans for the conquest of the country.

4. id si fieret, “if this should be carried out,” is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, depending on futūrum: mode? App. 269: G.-L. 650: A. 580: B. 314: H.-B. 534, 2, II: H. 643. Caesar’s thought was, “if this shall be carried out [future indicative], it will, etc.”
magnō . . . futūrum, “that it would be (attended) with great danger to the province.” prōvinciāe is a genitive.
5 futūrum ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimicōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frumentāriīs finitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās ei mūnitionī quam fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiām magnīs itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs sēdūcit, et quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem

5. bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. 3.
6. patēns, -entis, adj. [pateō, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. 1.
frumentārius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of places, fruitful, productive of grain; rēs frumentāria, supply of grain, provisions. *
7. T. abbr., for Titus (τιτ' τυ), a Roman praenomen. *
Labiēnus, -i, m., Titus Atius Labiēnus (τιτ' τυς ἀχιλίματος), Caesar’s most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda 45 B.C. *
8. praeficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. 4.

Italia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. *
9. ibi, adv., there, in that place. *
cōnscribō, -scribere, -scripsit, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. *
circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near. 2.
Aquilēia, -ae, f., Aquileia (αικίλια), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. 1.
hiemō, 1, intr. [hiema, winter], pass the winter, winter. *
10. hiberna, -ōrum, n. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. *
edūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). *

inimicōs is here used as a noun, and therefore a genitive depends on it. If used as an adjective it would govern the dative.
lōcis is probably a dative depending on finitimōs, though it may be an ablative of place.
6. habēret: sc. provincia.
7. mūnitionī: case? App. 116, 1:
lēgātum: see Int. 38.
8. Itāliam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul, which was one of the provinces under his provincial command.
9. cōnscribit: he did this without authority from Rome. He had been given only four legions,—the one in Transalpine Gaul and the three at Aquileia. But the situation was more serious than the Roman Senate realized. He therefore increased his army to six legions, perhaps 54,000 men. With these legions and some auxiliary troops he had to oppose 92,000 fighting men, according to the Gallic records given in chap. 29.
quā proximum iter erat, “where there was the shortest route.” He chose the pass of Mount Genève, and the route is shown on the map facing p. 42. He did not wish to return to Geneva, for by this time the Helvetii had left their
Galliam per Alpēs erat cum his quinque legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutoriēs et GraioceIī et Catūrigēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proelīs pulsis, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris provinciae extrēmum, in finēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris provinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogium finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā provinciām trāns Rhodanum pri.mi.

11. Helvētii iam per angustiās et finēs Séquanōrum suās cópiās trāduæxerant, et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant

11. Alpēs, -ium, f. pl. (Cgfl), the Alpes (āl'pēz), better, the Alps. * quinque (V), card. num. adj., indecl., five. 4.
12. Ceutoriēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Ceutrones (sū'trō-nēz). 1.
GraioceIī, -īrum, m. (Dg), the Graioceli (gra-yōs'ē-lī). 1.
Caturiēs, -um, m. (Dg), the Catūriges (kāt'ū-rī'jēz). 1.
superior, -ius, adj. [comp. of super-rus, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher, superior; (2) of time, previous, earlier, former. *
citerior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 43), nearer, hither; Gallia Citerior (=Cis-alpina), Cisalpine Gaul, on 'the nearer (Italian) side of the Alps. *
15. Vocontiōrum, -ōrum, m. (Dg), the Vocontium (vō-kōn'šyē). 1.
septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. *
inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. *
17. Segusiāvōs, -ūrum, m. (Def), the Segusiavi (sēg'ū-shā-vōs). 1.
extrā, adv., and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. 1.
18. primus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as noun, the first, the front rank or ranks; leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. *
2. trāduō, -duere, -duō, -duc-tum, tr. [trān's+dūō, lead], lead across,

Third References:
Possessive genitive
Indirect object
Dative with compound verbs
Ablative of place from which
Ablative of accompaniment
Historical present
Subordinate clause in indirect discourse

Chap. 11. Three states ask Caesar to protect them against the Helvetii.
1. iam, "by this time."
angustiās: at Pas de l’Écluse.
2. pervēnerant: i.e. the head of their column had crossed the Arar, though its rear was some miles from
eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haedui, cum sē suaque ab iis
defendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum
5 auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse
ut paene in conspectū exercitūs nostri agrī vāstāri, liberi in
servitūtem abduīi, oppida expugnāri nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem
tempore Ambarri, necessāriī et consanguineī Haeduōrum,

lead over; take across, transport; trans-
fer, convey, pass on; win over. *
3. populum, 1, tr., devastate, ravage,
lay waste. 4.
4. dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēn-
sūm, tr. [fēndō, strike], keep or ward
off, repel; defend, protect. *
5. auxilium, -li, n. [aūgō, increase],
help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary
troops; reinforcements. *
ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as
follows; ut . . . ita, in proportion as . . .
in such proportion, as . . . so; nōn
ita, not so very, not very; ita . . . ut,
just . . . as; so . . . that. *
mēreō, and mēreor, 2, tr., deserve,
merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur
(odium); serve as a soldier (i.e. earn
pay). 3.
6. paene, adv., nearly, almost. *
conspectus, -us, m. [cōnspicō, look
at], sight, view; presence. *
vāstō, 1, tr. [vāstus, waste], lay
waste, ravage, devastate. 3.

liberi, -ōrum, m., [liber, free], the
free members of the household (as opposed
to slaves); children. *
7. servitūs, -ūtis, f. [servus, a
slave], slavery, servitude. *
abdūcō, -dūcre, -dūxī, -ductum,
tr. [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or
carry off, withdraw. 1.
expugnō, 1, tr. [pugnā, fight], take
or carry by storm, capture by assault;
overpower, sack. *
dēbeō, 2, tr. [dē-habeō, have], have, or
keep from some one; owe; with inf.,
ought, must; pass., he due. *
8. Ambarri, -ōrum, m. (Cf), the Am-
barri (ēm-bārī), clients of the Hae-
dui. 2.

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necesse,
necessary], necessary, requisite, pressing;
with tempus, critical; as noun, kinsman, friend. *
consanguineus, -a, -um, adj. [san-
guis, blood], of the same blood; as noun,
kinsman,relative. 3.

that river. They had traveled only
about a hundred miles during the two
months of Caesar's absence. Much of
this time, however, had been spent in
negotiations with the Sequani. Their
line of march must have been at least fif-
ty miles in length, and their progress was
necessarily slow, especially at the pass.
For their route see the map facing p. 42.
3. cum possent: causal.
suaque, "and their property."
295: G.-L. 435, n. 3: A. 509: B. 840, 1, a:
5. omni tempore, "on every occa-
sion."

meritōs esse depends on the idea of
"saying" which is implied in rogātum.
About sixty years before, the Haedui
had been called "brothers" of the Roman
people, and ever since that time
their relations with Rome had been
friendly; but we do not know that
they had ever been of assistance to
Rome.
6. ut agrī vāstāri nōn dēbuerint,
"that their lands ought not to have
been devastated." dēbuerint: moče! 
App. 226: G.-L. 558: A. 537, 1: B. 284, 1:
H.-B. 521, 2: H. 570.
nostri = Rōmānī. It agrees with exer-
citūs.
Caesarem certiorum faciunt sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs qui trans Rhodanum viōs possessionēsque habēbant fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sībi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sībi statuit dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santōnōs Helvētīi pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et

9. dépopulēr, 1. tr. (popular, lay waste), lay waste, ravage. 2.
10. hostis, -is, m., f., (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; pl., the enemy. *
11. possessīo,-ōnis, f. (possideō, possess), possession, occupation; a possession, property. 4.
   fugā, -ae, f., flight; in fugam conicere or dare, put to flight. *
12. dēmōnstrō, 1. tr. (mōnstrō, show), point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. *
   praeter, prep. with acc. (prae, before), before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. *
   solum, -i, n., bottom; ground, soil, earth. 1.
   nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; with gen., no, none of; acc. as adv., not, not at all, by no means; nōn nihil, somewhat. *
13. exspectō, 1. tr. (spectō, look at), look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. *
14. statūo, statuere, statūi, statūtum, tr. (status, position), put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. *
   fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. *
   consumō, -āmēre, -āmptum, tr. (sūmō, take), take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. 3.
1. Arar, Ararīa (acc. -im), m. (CDf), the Arar (A'rār), the modern Saone. 4.
Sèquanòr um in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrèdibili lènitātē, ita ut oculīs in utram partem fluat iūdicāri nōn possit. Id Helvētīorum ratibus ac līntribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātorēs Caesar certior factus est trēs iam partēs cōpīārum Helvētīōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam fērē partem citrā flūmen Ararīm reliquam esse, dē tertīā vigiliā cum legiōnis tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnīt quae nōndum flūmen trāns-

2. incrèdibilis, -e, adj. [in- + crē-dibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. 4. 
lènitās, -tātis, f. [lēnis, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. 1. 
3. oculus, -ī, m., eye. 3. 
uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius (App. 32), adj. (1) as interrog., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. 1. 
jūdicō, 1, tr. [jūdex, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. * 
4. īnter, -trīs, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe. 2. 

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [explōrō, search out], explorer, scout, spy. * 
6. quārtus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, four], fourth. * 
citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of. 3. 
7. vigilia, -ae, f. [vigil, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. * 
castrum, -ī, n., fort; pl., castra, castrōrum, fortified camp, camp; castra facere or pōnere, pitch camp; castra movēre, break up camp. * 

2. incrèdibilī lènitāte, "of remarkably slow current": descriptive ablative. 
Why is the present tense used? Strictly because Caesar meant "can," not "could." Every subjunctive tense has a meaning and is used because that meaning is needed in the sentence; at the same time, however, they are almost invariably used in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses. Learn once for all this very important rule, and the distinction between principal and historical tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 482, 1, 2; 483: B. 266, B. 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545. 

4. ratibus, līntribus: ablatives of means. 
įnctūs modifies only līntribus. 
trānsībant: at a point about twelve miles north of Caesar's camp. Excavations in this vicinity have brought to light numerous graves which give evidence of hasty interment, as if after a battle. 
5. trēs ... trādūxisse, "that the Helvetii had already conveyed three-fourths of their troops across this river." The verb trādūxisse governs two objects,—partēs depending on the meaning of the simple verb dūcō, flūmen depending on the meaning of the preposition trāns: App. 127: G.-L. 381, R. 1: A. 888, b: B. 175, 2, a. 1: H.-B. 391, 2: H. 406. 
6. citrā: i.e. on the east. 
7. dē tertīā vigiliā, "just after (the beginning of) the third watch"="just after midnight." 
legiōnisbus: how many men in a legion? Int. 33.
ierat. * Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit; reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus; nam omnibus civitatis Helvetiae in quattuor pagos divisum est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub ingum misera. Ita sive cæsū sive consiliō deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo

9. impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of impediō, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. *

inopināns, -antis, adj. [in- + opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. 2.

aggreddior, -gredi, -gressus sum, tr. [ad + gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. 4.

10. concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cium, tr. [caedo, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. 3.

mandō, 1, tr. [manus, hand+dō, give], give into one's hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

11. silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. *

abdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *

pāgus, -ī, m., village; district, province, canton. *

Tigurinus, -a, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. as noun, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini (tigurī-rīnī). 2.

12. nam, conj., for. *

quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indecl., four. *

14. interfāciō, -ācers, -āeci, -sectum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. *

15. sive and seu, conj. [sī, if+ve, or], or if, if; or; whether; sive ... sive, either ... or, whether ... or, to see if ... or. *

cāsus, -ōs, m. [cadō, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; cāsū, by chance. *

dēus, -ī (nom. pl., dīi; dat. pl., dīs), m., god, deity. 4.

immortalis, -a, adj. [in- + mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. 3.

16. insignis, -ēs, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; n. as noun, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. 4.

calamitās, -āsis, -ātis, f., misfortune, disaster, defeat. *


in silvās: from the English point of view we might expect the ablative (place where), but the verb implies motion into.—“ran into and hid.”


16. quae pars ... ea, “that part which.” Not infrequently the antecedent is thus expressed in the relative clause instead of the principal clause, and the relative clause then precedes the antecedent.

populō: the compound infereō governs the indirect object.
Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Qua in rē Caesar nōn sōlum públicā sed etiam privātās iniūriās ultās est, quod eius soceri L. Piso nis avum, L. Pisonem légātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō quō Cassium interfecerant.

17. persolvē,-solvere,-solvi,-solvi-
tum, tr. [solvē, pay], pay in full; suffer (punishment). 1.
18. sōlum, adv. [sōlus, alone], only, merely. *
públicus, -a, -um, adj. [pupillus, people], of the state or people, common, public; n. as noun, public, public view; rēs pūblica, common weal, state. *

sed, conj., but, yet but (a stronger adversative than autem or at). *
ulcisceor, ulciscē, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. 3.
19. socer, -erī, m., father-in-law. 1.

20. quà Cassium: the same verb interfererant belongs in the relative clause and in the principal clause.

17. princeps persolvit, "was the first to pay."
19. Note the accumulation of appositives. — Pisonis with soceri, Pisonem with avum, légātum with Pisonem.
soceri: In the year 59 Caesar had married Calpurnia, daughter of the Lucius Calpurnius Piso mentioned in 6, 15 as one of the consuls for the year 58.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Ablative of time
Result clause
Narrative cum clause

Chap. 13. The Helvetii haughtily ask for peace.
6. Divicô, -onis, m., Divico(div'i-kô), an Helvetic chief or chieftain. 2.
7. Cassiânus,-a,-um, adj., of Cassius, see Cassius. 1.
agô, agere, ēgī, āctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (gratīās); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitur, something is at stake. *

6. Divico was an old man, for the battle was fought 49 years before.
7. The rest of this chapter and the whole of the next are in indirect discourse. If the teacher wishes the class, at this point, to make a more detailed study of the construction than is called for by the notes, he will find help in the direct form of these speeches as printed after Book VII.

Remember the important facts already learned,—that in every declarative sentence the principal verb will be an infinitive, and that in every subordinate clause the verb will be a subjunctive. Usually the future infinitive shows that the speaker used a future indicative, a present infinitive shows that he used a present indicative, and a perfect infinitive shows that he used a past tense of the indicative. But note that not every infinitive stands for an indicative in the direct form; for all infinitives in the direct form are retained unchanged in the indirect. Note that every subjunctive follows the rule of sequence of tenses: App. 202; 203: G.-L. 506; 510; 511: A. 483, 1, 2; 483: B. 265, B; 267, 1, 2, 3: H.-B. 476, foot-note 2: H. 198; 543; 544; 545.

si, conj., if however, but if. 1.
10. persequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. 2.
persevērō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. 1.
remīnisciōr, -i, intr. [memō, mind], call to mind, remember. 1.
11. vetus, -eris, adj., old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. * incommodum, -i, n. [incommodus,}

\[\text{si . . . faceret. "if . . . should make." Only the sense of the passage shows that faceret stands for an original future rather than a present, and for an indicative rather than a subjunctive.} \]

9. Helvētīōs is the subject of itūrōs and futūrōs.

Oēs is the subject of esse.
ubi cōnstituīssēt, "where he should have decided" or "where he decided." The pluperfect can stand equally well for the perfect, the pluperfect, or the future perfect; but the Helvetii do not promise to return to their own country, and Caesar had not yet decided to settle them anywhere else; therefore cōn-

stituīssēt must stand for a future perfect, a tense rarely used in English.

10. perseverārēt stands for a future, like faceret, 1. 8.
remīniscerētūr, "he should remember." Since this is a principal clause the use of the subjunctive shows that the sentence is not declarative. App. 267: G.-L. 653: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 642.

11. et . . . et, "both . . . and."
inconmodi: i.e. the defeat of Cassius: case? App. 107: G.-L. 376: A.
virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī qui flūmen trānsīrent suis auxilium fēre nōn possebant, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribuerent aut ipsōs dēspicerent; sē ita ā patribus maiōribusque suīs didicisse ut magnis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut insidiis nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus ubi cōnstitissent.

inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble; disaster, defeat, loss, injury. 1.

prōstinus, -a, -um, adj. [for prōstenus, from prior, former], former, original; previous, preceding. 4.

12. imprōvisō, adv. (imprōvisus, unforeseen), unexpectedly, without warning. 1.

adorīor, -orīri, -ortus sum, tr. [orīri, arise], rise against, assail, attack. *

13. fērō, fērre, tullī, lātum (App. S1), tr. and intr.; tr., bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report, give, render (aid); offer, propose (terms); graviter or molestē fēre, be annoyed or angry at; pass. (sometimes) rush: intr. almost = verb to be. *

14. magnopere, adv. [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. * tribuō, tribuere, tribui, tribūtum, tr. [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of render. 2.

15. dēspicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [spectō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. 2.

maior, maius, adj. [comp. of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder: as noun, maiōrēs nātū, elders, old men; maiōrēs, ancestors. *

16. discō, discere, didici,-, -tr. and intr., learn, be taught. 1.

dolus, -ī, m., craft, trick, treachery. 2.

insidiae, -arum, f. pl. [sedēō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. *

17. nītor, nīti, nīxus sum, intr. rest or rely upon; exert one’s self, strive, endeavor. 1.

quārē, adv. [quī, which + rēs, thing], (1) interrog., why? wherefore? (2) rel., wherefore; on this account, therefore. *

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīssum, tr. [mittō, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; proelium committere, join or begin battle. *

consistō, -sistere, -stītī, -tr., intr. [sistō, stand], take a stand or position, keep one’s position, stand, form (of soldiers); stop, halt, remain, stay; (of ships) ride at anchor; consist in, depend or rest on. *


12. quod adortus esset, “as to the fact that he had attacked.”

14. nē suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret, lit., “he should not greatly ascribe to his own prowess” = “he should not overrate his own prowess.” For mode cf. remintēscēreōtur, 1. 10.

15. ipsōs, sē: i.e. the Helvetii.

16. ut contenderent: a result-clause. magis quam, “rather than.”


17. The meaning of the last sentence is, “Do not let the spot on which we stand become famous as the scene of your bloody defeat.”

cōnstitissent stands for a perfect in-
ex calamitate populi Rōmānī et internecione exercitus nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

14. His Caesar ita respondit: Ēō sibi minus dubitātiōnis dari, quod ēas rēs quās lēgātī Helvētīīi commemorāssent memoria tenēret, atque ēō gravīus ferre quō minus merītō populi Rōmānī accidissent: quī si alicuīs iniūriae sībī cōnciōs fuisset, nōn fuīsse difficīle cavēre; sed ēō déceptum, quod 5

dicative: "where they had taken their stand" for "where we have taken our stand."

Third Reference:
Substantive clause of result or fact

Chap. 14. Caesar proposes terms, which the Helvetii refuse.

1. his: i.e. the envoys.
ēō is an ablative of cause, explained by the causal clause quod . . . tenēret.
minus dubitātiōnis, "less hesitation." dubitātiōnis: partitive genitive.

2. ēas rēs: i.e. the defeat of Cassius.


4. qui sī, "now if they." Caesar uses the singular in referring to the collective noun popūlus, but English prefers the plural.
sībī, lit. conscious "to themselves," should not be expressed in translating.
5. nōn fuīsse difficīle, "it would not have been difficult."
ēō, is an ablative of cause, explained by the clause quod . . . pulēret.
déceptum: sc. popūlus Rōmānum . . .
neque commissum sué intellegent quær timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod si veteris contumēliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod
Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dépōnere posse? Quod suā victoriā tam insolenter gloriārentur, quōdque
tam diū sē impūne iniūriās intulisse admirārentur, eōdem

dsē inter, -ēre, -uī, —, tr. and intr., fear, be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timēre, have no fear. *
7. contumēlia, -ae, f., aftrent, indignity, insult; injury, violence. 3.
 obliviscor, oblivisci, oblivītus sum, intr. [oblivō, forgetfulness], forget. 1.
num, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. 1.
recēns, -entis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. 3.
temptō, 1. tr., make an attempt upon, try to gain possession of, attack; try, test; try to win over. 4.
vexō, 1. tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. 3.

commision (sc. quiequam . . . esset), “that anything had been done.”
ā sē, “by them”; i.e. the Roman people.
quær timēret, “because of which they should be afraid.” For mode see App. 230, c: G.-L. 631, 2: H.-B. 513, 2.
timēdum, lit. “that it must be feared” = “that they need fear”: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1:
A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 162: H. 237.
quod si, “but if.”
velist: the subject is still populus Rōmānus.
um possē, “they could not, could they,” or simply “could they.” This is a principal verb, but not in a declarative sentence. For mode see App. 268, II:
dēpōnē, -pōnerae, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. 3.
textā, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory. *
tam, adv., so, so very. *
insolenter, adv. [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. 1.
glorior, i, intr. [gloria, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. 1.
diū, adv., for a long time, long; quam diū, as long as; comp., diūtiōs, longer, too long, any longer; sup., diū-
tissimē, for the longest time. *
impūne, adv. [im-+poena, punishment], without punishment. 1.
admirō, 1. tr. [miror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. 1.
quod, “the fact that.” These are substantive quod clauses, in apposition with iurīrārum. In direct discourse such clauses employ the indicative: App. 248: G.-L. 524: 525, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a; H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.
sō=populi Rōmānō.

injurīrārum depends on memoriam:
11. quod . . . admirārenturare substantive quod clauses, subjects of pertinēre.
victoriā: i.e. the defeat of Cassius. For case see App. 138: G.-L. 408: A. 404:
sō intulisse, “that they [the Helvetii] had inflicted.”
sōdem pertinēre,”tended to the same result.”
13. consueşco, -suéscare, -suévī, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become used],
    become accustomed; pf. (App. 193, I, a),
    be accustomed, be wont; consuetūs,
    pf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual,
    wonted. *
    enim, conj., in fact, really; for; sed
    enim, but in fact, however. *
14. commūtātiō, -ōnis, f. [commūtō, change], a changing, change. 2.
    dolēō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed
    or annoyed, grieve. 2.
    acelus, -eris, n., crime, wickedness. 1.
15. secundus, -a, -um, adj. [sequor, follow],
    following, next, second; favorable,
    successful, prosperous; secundō
    flūmine, down the river. *

15. secundiōrēs rēs, "a considerable degree of prosperity"; diūturniōrem,
    "quite long." The comparative may
    often be rendered by such words as
    "too," "rather," "quite," all of which
    imply comparison with some unex-
    pressed standard.
16. concēdere depends on consueşse.
    cum sint, by itself, might be either
    causai or adversative. Notice that the
    tamen which follows shows which it is:
    App. 239: G.-L. 587: A. 549: B. 309, 3:
    H.-B. 526: H. 598.
17. ab iis: case? App. 137: G.-L. 401:
    factūrēs: sc. dē ... esse.
18. sī Haedūis: sc. satisfaciant.
    ipsīs: i.e. the Haeduī.
19. sēsē: i.e. Caesar.

pertinēre. Consuēsse enim deōs immor-tālēs, quō gravius
hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum dolēant, quōs prō scelere
eōrum ulciāci velint, his secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturnī-
ōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī
obsidēs ab iis sibi dentur, utī ea quae policieantur factūrōs
intellegat, et sī Haedūis dē iniuriis quās ipsīs sociisqui eōrum
intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iis pācem
esse factūrum. Diviciō respondit: Ita Helvetiōs à maiōribus 20
suis institūtōs esse uti obsidēs accipere, non dare, consuērint;
interdum, adv. [dum, while], in the
meantime; at times, sometimes. 2.
    diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū, long],
    long. 1.
    16. impūnitās, -tātis, f. [in-]
    poena, punishment], impuity, freedom
    from punishment. 1.
    17. polliceor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō-
    liceor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer,
    promise, pledge. *
    19. satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -fac-
    tum, intr. [satis, enough + facīō, make],
    make or do enough for; give satisfac-
    tion, satisfy; make amends, apologize,
    ask pardon. 2.
    21. instituō, -stituere, -stitul,
    -stitutum, tr. and intr. [statuō, set up],
15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Ĥaeduis atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit qui videant quās in partēs hostēs īter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen īnsectūt āliēnō locō set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; institutus, pī. part. as adj., usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. * accipīō,-cipere,-cēpi,-cēptum, tr. [ad+capīō, take], take or receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. *

22. testis,-is, m. and f., witness. 2. respondōnum, -ī, m. [respondēō, answer], reply, answer. 2.

23. discēdō,-cēdere,-cessi,-cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, retire; leave [especially with ab or ex]. *

1. posterus,-a,-um, adj.[post,after], after, following, next; in m. pī. as noun, posterity; sup., postrēmus or postumus, last. *

moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. *

2. equitātus, -ās, m. [equītō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. *

3. praemittō,-mittere,-mēsit,-mēsūm, tr. [mittō, send], send before or in advance. *

5. cupidē, adv. [cupīdus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. 2.

agmen,-ānis, n. [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extrēmum agmen, the rear. *

īnsequor,-sequi,-sectātus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow close upon, pursue. *

āliēnus,-a,-um, adj. [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; aes āliēnum, debt; āliēnissimi, entire strangers. 4.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Objective genitive
Ablative of agent
Ablative of cause
Ablative of degree of difference
Adversative cum clause

Chap. 15. The Helvetii march on, followed by Caesar. His cavalry are defeated.

1. castra movent, "march on." The map facing p. 42 shows the route followed by the Helvetii. They could not march due west toward the Santones because the country is too mountainous. They therefore marched north, then northwest, intending to reach the Liger (Loire) and march down its valley.

2. equitātum: see Int. 48.


4. qui videant: a purpose clause, qui is plural, agreeing with the collective noun equitātum.

quās . . . faciant, "in what direction the enemy were marching." faciant: mode? App. 385: G.-L. 467: A. 573; 574: B. 800, 1, c: H.-B. 584, 2, III; 537, b: H. 649, II.

5. cupidius: cf. note on 14, 15.

cum equitâ Helvëtiârum proelium committunt; et pauci dé nostris cadunt. Quô proelîô sūblåti Helvëtiû, quod quingentîs equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audácius subsistere nôn numquam et novissîmô agmine proelîô nostrîs lacessere coepërunt. Caesar suós à proeliiô continêbat ac satis 10 habîbat in praesentiâ hostem râpinîs, pâbulâtiônibus, popûlâtîônibusque prohibère. Ita diès circiter quîndecim iter fècërunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum

6. pauci, -ae, -a, adj. (used rarely in sing.), few; as noun, few persons or things. *
7. cadô, cadere, cecidî, cásûm, intr., fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 3. quingenti, -ae, -a (D), card. num. adj. [quinque, five + centum, hundred], five hundred. 3.
8. eques, -itâs, m. [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the Senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). *

tantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; quantô ... tantô, with comparativeds, see quantô. *
prôpellô, -pellerâ, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [pellô, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. 2. audâciter, adv. [audâx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., audâcius; sup., audâciâssîmô. *
9. subsistô, - sistere, - sisti, —, intr. [sístô, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. 1.
10. lacessô, -ere, -ivrî, -itum, tr., arouse, harâss, provoke, irritate, attack. *
coepi, coepíssse (App. 86 and 3), tr., began, commenced, undertook; coepîtus, pf. part., begun, commenced. *
11. praesentia, -ae, f. [praesêne; praesum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praesentiâ, for the present; then. 1.
râpîna, -ae, f. [râpiô, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. 1.
pâbulâtîô, -ônis, f. [pâbulôr, forage], getting fodder, foraging. 1.
populâtîô, -ônis, f. [popûlar, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. 1.
12. circiter, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. *
quîndecim (XV), card. num. adj., indict. [quinque, five + decem, ten], fifteen. *

6. pauci dé nostris, "a few of our men." The rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnórîx, as Caesar afterwards learned.
9. novissîmô ... lacessere, "to challenge our men to battle with their rearguard." Both agmine and proelîô are ablatives of means.
10. satis habîbat ... prohibère, "considered it sufficient ... to keep." Caesar had never before commanded a large army or met so strong an enemy. His army was outnumbered by an enemy whom the Romans had long dreaded. Defeat meant the total destruction of his army. Nothing was lost by postponing the battle. Therefore he wisely decided to wait until he could choose his own time and place.
12. ita uti, "in such a way that," introduces a result clause.
primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum

15. interim cotidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum quod essent
publice polliciti flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia
sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo
frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed nec pabuli quidem satis

d publicly, in the name of the state, on behalf of the state.
1. "flagitae, 1. tr., demand.
2. frigura, -oris, n., cold weather, cold;
pt., frigora, cold seasons.
3. ponere, ponere, poenae, positum,
tr., place, put, place over; lay down, set
aside; station, post; regard, consider;
make, build; with castra, pitch; past,
be situated; with in and abl., depend on,
in addition to above meanings.
2. modo, adv. [modus, measure], with
measure or limit; only, merely; even,
just, at least, but; of time, just now,
recently; non modo . . . sed etiam, not
only . . . but also.
4. maturus, -a, -um, adj., ripe;
early.
5. pabulum, -i, n. [cf. pasco, feed], fodder,
provender.
6. quidem, adv., indeed, at any rate, at

14. primum: sc. agmen.
amplus is the subject of interest.
quinis aut senis, "five or six [each
day]."
milibus: case? App. 139: G.-L. 398:

Third Reference:
Ablative of place:

Chap. 16-20. Caesar learns that
Dumnorix is treacherously thwarting
his plans, but pardons him.

Chap. 16. The Haedui fail to fur
nish supplies to Caesar.
1. interim: i.e. during the fifteen
days of marching.
Haeduos frumentum: for the two ob
jects see App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, a: A. 396:
B. 178, 1, a: H.-B. 393, footnote: H. 411.
quod essent polliciti, "which [as he
said] they had promised." This subor-
dinate clause employs the subjunctive
to imply that Caesar made the statement
in demanding the grain. It is indirect
discourse; but, because there is no verb
of saying and the clause does not depend
on an accusative and infinitive, it is
called "implied indirect discourse":
H.-B. 535, 1, a: H. 649, 1.
2. flagitare = flagitabat. Note that
its subject is a nominative. See App.
281: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B. 335: H.-B. 556:
H. 601.
3. sub septentrionibus, lit. "under
the northern stars" = "toward the
north."
4. frumenta: the plural means grain
standing in the fields.
matura non erant: it was now late
in June.
pabuli: for the cavalry horses and
magna copia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine s
Ararī nāvibus subvexerat propertea utī minus poterat, quod iter
ab Ararī Helvētii āverterant, ā quibus discēdēre nōlēbat.
Diem ex diē dūcere Haedui; conferrī, comportāri, adesse
dicere. Ubi sē diūtius dūci intellexit et diem instāre quō diē
frūmentum militibus mētīri oportēret, convocātīs eōrum 10
principibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat, in
his Diviciācō et Liscō, qui summō magistratū praerat, quem

least, truly; on the other hand; nē... quidem, not even. *

6. subvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], bring or carry
up; convey. 1.

7. āvertō,-vertere,-vertī,-versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away from or
away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. *
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, — (App. 82), tr. and intr. [nec-+volō, wish], not wish,
be unwilling; refuse: imp. nōlī or
nōlite, with inf. (App. 219), do not. *

8. conferrō, conferrere, contuli, collatū-,
tum, tr. [ferō, bring. App. 81], bring or
gather, crowd together; ascribe to; put
off, defer; compare; sē conferrē, be-
take one's self, take refuge. *

comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry
together, collect, bring. *

adsum, adesse, aṣfūl, intr. [sum, be.
App. 77], be near or present, be at hand,
appear. 3.

9. instō,-stāre,-stīti,-stātum, intr.
[stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at
hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētior, mētīri, mēnēs sum, tr.,
deal or measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call to-
gether, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (lis'kūs), a
chief magistrate of the Haedui. 4.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of supe-

pack animals. The cattle of the Hel-
vetii had swept the country clean.

5. frūmentō utī: case? App. 145:
G.-L. 407: A. 410; B. 218, 1: H.-B. 429: H.
477.

flūmine: case? App. 144: G.-L. 389:

6. nāvibus, "in ships," is an ablative
of means.

iter āverterant: see map facing p.

42.

8. diem: accusative of duration of
time.

dūcere, "put him off," is an historical
infinitive.

cōnferri, comportāri, adesse (sc.
frūmentum) are the objects of the his-
torical infinitive dicere.

9. ubi intellexit: mode? App. 237:
G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 257, 1: H.-B. 554; 557:
H. 602.

off, defer; compare; sē conferrē, be-
take one's self, take refuge. *

comportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry
together, collect, bring. *

adsum, adesse, aṣfūl, intr. [sum, be.
App. 77], be near or present, be at hand,
appear. 3.

9. instō,-stāre,-stīti,-stātum, intr.
[stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at
hand, press on; threaten. 4.

10. mētior, mētīri, mēnēs sum, tr.,
deal or measure out, distribute. 2.

convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call to-
gether, summon, assemble. 4.

12. Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (lis'kūs), a
chief magistrate of the Haedui. 4.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of supe-

sē diūtius dūci, "that he was being
put off too long."

quo diē, "on which." Cf. 6, 1.

10. frūmentum mētīri oportēret,
lit. "for him to measure out grain was
right"="he had to distribute grain."

This was done twice a month. oportē-
ret: subordinate clause in indirect dis-
course. Its subject is frūmentum
mētīri.

convocātīs principibus, "summon-
ning," etc. Remember that the ablative
absolute must not be translated literal-
ly.

12. Diviciācō et Liscō: in appositi-
on with principibus.

summō... praerat, "held the high-
est office."

quam vergobretum: for the two ob-
jects see App. 126: G.-L. 310; A. 393:
B. 177, 1: H.-B. 392, a: H. 410, 1.
17. **Tum dēmum Liscus orātiōne Caesaris adductus quod**

14. **in suōs, “over his fellow-citizens.”**

15. **proposuī, -esse, -ful, intr. [sum, be.**

16. **propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand:**

17. **praesertim, adv., particularly, especially.**

18. **tempore**

**CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, I, 17**

vergobretum appellant Haeduĩ, qui creātur annuns et vitā necisque in suós habet potestātem, graviter eós accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquus hostibus, ab īs nōn sublevātur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravīus quod sit déstitūtus queritur.

17. With *praesertim*, *cum* is almost always causal.

magnā ex parte, “in great part.”

18. **quad sīt dēstitūtus:** cf. 1. 14.

**THIRD REFERENCES:**

Ablative of the way (route)

Ablative with ītūr, etc.

Chap. 17. Liscus tells Caesar that a powerful faction among the Haeduĩ is working against the Romans.

), Supply *id* as the antecedent of *quod* and the object of *prōponēt.*
2. anteā, adv. [ante, before + sā, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. 2.

taceō, 2, tr. and intr., be silent; keep silent, pass over in silence; tacitus, pf. part. as adj., silent. 3.

propōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place or put forward, present, offer; relate, tell of, explain; propose, purpose; expose. *

3. valeō, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence, or strength; plūrimum valēre, be very powerful. *

privātim, adv. [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 1.

4. sēditīōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sēdiō, sedit, seditious, mutinous]. 1.

improbās, -a, -um, adj. [in- + probus, good], unprincipled. 1.

dēterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. 3.

perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. *

dubitō, 1, intr. [dubius, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. *

superō, 1, tr. and intr. [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; vita superāre, survive. *

libertas, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. *

2. The direct form of the indirect discourse in this and the following chapters will be found after Book VII.

3. valeat: for tense see note on 14, 14.

quam magistrātus: the ablative without quam might have been used instead of this nominative: App. 139, a: G.-L. 296, R. 1: A. 406; 407: B. 217, 1, 3: H.-B. 416: H. 471, 1.

4. improbā, "reckless."

5. dēterreō né conferant, "were preventing . . . from bringing."

6. praestāre . . . sint ēreptūri, "(saying) that it was better," etc. This is the indirect form of the malcontents' sēditīōsa grātiō. The subject of praestāre is perferre.

si (sc. Haeduı) iam obtinēre non pos-

sint, "if they could no longer hold." The Haeduı claimed the leadership among the Gallic states. See Int. 29.

7. neque (sc. sē) dubitāre, "nor did they doubt"; i.e. they said "we do not doubt."

8. quin Haeduıs sint ēreptūri, "that they would wrest from the Haeduı."


ūnā: the adverb.
10 cōnsilia quaeque in castrīs gerantur hostibus ēnūntiārī. Hōs ā se coērcērī nōn posse; quin etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesār ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē quanto id cum perculō fēcērit, et ob eam causam quam diū potuerit tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc órātiōne Liscī Dumnōrigem, Diviciācī frātrem, dēsignāri sentiēbat; sed, quod plurībus præsentibus ēās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea quae in convenτū dixerat. Dīcit liberius atque audāciō. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliis quaerit; repperit esse vērā: Ipsum esse Dumnōrigem, summa audāciā,

11. coērcēō, 2. tr. [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. 1. necessāriō, adv. [abl. of necessārius, necessary], necessarily, of necessity, unavoidably. *

12. quantūs, -a, -um, adv. [cf. quam, how? as], (1) interrog., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rel., as much as, as; quantum, as adv., as much as, as; quantō ... tantō (with comparatives), the ... the. *

2. dēsignō, 1. tr. [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. 1.

sentīō, sentire, sēnī, sēnīsum, tr., perceive, be aware of, notice; experience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. 4.

3. facēō, 1. tr. [freq. of iacēō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. 2.

CELERIT. adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Comp. celerius; sup. celerrīmē (App. 40). *

10. Supply ea as the antecedent of quae and as one of the subjects of ēnūntiārī.

11. sē: i.e. Liscus, the chief magistrate.

12. coāctus, "under compulsion."

quantō ... fēcērit is an indirect question, the object of intellegere.

Chap. 18. Liscus tells Caesar of the power of Dumnorix, and that he favors the Helvetii.

concilium, -ī, n., gathering, assembly, council. *

dīmittō, -mittere, -miēsī, -mitēsūm, tr. [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss; break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. *

4. retīneō, 2. tr. [re-+teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesīvitum, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask, ask or inquire about. *

sōlūs, -a, -um, gen. sōlius (App. 32). adj., alone, only; the only. *

CONVENTIO, -ūs, m. [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. 1.

5. liberē, adv. [liber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. 1.

sēcrētō, adv. [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. 2.

6. reperiō, reperire, repērī, repertum, tr. [re-+parī, procure], pro-

2. plurībus præsentibus, "when many were present."

4. ex sōlō, "from him in private."

Most verbs of asking may take two accusatives (cf. 16, 1), but the person is more commonly expressed by the ablative with a preposition: App. 125, a: G.-L. 339, u, R. 1: A. 396, a: B. 178, l, a: H.-B. 383, c: H. 411, 3.

6. reperit esse vērā, "he learned that this was the truth"; explained by
magnā apud plēbem propter liberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūręs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretīō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licēri audeat nēmō. His rēbus et suam rem familiāre auxisse et facultātes ad largiendum magnās, comparāsse; magnum numerum equītātus suō sūmpstī semper alere et circum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud
cure; find: find out, discover, ascertain; devise. *
vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vēri similis, likely, probable. 4.
audācia, -ae, f. [audāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 1.
7. liberalitās, -tātis, f. [liber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. 2.
8. portōrium, -rī, n., toll, tariff on imports or exports. 2.
9. vectīgālum, -āli, n. [vectīgālia, tributary], tax, tribute; pt., revenues. 2.
prettium, -tī, n., price. 2.
redīmō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmpītum, tr. [red-, emō, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. 3.
10. liceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). 2.
contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other
the indirect discourse which follows.
ipse esse Dumnorīgum, "that Dumnorix was the very man" or "that it was, in fact, Dumnorix." By putting together what is said of Orgetorix in 4, 5, 6, and the following description of Dumnorix we are able to appreciate the extraordinary power of some of the Gallic nobles.
portōria... redēmpta habēre: instead of collecting the duties and taxes by its own agents, the state farmed
hand; contrā atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. *
audeō, audere, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. *
nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [ne- + homē, man], no man, no one, nobody. *
11. familiāris, -e, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; as noun, intimate friend; res familiāris, personal property, estate. 4.
augō, augère, auxi, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. 3.
largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. 1.
sūmpus, -us, m. [sūmō, spend], expense. 1.
semper, adv., always, ever, continually. 3.
12. alō, alere, alūi, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. 4.

them; i.e. it sold at auction the privilege of collecting them. The successful bidder collected all he could, paid to the state the amount of his bid, and pocketed the difference.
finitimás civitātēs (largiter posse) atque huius potentiae causa
mātrem in Biturigibus hominī illic nōbilissimō ac potentissimō
collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre
et propinquās suās nuptum in aliās civitātēs collocāsse. Favēre
et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affinitātem, ōdissē etiam suō
nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānos, quod eōrum adventū potentia
eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae
atque honōris sit restitūtus. Si quid accidat Rōmānīs, sum-
man in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinēndī venīre; imperīō
populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam
habeat grātia dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō

14. largiter, adv. [large, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse,
to have great influence. 1.
potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful],
power, authority, influence. 2.
15. māter, -tris, /., mother; mātrēs
familiae, matrons. 3.
Biturigēs, -um, m. (Cē), the Bitur-
gei (bitū-ri'ijēz). 1.
ille, adv. [ille, that], in that place,
there. 1.
16. collocā, l, tr. [con+locā, place],
place, set, station; arrange; nuptum
collocāre, to give in marriage. *
uxor, -ōris, /., wife. 3.
soror, -ōris, /., sister. 2.
17. nūbō, nūbere, nūpel, nuptum,
intr., veil one's self for the marriage cer-
emony, marry. 1.
faveō, favēre, favī, faútum, intr.,
favor. 1.
18. cupiō, cupere, cupīvi, cupitum,
tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire;
wish well to, favor. *
affinitās, -tātis, f., alliance by mar-
riage, relationship. 2.
ōdī, ōdissē (App. 86), tr., pf. with
meaning of pres., hate, detest. 2.
dēminū, -minuere, -minū,
-minātum, tr. [minuō, lessen], lessen,
diminish, impair. 1.
antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, be-
fore], former, old, ancient. 2.
honōs, -ōrie, m., honor, regard,
glory, distinction; honorable position,
office. 3.
restituō, -stituere, -stitu-
tum, tr. [re+statuō, set up], set up
again, rebuild, renew, restore. 4.
dēspērō, 1, intr. [spērō, hope],
despair, be hopeless, lack confidence;
dēspērātus, as part., from transitive
meaning, despaired of; as adj., desper-
ate. *

14. causā: see vocabulary.
15. collocāsse: sc. nuptum.
ipsum: i.e. Dumnorix. His wife was
the daughter of Orgetorix: cf. 3, 15.
sorōrem ex mātre, "sister on his
mother's side"; i.e. his half-sister.
17. nuptum: construction? App.295:
G.-L. 435: A. 509: B. 340, l, b: H.-B. 618:
H. 632; 633, 1.
in civitātēs: the accusative implies
"sent them into and caused them to be
married there."

18. Helvētiīs: indirect object with
verbs meaning to favor.
19. nōmine: ablative of cause.
20. dēminūta: sc. sit.
21. si quid: why quid? App. 174:
G.-L. 315: A. 510, c: B. 91, 5: H.-B. 276,1:
H. 186.
summam in spem venire, "he enter-
tained the highest hopes."
22. imperīō, "under the sover-
eignty": case? App. 142, b: G.-L. 399:
B. 221: H.-B. 422, I: H. 474, 1.
Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium fugae factum a Dumnorixe atque eius equitibus (nam equitatu quem auxillió Caesari Haedui miserant Dumnorix praerat); eorum fugá reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

19. Quibus rébus cognitis, cum ad hás suspicţiis certissimae rés accédérent, quod per fines Séquanorum Helvétiös tráduxisset, quod obsidés inter eós dándos cúrásset, quod ea omnia nón modo iniussī sûro et civitātis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsís féccisset, quod á magistratú Haeduorum

25. equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [sques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry.  *adversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of advertē, turn to], turned to or against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō fúmine, up the river; in adversum òs, full in the face.  *

29. perterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], strengthen thoroughly, terrify greatly.  *

1. cognōscō, -noscere, -nōvī, -ni-

25. quod... esset factum, "as to the fact that an unsuccessful cavalry engagement had been fought," etc. = "as to the... engagement which," etc. See 15, 5-7.

paucis ante diebus, lit. "before by a few days"="a few days before." diebus is an ablative of degree of difference, with the adverb ante.


THIRD REFERENCES:
Contracted verb forms
Descriptive ablative

Chap. 19. Caesar consults Diviciacus about the punishment of his brother.

1. cum certissimae rés accédēre-

rent, "since the most clearly proven facts were added." These facts are stated in the following quod clauses, which are in apposition with rés. For tense see App. 202; 203: G.-L. 509; 510; 511: A. 452, 1, 2; 453: B. 266, B; 267: H.-B. 476: H. 198; 543.


3. quod... cúrásset, lit. "that he had taken care of hostages to be given between them"="that he had caused hostages to be exchanged." eōs=Helvétiös et Séquanōs.


4. suē=Caesaris.

5. ipsís: i.e. Caesar and the Haedui.
accusārētur, satis esse causae arbitrabātur quārē in eum aut ipse animadvertet aut civitātem animadvertere iūbēret. His omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Diviciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fīdem, iūstītiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē eius supplicīō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itāque priusquam quicquam cōnārētūr, Diviciācum ad sē vocāri iūbet et, cotidiānīs interpretībus remotīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīcipem Galliæ prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnīs rērum fīdem habēbat, cum eō

7. animadvertē, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. and intr. [animus, mind + ad+vertō, turn], turn the mind to; notice; animadvertē in, punish. 
8. repugnō, i, intr. [re+ponō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. 
9. studium, -di, n. [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire: good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. 
10. ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [ō+grex, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, eminent, remarkable. 
11. īustitia, -ae, f. [Īustus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. 
12. temperantia, -ae, f. [temperō, control one’s self], prudence, self-control. 
13. supplicium, -ci, n. [sub+plīcō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. 
14. offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, tr. [ob+fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; animum offener, hurt the feelings, offend. 
15. vereor, verērī, veritus sum, tr., revere; fear, dread, be afraid of. 
16. priusquam or prius ... quam, conj., sooner than, before; until. 
17. quīscum, quicquam, indef. pron. (App. 62), any; any person or thing. 
18. vocō, i, tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon, invite. 
19. interpērs, -etis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. 
20. removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [re+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw, remotūs, pf. part. as adj., remote, far away. 

6. causae: partitive genitive with satēs, which is used as a noun. 
8. ūnum, "one thing," is explained by its appositive, the clause quod cognōverat. 
9. Note the lack of conjunctions, and cf. the note on 1, 3. 
10. cognōverat, lit. "had learned" = "knew." 
eius: i.e. Dumnorix. 
12. priusquam ... cōnārētūr, "before he ventured on anything." 
13. per ... colloquītur: English order, colloquītur cum eō per, etc. 
14. prīcipēm: not necessarily a chief, but a prominent man. 
colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipse praesente in conciliō Dumnorīgē sint dicta, et ostendit quae separatim quisque dē ēō apud sē dixerit. Petīt atque hortātur ut sine eius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē ēō causā cognitiā statuat, vel civitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Diviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obscurāre coeptī nē quid gravīus in fratrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex ēō plūs quam sē doloris capere, propereā quod, cum ipse grātiā (plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam possēt.

16. colloquor, -loqui, -locatūs sum, intr. [con-+loquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. *
   simul, adv., at once, at the same time, thereupon; simul... simul, both... and, partly... partly; simul atque, as soon as. *
   commonefaciō, -facere, -feciī, -factum, tr. [moneō, remind+faciō, make], remind forcibly. 1.
17. sēpārātīm, adv. [sēpārē, separate], separately, privately. 2.
18. petō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -itum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. *
hortor, 1. tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *
19. offēnsiō-, -ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offense. 1.
   1. lacrima, -ae, f., tear. 2.
   complector, -plectī, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. 1.
   2. obscrō, 1. tr. [sacer, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. 1.
   gravis, -ē, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). *
   sciō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. *
5. adulēscentia, -ae, f. [adulēs-

18. quae sunt dicta, quas dixerit: indirect questions.
   ipso: i.e. Diviciacus.
18. ut... statuat, "that without wounding his [i.e. Diviciacus's] feelings he might either himself [i.e. Caesar] investigate the case and pass sentence on him [i.e. Dumnorix]."

THIRD REFERENCE:
Sequence of tenses

Chap. 20. At the earnest request of Diviciacus Caesar spares Dumnorix, but he takes precautions for the future.

1. complexus: probably clasping Caesar's knees, for this was the ancient attitude of suppliant entreaty.
hortor, 1. tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. *

scīre: the indirect discourse depends on the idea of "saying," which is implied in obscurāre. The direct form is given after Book VII.
3. nec quamquam, "and that no one."
'ēō: i.e. Dumnorix.
capere, "felt."
4. ipse: i.e. Diviciacus. It is the subject of possēt, to be supplied from the next clause.
5. minimum possēt, "had very little influence." Supply cum from the preceding clause.
per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus aec nervis nōn sōlum ad minuendum grātiam, sed paene ad pernicium suām āterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne vulgī commovēri. Quod si quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tōnēret, nēminem existimāturum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex re futūrum utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare peteret, Ĉaesar eīus dextram prēndit; cōnsōlatus rogat finem orāndī façiāt; tantī eīus apud sē grātiam esse ostendit

6. crēsō, crēsere, crēvī, crētum, intr., grow or increase (in size, power, age, etc.), swell. 1.

7. minūō, minuere, minūl, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair; diminish; settle (controver-

siae); minuente aestū, the tide ebbing. 3.

8. amor, -ōris, m. [amō, love], love. 1.

frāternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2.

existimātiō, -onis, f. [existimō, es-
timate], judgment, opinion. 1.

vulgus, -i, m., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. 3.

12. verbūm, -i, n., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. 3.

13. dextra, -ae, f. [dexter, right; ec.

manuēs], the right hand. 1.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēn-
um, tr., seize, grasp. 1.

cōnsōlōr, 1, tr. [sōlor, comfort], cheer, comfort. 1.

14. črō, 1, tr. [ōs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. 3.
utī et rei pūblīcae iniūriam et sumō dolōrem eius voluntāti ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorigem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitās querātur prōpōnit; monēt ut, in reliquum tempus omnēs suspicīōnēs vītēt; praeterīta sē Diviciācō frātri condōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, seīre possit.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīliā passuum ab ipsius castrīs octō, quālis

15. utī condōnet: a result clause. Voluntāti, "out of consideration for his wish," is indirect object of condōnet.


It was tactful of Caesar to make Diviciacus believe that Dumnorix was spared for his sake. In reality, however, Caesar had his hands full with the Helvetīi and could not afford to stir up a revolt of the Haedul in addition—a result which might easily have followed an attempt to punish their most popular noble. A few years later Caesar put Dumnorix to death for obstinate disobedience. See V, 7.

Third references:

Use of the indefinite quis
Dative of reference
Construction with verbs of asking, etc.
Indirect question

Chap. 21-22. The failure of a plan to attack the Helvetīi.

Chap. 21. Caesar plans a double attack on the Helvetīi.

Chapters 16-20 interrupted the narrative of Caesar's pursuit of the Helvetīi. The events of this chapter follow immediately after those narrated in chapter 15.

1. sub monte: the exact location is unknown; it was only a few miles from the battlefield south of Bibracte. See map facing p. 42.

2. milia: accusative of extent of space.

quālis esset: indirect question, object of cognōscērunt.
esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsum qui cognōserent misit. Renūntiātum est facilēm esse. Dē tertīā vīgiliā T. Labiēnum, légātum prō praetōrē, cum duābus legionibus et iīs ducibus qui iter oognōverant summum iūgum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consili sit ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vīgiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, qui rei militāris perītissimus habēbātūr et in exercitū L. Sullaē et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explorātoribus praemittitur.

3. circuitūs, -ūs, m. [circumeō, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. 4. ascēnsum, -ūs, m. [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. 5. praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. 6. dux, ducis, m. [dūcō, lead], leader, guide, commander. 7. ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [ad+scendō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. 9. P., addbr. for Pūblius, a Roman praenomen. 10. militāris, -e, adj. [miles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial; rēs militāris, military matters, warfare, the science of warfare. 11. posteā, adv. [post, after], after this, afterwards. 12. Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lū’shyūs sūl’ā), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. 13. Crassus, -i, m., Marcus Licinius Crassus (mär’kūs lī-sin’i-ūs krās’t-ūs), triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. 14. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter’s statements, as told in the next chapter. 15. rei militāris, “in military matters”: case? App. 106, 204, 1: H.-B. 354, footnote: H. 451, 1, 11. in M. Crassī, “in (that) of Marcus should attack them at the same moment. consili is a possessive genitive, used predicatively. dē quartā vīgiliā: the fourth watch would begin at three A.M. when the nights were twelve hours long. As this was June, the nights were shorter, and the fourth watch began about two. P. Cōnsidius . . . fuerat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of the latter’s statements, as told in the next chapter.
22. Primă lūce, cum. summus mōns a Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castris nōn longius mille et quīngentīs passībus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvis comperit, aut ipsis adventus aut Labiēniō cognitus esset, Considius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem a Labiēnō occupāri 5 voluerit ab hostibus  tēnēri; id sē a Gallicīs armīs atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subducit, aciēm instruct. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum 1

1. lux, lūcis, f., light, daylight; primā lūce, at daybreak. 3  
2. captivus, -i, m. [capīō, take], captive, prisoner. 4  
3. comperīō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, tr. [parīō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. ∗  
4. equus, -ī, m., horse. ∗  
admittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). 3  
5. accurrō, -currere, -currι or -currūrī, -currum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. 2  
6. Gallicus, -a, -um, adj. [Gallia, Gaul], pertaining to Gaul or the Gauls, Gallic. ∗  
7. collis, -is, m., hill. ∗

Crassus." In such cases the word for "that" is never expressed in Latin.

Third Reference:  
Genitive with adjectives

Chap. 22. Caesar’s plan is frustrated by a mistake of Considius.  
1. summus mōns, "the top of the mountain." For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun followed by a genitive, see App. 160: G.-L. 291, R. 2: A. 299: B. 241, 1: H.-B. 244: H. 497, 4.

2. ipse: i.e. Caesar.


3. ut, "as."  
4. Labiēnī, "that of Labienus." See on 21, 11.

S. subducēō, -ducere, -düxi, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with nāvēs, haul up, beach. 3  
acīēs, -ēī (old gen., acēs), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van; media, the center; novissima, the rear. ∗  
instrō, -struere, -strúxi, -struc-tum, tr. [struō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. ∗  
praecipiō, -cipere, -cepī, -ceptum, tr. [capīō, take], take or obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. 1.

cognitus esset: the force of cum still continues.

equō admissō, "at full gallop."

7. Insignibus: the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc. See Plate II, 5-8.

S. aciem instruct: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him.

Caesare nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsius cōpiae propī
hostium castra visae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs
impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proelīōque
abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit
et montem a suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Con-
sidium (timōre perterritum) quod nōn vidisset prō visō sībi
renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō consēuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur
et mīliā passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

23. Postrīdiē eius diēi, quod omnīnō biduum superērat
cum exercitui frūmentum mētiri oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte,

9. nisi, conj. [ne- + sī, if], if not, except, unless. *
prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost, nearly; recently. *
11. impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *
12. abstīneō, -tīnērō, -tīnui, -ten-
tum, intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. 1.
dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon, finally, at last; at least. 3.
14. timor, -ōris, m. [tempōs, fear], fear, alarm, dread. *

15. intervāllum, -i.n. [vāllus, pal-
isade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. *
1. postrīdiē, adv. [posterus, following+diēs, day], on the day following, the next day; postrīdiē eius diēi, on the next or following day. *
biduum, -i.n. [bis, twice+diēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. 2.
supersum, -asse, -sui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be over or above; be left, remain, survive. *
2. Bibracte, -is.n. (Cf), Bibracte (bī-
brāk'tē), the chief town of the Haedui. 2.

9. nē committeret: a substantive volitive (or purpose) clause, subject of
erat praecptum.
nisi visae essent: mode? App. 273:
G.-L. 662; 663, 2; A. 592, 1: B. 333: H.-B.
536, a: H. 649, I. The pluperfect stands
for an original future perfect.
ipsus=Caesaris.
10. ut fieret: a purpose clause.
11. proelīō: ablative of separation.
12. multō diē, “late in the day.”
14. timōre perterritum, “panic-
stricken.” This was probably due in
part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic
prowess that prevailed in the Roman
army.
quod ... renūntiāvisse, “had re-
ported to him what he had not seen as if
seen.” visō is a participle used as a
noun.

15. quō ... intervāllō=ō intervāl-
lō quō sequi cōnsēuērat. For case see App.
142; b: G.-L. 399: A. 412: B. 221: H.-B.
422, i: H. 473, 3. According to 15, 14, the
distance was five or six miles.

Third Reference:
Ablative of comparison

Chap. 23-29. Caesar defeats the
Helvetii in a great battle and forces
the survivors to return home.
Chap. 23. Caesar marches toward
Bibracte to secure grain, and is fol-
lowed by the Helvetii.

2. cum ... oportēret, “(before the
time) when he would have to distribute
grain to the army.” See on 16, 10. The
peculiar cum clause is best explained by
H.-B. 509.
Bibracte: now Mont Beuvray, twelve
miles west ofAutun.
oppidō Haeduorum longē maximō et copiosisissimō, nōn amplius milibus passuum XVIII abaret, reī frumentāriae prōspiciendum existimāvit; itaque iter ab Helvētiis avertit ac Bibracte iē contendit. Ea rēs per fūgitīvōs L. Aemili, decurēonis equītum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiatūr. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterrītōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē existimārent, eō (magis) quod prīdē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn com-mississent, sīve eō, quod rē frumentāria interclūdi posse cōn-fiderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine insequī ac laceressere coepercūnt.

3. copiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cópiā, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. 1.
4. duodevīginti (XVIII), card. num. adj. [duo, two+ē, from+vīgintī, twenty], eighteen. 4.
prōspiciō, -spicerā, -spexī, -spectum, intr. [spectō, look], look forward; look to beforehand, see to, provide for, take care. 1.
6. fugītivus, -a, -um, adj. [fugīō, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. 1.
decurīō, -ōnis, m. [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a de-curia, a squad of ten. 1.

4. milibus: ablative of comparison. reī...prōspiciendum, "that he must look out for supplies." Evidently his vigorous talk to Dumnorix and the rest of the chiefs, two days before, had as yet produced no results. prōspici-endum: construction? App. 285, II, a: G.-L. 251, 1: A. 194, b: B. 337, 7, b, 1: H.-B. 600, 3; 163: H. 237.

5. itaques...contendit: he was south and a little east of Bibracte. The plan on p. 104 shows that the Helvetii were marching northwest, and that the more northerly route taken by Caesar was almost parallel, for some distance, with the route of the Helvetii. This explains the fact that the Helvetii were able to overtake Caesar's army.

9. prīdē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. 3.
10. interclūdē, -clūdēs, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. *
cōnfidō, -fidēre, -fīsus sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; cōnfīsus, pf. part. with present meaning, relying on. *
11. commūtā, 1. tr. [mūtō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. 2.
convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-sum, tr. and intr. [vertō, turn], turn
eō magis quod, "all the more because." eō is an ablative of cause.
9. quod...commississent: the Helvetii did not understand the reason for the failure of Caesar and Labienus to attack them on the previous day.
10. sīve sē, "or for this reason." interclūdī posse, "that (the Romans) could be cut off"; i.e. by being prevented from reaching Bibracte.
11. commūtātō cōnsiliō: if the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature
24. Postquam id animadvertit, cópiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque qui sustinēret hostium

completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; signa convertere, face about. *

1. postquam, conj. [post, afterwards]

+quam, than], after, as soon as. 4.

2. sustineō, 2, tr. and intr. [su(b)s+ teneō], hold, hold up from below; hold

BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. First stage, Chap. 24-25, 10.

a. Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b. Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c. Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
d. Roman fortification (24, 9).
e. The Helvetii.f. The Romans.

of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

à novissimō agmine, “on the rear.” See on 1, 15.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Accusative of place to which
Implied indirect discourse
Passive periphrastic conjugation


2. qui ... sustinēret: i.e. to check the skirmishers of the enemy and give Caesar time to form his lines. The cavalry was not expected to meet the main attack.
impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem
instruxit legionum quattuor veterānārum; in summō iugō
duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscripserat et s
omnia auxilia collocāri, ac tōtūm montem hominibus cōmplēri,
et intereā sarcīnas in ūnum locum cōnferri, et eum ab iīs quī
in superiōre aciē cōnsūterant mūnīrī iussit. Helvētīī cum
omnibus suis carrīs secūti impedimenta in ūnum locum
contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū, phalanget factā sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

3. in colle mediō, “half-way up the hill.” For the meaning of
of the Romans see Int. 55, 56.

4. legiōnum quattuor veterānā-
were the one which Caesar found in Transalpine Gaul (cf. 7, 5), and the
three which he brought from their quarters near Aquileia (cf. 10, 9).

5. quās ... cōnscripserat: cf. 10, 8.

6. auxilia: Caesar never expected
much of his Gallic infantry. See Int. 47.

7. sarcīnas: see Int. 37.

8. mūnīrī, 4, tr., defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect; mānitus, pf. part.
as adj., fortified, defended, protected. *

9. impedimentum, -i, n. [impediō,
hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage, luggage (of an army),
back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. 4.

10. cōnfertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part.
of cōnferciō, crowd together], dense,
thick, compact. 4.

11. phalanx, -ngis, f., a compact
body of troops, phalanx. 4.

12. succēdō, -cedere, -cessi, -cessum,
intr. [sub+cedō, go], go or come under;

collocāri, complēri, cōnferri, mū-
nīrī: all depend on iussit.

13. iis ... cōnsūterant: i.e. the two new
legions.

14. mūnīrī: the location of the battle-
field was long uncertain, but in 1886 ex-
cavations were made on one of the pro-
posed locations, and evidences of a semi-
circular wall and ditch were found on the
top of a hill, as indicated in the plan,
p. 104. Three years later nine trenches
were found in which the dead had been
buried.

15. ūnum locum: marked o on the
plan. Bits of Gallic pottery have been
found there.

16. phalanx: in the phalanx for-

come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *
1. prīnum, adv. [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place, for the first time; cum prīnum, or ubi prīnum, as soon as; quam prīnum, as soon as possible, very soon. *
   deinde, adv. [dē + inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. *
2. aequō, 1. tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. 1.
3. cohōtor, 1. tr. [co + horātor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. *
4. pilum, -ī, n., heavy javelin, pike. *
   perforīgō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāc-

tum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. 1.
   disiciō, -i-cre, -iēci, -īcērum, 1. tr. [faciō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. 2.
5. gladius, -di, m. sword. *
   dēstringō, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladius). 1.
6. pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight, battle, contest; genus pugnae, method of fighting. *
   scūtum, -ī, n., shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2¼ × 4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. *
7. ictus, -ús, m., stroke, blow. 1.
   trānsfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr.

formation the soldiers overlapped their shields, shingle fashion, so as to make an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally. If the phalanx remained unbroken, it could break the opposing line by sheer weight; but if it broke, the men were too closely packed to use their weapons effectively.

Chap. 25. The Helvetii fight bravely, but are forced to retreat.

1. suō: sc. equō remōtō.
omnium: i.e. of the higher officers, not of the cavalry. Caesar wished in part to encourage his men by showing that the officers shared their danger, and in part to prevent some timid tribune from setting an example of flight. See Int. 41.

2. aequátō perículō, “by making the danger equal.”
3. cohōtātus suōs: Caesar was a skillful orator (see Int. 22), and usually encouraged his men before battle by a short speech.
4. pilis: see Int. 36, a.
5. gladiis: see Int. 36, b.
5. quod ... poterant is the subject of erat. For mode see App. 348: G.-L. 594; 595, 1: A. 572: B. 299, 1, a: H.-B. 552, 1: H. 588, II, 3.
plūribus ... colligātīs: remember that the shields overlapped.
neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commodè pugnare poterant, multit ut diu iactató bracchiò praecoptarent scútim manū emittere et nūdō corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus 10 défessi et pedem referre et quod môns suberat circiter mille passuum spatió, eò sè recipere coepérunt. Captò monte et succédentibus nostris, Bōii et Tulingī, qui hominum mìlibus

[figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfix. 1.
colligō, 1, tr. [con-+figō, bind], bind or fasten together. 1.
ferrum, -i, n., iron, steel; anything made of iron, sword, spear-point. 1.
inflectō, -fecter, -fecti, -fectum, tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with reflex., become bent. 2.
8. évellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr. [vellō, pluck], pluck out, pull out. 1.
sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left hand; sub sinistra, on the left. 4.
commodē, adv. [commodus, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. *
pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, contend; strive; often imper., as pugnātur, it is fought, i.e. they fight. *
9. bracchium, -chi, n., the arm, forearm. 1.
praecoptē, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. 1.
10. manus, -us, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-hook;

8. évellere: supply pilae as the object. sinistō: the shield was held with the left hand.
9. multit is put before ut for emphasis.
iactātō bracchiō, “after throwing their arms about,” in the effort to shake out the javelins, and so tear the shields apart.
11. môns . . . spatiō, lit. “a moun-
dare manūs, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. *
emittē, -mittere, -misē, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. 2.
nūdus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. 1.
corpus, -oris, n., body; person; a (dead) body. *
tandum, adj., at last, at length, finally; in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as quid tandem, what, pray? what then? 3.

vulnus, -eris, n., a wound. *
11. défessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of défestiscor, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. 3.
referō, referra, rettuli, relātum, tr. [re-+ferō, bear. App. 81], bear, carry, or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātium referre, show one’s gratitude, make a requital. *
subsum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], he under or below; he near or close at hand. 2.
12. eō, adv. [old dative of is], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). *
tain was near at hand, (separated) by a distance of about a mile” = “there was a mountain about a mile away.” passum: case? App. 100: G.-L. 365, 2: A. 345, b: B. 203, 2: H.-B. 355: H. 440, 3.
spatiō: ablative of degree of difference.
12. eō: the adverb.
captō monte, “when they had reached the mountain.”
13. qui . . . claudēbant: they had formed the van of the Helvetic army, and became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They had proba-
circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre,

14. claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. 4.
15. latus,-eris,-a,-onis, side; wing or flank of an army. *

apertus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of aperiō], open, exposed; ab latere apertō, on the unprotected flank. *
circumvenīō, -venire, -vēni, -venītum, tr. [venīō, come], come or get

BATTLE WITH THE HELVETII. Second stage, Chap. 25, 10, through Chap. 26.

a, Camp of the Romans on the night before the battle.
b, Camp of the Helvetii on the night before the battle.
c, Wagons of the Helvetii during the battle (24, 9).
d, Roman fortification (24, 8).
e, The Helvetii.
f, The Romans.
g, The Boii and Tulingi.

bly been separated from the Helvetii by a wagon train, which they had been obliged to pass on the road. This accounts for their coming up so late in the battle.

15. ex itinere: i.e. they went straight from their march into the battle, without a halt.

ab latere apertō: i.e. the right flank, for their shields protected the soldiers' left sides. The plan shows that the left flank was the nearer to the Boii and
et id conspicati Helvētii, qui in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt: prima et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac submótiī resistēret; tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipiti proelīō diū atque àcriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēperunt, alterī ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proelīō, cum ab

around, surround, cut off, beset; betray, defraud. *

16. conspicor, 1. tr. [specīō, look], observe, descry, perceive. 3.

17. rūrsus, adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. *

redintegrō, 1. tr. [red→integre, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

18. signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discedere, withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa conversa inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertere, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. *

Tulingi, but they came up in the rear, trying to work their way around (circumvenire) to the more advantageous position. circumvenire depends on coeperunt, to be supplied from 1. 17.

18. conversa... intulērunt, lit. "carried forward in two directions their turned standards" = "faced about and advanced in two directions." In reality only the third line faced about. signa: see Int. 44.

prima et secunda aciēs; tertia (sc. aciēs): in apposition with Rōmānī.

19. victīs ac submótiī= Helvētīs. venientēs=Bōtōs et Tulingōs.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitivus
Ablatīve of manner
Substantīvus quod clause

bipertītō, adv. [bis, twice+partīor, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. 1.

19. vincō, vincere, vici, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevali; have one’s way or desire. *

submoveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. 2.

resistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [re+stītō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. *

1. anceps, ancipitis, adj. [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. 1. àcriter, adv. [acerb, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. àcrius; sup. àcerrīmē (App. 40). *

Chap. 26. The Helvetii are routed and flee northwards. Caesar follows.

1. ancipiti: i.e. against the Helvetii on one side and the Boii and Tulingi on the other.

pugnātum est, "they fought." For translation see note on 22, 8.

2. alterī... alterī, "the one body [the Helvetii]... the other [the Boil and Tulingi]."

3. ut coeperant: see 25, 12.

4. nam: this sentence gives the reason for Caesar’s statement that the enemy withdrew, instead of fleeing in disorder.

cum pugnātum sit: an adversative clause. Note that the perfect subjunctive is an exception to the rule of sequence of tenses.

ab hōrā septimā, "from about noon."
5. hōra, -ae, f., hour. The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season. * 

vesper, -eri, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. 3.

6. noctī, noctis, f., night; mediana nocte, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. *

7. vāllum, -i, n. [vālūs, palisade], wall or rampart of earth set with palisade; entrenchments, earthworks. *

obiciō, -icero, -īcēi, -īcētum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiectus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. 2.

8. coniciō, -icero, -īcēi, -īcētum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast; put; put together logically, conjecture; in fugam conicerē, put to flight. *

9. raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. 2.

matāra, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. 1.

tragula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. 1.

subiciō, -icero, -īcēi, -īcētum, tr. [iaciō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. 3.

10. vulnerō, i, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. *

13. trigintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [trente, three], thirty. *

The seventh hour began at noon, and in such expressions the Romans probably reckoned from the beginning of the hour.

7. prō vāllō, "as a rampart."

ē locō superiōre: i.e. from the tops of the wagons.

8. coniciēbant, "kept throwing."
The imperfect here denotes repeated action.

12. captus est agrees with the nearer subject.

milia CXXX superfuerunt: according to chap. 29 the original number was 368,000. If both statements are correct the slaughter in this battle was terrible, though we must remember that the original number had been reduced by the destruction of the Tigurini, and of course by natural deaths on the journey, especially among the children and the aged.


nūllam... pervēnērunt: the map facing p. 42 shows the direction of this flight. Of course no individual traveled every day and every night. There was only a panic-stricken mob, under no leadership, every member of which rested or moved on at his own pleasure, so that as a whole it was in ceaseless motion. Tonnerre is about a hundred miles north of the battlefield, and only the strongest could have traveled so far.
14. intermittō, -mittere, -misit, -missum, tr. and intr. [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, discontinue; delay, neglect, omit; let pass. *

15. Lingones, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones (ling'gō-nēz). 4.
16. sepultūra, -ae, f., burial. 1.
17. triduum, -i, n. [trēs, three+] diēs, day), three days. *
18. moror, 1, tr. and intr. [mora, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. *
19. littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. *
20. nūntius, -ti, m., messenger; mes-

sage, news, report. *

18. nēve (nsu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē + ve, or], and not, nor. 3.
21. iuvō, iuvāre, iūvi, iūtum, tr., aid, assist, help. 3.
22. dēditō, -onis, f. [dēdō, surrender], capitulation. *
23. prōicio, -icerc, -iēs, -iectum, tr. [lāciō, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; se prōicere, cast one's self; jump. 4.
24. suppliciter, adv. [supplex, supplicant], as suppliants, humbly. 1.
25. pāreō, 2, intr. [cf. parīō, bring

14. partem: accusative of duration of time.
15. diē quārtō: by the Roman method of reckoning, the day of the battle counted as the first day. We should say "in three days."
16. cum: causal.
17. nē iuvārent, "(ordering them) not to assist." The subjunctive stands for an imperative of the direct discourse, though it may also be called a substantive volitive clause: App. 267: G.-L. 553: A. 588: B. 316: H.-B. 534, 2; 538: H. 652.
18. iussisset stands for a future perfect indicative in the direct form.
Caesar pervénit, obsidès, arma, servôs quì ad eòs perfugissent poposcit. Dum ea conqueruntur et cónferuntur, noctè intermissà, circiter hominum mìlia vi eìs pàgi quì Verbigenus appellâtur, síve tímôre perterriti né armìs tráditís supplició afficerentur, síve spè salútis induñtì, quod in tantà multitúdine dèditiciórum suam fugam aut occultári aut omnìnò ignórâri posse existimàrent, primà noctè è castrìs Helvètiórum ëgressì ad Rhénum finèsque Germánnòrum contendérunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescìt, quórum per finès ierant, his

---

10. salûs, salútis, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (when in danger). *

11. dèditicius, -a, -um, adj. [dédí, surrender], surrendered; as noun, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. 4. occultò, 1, tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. 1.

ignórâ, 1, tr. [ignârus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. 1.

12. ëgrandior, -grandi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. *

1. resciscò, -sciscere, -scívì, -scìtum, tr. [re-+sciscô, inquire], find out, learn. 1.

---


perfugissent: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said quì ad vòs perfugè-runt, “who have fled to you.”

7. dum ea conqueruntur, “while these were being sought out.” For mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556: B. 293, I: H.-B. 571: H. 533, 4.

sa=obsidès, arma, servós.


perterriti agrees with mìlia, but is masculine because the idea of men is prominent.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Adjectives with partitive meaning
Clauses introduced by postquam, etc.

Chap. 28. The six thousand are re-
taken and put to death. The others are sent back to their homes.

1. rescìt=recscivit.

hís is the antecedent of quórùm and the indirect object of imperòvìt.
utī conquerent et reducerent, sī sībi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit; redactōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquis omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugis trādītīs in dēditionem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde erant s profectī, revertī iussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat quō fāmen tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit ut īs frūmentī cópiām facerent; īpsōs oppida vicīōsque īōs incenderat restituere iussit. Id ē ā maximē ratione fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, qui trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsīrent et fīnitīmi Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōīōs petentibus Haeduis,

2. redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr. [re-+duco, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. *
pūrgō, 1, tr. [pūrus, clean+agō, do, make], clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; pūrgātus, pf. part. as adj., freed from blame, exonerated. 2.
4. perfuga, -ae, m. [perfugiō, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. 3.
5. unde, adv., from which place, whence. *
6. frūx, -gis, f. [fruor, enjoy], fruit; pl., crops, produce: 1.
āmittē, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send away, dismiss; let go; lose. *

3. sī vellet: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said sī vultis, “if you wish.”
sībi: dative of reference. It refers to Caesar.
3. in...habuit: i.e. he had them put to death. They had broken a military agreement.
4. in dēditionem accēpit: this act made them subjects of Rome.

7. famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation. 1.
tolerō, 1, tr. [cf. tollō, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famem, appease, alleviate. 1.
9. ratiō, -ōnis, f. [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; in pl., transactions. *
10. vacō, 1, intr., be empty or unoccupied; be empty or unoccupied; be empty or unoccupied; 1.
11. bonitāe, -tātis, f. [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. 1.

ut īs facerent, “to provide them with.”
8. īpsōs: i.e. the Helvetiī and their allies.
īpsōs restituere is the object of iussit. The object of īubeō is regularly an accusative and infinitive, while the object of imperā is regularly a substantive volitive clause, as in 1. 2.
9. ē ā maximē ratione, “chiefly for this reason,” is explained by the quod clause.
13. prōvinciae Allobrogibusque, “the province and (especially) the Allo-
16. **pár, parie, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; pár atque, the same as.** *

condicio, -ónis, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. *

1. tabula, -as, f., board; tablet; list. 2.

2. Graecus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; pl. as noun, the Greeks. 1.

broges"; for the Allobroges were a part of the province.

Boïós is the object of collocaręnt. It is put first for the sake of the emphatic contrast with Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs, in 1. 5.

Haedui: indirect object of concessit.

14. égregiā virtūte, "(men) of very great courage": a descriptive ablative.

ut collocaręnt is the object of concessit. The Holf had had no fixed home, as is shown by 5, 11, 12. The map facing p. 42 shows where they were settled by the Haedu. The Haedu wished to strengthen their frontier against invasions by neighboring states, just as Rome wished the Helvetii to guard her frontier against the Germans.

15. quibus, quōs: the antecedent is Boïós.

16. parem ... atque ipse erant, lit. "equal ... as they themselves were (in)" = "the same ... as they themselves enjoyed."

THIRD REFERENCE:
The locative

3. **nominātim, adv. [nōminō, name], by name; expressly; in detail.** 3.

4. **quot, adj., indecl., (1) interrog., how many? (2) rel., as many as, the number that.** 2.

puer, -eri, m., boy, child, son; in pl., children (of both sexes); à puerois, from childhood. *

senex, senès, adj., old; as noun, old man. 1.

Chap. 29. Enumeration of the Helvetii and their allies.

1. tabulae, "lists," written on wax tablets. The tablets used by the Romans were like folding slates, but made entirely of wood, with the inner surfaces thinly coated with wax. They wrote on this wax with a pointed stylius.

Litteris Graecie: Gallic words were written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with the Greek colony, Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests.

2. quibus in tabulis, "in which."

3. ratīō, "an account."

qui exisset: indirect question.


puer, senès, mulieresque are subjects of existēt, to be supplied from exīset. Note that this use of -que is an exception to the statement of the note on 1, 3.
mulierésque. Summa erat capitum Helvétiorum milium 5 colxiii, Tulingorum milium xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiv, Rauracorum xxiii, Böiorum xxxii; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia 'nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuérunt ad milia ccclxviii. Eorum qui domum rēdiērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar ĵmperāverat, repertus est numeros milium c et x.

5. mulier, -eris, f., woman; wife. * summa, -ae, f. [summus, highest], the main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; summa imperi, the chief command. * caput, capitis, n., the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth of a river; capitis poena, capital punishment. *

6. quattuordecim (XIV), card. num. adj., indecl., fourteen. 2. nōnāgintā, card. num. adj., indecl., ninety. 1. redeō, -iēre, -iī, -itum, intr. [red-, -eō, go. App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fall to, descend; be referred. * cēnsus, -ūs, m., enumeration. 1.

5. summa . . . ccclxiii, lit. "the total was [i.e. consisted] of 263,000 of heads of the Helvetii"= "the total was 263,000 Helvetii, etc." ccclxiii = ducentorum sexāgintā trium. xxxvi = trigintā sex. xxxiii = trigintā trium.

XXXII = trigintā duōrum. qui possent; cf. l. 4. Supply fuérunt; "there were . . . who could, etc." ad, "about." is an adverb in both instances. fuérunt agrees in number with the predicate noun milia. ccclxviii = trecenta sexāgintā octō.

BOOK I, CHAPTERS 30 TO 54. WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS

The complete success of Caesar's campaign against the Helvetii at once established his prestige in Gaul. Representatives from most of the states came to beg his aid against their common enemy, Ariovistus, a German king who had established himself in Gaul. It was still early in July, and there was time for another campaign that summer. Caesar willingly accepted the task, for if ever he was to become master of Gaul he must first put out of his way this rival conqueror; and in any case it was most important that the Germans should be kept to the east of the Rhine. Yet the Germans were no mean antagonists, and Caesar was ready to make some concessions rather than fight them. He first proposed to Ariovistus that they settle their differences in friendly conference, but he met a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the king to terms before he should be joined by other German tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed.
During a few days' halt at Vesontio the soldiers heard such fearful tales of the Germans that they were on the point of mutiny. By a masterly speech Caesar quieted their fears and aroused their enthusiasm to the highest pitch; and at once he led them on toward the enemy. Never again during the Gallic campaigns did his soldiers give him trouble.

Impressed by Caesar's activity, Ariovistus in his turn now proposed a conference; but when they met he replied boastfully to Caesar's demands, and the interview was broken off by an attack of the German guard. Caesar refused to meet Ariovistus a second time, but sent two representatives in his place. These Ariovistus threw into chains. The negotiations were thus finally broken off.

At once Ariovistus marched past Caesar's camp, keeping up on the slopes of a mountain where he was safe from attack, and boldly established his camp in such a way as to command the road by which Caesar had come, and by which his provisions were to follow. Caesar immediately offered battle, but the Germans were not ready to fight. Five days later Caesar marched back past the German camp and fortified and garrisoned a small camp to protect the way for his provisions. The Germans were unsuccessful in an assault on this small camp.

At last Caesar determined to force a battle, and he marched straight at the German camp. As this was not fortified, Ariovistus was obliged to lead out his army and draw it up against the Romans. Caesar in person led his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. The reserves, hurrying to this spot, decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the river Ill, a branch of the Rhine, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In the two campaigns of this one year important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the Roman possessions; the tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of the Gauls and the Germans was dispelled.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

Brown indicates Roman possessions when Caesar entered Gaul. Red indicates states which Caesar conquered. Blue indicates the states which submitted without fighting. Compare all these with the map facing page 42.

Crossed sabers indicate the battlefield. Colonel Stoffel's identification of it (Guerre de César et d'Arioviste) is very probable, and is indicated on this map.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtiūs fērē Galliae lēgātī, principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intelligere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populi Rōmānī ab īs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem

2. grātulōr, 1, intr. [grātus, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. 1.
3. tametsī, conj. [tamen, however +etsī, even if], although, though, notwithstanding. 1.

4. repetō, -petere, -petīvī, -petītum, tr. [re- + petō, seek], seek or ask again, demand back; with poenās, exact, inflict. 2.

Chap. 30-36. At the request of the Gallic states Caesar warns Ariovistus to cease encroaching on Gallic territory, but he receives a defiant reply. Chap. 36. Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask permission to hold a council.

1. tōtiūs fērē Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant. The blue color on the map facing p. 42 shows the part of Gaul from which envoys may have come; but probably not all the states so colored were represented at this time.


3. Since there is a large amount of indirect discourse in 30-54, it is necessary to make a more detailed study of the construction than has been called for by the notes on 1-29. It is assumed that the following points are clearly understood by the student: the accusative and infinitive in principal declarative clauses; the subjunctive in principal imperative clauses; the subjunctive in subordinate clauses. The direct form of all long passages of indirect discourse is given after Book VII.

sēsē: the envoys said "we." The reflexive pronoun sui or the corresponding possessive suus is regularly used in indirect discourse wherever a pronoun of the first person is changed to one of the third. In this use the reflexive is often called the indirect reflexive, in contrast with the direct reflexive, which refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands. App. 165: G.-L. 530: 531: A. 300, 2: B. 344, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504.

5 non minus ex usu Galliae quam populi Români accidisse, propterea quod eò consilio florentissimis rebus domòs suàs Helvetii reliquissent, uti tòti Galliae bellum inferrent imperiòque potirentur locumque domiciliiò ex magna cópià déligereunt, quem ex omnì Galliâ opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iùdicàssent, reliquàsque civitâtès stipendiàriàs habèrent. Petièrunt uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntàte facere licèret: Sèsè habère quàsdam rés quàs ex commùnì consensù ab eò petere vellent. Eà ré permissà diem conciliò constiùerunt et iùre iùrandó tributary; pl. as noun, tributaries. 2.

12. indicó, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr. [dico, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. 1.

13. quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quidam, quaedam, quoddam; indef. pron. (App. 63 and b), a certain one, some one; a certain, some, a; a kind of. * commùnìs, -e, adj., common, general; rés commùnìs, the common interest. *

cônsensus,-us, m.[cônsentiò, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

14. permittó, -mittere, -missì, -missum, tr. [mittò, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

11. petièrunt uti sibi licèret, "they requested permission."

concilium: The envoys mentioned in 1.1 did not constitute this council. They issued a call for representatives from each state. The blue color on the map facing p. 117 indicates the part of Gaul from which envoys probably came to the council.

12. Caesaris voluntàte: "with Caesar’s consent." They did not wish Caesar to suspect that the council was for the purpose of making war on him. The request shows that they were impressed by Caesar’s power, and may fairly be regarded as the first step in their submission to him.
nè quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dimissō īdem principēs civitātūm qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt, petiēruntque uti sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere līcērēt. Ėā rē impertrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesari ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē īd contendere et labōrāre, nē ea quae dixissent ēnūntiārentur, quam uti ea quae vēllent impertrārent, propertēa quod, si ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Dīviciācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtiōs factiōnēs esse duōs: hārum alterius principātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātā

16. sanctō, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, p.f. part. as adj., sacred, inviolable; established. 2.
5. labōrō, 1. intr. [labor, toll], toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or press.
15. nē ēnūntiāret is the object of sānxērunt.

nisi (īis) quibus mandātum esset, "except to those to whom they should be directed" (to disclose it). mandātum esset is impersonal. The pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect indicative by implied indirect discourse, for the agreement was in effect "we will tell no one except those whom we shall have agreed upon."

Chap. 31. They implore him to aid them against the German king Ario-

1. eō conciliō dimisso: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (30, 14) that the council was held.

īdem principēs: when they had come to Caesar before (30, 2) they had had no authority to act for their states. Now the council had authorized them to ask for Caesar's help.

3. dē . . . salūtēs, "for their own safety and (that) of all."

agere, "to confer."

4. Caesāri ad pedēs, "at Caesar's

plexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. 3.
7. cruciātus, -ās, m. [cruciō, torture; crucī, cross], torture, torment. *
9. factiō, -ōnis, f. [factīō, make], party, faction. 1.
10. Arvernus, -ī, m. (CDe), an Ar-

5. nōn minus, etc., "(saying) that they were no 1 ss urgent and anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that, etc."

sē: cf. note on sēē, 30, 3.
quas dixissent, "which they should say."

7. si ēnūntiātum esset, "if reports should get out." The verb is used impersonally. All the conditional clauses in this chapter employed the indicative in the direct form. ēnūntiātum esset stands for a future perfect and is a vivid future condition: App. 256: G.-L. 595: A. 516, a, c: B, 302, 1: H.-B. 579, a: H. 574, 1.
8. Galliae: Gallia Celtica is meant.

9. factiōnēs: see Int. 39.

10. cum contendērunt, "when they had fought." We might expect the pluperfect, but the imperfect is used on the principle laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, b: G.-L. 234: A. 471, b: B. 290, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 535, 1.
factum esse uti ab Arvernīs Sēquaniisque Germānī mercēde accesserentur. Hōrum primum circiter milia xv Rhēnum trānsisse; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs fert ac barbarī adamassent, trāductōs plūres; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et vigintī milium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctōs, qui et suā virtūte et populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amicitīā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare, nōbilissimōs civitātis, et iūre iūrandō civitātem obstringere sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūros neque auxilium à vernian; pl., the Arverni (ār-ver'ni), possibly the Arverniāns. 3. tantopere, adv. [tāntus, so great + opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. 1. potentātus, -ae, m. [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. 1. 12. mercēs, -ādis, f., pay, hire. 1. accessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, tr., summon, send for, invite. * primō, adv. [prīmus, first], at first, in the first place. * 13. posteaquam, adv. [postea, afterwards + quam, than], after. 4. 14. ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. * barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. * adāmō, 1, tr. [amō, love], love strongly, covet. 1. 15. nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. 3. 16. semel, adv., once, a single time; ut semel, as soon as. 2. 17. iterum, adv., again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. * 19. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. 2. 20. hospitiōm, -ti, n. [hoepes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 2. 11. factum esse uti, "it had come to pass that." The perfect infinitive, factum esse, stands for factum est of the direct form, as contendere (1. 5) stands for a present indicative, and as ventūrōs (1. 7) stands for a future indicative. For the uses of the infinitive tenses in indirect discourse, see App. 205: Ō.-L. 530; 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c: H.-B. 473, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 630. 12. mercēs: the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. This was fourteen years before Caesar came to Gaul. har; 14. adamassent = adāmōvissent. It stands for the perfect indicative of the direct form. 15. esse, etc., "They were in Gaul to the number of, etc.") 17. pulsōs accēpisse, "as they were beaten, they had suffered." 18. omnem . . . āmisisse: this was an exaggeration, for the nobles and the cavalry of the Haeduī were prominent in some of the campaigns of the Gallic war. 20. qui, "although they."
populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs quōminus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Únum sē esse ex omni civitāte Haeduōrum qui addūcī non potuerit ut iūrāret aut liberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam, rem sē ex civitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxiliō postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre iūrandō neque obsidibus tenerētur.\(^1\) Sed peius victoribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs so accidisse, propťereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germanōrum, in eōrum finibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agri Sēquanī, qui esset optimus tōtius Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere inbēret, propťereā quod paucīs

\[24. \text{implōrō, 1, tr. [in + plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore.} \quad 3. \text{reĉūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from.} \quad *\text{quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+minus, not], so that not, not; from.} \quad 2.\]

\[25. \text{perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever.} \quad 1. \text{diciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway.} \quad 3.\]

\[27. \text{iūrō, 1, tr. and intr. [iūs, right], take oath; swear.} \quad 1.\]

\[28. \text{profugiō, -fugere, -fugī, -fugī.}\]


\[25. \text{únum sē esse, "that he was the only one." sē is Dividicus. Cf. note on sēē, 30, 3.}\]

\[28. \text{qui potuerit: mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 1: A. 835, b: B. 283, 1, 2: H.-B. 521, 1, a, b: H. 591, 5. Sofar in this chapter all the subjunctives have been imperfects and pluperfects, in accordance with the rule for sequence of tenses; for the indirect discourse depends on an historical tense, locutus est, 1.8. But in potuerit we have an instance of repraesentatio; i.e. the tense of the direct form is retained in the indirect: App. 270, a: G.-L. 554, n.: A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H. 644, 1.}\]

\[29. \text{postulātum: the supine. His request for assistance was made three years before this time, and was unsuccessful. Cicero met him in Rōmē and speaks of him with admiration.}\]

\[30. \text{peius accidisse, "a worse fate had befallen."}\]

\[32. \text{tertiam partem: this was probably an exaggeration. The part taken by Ariovistus corresponds pretty well with upper Alsace, on the Rhine, and is colored red on the map facing p. 117.}\]

\[33. \text{alterā, "a second."}\]

\[34. \text{paucīs mēnisibus ante, lit. "before a few months" = "a few months before." mēnisibus is an ablative of degree of difference.}\]
mēnsibus ante Harūdum milia hominum xxiv ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Fūtūrum esse pauciis annīs utī omnēs ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsirent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Aриovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cópiās proelīō vīcerit, quod proelīum factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēlēt imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cuiusque liberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla crūciātōque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nū tum aut ad voluntātem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, irācundum, temerārium; nōn posse eius imperia diūtius sustinēri. Nisi quid in Caesare

35. Harūdēs, -um, m. (Ch), the Harudes (ha-ry'dēz), a German tribe. 3.
36. sēdēs, -is, f. (sēdēō, sit), seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4.
39. cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f. (cōnseusō, become accustomed), habit, custom, practice; mode of life. *
vīctus, -ās, m. (vīvō, live), living, mode of life; provisions, food. 1.
40. comparō, 1, tr. [pār, equal], place in comparison, compare. 1.
41. Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf), Magetobriga (mājē'tōbrī'gā), a Gallic town where Aриovistus defeated the Gauls. 1.
42. superbē, adv., proudly, haughtily. 1.
crūdēlēt, adv. [crūdēlis, cruel], cruelly. 1.
44. éō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give] out; inflict. 1.
nātus, -ās, m. [nuō, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nū tum, at one's nod or command. 2.
45. irācundus, -a, -um, adj. [ira, anger], irritable. 1.
temerārius, -a, -um, adj. [temerē, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 1.

38. futūrum esse utī omnēs pelle- lentur, lit. "it would be that all would be expelled." The direct form was omnēs pellerentur. As the future indicative must be rendered by the future infinitive, one might expect puleum irī; but this form of the future passive infinitive is very rare and the periphrasis found in the text is the usual method of expressing the future passive infinitive: App. 205, b: G.-L. 531: A. 569, 3, a: B. 270, 3, a: H.-B. 472, c: H. 619, 2.
37. omnēs [ex]: i.e. all the Gauls.
38. Gallicum: sc. agrum.
39. hanc = Gallicam.
victūs: note the quantity of t, and compare victus, the perfect participle of vincē.
41. vīcerit: from this point on to the end of the chapter repraesentatio is employed. See note on potuerit, l. 20.
proelīum: this final and decisive battle was fought two years before Caesar came to Gaul. It is probable that the Sequani had joined forces with the Haeduini in an effort to expel Aриovistus.
43. cuiusque: the singular forms of quiqve, "each," with superlatives have the force of "every" or "all." exempla, "punishments."
44. si facta sit: this condition stands for an original si facta est. See note on l. 7, and App. 258: G.-L. 595: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B. 579: H. 574, 1.
46. quid auxill, "some help."
populóque Römānō sit auxili, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum quod Helvētii fecerint, ut domō emigrent, aliud domicilium, aliás sēdēs, remotās ā Germanīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si ēnūntiātaARIOVISTO sint, nōn dubitāre quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sint gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarēm vel auctoritāte suā atque exercītus vel recentī victoriā vel nōmine populī Römānī dēterrēre posse nē maior multitūdō Germanōrum Rhenum trāducātur, Galliamque omnem ab ARIOVISTI iniūriā posse dēfendere.


dēmittō, -mittere, -miēī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send, thrust, or let down; sink; bow; sē dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sē animō dēmittere, lose courage; dēmissus, pf. part. as adj., low. 1. terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrārum, the world. 3. intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. 1. mīrōr, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. 1. trīstitiā, -ae, f., sadness. 1. permaneō, -manēre, -mānī, -mān-

48. emigrō, 1, intr. [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. 1. 50. quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever; whatever; whosoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who; everything that. * experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. * 2. flētus, -us, m. [fleō, weep], weeping, lamentation. 1. 4. cēterī, -ae, -a, adj. the rest of, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. 4. trīstitis, -e, adj., sad, dejected. 1.


54. dēterrēre nē trāducātur: for construction see note on essent, l. 24.

Chap. 32. The desperate condition of the Sequani. 2. magnō flētū: Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls. auxiliō petere: the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Arowistus. 5. quae causa esset: an indirect question depending on mūrātus.
Cum ab his saepius quae reret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Diviciäus Haeduus respondit: "Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli nè in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare andarent absentesque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si cõram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis verò, qui intrat finès suōs Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnés cruciātus essent perferendi.

33. His rébus cognitis Caesar Gallórum animós verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: Magnam sè habère spem et beneficiō suō et auctóritāte adductum

6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives.
7. quae reret: a pluperfect would seem more natural.
8. hoc: ablative of cause.
11. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm, he absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
10. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.
11. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm, he absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
9. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.
8. exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.
12. cōram, adv., face to face, in person. 1.
13. vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *
6. respondēre, permanēre: historical infinitives.
7. quae reret: a pluperfect would seem more natural.
8. hoc: ablative of cause.
11. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm, he absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
10. occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.
11. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm, he absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
9. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. 2.
8. exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [premō, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. 1.

take their defense. His reasons for doing so.

2. sibi ... futūram, "that the matter should receive his attention." For the two datives, see App. 119: G.-L. 356, 3: A. 382, 1: B. 191, 2, a: H.-B. 360, b: H. 433, 2.
3. beneficiō suō: in Caesar's consulship, only the year before, the senate had conferred upon Ariovistus the titles "rex" and "amicus." This had been done to keep Ariovistus from interfering with Roman interests in Gaul until Caesar should be ready to take charge of his province.

Chap. 33. Caesar decides to under-
Ariovistum finem iniuriis factūrum. Hac oratio habitā concilium dimīsit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandum et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmis, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsangulfneōsque saepe numerō à senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenēri, eōrumeque obsīdes esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populi Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī publicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulūtīm autem Germānōs cōnsuēcere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venire populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat, namque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperatūrōs existimābat quīn, cum illum Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cĭmbri Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciām exīrent atque inde in Italiam contendent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs

5. secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.
6. cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr. [cō-agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. 3.
11. turpīs, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.

6. quārē putāret: "to think," lit. "why he should think."
ābī: dative of the agent, with the passive periphrastic.
7. Haeduōs tenēri is the object of vidēbat.
frātrēs appellātōs, "who had been called brothers." See note on 11, 5.
10. quod, "and this"; i.e. the condition of the Haedul, as set forth in the preceding infinitive clauses.
11. sibi refers to Caesar, the subject of arbitrābātur, not to the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the indirect reflexive: App. 165: G.-L. 520; 521: A. 300, 2: B. 244, 1, II: H.-B. 262, 2: H. 504. Paulūtīm, etc., "he saw that for the Germans to get gradually in the habit of crossing and ... to come ... (was) dangerous," etc.
13. periculōsum: see Int. 3.
14. sibi: indirect object of temperatūrōs. It refers to hominēs, the subject of the clause in which it stands; it is therefore the direct reflexive: App. 164: G.-L. 309, 1: A. 300, 1: B. 244, 1, I: H.-B. 262, 1: H. 504.
16. ut, "as"; for fēcissent stands for fēcissent of the direct form.
Cĭmbri Teutonīque: see Int. 27.
17. praesertim cum: cf. note on 16, 17.
CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, I, 34

19. māturē, adv. [māturus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3.  
occurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [ob-currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. *  
20. spiritus, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. 2.  
arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 2.  
1. placeō, 2. intr. [cf. plācō, appease], please, satisfy; often impers., seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.  
3. uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *  
colloquium, -qui, n. [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. *  
5. opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or abl. (App. 146.) *  

18. Rhodanus diviseret, “only the Rhone separates.” Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarianism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible.  
Chap. 34. Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.  
1. ad Ariovistum: he was somewhere in the country he had taken from the Sequani. Cf. note on 31, 32.  
3. colloquiō: dative of purpose. velle sēsē agere, “(saying) that he wished to confer.” Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up (cf. note on 33, 3).  
4. summis ... rēbus, “matters of the greatest importance to both.”  
5. sī esset, sēsē ventūrum fuisse: the direct form was sī esset, venīssēm, “if I wanted anything, I should have gone,” a contrary to fact condition: App. 284: G.-L. 597. R. 1: A. 517, a: B. 304, 1, 2: H.-B. 581: H. 579, 1. When such a condition is turned into indirect discourse, the conclusion always takes the infinitive form -ūrus fuisse, although some of the grammars make the mistake of saying that the imperfect subjunctive becomes -ūrus essē: App. 273, II: G.-L. 597, R, 4: A.
ventūrum fuisset; si quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venire oportère. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitu in eās partēs Galliae venire audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magna commeātū atque mōlimentum in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sībi autem mirum vidēri quid in sub Galliā, quam bellō vīcissent, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō nēgōtī esset.

35. Hīs responsīs ad Caesarem relātīs oterum ad eōm Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō sūō populiē Rōmānī beneficiō affectus cum in consulātū suō rēx atque amīcus a senātū appellātū esset, hanc sībi populoque

7. praetereā, adv. [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

8. possidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -ses-sum, tr. [sedeō, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.

9. commeātūs, -ās, m. [comeāō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. *

mōlimentum, -ī, n. [mōlōr, exert one's self], effort, difficulty. 1.

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 1.

10. mirūs, -ā, -um, adj. [mirōr, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. 2.

12. nēgōtīum, -ī, n. [neg-ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; nēgōtī dare, employ, direct; quid nēgōtī, what business; nihil nēgōtī, no difficulty. *

2. mandātūm, -ī, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. *

quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since + iam, now], since now, since, inasmuch as, because, whereas. 4.

3. consulātūs, -ūs, m. [consul, consul], consulship. 1.


8. quās ... possidēret: i.e. the land of the Haeduī and the Lingones, which Arlovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

10. mirum: predicate adjective with vidēri; "it seemed strange." quid Caesarī nēgōtī esset, lit. "what of business there was to Caesar" = "what business Caesar had": an indirect question, subject of vidēri. Caesarī is a dative of possessor.

omnīnō, "in general."

Chap. 35. Caesar demands that Arlovistus cease his oppression of the Gauls.

3. beneficiō affectus; cf. note on 33.

3. The German was shrewd enough to estimate the beneficiō at its true value.
Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venēre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūni, ῥē dicendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse quae ab ēō postulāret: primum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcēret; deinde, obsidēs quōs habēret ab Haeduīs redderet Sēquanisque permitteret ut quōs ipsi habērent voluntāte eīus reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs ināriā lācēseret, nēve his sociōsque eōrum bellum inferret. Si ita fecisset, sibi populiōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amicītiam cum eō futūram; si nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā M.

5. invitā, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.
6. gravor, 1, intr. [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. 1.
7. amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. *
8. reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [red-+dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. *
10. Sēquanisque . . . licēret, "and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his [Ariovistus’s] approval those [hostages] whom they [the Sequani] had [from the Haeduī]," lit. "permit that it be allowed." illīs = Sēquanīs.
12. sibi: i.e. Caesar; a dative of possessor.
13. si nōn impetrāret, "if he [Caesar] should not obtain (such assurances),"
Pisone cónsulibus senátus censuisset uti quicumque Galliam is pròvinciam obtinēret, quod commodó rei publicae facere posset, Haeduós cēterōsque amícōs populī Römānī défenderet, sē Haeduōrum iníūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī ut quī vicissent iūs quōs vicissent quem ad modum vel lent imperārent; item populum Römānum victīs nōn ad alterius prāsecriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Si ipse populō Rōmānō nōn prāsecriberet quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, s nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedirī. ἢ Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stipendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam

---

15. cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsum, tr., think, decide (acc. and inf.); propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). 1.
16. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. 2.
18. neglegō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [neg-+legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregard, neglect. *
3. prāsecriptum, -ī, n. [prāscribō, order], order, dictation, command. 1.

---

4. arbitrium, -rī, n. [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (of the arbiter); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 1.
5. prāsecribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.
6. congredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (peacefully). *

---

15. senátus censuisset: this decree of the senate was the only result of the entreaties of Diviciacus (cf. 31, 28), and no governor had paid any attention to it, as Ariovistus very well knew.
16. quod . . . possat, "so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state"; a common formula in decrees of the senate.
18. neōlectūrum: tense? App. 205:
G.-L. 530: 531: A. 584: B. 270, 1, a, b, c: H.-B. 472, a: H. 617; 618; 619; 620.

Chap. 36. Ariovistus responds defiantly.
1. ut imperārent: a substantive volitive clause, in apposition with iūs. vicissent, vicissent, vellent might all have been indicative in the direct form, but would probably be attracted into the subjunctive. iūs: indirect object of imperārent.
3. ad alterius prāsecriptum, "in accordance with the dictates of anyone else."
4. ipse: direct form, ego. The reflexive cannot be used to replace a pronoun of the first person (cf. note on sēsū, 30, 3) when a nominative is required, because it has no nominative. Usually no pronoun is used; but if there is emphasis, as here, ipse is used.
5. quem . . . ūterētur, "how they should exercise their rights."
6. nōn oportēre sē impedirī, "he [Ariovistus] ought not to be hampered."
7. sibi: dative with the adjective stipendiāriōs.
Caesarem iniuriam facere, quii suö adventü vectigalia sibi
deteriöram faceret. Haeduïs së obsidës redditurum non esse,
neque hîs neque eorum sociis iniuriâ bellum illâturum, si
in eö manërent quod convènisset stipendiumque quotannis
penderent; si id non fécissent, longë iis'fraternum nömen
populi Römâni afutûrum. Quod sibi Caesar dënûntiâret së
Haeduôrum iniûriâs non nèglëtârum, nèminem sècum sine
suâ pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederëtur: intel-
lëturum quid invicti Germani, exercitâtissimi in armis, qui
inter annös xiv têctum non subissent, virtûte possent.

37. Haec eödem tempore Caesarî mandâta referëbantur,
et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trèverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam transportāti essent, finēs eōrum populārentur: Sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trèverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās, Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberlum frātres. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrāndum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resīsti possēt. Itaque rē frāmentāriā quam celerrīmē potuit comparātā magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīdūi viam processisset, nūntiātum est eī Ariovistus: a leader of the Suebi. 1.

39. Cimberlus, -ri, m., Cimberlus (sĭm-bĕr′li-ūs), a leader of the Suebi. 1.

40. vehementer, adv. [vehēmenē, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.

41. coniungō, -iunge, -iūnxī, -iūnxītum, tr. [iungō, jōin], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. *

1. prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *

54. Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnerre pending the result of his negotiations with Ariovistus. See map facing page 117.

Chap. 38. Caesar occupies Veson-tio.

1. trīdūi: descriptive genitive. The descriptive genitive must ordinarily be modified by an adjective; but trīdūi = trium diērum.


The three days' march was east from Tonnerre (see map facing p. 117), and
vistum cum suis omnibus cópiis ad occupandum Vesontiönum, quod est oppidum maximum Sëquanorum, contendere triduique yiam a, suis finibus processisse. Id nè accideret magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rërum quae ad bellum úsui erant, summa erat in eò oppidò facultas, idque nâtûra loci sic mûniëbatur ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flûmen Dûbis, ut circinò circumductum, paene tótum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatum, quod est nôn amplius pedum sescentòrum, quâ flûmen intermittit, mônis continet magnâ altitûdine, ita ut ràdicës eius montis ex utrâque parte ripae flûminis contin-

2. Vesontiö, -önis, m. (Cf) Vesontio (vë-sont'shyö), the chief town of the Së- quani, situated on the Doubs, modern Besançon. 2.
5. prascaveò, -caveò, -cavì, -cautum, intr. [caveò, guard against], guard against before hand, take precautions. 1.
namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.
7. sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. *
9. Dûbies, -is, m. (Cf g), the (river) Dûbis (dû'bis), now the Doubs. 1.
circinòus, -I, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. 1.

brought Cæsar to the point where his route turns to the southeast.

nûntiätum est: this report that Ariovistus was marching toward Vesontio proved false. Probably it grew out of the fact that Ariovistus had got his army together for the purpose of marching north to help the Suebi. Cf. note on 37, 6.

3. quod agrees in gender with oppidum, although its antecedent is masculine. A subject pronoun often agrees in gender with a predicate noun.
4. id: i.e. the capture of Vesontio.
6. summa facultas, "a very great supply."
9. ut, "as if."
paëns cingìt: i.e. the river makes a loop, the two sides of which (according to Caesar) are at one point only 600 feet apart. The neck of land at this point is very high. The town lies within the loop. A wall encloses both the town and the high neck of land.

10. spatium: object of continet.

11. quâ flûmen intermittit, "where the river does not flow." magnâ altitûdine: descriptive ablative.

12. ràdicës is the object of contingët, ripae its subject.
gant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidò coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupâtöque oppidò ibi praesidium collocat.

39. Dum paucòs dies ad Vesontiónem rei frumentàriae commeâtusque causa morâtur, ex percontâtioâe nostròrum vocibusque Gallòrum ac mercàtorum, qui ingenti magnitùdine corporum Germàñòs, incrédibili virtûte atque exercitâtioâe in armis esse praedicâbant (saepe numerò sèse cum his congressòs nè vultum quidem atque aciem oculòrum dicèbant ferre potuisse), tantus subítò timor omnì exercitum occupât ut nòni mediocrès omnì mentès animòsque perturbàret. Hic

13. circumdô, - dare, - dedi, - datum, tr. [dò, put], put around, encompass, surround. 3.
ax, arcis, f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. 1.

efficiò, - ficere, - feci, - factum, tr. [e+faciò, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. *

14. huc, adv. [old form for hoc, from hie], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. *

nocturnus, -a, - um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. 1.
diurnus, -a, - um, adj. [diēs, day], of the day, by day, daily. 1.

2. percontâtioâ, - onis, f., inquiring, inquiry. 1.

13. hunc (montem) is the object of efficit, arcem is a predicate accusative:

14. huc contendit: he turned from his eastward march to the southeast.

nocturnus: Caesar very rarely marched at night, but if the report about Ariovistus had been true, Ariovistus would have been much nearer Vesontio than Caesar was, and only the most extraordinary effort could have enabled Caesar to arrive first.

Chap. 39. Fear of the Germans causes a panic in the Roman army.

1. dum morâtur: mode and tense?

3. ingêns, -entia, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.
magnitùdô, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); m. munitud animi, courage. *

4. exercitâtioâ, - onis, f. [exercitó, freq. of exercéo, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *

5. praedicó, 1, tr. [dicó, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

6. vultus, -ûs, m., countenance, looks. 2.

7. subítò, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

8. mediocrès, adv. [mediocris, with mediocrès, middle].

App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 558: B. 298, 1:
H.-B. 559: H. 533, 4. The principal clause of this sentence begins with tantus, 1. 7.

rei . . . causa: Caesar was always careful about his supplies. In this case he had no doubt arranged for supplies along his intended line of march, but he had suddenly changed the direction of his march, and therefore failed to meet his convoys. Consequently he now had to make new arrangements.

3. vocibus, "replies."
magnitùdine, virtûte, exercitâtioâe: descriptive ablatives.
primum ortus est à tribunis militum, praefectis, reliquisque qui ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in re militāri ūsum habēbant; quōrūm alius alīā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessāriam esse diceret, petēbant ut eīus voluntāte discēdere liceret; nōn nullī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspicīōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hi neque vultum ē fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suis commune periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vocibus ac timōre paulātīm etiam ii qui magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, militēs centurionesque quique equitātiū praerant, perturbābantur. Quī moderate, moderately: nōn mediocris, in no small degree. 1. mēns, mente, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; ēnēts animēsque, minds and hear; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4. perturbē, it., [turbō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. * praefectus, -i, m. [praeficīō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4. pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it shames], shame, sense of shame; sense of honor. 2. remaneō, -manēre, -māneī, -mānsum, intr. [re+-maneō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. * fingō, fingere, finxi, factum, tr., form, imagine, devise, invent. 2. tabernāculum, -i, n., tent. 1. fātum, -i, n. [fārī, to speak], fate, lot. 1. miseror, it., [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. 1. vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2. testāmentum, -i, n. [testor, be a witness], will. 1. obsignō, it., [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. 1. centuriolis, -ōnis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. * number with alius. Mode? App. 230: G.-L. 631, 2: A. 535; B. 233, 1: H.-B. 521, 1, a: H. 591, 1. vultum fingere, "control their features," so as to look unconcerned. tōtīs castrīs: why is there no preposition? App. 151, b: G.-L. 388: A. 429, 2: B. 228, 1, b: H.-B. 436, a: H. 485, 2. centurio nēs: who were appointed especially for their bravery. qui ex his, "(those) of them who."
21. timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeō, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. 1.

24. supportō, i, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

26. dictum, -i, n. [p.f. part. of dicē, say], saying, remark; command; dictō audiēns, obedient. 1.

22. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Dubis is narrow and very rough, and if Ariovistus had really been marching toward them it would have given opportunity for ambuscades.


26. cum iussisset: indirect discourse for cum tussēris, "when you shall have ordered," = "when you order." The clause depends on what follows, not on nūntiābant.

fore = futūrōs esse.

neque signa lātūrōs, "and would not advance." See Int. 44.

Chap. 40. Caesar encourages his officers.

1. omnium āūdinum: to the ordinary council of war only the centurions of the first rank were admitted (Int. 42). This, however, was a special gathering of all the officers to listen to Caesar’s speech.

3. incūsāvit: this implies a verb of saying, and what follows is in indirect discourse. The tactful and self-reliant combination of rebuke and encouragement makes the speech very effective. Military discipline demands severe punishment for mutiny, but this speech prevented open mutiny and served Caesar’s purpose better than punishment. There was never again any sign of mutiny in the Gallic war.

4. dūcerentur: subjunctive in an indirect question.

sibi . . . cōgitandum, “that they ought to inquire or consider.” The grammatical subject is the clause aut . . . dūcerentur.

5. sē cōnsule: in the preceding year. sē and the other reflexives through 1.9
amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temeré quisquam ab officio
dissessūrum iūdicaret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitis suis
postulātis atque aequitāte conditionum perspectā, eum neque
suam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si
fūrōre atque amēntiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem
verērentur? aut cur dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsius diligentiā
despērārent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum
memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mariō pulsīs nōn
minōrem laudem exercīt quam ipse imperātor meritus vidē-
through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *
9. repudiō, 1, tr., reject. 1.
10. furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. 2.
āmentiā, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewildermot of mind, folly, insanity. 1.
impetō, -pellere, -pull-, -pulsūm, tr. [in+pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. 3.
diligentiā, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. 4.
13. C., abbr. for praenomen Gālius (gā'yūs). *
Marius, -rī, m., Gaius Marius (gā/yūs mā/rl-ūs), the conqueror of the
Cimbrī and Teutoṇī. 1.
14. laus, laudās, f., praise, com-
suā: the direct reflexive: App. 164:
ipsius: i.e. Caesar's; suā could have
been used here as the indirect reflexive, but it would be confusing because it has
just been used as the direct reflexive. The
use is something like that of ipse in 38, 4.
12. periculum, "a test." 
Marius: cf. Int. 5.
14. vidēhātūr: no satisfactory ex-
planation can be given for the retention
of this indicative in a subordinate clause
of indirect discourse.
bātur; factum etiam nūper in Ítaliā servīlī tumultū, quōs is
tamen aliqüid ūsus ac disciplīna quam à nōbis auxēpissent
sublevārent. 'Ex quō iūdicāri posse quantum habēret in sē
bōnī cōnstantiā, propertē quod, quōs aliquāmduī inermēs sine
causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.
Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs quibuscum saepe numeros 20
Helvētīī congressī nōn sōlum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum
finibus, plērumque superārīnt, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō
exercitūi nōn potuerint. Si quōs adversum proelīum et fuga
Gallōrum commovērēt, hōs, si quærerent, reperire posse,
diūtūrnātē belli dēfatigātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs 25

mandation; renown, popularity, glory.
3.
imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. * 15. servilis, -e, adj. [servus, a
slave], or like a slave, servile.
tumultus, -ūs, m. [tumus, swell], uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult; uprising, insurrection. 2.
disciplina, -ae, f. [discō, learn], learning; discipline; instruction; system. 2.
ego, mei (App. 51), first pers. pron.,
1; pl. nōs, we, us, etc. * 18. cōnstantia, -ae, f. [cōnsto,
stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. 1.

15. factum: sc. esse periculum.
servili tumultu: the insurrection of
the gladiators under Spartacus in 78-71
B. C. Many of the gladiators and slaves
who joined the uprising were Germ-
ans.
quōs: the antecedent is implied in the
adjective servili, which is equivalent to
serōrum.
17. quantum boni, "how great an
advantage."
18. inermēs: a part of Spartacus's
band was at first armed only with
stakes; yet they won victories and thus
secured arms.
20. quibuscum Helvētīī congressī
superārīnt, lit. "with whom the Hel-
vētii having met had conquered" =
"whom the Helvētii had met and con-
quered." superārīnt: tense? App. 270,
a: G.-L. 654, n.. A. 585, b, n.: B. 318: H.
644, l.
22. quī: the antecedent is Helvētii.
The argument is that since the Helvētii
have beaten the Germans and the
Romans have beaten the Helvētii, the
Romans can beat the Germans.
23. proelium: the battle at Mageto-
briga; see 31, 41.
24. commovēt: the direct form
was commovēt: App. 253: G.-L. 595: A.
mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque sui potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pugnā et dispersōs subítō adortum magis ratione et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōni contra hominēs barbarōs atque imperitōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitus capī posse. Qui suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriāe simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris confērent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrīberē vidērentur. Haec sībi esse cūrāe: frūmentum Sēquanos, Leucōs, Lingōnēs subministrāre, jamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs bревī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audiēntēs neque signa lātūrī dicantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut alīquō facinore compactō avāritiam esse convictam;

26. paūs, -ūdīs, f., marsh, morass, swamp. *
27. dispersō, -speregere, -spersī, -spereum, tr. [speregō, scatter], scatter, disperse. 3.
29. imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in—peritus, experience], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. 4.
31. simulātiō, -ōnis. f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.
32. arrogator, adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. 1.

34. Leuci, -ōrum, m. (Bg), the Leuci (liū'si). 1.
subministrō, 1. tr. [ministrō, wait upon], furnish, supply, give.
35. brevīs, -ē, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. *
38. male, adv. [malus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. Comp., pētus; sup., pessimē. 1.
39. dōsum, desesse, défui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 65], be wanting, be absent from, fail. *
facinuēs, -nōris, n. [facē, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.

26. sui potestātem, "a chance at him."
27. dēspērantēs, dispersōs agree with an implied dēs which is the object of adortum and refers to the Gaula.
28. ratiōniē: translate with hāc in next line, and omit here.
29. hāc ... possē, "not even (Arloviōstus) himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagēm."
31. rel ... simulātiōnem, "a pretense about the supplies." rel is an objective genitive.
32. dē ... dēspērāre, "to lack confidence in the general's attention to his duties."
35. mātūra: it was now August.
36. quod ... dicantur, "as to the statement that they would not obey his orders or advance." quoēd: translation? App. 245, a: G.-L. 525, 2: A. 572, a: B. 299, 2: H.-B. 552, 2: H. 588, 3, n.
37. quibuscumque ... convictam, lit. "that to whomsoever an army had not been obedient, (to them) either fortune had failed or svarice had been proved." This must be turned into English.
avāritia, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. 1. 
convincē, -vincere, -viō, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. 1. 
40. innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. 1. 
felicitās, -tātis, f. [fēlix, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. 1. 
41. longus, -a, -um, adj. long, distant; of long duration; tedious. * 
42. praesentō, 1, tr. [re-+praesēns, present], make present; do at once. 1. 
43. utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum...an, whether...or; utrum...nece, whether...or not. 3. 
44. an, conj. used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. * 
45. decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. * 
46. praetōrius, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. 2. 
cohors, -tis, f., cohort. * 
47. indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulēi, ---, int., be indulgent to, favor. 1. 
praecipuē, adv. [praecipuus, especially], especially, particularly. 1. 
1. modulus, -i, m. measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modi, of such a kind, such; abl., modō, with gen., in the character of, like. * 
2. alacritās, -tātis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. 3. 

40. innocentiam, "fair dealing," not "innocence"; opposed to avāritiam. What the soldiers would object to would be the general's keeping too large a share of the booty for himself. 
perpetuā vitā, "throughout his life." 
41. quod...praesentātūrum, "he would do at once what he had intended to put off, etc."
42. utrum...valēret: an indirect double question: App. 214; 264, c: G.-L. 458; 460, 2: A. 384; 335: B. 163, 4; 300, 4: H.-B. 234: H. 380; 650. 
46. praetōriam cohortem, "his body-guard," which would naturally be composed of the bravest troops. 
Chap. 41. The panic is checked and the army advances. 
4. grātiās ēgit, "expressed its thanks."
reliquae legiönes cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centuriöbus egérunt, uti Caesaris satisfacerent: Sè neque umquam dubitasse neque timuisset neque dè summã bellii suum iūdícium, sed imperatóris esse existimávisse. Eòrum satisfactiöne accepta et itinere exquisitō per Diviciäcum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habēbat, ut, milium amplius quinquagintā circuitū, locis apertís exercitum duceret, dè quártā vigiliā, ut dixerat, prefectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratóribus certior factus est Ariovísti còpiās à nostris mília pássuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovístus lègātōs ad eum mittit: Quod antea dē colloquió postulāsset, id per sé fieri

8. umquam, adv., at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never.

9. satisfactiō, -onis, f. [satisfacii, give satisfaction], satisfaction; excuse, apology.

6. cum tribunis egérunt uti, "arranged with the tribunes that" or "heded the tribunes to."

8. neque dè . . . existimāvisse, "and that they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs, but (knew that it was) the commander's."

10. itinere . . . Diviciäcum ut . . . duceret, "having sought a route, with the help of Diviciacus . . ., in order that he might march his army through open country, (though) by a circuit of more than fifty miles."

ex Gallis, "of (all) the Gauls."


12. circuitā: he passed around to the north of the broken country in the valley of the Dubis near Vesontio (see map facing p. 117), and then marched straight on. The distance marched around the bend was fifty miles.

13. ut dixerat: cf. 40, 42.

septimō diē: the seven days' march brought him to the battlefield indicated on the map facing p. 117. Ariovístus, who had probably been marching northward (cf. note on 37, 6), had learned that Caesar was marching toward him, and had turned back to meet Caesar. At this time he was not far from Strasburg.

cum . . . intermitteret: i.e. he did not allow the day of rest which was usually given about every fifth day. Cf. Int. 54.

Chap. 42-47. Negotiations with Ariovístus are fruitless.

Chap. 49. Ariovístus asks for a conference, under conditions which Caesar grants.

2. postulāsset: sc. Caesar.

id . . . licēre, "that . . . might be done as far as he was concerned." id is the antecedent of quod.
licère, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine periculō facere posse existimāret. Nōn respuit condicioānum Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem reverteri arbitrābātur, cum id quod anteā petentī dēnegāset ultrō pōlicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suis tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiis, cognītīs suis postulātīs, fore uti pertināciā désisteret. Diēs colloquīō dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lāgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit nē quem pedītem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē nē pēr īnsidiās āb eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēscē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātūi committere audēbat, com- modissimum esse statūt, omnibus equīs Gallīs equītibus

3. propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer.
4. respūō, -spuere, -spui, —, tr. reject, spurn. 1.
5. sānitās, -tātis, f. [sānus, sound, soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 1.
6. dēnegō, 1, tr. [nēgō, deny], refuse. ultrō; adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. 

8. pertinācia, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. 1.
10. citrō, adv., hither; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. 1.
11. pedes, peditis, m. [pēs, foot], foot soldier; pl., infantry, foot. 3.
14. interpūnē, -pōnere, -poneī, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; idem interpūnere, pledge. 4.
15. commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. 3.

3. accessisset: Ariovistus's reason for refusing a conference (see 34, 7) no longer existed. Caesar's prompt advance had impressed him and he was more inclined to confer.
6. petentī, "when he [Caesar] asked it."
8. fore uti désisteret, lit. "that it would be that he would give up" = "that he would give up." The use of this periphrasis is here a matter of choice on Caesar's part, since the verb is active and has a future infinitive form. Cf. note on 31, 36, and App, 205, b: G.-L. 531:

13. veniēret: the subjunctive of command in indirect discourse.
aliā ratiōne, "on any other terms."
15. salūtem . . . audēbat: Caesar could not be sure of the trustworthiness of the Gallic cavalry, and he knew that in any case they were no match for German cavalry.
dētractis, eō legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amiciς
simum, si quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret,
20 nōn irridiculē quidam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit
plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere; pollicitum sē in
cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad
equam rescribere.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis
grandis. Hic locus aequum fērē spatium a castrīs utrūsque
aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiō-
nem Caesar quam equis vexerat passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō

17. dētrahō, -trahere, -traxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or
away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.

18. impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [in+ponsō, place, place
upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. 4.

20. irridiculē, adv. [in+ridiculis, witty], without wit, unwittily. 1.

23. rescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [re+scribō, write],
write again; transfer. 1.

1. plānitiēs, -ēs, f. [plānus, level],
level ground, plain. 4.
tumulus, -ī, m. [tumeō, swell], swelling;
mound, hill. 1. terrēnus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth],
of earth. 1.

2. grandie, -e, adj., great, large, bulky. 1.
eaquus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, equal;
equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus,
equanimity, composure. 3.

4. vehō, vēhere, vexī, vectum, tr.,
carry; bring along. 1.

17. eō, the adverb, =in eōs.

19. etsi . . . esset, lit. "if there should
at all be need of something done" = "if
there should be any need of their serv-
334: A. 300, c: B. 175, 3: H.-B. 387, III: H.
416, 2. factō: construction? App. 146, b:
G.-L. 406: A. 411, a: B. 218, 2, c: H.-B. 430,
2: H. 477. III. esset: implied indirect
discourse, for in making his plans
Caesar thought etsi erit, "if there shall
be."

20. nōn irridiculē, "wittily."

21. pollicitum . . . rescribere: the
soldier said, in substance, "After prom-
is ing only to make us his body-guard,
Caesar is actually making us cavalry."
The pun is based on the double meaning
of ad equum rescribere, namely, (1) to
transfer to the cavalry, a part of the
army looked down upon by the legionary
soldiers, and (2) to knight, i.e. raise
to a high rank in Roman society. "Ca-
valler" means either "cavalry man" or
"knight."

Chap. 43. At the conference Caesar
repeats his previous demands.

1. erat, "there was." The hill was
about twelve miles north of the battle-
field, and has been identified with con-
siderable certainty.

2. spatium: accusative of extent of
space.

3. ut erat dictum, "as had been
agreed."

4. equis, "on horseback."

passibus, intervālō: ablatives of
degree of difference with ab, "away from."
cōnstituit. Item equītēs Arioŭistī pari intervālō cōnstitērunt. 5
Arioŭistus ex equīs ut colloquenterur et præter sē dēnōs ad
colloquium adducērunt postulāvit.  (ubi eō ventum est) Caesar
initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit,
quod rēx appellātus esset à senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera
amplissima missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō magnīs
homīnum officiīs cōnsēisse (tribū) docēbat; illum, cum neque
adītum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret, beneficiō ac
liberalitātē suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtūm. Docēbat
etiam quam veterēs quamque iūstae causa necessitūdīnis ipsīs
cum Haedui intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quiōtēns quamque
hōnōrisēca in eōs facta essent, ut omēn tempore tōtius
Galliae principātum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam
nostram amiciēam (appetissent).  [populi Rōmānī hanc esse

5. cōnstitērunt: distinguish carefully between cōnstitō and cōnstitūō.
6. ex equīs, “on horseback.” Cf. 1. 4: in that hill the horses are the means by which the soldiers are brought to the
hill; in this they are the places from which the conversation goes on.
10. missa: sc. essent. The three quod clauses are substantive clauses in apposition with beneficia, and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
12. adītum: i.e. to the senate.

13. praeium, -mī, n., distinction, prize, reward. *
14. necessitūdō, -inis, f. [necessē, cf. necessārius, friend], friendship, alliance. 1.
15. cōnsultum, -ī, n. [cōnsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. 1.
16. hōnōrisēcus, -a, -um, adj. [hōnōs, honor] + faciō, make], conferring honor. 1.
16. in eōs, “in their behalf.”
17. Galliae: i.e. Celtic Gaul; but we have learned in 31, 8 that even there their supremacy had always been disputed.
prīus . . . quam = prīusquam. The subjunctive which it introduces is due to the indirect discourse.
cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil déperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcītiam populi Rōmānī attulissent, id iis ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: (Nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.)

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris paucā respondit, dé suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsisse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessitum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemīsīs domum propinquōsque reliquisse; sēdēs habēre in Gallīa ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntātē datōs; stipendium capere iūre belli quod victōrēs victīs impōnere consuērīnt. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae civitātēs ad sē

20. déperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, tr. [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. 2. dignitās, -tātīs, f. [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. 3. auctus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of augeō, increase], increased, advanced, 1.
21. affērō, affere, attull, alātum, tr. [ad+ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.
22. remittō, -mittere, -mittī, -missum, tr. [re+-mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part. as adj., mild. * at, conj., but, at least. *

19. ut vellet, "to wish"; a substantive clause of result, in apposition with hanc consuētūdinem.
20. sed auctiōrēs esse, "but rather to be advanced."
grātiā, etc.: ablatives of specification.
22. quis posset: the direct form was quis possit, "who would be able?" and the subjunctive is retained in the indirect discourse.
23. dederat: as stated in chap. 35.

Chap. 44. Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.
3. rogātum et arcessitum: the participles may be translated by a causal clause.
5. ab ipsis: sc. Gallīs.
6. iūre: ablative of accordance.
7. consuērīnt: the tenses in the early part of this chapter are due to representa-
Oppugnandum vēnisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eōs omnēs cōpiās ā se ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Si iterum experīrī velint, ē iterum parātum esse dēcertēre; ās pāce ātī velint, iniquum esse dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad īd tempus pependērunt. Amicitiam populū Rōmānī sibi ĵornamentō et præsidīō, nōn dentrimentō esse oportēre, atque sē ē hac spē petīsse. Īsi per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēdīcitū subtrahantūr, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetītīr. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliām trādūcat, id sē suī muniendī non Galliae impugnandae causā fercē; eius reī testimōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Ģē prius in Galliā vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exer- citum populī Rōmānī Galliāe prōvinciae finibus āgressum. Quid sībi vellet? Ķūr īn suās possessionēs venīre ľavīnciām

11. dēcertō, 1. intr. [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *
12. iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. *
13. ĵornamentum, -i, n. [ōrō, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. 1.

detrimentum, -i, n. [de-+terō, rub, or wear out], harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. 1.

16. subtrahō, -tractor, -trāxi, -tractum, br. [trahō, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. 1.
libenter, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 2.
19. impugnō, 1. br. [in+pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.
20. testimōnium, -nī, n. [testor, be a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. 1.

17. quam, " than." quod, " as to the fact that."
21. prius quam populum Rō- mānum: prius quam = priusquam, a conjunction, and the more accurate expression would be priusquam populus Rōmānum vēnerit. The truth of the statement is denied by Caesar in the next chapter.


suās refers to Ariovistus.
Caesar's Senatu. 1. oporteret, sì in nostròs finès impetus fàceret, sìc item nos esse iniquòs, quod in suò iure sì interpellàremus. Quod fràtrès à senàtù Haeduòs appellàtòs diceret, nòn sè tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rèrum ut nòn scìret neque bellò Allobrogum proxìmò Haeduòs Ròmàniùs auxilium tulisse neque ipsòs in hìs contentiònibus quàs Haeduì sècum et cum Sèquanìs habuissent auxiliò populi Ròmàniì usòs esse. Dèbère sè suspícàri simulàtà Caesarìm amìcitià, quod exercitum in Gallìà habèat, suì opprimìndì causà habère. Qùì nisi dècèdat atque exercitum dèdùcat ex hìs regionibus, sèsè illum nòn prò amìcò, sed prò hoste habìtùrum. Quod sì eum interfécìerit,

25. sìcut or sìcuti, adv. [sic, so+ut- (I), as], so as; just as, as; just as if. 1.
26. interpellò, 1., tr., interrupt, hinder. 1.
31. contentiònì, -ònie, f. [contendò, strive], striving, struggle, contest, dispute. 1.
33. suspícòr, 1, tr. [suspícìo, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *
34. opprimò, -primere, -pressì,

26. hanc Galliàm, "this (part of) Gaul." He claims that his right of possession in the land near the Rhine is as clear as that of the Romans in the Roman province.

ut . . . oporteret, "just as there ought to be no yielding to him." The direct form of the conditional sentence was probably oportéât, si faciam, lit. "it would be right if I should make." This is a less vivid future condition; App. 257: G.-L. 595: A. 516, 2, b: B. 308: H.-B. 580: H. 576. Such a condition has the same form in indirect discourse as a vivid future condition, and can be distinguished only by the sense of the passage.

27. quod diceret, "as to the fact that he said, "or "as to his statement."

29. imperitum rèrum, "ignorant of political matters."

Haeduòs . . . usòs esse: Arlovistus here lays his finger on the weak point in Caesar's argument; for in fact the alliance of the Haedu and the Romans had been mere words until now when it suited Caesar's purpose to consider it binding.

31. ipsòs=Haeduòs.
32. dèbère sè suspícàrì, "he had a right to suspect."
33. simulàtà amìcitià, "although he made a pretense of friendship" toward Arlovistus.

quod, "inasmuch as."
35. sèsè . . . amìcò habìtùrum, "he would regard him [Caesar] not as a friend."

- pressum, tr. [ob+premò, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4.
35. dèducò, -dúcere, -dúxi, -duc-tum, tr. [ducò, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. *
regiò, -ònis, f. [regò, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; régione, with gen., opposite. *
multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Römäni gratum esse facturum; id se ab iphis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradisset, magnô se illum praemio remuneratúrum et quae cumque bella gerit vellet sine ulla eius labore et periculó connecturum.

45. Multa á Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quârē negotiâ désistere non posset: Neque suam neque populi Römâni condue tidinem pati uti optimè meritós sociós déséreret, neque se indicâre Galliam potius esse Ariovistum quam populi Römâni. Bellô superâtôs esse Arvernôs et Rutênos á Q. Fabiô

déseerò, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr. [seró, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; désérerit, pt. part, as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.
4. potius, adv. [comp. of potie, able], rather. 2.
5. Rutêni, -orum, m. (DEde), the Ruteni (ru-tê'ni). *
Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwin'tús), a Roman praenomen. *

Fabius, -bî, m. Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwin' tús fa'biús mák'si-mús), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.

37. grátus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. 1.
40. liber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained, free; undisputed. 1.
41. remunerôr, i, tr. [re-+mùneror, present], repay, reward. 1.
42. labor, -oris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *
1. sententia, -ae, f. [sentió, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *
3. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimè. 2.

37. multis ... facturum: as the head of the democratic party, Caesar had made many bitter enemies in the aristocratic party, especially during his consulship. It is entirely possible that some of them had indicated to Ariovistus their desire to have him put out of the way.
38. id comportum habere differs very slightly from id compertisse, "had found this out." This means "he possessed this as a thing fully ascertained"; App. 286, b: G.-L. 238: A. 497, b: B. 387, 6: H.-B. 605, 5, a: H. 640, 2.

Chap. 45. Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

1. in eam sententiam, quârē, lit. "to this effect, why" = "to show why." quârē posset is an indirect question.
3. pati uti déséreret, "allowed him to abandon." patior is usually followed by an infinitive instead of an ut clause.
5. superâtôs esse: in the year 121, at the time when the Allobroges were conquered. As this was fifty years before Ariovistus had entered Gaul, it disposed of the claim (44, 21) that Ariovistus had come into the country before the Roman people.
Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectāri oportēret, populi Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; si iūdicum senātūs observāri oportēret, liberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victim suīs legibus úti voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquī geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equītēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequantēre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit séque ad suōs recēpit suiisque imperāvit né quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam ēstī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis délēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīci posset eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquī circumventōs. Postea-

6. Maximus, -i, m., Quintus Fabiūs Maximus (quīn'tūs fā'bi-ūs māk'sē-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 B.C. 1.
ignōscō, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtum, intr. [in--(g) nōscēns, knowing: nōscō], forgive, pardon. 3.
7. redīgo, -igere, -ēgi, -ēctum, tr. [red--agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. ♦
10. observō, 1, tr. [servō, give heed], observe, mark; watch; regard, obey; celebrate. 1.
3. adequītō, 1, intr. [equītō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. 1.
lapis, -īdis, m., stone. ♦
5. ētsī, conj. [et+ēs, if], even if, although. ♦

6. neque . . . redēgisset: the intransitive ignōvisset governs the dative, quibus; but redēgisset is transitive and we must supply quōs; quibus is needed again with imposuisset. The Arverni and Ruteni lay on the other side of the Cevennes Mountains, which formed a natural frontier for the Roman province: this was the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans.
8. antiquissimum quodque tempus, lit. "each most ancient time" = "priority of time."
11. légibus: ablative with ēsī.
volutuisset: sc. sendītus as the subject.

Chap. 46. An attack by the German cavalry breaks up the conference.
5. quod: the adjective form of the indefinite pronoun.
6. legiōnis délēctae, "to his picked legion"; the genitive cannot always be translated by "of."
7. committendum ut dīci posset, lit. "that it ought to be permitted that it could be said" = "that he ought to permit it to be said."
pulsē hostibus, "after the defeat of the enemy."
8. per fidem, "because of their confidence (in Caesar's honor)." This is equivalent to saying "treacherously."
WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS, B.C. 58

149

quam in vulgus militum elatum est qua arrogantiā in colloquio
ARIOVISTUS utus omni Galliā ROMĀNIS interdixisset, impetumque
ut in nostrōs eius equitēs fēcissent eaque rés colloquium dīrē-
misset, multō maiōr alacritās studiumque pugnandī maiōs
exercituī iniectum est.

47. Biduō post ArioVistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs misit:
Velle sē dē iis rēbus quae īnter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae
esset agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquio diem cōnstitueret
aut, si id minus vellet, ex suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mittebat.
Colloquendi Caesaris causa vīsa nōn est, et cō magis, quod prīdiē
eius dīēi Germaṇī retinēri nōn potuerant quī tēla in nostrōs
conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum
missūrum et homīnibus fēris objectūrum existimābat. Com-
modissimum ĕsum est C. Valerium Prōcillum, C. Valēri Cabūrī

10. interdīcō, -dicere, -dixī, -dīc-
tum, intr. (dicō, say), prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; aquā atque ignī in-
terdicere, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. 1.

11. dirimō, -ire, -ēmī, -ēmp-

9. qua arrogantiā ĕsus, "using what arrogance" = "with what arro-
gance. It is often well to translate ĕsus in this way.

10. omni . . . interdixisset, "had
forbidden the Romans all Gaul." Galliā
is an ablative of separation. ROMĀNIS
is the indirect object.

11. ut, "how," introduces both
fēcissent and dirēmisset. It would more
naturally precede impetum.

Chap. 47. ArioVistus requests a
second conference, but seizes the
envoys sent by Caesar.

1. biduō post, "on the following
day." The literal meaning is "after-
wards by two days," but the Latin
writer counts the day of the interview
as one, the next day as the second. In
this case the meaning is proved by
l. 5.

2. quae agī coeptae essent, "which
had begun to be discussed," or better,
"which they had begun to discuss." The
passive forms of coeptī are used
when the dependent infinitive is in the
passive voice.

3. utī cōnstitueret: a substantive
clause, the object of an implied verb
of asking.

4. lēgātīs, "legates," not "envoys." ArioVistus wished to confer with an
officer of the highest rank, if Caesar
should refuse a second personal inter-
view.

5. colloquendi . . . est, "Caesar
saw no occasion for a conference.

prīdiē eius dīēi is only a fuller ex-
pression for prīdiē, and has the same
meaning.

6. retinēri quīn conicerent, "be
kept from casting." For construction
see App. 228, c: G.-L. 554: A. 558: B. 205,

8. commodissimum ĕsum est, "it
seemed best." The subject is mittere,
l. 15.

Procellus (gā'yu's vā-lē'ri-us prō-sil'ue), a Gaul. 2.
Cabūrus,-i, m., Gaius Valerius Caburūs (gā'yu's vā-lē'ri-ūs kā-bū'riūs), a Gaul who possessed Roman citizenship; father of C. Valerius Procellus and C. Valerius Domno-taurus. 1.
10. adulescēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. 4.
11. Flaccus, -i, m., Gaius Valerius Flaccus (gā'yu's vā-lē'ri-us flāk' ūs), Governor of Gaul, 53 B. C. 1.
dōnō, i, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. 1.
12. scientia, -ae, f. [sciō, know], knowledge, science, skill. 4.
13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. 2.
peccō, i, intr., sin, transgress, do wrong. 1.
17. cōnspiciō, -spicer, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [spicō, look], look at, observe, descry, perceive. *
conclamō, i, intr. [clāmō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.
18. speculor, 1, intr. [cf. specīō, look], spy. 1.
19. catēna, -ae, f., chain, fetter. 3.

tality or render other services to each other whenever occasion arose. A similar relationship might exist between a man and a state, or between two states. The obligation was peculiarly binding and sacred.

17. conclamāvit, etc.: Ariovistus was angry at his failure to secure an interview with either Caesar or one of Caesar’s legates.
18. an is not to be translated. The full thought is something like “is it for anything else, or, etc.” By such an ellipsis of the first alternative an not infrequently introduces a simple question, though its proper place is in the second alternative of a double question.
cōnantēs, “while they were attempting.”

1. prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mó-
tum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2. ultrā, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. 3. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [contīneō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 4. prōduco, -ducere, -düxi, -duc-
tum, tr. [dūco, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cōpiās, arrange, draw up. 5. genus, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. 6. prō castris: this was the favorite position for a battle, since the camp formed a place of refuge if the Romans should be defeated (Int. 49). Although Caesar could not tempt the Germans to fight him in this position, he at least encouraged his men by making it clear that the Germans were not anxious to fight them.

7. aciem ... habuit, "kept his line drawn up."

ut deesset: a purpose clause, although nē is regularly used in negative purpose clauses instead of ut nōn. Here nōn belongs closely with the verb, nōn deesset, lit. "might not be lacking" = "might be offered him." 8. vellet: implied indirect discourse, for the thought in Caesar’s mind was si vult, "if he wishes." 9. castris, "in camp." Why not in castrīs? App. 151, c: G.-L. 389: A. 409: B. 218, 7: H.-B. 423: H. 476. Ariovistus had a superstitious reason for refusing to fight, as appears later.

10. proelīo: cf. references on castrīs, l. 9.

genus ... exercuerant, "the kind ... was as follows."
CAESAR’S GALLIC WAR, I, 49

quis sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlocissimi ac fortissimi, quōs ex omni cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā délegerat; cum his in proeliis versābantur: ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, si quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī qui graviōre vulnere acceptō equō déciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius pró-deundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exer-citātiōne celeritās ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, né diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum quō in locō Germānī

11. exercēō, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. 1.
12. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. 3.
velōx, -ōcis, adj., swift, rapid, speedy. 1.
14. versō, 1, tr., turn; deal with; pass. as deponent, turn one’s self; he, remain; engage in; fight. ∗
15. dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. 1.
concurrō, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.
16. decidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall from or off. 1.
circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, tr.
sistō, stand], stand, flock or rally around, surround, hem in. ∗
quō, adv. [old dat. case form of qui, who, which], (1) interrog., whither? to what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom; to where, whither; toward which, where, wherein; (3) indef., to any place, anywhere. ∗
prōdeo, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [prō+ eō, go. App. 84], go or come forth, go forward, advance. 2.
18. celeritās, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. ∗
lūba, -ae, f., mane. 1.
cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. ∗
19. adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

12. numerō: ablative of specification, with totidem.
13. singuli singulōs délēgerant, lit. “individuals had chosen individuals”=“had chosen, each for himself.”
hī ... concurrēbant, “if there was anything too hard (for the cavalry to accomplish), the infantry ran to their aid.”
15. quī: the substantive indefinite pronoun, instead of the more usual quis.
16. quō: this adverb, like the pronoun quis, is used as an indefinite after si, nisi, nē, and num.

Chap. 49. Caesar constructs a smaller camp, beyond the camp of Ariovistus.
1. sum=Ariovstum.
nē ... prohibērētur; the plan shows that the second camp commanded the road and protected it from the Germ-
cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sescentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit acīque triplicē instructā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmām et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passūs sescentōs, uti dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim milia expedita cum omni equitātū Ariovistus misit, quae cōpiae nostrōs pēterērent et mūniōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās acīēs hostēm prōpulsāre, tertiam opus

3. idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted.
9. sētius, adv., less, otherwise; nihilō, none the less, nevertheless, likewise.
10. prōpulsō, 1, tr. [freq. of prō-

Battle with Ariovistus.

a, Large Roman camp.
b, Small Roman camp.
c, Camp of the Germans.
d, The Roman legions.
e, The German infantry.
f, The Roman auxiliaries.
g, The Roman cavalry.
h, The German cavalry.

3. castrīs: dative with the adjective idōneum.
4. acīē triplīcī: see Int. 56. Usually the army marched in column; but on this occasion it had to expect an attack at any moment, and therefore it marched in battle formation.
5. in armīs: to repel the expected attack.
perficere inissit. Mūnitis castris duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra maiōres redūxit.


pellō, drive forward], drive back, repel; ward off. 1.
2. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *
progredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. *
4. meridiēs, -ēī, m., [for medidiēs, from medius, middle-dieīs, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. 1.
7. utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. 2.
usque, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. 3.

12. reliquās: sc. legiōnēs.
redūxit: although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

Chap. 50. Ariovistus unsuccessful attacks the smaller camp. Caesar learns that he wishes to postpone the decisive battle.
1. institūtō: ablative of accordance.
2. paulum . . . progressus: Caesar had failed to secure a battle in the position most favorable to himself (see 48, 6, and note); therefore he now offered battle in a position equally favorable to both armies.
7. utrimque pugnātum est, "both sides fought."
9. quam ob rem, "why," is here interrogative and introduces an indirect question.
10. proeliō: see note on castrīs, 48, 9. decertāret: i.e. fight a general and decisive battle.
11. quod ea cōnsuētūdō esset, "that there was this custom," is a substantive quod clause in apposition with hanc causam. The subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse.
12. mātrēs familias: Tacitus tells us that the Germans ascribed prophetic powers to their women. He describes the lots (sortībus, 1, 12) as twigs, cut into small pieces, marked, and scattered on a white cloth. Three of them were picked up at random, and an examination of the marks (runes) disclosed the will of the gods.
eòrum sortibus et vaticinàtiônibus décláràrent utrum proelium committì ex ùsù esset necne; eàs ita dicere: Nòn esse fàs Germànum superàre, sì ante novam lùnum proelìo contendìssent.

51. Pòstrìdiè eius diè Caesar præsidìò utrisque castrìs quod sàtis esse visum est reliquit; alàriòs omnès in cònspectù hostìum prò castrìs minòribus cònsìstitut, quod minus múltìudìne mìlitum legiònàriòrum prò hostìum numerò valèbat, ut ad specièm alàriìs ütèrìtur; ipse triplicì instruxìt acìe usque ad castra hostìum accessìt. Tum dèmum necessàriò Germàni suàs cópiàs castrìs edùxérunt generatìmque cònsìstituérunt ne, whether ... or. 2.

- ne, whether ... or. 2.
- fàs, n., indecl., right, divine right, will of Heaven. 1.
- lùna, -ae, f., the moon. 2.
- alàrius, -i, -ium, adj. [älà, wing], on the wing; pl. as noun, auxiliaries. 2.
- speciès, -ëi, f. [speciö, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4.
- generatìm, adv. [genus, tribe], by tribes. 1.

12. sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. 3.
- vaticinàtió, -onis, f., divination. 1.
- déclárò, 1. tr. [clàrus, clear], make plain, declare. 1.
- necne, conj. [ nec, nor+-ne], or. not. 1.
- nec, interroã. enclitic: 'in direct questions, simply sign of a question (App. 213, a); in indirect questions, whether; -ne ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrum ...


14. si contendìssent, "if they should fight." contendìssent stands for a future perfect of the direct form.

novam lùnum: this fell on Sept. 18.

Chap. 51. Caesar compels Arìovístus to prepare for battle.

2. quod ... visum est, "(a garrison) which seemed to be sufficient." 
alàriòs: the word got the meaning "auxiliaries" from the fact that in earlier times the Romans posted the auxiliaries on the wings of the battle-line. For Caesar's use of such troops see Int. 47.

3. multìtudìnì: ablative of specification.

4. prò, "in comparison with."

6. necessàriò: the Germans did not entrench their camps. As Caesar was evidently about to attack them, and as there was no room for a battle-line in their camp, they had to come out. Caesar probably had to make the attack uphill, but there was a great advantage in forcing the enemy to fight at a time when they believed they could not conquer.

7. generatìm, etc.: about 150 years later, Tacitus speaks thus of the Germans: "And what most stimulates their courage is, that their squadrons or battalions, instead of being formed by chance or by a fortuitous gathering, are composed of families and clans. Close by them, too, are those dearest to them, so that they hear the shrieks of women, the cries of infants. They are to every man the most sacred witnesses of his bravery—they are his most generous applauders. The soldier brings his wounds to mother and wife, who shrink not from counting or even demanding them, and who administer both food
paribus intervallis, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā reliquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium proficiscéntēs militēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant nē sē in servītūm Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaeōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ē dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimā firmam hostium esse omnimādverterat, proelium commīsit. Ata nostri ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcérunt, itaque hostēs repente celerīterque prōcurrērunt ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Réiectīs pilīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī, celerēr ex cōnsēptūdine suā phalanget factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostri quī in phalangem

8. Marcomanni, -ōrum, m. (B.) the Marcomanni (mār'kō-mānī'). 1. Triboci,-ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'ō-sī). 2. Vangionēs,-um, m. (Bgh), the Vangiones (vān-jē'ō-nēz). 1. Nemetēs,-um, m. (Bh), the Nemētes (nēmē-tēz). 1. Sedusiī,-ōrum, m. (Bh), the Sedusii (sē-dū'sīyīl). 1. 10. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passīs capellīs, with disheveled hair; passīs manibus, with outstretched hands. 2. 1. quaestor,-ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēstōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. 3. dexter,-tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. 4. cornū,-ūs, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. * 5. repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 2. prōcurrē, -currere, -currī, -currum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. 1. 7. comminus, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 1. 9. excipiō,-cipere,-cēpi,-ceptum, tr. and intr. [capiō, take], tr., take up, of the five legates. See Int. 38, 39. 3. eam partem: i.e. the enemy's left wing. 5. signō datō: by trumpeters. Itaque = et ita. 6. pīla . . . coniciendī: on this and other details of the battle see Int. 55. 7. réiectīs, "throwing aside." The pīla were intended only for casting, and were useless in a hand-to-hand encounter. 8. phalanget: on this formation see 24, 11, note. 9. in phalangem insilirent: i.e.
insilirent et scūta manibus revellerent et désuper vulnerārent. 10 Cum hostium aciēs a sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, a dextrō cornō vehementer multitādine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscens, qui eōque praerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii qui inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nos-

15 tris subsidiō misit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter quinque perversērunt. Ibi

catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. *)

10. insiliō, -silire, -silui, -sultum, tr. [sallīō, leap], leap upon. 1.

revello, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr. [re-+vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. 1.

désuper, adv. [super, above], from above. 1.

13. premō, -premere, -pressī, -pressum, tr., press, press upon, press hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. *)

Crassus, -ī, m. Publius Licinius Crassus (pūb’li-ūs li-sin’ī-ūs krās’ūs)

the soldiers leaped on the roof of shields. If the Romans had been able to begin the battle with the customary volley of javelins, this solid array of shields would have been broken up as it was in the battle with the Helvetii, 25, 8-10. insillērent: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.

11. cum, "though." a sinistrō cornū, “on the left wing,” which was the weakest part of the German line.

14. expeditior, "freer to act." Crassus and the cavalry were posted behind the Roman left wing (see plan, p. 153), out of the way of the German cavalry, for whom they were no match. They were taking no part in the battle, but were waiting to pursue the enemy when the legions should win the victory.

15. tertiam aciem: as usual, this was being held in reserve for just such an emergency.

labōrantibus nostris subsidiō, “to the assistance of our hard-pressed men.”

Chap. 53. The Germans are routed. Caesar’s envoys are rescued.

1. terga vertērunt: the line of wagons (51, 9) might hinder their flight, but could not entirely prevent it. It is possible, too, that during the battle the Germans had advanced so far that there was space enough for flight between the wagons and the German line.

2. flūmen Rhēnum: as the Rhine is much more than five miles from the battlefield, it is probable that the Ill river is meant, and that Caesar mistook it for the Rhine.
perpauci aut viribus confisi tranmare contendierunt aut lintribus
5 inventis sibi salitem reperrerunt; in his fuit Ariovistus, qui
naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos
omnes consecuti equites nostris interfecerunt. Σ Duae fnærunt
Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum
duxerat, altera Norica, regis Vociinis soror, quam in Gallia
duxerat, a fratre missam; utraque in eae fugâ periiit. τ̄ Fouerunt
duae filiae: hærum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius
Procillus, cum a custodibus in fugâ trinis catënís vincus
traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostes equitati insequenter
incidit. Quae quidem rés Caesarí non minorem quam ipsa
victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum
prœvinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, eæptum ex
manibus hostium sibi restitutum vidēbat, neque eius calamitatem

4. tranœ, 1. intr. [trans-nō, swim],
swim across. 1.
5. inveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ven-
tum, tr. [veniō, come], come upon,
find, meet with; find out, learn. 2.
6. nāvicula, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvis,
ship], small boat, skiff. 1.
dēligō, 1. tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie
down, fasten, moor. 2.
nanciscor, nancisci, nactus sum,
tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with,
find. *
8. nātīō, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born],
race, tribe, people, nation. *
9. Vociō, -ōnis, m., Vocco (vōk-
shyō), a king of Noricum. 1.
10. perēō, -ēre, -ēi, -ē tum, intr. [ēō,
go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed,
perish. 2.
12. trini, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj.,
three each; three, triple. 1.
vincīō, vincire, vinci, vincum, tr.,
bind. 1.
13. trahō, trahere, trāxi, tractum,
tr., drag, drag along. 1.
14. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr.
[cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in
with, meet; happen, arise. 2.
15. voluptās, -tāsis, f. [volō, wish],
what one wishes; pleasure, delight, en-
joyment. 2.
honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs,
honor], honorable, worthy, distinguised,
eminent. 1.
16. hospee, -ītie, m., host, enter-
tainer; guest, friend; stranger. 1.
7. duae uxōres: among the Germans
polygamy was permitted in the case of
the nobles only.
8. nātiōne: ablative of specification.
10. duxerat: “had married”; while
duxerat in 1. 9 means “had brought.”
13. insequenter, “who was following.”
17. neque . . . dēminuerat, “nor
had Fortune, by injury to Procillus,
18. grātulātiō, -ōnis, f. [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 1.  
19. trīr, num. adv. [cf. trēs, three], three times. 1.  
cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. 1.  
20. statim, adv. [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. *  
necō, i. tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2.  

lessened in any degree Caesar’s great satisfaction and rejoicing”; lit. “lessened anything of,” quīcumque being the direct object.  
19. sē praeßente, “in his presence.”  
cōnsulūm: sc. esse.  
20. necārētur: this is an indirect question, but the subjunctive is not due to that fact: App. 210; 263: G.-L. 265; 467: A. 444; 575; b: B. 277; 300, 2: H.-B. 503: H. 559, 4.  

Chap. 54. The fate of the Suebi. Arrangements for the winter.  
1. qui . . . vēnerant: cf. 37, 5.  

reservō, i. tr. [re-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.  
21. incolūmīs, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.  
2. Ubīi, -ōrum, m. (Abgh), the Ubī (ūbi-).  
4. aṣtās, -tātis, f., summer. *  
5. paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *  
7. praeponsē, -pēnere, -posui, -posītum, tr. [pūnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. 1.  

5. mātūrius paulō: in the latter half of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.  
6. in Sēquanōs: probably in Veson-tio. The quartering of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar’s intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul, and thus brought about the Belgic uprising of the following year.  
7. ad conventūs agendōs, “to hold the provincial courts.”’ This was a part of his duty as governor of the province. Moreover he wished to be as near Rome as possible in order to keep in touch with affairs there.
BOOK II. WAR WITH THE BELGAE

Caesar's first year of fighting had brought central Gaul under Roman control (see map facing p. 117), and this fact was made clear to the Gauls when Caesar kept his army through the winter in Vesontio; for no Roman army had ever before been stationed north of the Province. The Belgae, fearing that they would be attacked next, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of nearly three hundred thousand men, which they massed not far from the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgium as the Haedui had in central Gaul, came to terms with him and furnished him valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his much smaller army an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae. Therefore he chose a strong position on the Axona (Aisne) river, and sent a force of the Haedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci, hoping by this means to break up the army of the enemy. The Belgae made an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, a town of the Remi, and then encamped before Caesar's position on the Axona. A little skirmishing discouraged the badly organized and poorly fed Belgic army. The men of each state went off to defend their own territory, all falsely promising to come to the rescue of whichever state Caesar should first attack. Caesar was thus left free to deal with the states one at a time.

Sweeping through western Belgium he quickly received the submission of the Suessiones, the Bellovaci, and the Ambiani. No doubt the neighboring states too sent envoys of peace, though they are not mentioned. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, the Viromandui, and the Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (Sambre) river, and planned to surprise and destroy the legions while separated on the march. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to fortify a camp, the enemy suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it; Caesar was taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so great the danger that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost
heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Atuatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery. The conquest of Belgium was complete, with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, who were not attacked and who sent no envoys. With his customary moderation Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were raised to supreme power in Belgium, and were thus firmly attached to the Roman interest.

Meanwhile, the states of northwestern Gaul had submitted to Publius Crassus, Caesar's legate, apparently without fighting.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy, and courage are seen at their best. Yet the surprise at the Sabis was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed chiefly to the excellence of his soldiers.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing p. 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for I, 30-54, facing p. 117. In addition, the Nervii, the Viromandui, the Atrebates, and the Atuatuci are colored red, for they seriously fought with Caesar.

Most of the rest of Belgium is colored blue, though it is hard to decide between blue and red for some of the states. Although all the states had promised to send quotas to the great army which melted away before Caesar at the Axona, we cannot be sure how many did so; and it can hardly be said that Caesar won the submission of the several states by defeating that army. The Suessiones prepared to fight, but did not do so. The Bellovaci and the Ambiani did not even prepare to fight. Therefore these three states are colored blue. The states which are not mentioned must in general have sent embassies of submission; but the Morini and the Menapii are left uncolored, because in III, 28 we are told that they had never sued for peace.

The northwestern states mentioned in chap. 34 are colored blue. Crassus went to them with only one legion, and the events of Book III make it certain that one legion could not have defeated those states in battle. Evidently they submitted without fighting.

The battle-fields on the Axona and on the Sabis are as certain as they well can be. The site of the town of the Atuatuci is very uncertain. The one indicated on the map is Mont Falhize, championed by Von Göler (Caesars Gallischer Krieg, pp, 90 ff.). Caesar does not tell us that the town was on a river; but all the other sites which have been suggested are open to more serious objections.
Campaign Map for Book II
LIBER SECUNDUS.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, ita utī supra dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterisque item Labienī certior fiēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās; primum, quod verērentur nē omni pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōn nullis Gallis sollicitārentur,

1. supra, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above; before. *
2. crēber, -bra, -brum, adj., thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent, at short intervals. Comp. crēbrior; sup., crēberrimus (App. 40). 4. rūmor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. 2. afferē, afferre, attulī, allātum, tr.

[a+fēro, carry. App 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. 3.
4. coniūrō, 1, intr. [īrō, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. *
7. sollicitō, 1, tr., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. 2.

Chap. 1. The Belgae form a league against Caesar.
1. citeriore Galliā: Caesar's province south of the Alps; now northern Italy.
   dēmōnstrāvimus: in I, 54. Caesar uses the rhetorical we. Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.
3. Labienī: as commander of the winter quarters, he of course sent regular reports to Caesar on all matters of importance.
   certior fiēbat, "was informed from time to time." The imperfect of repeated action.
   Belgās: see Int. 28.
   quam . . . dixerāmus, "who, as I said, are a third part of Gaul." quam refers to Belgās, but agrees in gender and number with the predicate noun partem. The pluperfect dixerāmus is occasionally used in such statements instead of the more common perfect.
4. coniūrare, "were forming a league," not "conspiring." The Belgae were not rebelling, for they had never been subject to Rome. Caesar had no scruples about conquering them, but he did not treat them as rebels.
6. quod verērentur: a substantive quod clause, in apposition with causās. The subjunctive is due to indirect discourse.
   omni . . . Galliā, "now that all Gaul had been brought under control." Galliā here refers only to Celtic Gaul. See Int. 28.
7. sollicitārentur: the indirect discourse still continues, but stops at this point. Apparently Labienus reported the two reasons for the action of the Belgae, but Caesar himself supplies the three reasons why Celtic Gauls instigated a rising of the Belgae.
partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiamare atque inveterascere in Gallia molestè ferèbant. partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studabant, ab non nullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentióribus atque ii qui ad conducendos hominês facultatès habēbant vulgō régna occupabantur, quî minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō consequi-potērant.

8. partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others. 4.

versō, i. tr., turn; deal with; pass. as deponent, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. *

9. inveterascō, -veterascere, -veterāvi,-veterātum, intr., grow old; become established. 1.

10. molestē, adv., with annoyance;

partim qui, "some of whom"; i.e. the opponents of all foreigners.

partim qui, "others of whom." mobilitate et levitate: Caesar often speaks of these qualities as characteristic of the Gauls.

ab non nullis (solicitārentur): a third class, such men as Orgetorix (I, 2), Casticus (I, 3), and Dumnorix (I, 18).

molestē ferre, be annoyed. 1.

mobilitās, -tātis, f. [mobilitis, movable], movahleness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy.

levitās, -tātis, f. [levia, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. 1.

13. vulgō, adv. [vulgus, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. 2.

12. ad . . . hominēs, "for employing mercenaries."

13. qui . . . poterant: see Int. 29, end. Of course this power of the nobles would be held in check by a strong government like that of the Romans.


*These grammar references are as far as possible duplicates of those given in the notes on each of the first 29 chapters of Book I. They are given for the convenience.
2. His nuntius litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in ceteriore Galliis novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in ulteriori Galliam qui deduceret, Q. Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis qui finitimi Belgii erant uti ea quaes apud eos gerantur cognoscant sese de his rebus certiorum faciant. Hi constanter omnem nuntiavere hominis cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum

2. inö, -ire, -ì, -itum, tr. [eó, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; inire consilium, form; inire rationem, make an estimate, decide; inire gratiam, gain; inire numerum, enumerate. * aestas, -tatis, f., summer. *
3. deducō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ship); give in marriage. *
   Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwīn'-tūs), a Roman praenomen. *
   Pedius, -di, m., Quintus Pedius (kwīn'-tūs pē'di-ús), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 2.

Chap. 2-4. Caesar marches to Belgium and gets information from the Romi.

Chap. 2. Caesar makes preparations and moves against the Belgae.

1. duas legiones: Caesar now had eight legions, numbered consecutively from VII to XIV, approximately 32,000 legionary soldiers. In addition he had auxiliary cavalry and infantry, on whom however, he placed little reliance. See Int. 32, 33.

2. inita aestate, "after the beginning of warm weather." Aestate included more than our summer, and the time here meant is spring.

in ulterior Galliam: i.e. to join the other legions in Vesontio. See map facing p. 162.

4. incipió, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], undertake; begin; commence. 1.
5. negotium, -tī, n. [neg- + ōtium leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negotium dare, employ, direct; quid negōti, what business; nihil negōti, no difficulty. *
Senonēs, -um, m. (Bef), the Senone, (sēn'-ō-nēz). 1.
7. constanter, adv. [cōnstatō, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2.
8. vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. *

3. qui (eōs) deduceret, "to take them."

cum primum: in June. Oum primum usually takes the indicative.

7. manus cogi, "that armed hands were gathering."

8. dubitandum (sibi esse) quin profiscerētur, lit. "that it ought to be hesitated by him that he should set out," = "that he should hesitate to set out." When dubitō means "hesitate" it is usually followed by the infinitive. See App. 229, d: G.-L. 555, 2, R. 3. A. 558, a, n. 2:

of teachers who begin the study of Caesar with Book II. References are given three times for each of the most common principles of syntax, in order that it may be studied and twice reviewed.
nōn existimāvit quin ad eōs proficiscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad finēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum [dē imprōvīsō] celeriisque omnium opiniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, qui proximī Galliæ ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum légātōs Iōcium et Andebrogium, prīmōs civitātis, misērunt, quī

1. imprōvīsus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + prōvisus, foreseen; prōvidō], unforeseen, unexpected; dē 'imprōvīsō', unexpectedly, suddenly. 1.

opiniō, -onis, / ', opiner, think', way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; opiniō timōris, impression of cowardice. *

2. Rēmī, -a, -um, adj., belonging to or one of the Remi; pl. as noun, Rēmī, m. (Bēf), the Remi (rē'mī). *

3. Icclus, -ō, m., Iculus (ik'ē-yūs), a chief of the Remi. 3.

Andebrogius, -gi, m., Andebrogius (ān'dē-brō'jyūs). 1.

ently only moderate strength, which saw an opportunity to increase its power by treacherously deserting its fellow states. In reward for its services Caesar made it the leader of a confederation, and it remained constantly faithful to him.

proximī . . . Belgīs, "the nearest of the Belgæ to Gaul"; i.e. at the point where Caesar entered the Belgian frontier.

ex Belgīs: the ablative with ēō or ex is often used instead of the partitive genitive.

5. qui dicerent: purpose. The rest

B. 298, b: H.-B. 531, 3; b: 586: H. 595, 1; 607, 1.

10. ad finēs: it was about 145 miles to the boundary of the Remi; but Caesār probably passed the boundary and nearly reached Durocortorum, their capital, in the fifteen days. See map facing p. 162, and Int. 54.

Chap. 3. The Remi submit to Caesar.

1. eō: the adverb.

omnia opinīōne, lit. "than the opinion of all," = "than any one had expected."

2. Rēmī: a Belgian state, of appar-
5. permittō, -mittere, -missi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit, allow. *

6. consentiō, -sentire, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], think together; agree, combine. 2.

7. imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō, command], command, order. 2.

8. cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of, of the chapter is in indirect discourse. The direct form is given after Book VII.

4. sē is the object of permittere. Another sē must be supplied as its subject: "that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions," etc.

5. neque ... neque ... que, "(and) not ... and not ... and."
4. Cum ab iis quaereret quae civitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: Plērōque Belgās esse ōrtos ā Germanīs, Rhēnumque antiquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem, ibi consēdisse, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolerent expulisse, sōlōsque esse quī patrum nostrōrum memorīa, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrosque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex rē fieri utī eārum rērum memorīa magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus afflictūtibusque consīunctī, quantam quisque multītūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō
tones (tū’tō-nēz).

Cimbri, -ōrum, m., the Cimbri (sīm’bri). 4.
intra, prep. with acc. [inter, between] within, inside; into. 4.
ingredior, -grēdi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradier, go], go or come into, enter. 1.
spiritus, -ūs, m. [spirō, breathe],
breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. 2.
explōrō, 1, tr., search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. 2.
propinquātās, -tātis, f. [propinquus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity; relationship. 3.
commūnīs, -e, adj., common, general; rēs commūnīs, the common interest. *

Chap. 4. The Remi inform Caesar of the numbers in the Belgian army.
1. iis: i.e. the envoys of the Remi.
3. antiquitus, adv. [antiquus, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. 2.
4. fertilitātēs, -tātis, f. [fertilis, productive], productiveness. 1.
5. expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pul-sum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. 4.
6. Teutoni, -ōrum or Teutonēs, -um, m., the Teutoni (tū’tō-ni) or Teu-

6. Teutonēs Cimbrosque: on this invasion see Int. 27.
ingredior prohibuerint, “prevented from entering.” Caesar always uses the infinitive after prohibēō, instead of the subjunctive with nē or quōminus.
8. dē numerō: i.e. the numerical strength of the Belgian army.
omnia . . . explōrāta, “that they had ascertained everything.” See references at the end of the chapter.
11. quisque: i.e. each delegate.
ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. [Plurimum inter eos Bellovocês et virtute et auctóritate et hominum numeró valère] hós posse coníficere armáta milia centum æ pollicitós ex eō numeró élécta milia sexáquintá, totiusque belli imperium sibi postuláre. Suessionés suós esse fìnimitós; finés látissimós ferácissimósque agrós possidère. Æpud eós fuisse régem nostrá etiam memoria Diviciácum, totius Galliæ potentissimum, qui cum magna partis hárum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse régem Galbam; ad hunc propter iüstitiam prudentiamque summam totius belli omnium voluntáte déferri; oppida habère numeró XII; pollicérí milia armáta quinquagintá;

13. Bellovaci, -orum, m. (Bde), the Bellovaci (bē-lōv'a-si). *
14. armó, i, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass., arm.'one's self; armátus, pf. part. as adj., armed; armáti, as noun, armed men. *
15. eligó,-igera,-ígeri, -éctum, tr. [legó, choose], choose or pick out, select; éléctus, pf. part. as adj., picked (men, etc.). 1.
sexáquintá (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty, 1.
postuló, 1, tr., request, ask, demand; require, necessitate. *
16. feráx, -ácis, adj. [feró, bear], productive, fertile. 1.
17. poséideó, -sidére, -sédí, -sésum, tr. [sedeó, sit], occupy, hold, possess. 2.
réx, régis, m., king. *
18. Diviciácus, -i, m., Diviciacus, (dī-vī'i-shē-ō-kūs), a chief of the Suessiones. 1.

19. regió, -ónis, f. [ragō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ë regióne, with gen., opposite. *
Britannia, -ae, f. (Aahed), Britannia (bri-tā'nī-a), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britain. *
20. nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. 3.
Galba, -ae, m., Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the Suessiones. 2.
21. prudéntia, -ae, f. [prudéns, foreseeing], prudence, foresight. 1.
défero,-ferre,-tuli,-látum, tr. [feró, carry]. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring before, refer; bestow, confer; délátus (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. *
22. quinquagintá (L), card. num. adj., indecl., fifty. 3.

23. Diviciácum: of course not the Haeduan mentioned in Book I.
cum ... tum, "not only ... but also."

19. partis and Britanniae both depend on imperium.
Britanniae: not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.
21. summam: the noun; not the superlative adjective.
totidem Nervios, qui maximē feri inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quindeceim milia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem as milia, Morinōs xxv milia, Menapiōs vii milia, Caletōs x milia, Veliocasses et Viromanduōs totidem, Atuatucōs xix milia; Condūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Caemānōs, qui ūnō nōmine Germāni appellantur, arbitrāri ad xl milia.

23. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number.

Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aet), of the Nervii; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervii; pl. as noun, the Nervii (nēr’m-i). *

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. *

24. Atrebās, -bātis, m. (Ae), an Atrebatian; pl., the Atrebates (ātre-bā’tēz). *

Ambiāni, -ōrnum, m. (ABde), the Ambiani (ām’bi-a’ni). 2.

25. Morīnī, -ōrnum, m. (AE), the Morini (mōr’i-ni). *

Menapili, -ōrnum, m. (Af), the Menapili (mē-nā’pi-li). *

23. Nervius: with this and the following proper nouns supply polliaēri. maximē feri: the superlative. longissimē absint: i.e. from the southern frontier. But the map shows that they were no more distant than the Morini and the Menapili.

25. Germāni: these tribes were very
5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus liberāliterque orātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenire principumque liberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipsae Diviciācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet quantopere rei publicae commūnisque salūtis intersit 5 manūs hostium distinēri, nē cum tantā multitūdine ēnō tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suās cópiās Haeduī in finēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. His datīs mandātīs eum ā sē dimittit. Postquam

likely really Germans who had settled in Gaul just as Arlovītus tried to do. appellantur: the indicative shows that this is an explanation by Caesar, not a quotation from the Remi. arbitrāri (pōlicērī), “they (the Remi) thought the Condruşi... promised.”

Chap. 5-8. The armies approach each other.

Chap. 5. Caesar sends the Haeduī to ravage one state, and himself marches to meet the whole Belgian army.

5. quantopere: interrogative. Explain the mode of interstīt. commūnis salūtis: i.e. of both Haeduī and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

interstīt... distinērī, lit. “the bands of the enemy to be kept apart concerned,” = “it concerned... that the bands of the enemy be kept apart.” The clause manūs... distinērī is the subject of the impersonal verb interstīt.

6. nē confligendum sit, lit. “that it might not have to be fought,” = “that they might not have to fight.” The verb is used impersonally, but English idiom will not allow an impersonal translation.

7. id: i.e. keeping the bands of the enemy apart. The sentence id... coeperint is in indirect discourse, depending on dōct, 1.5.

in finēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovacī were no doubt angry because they had not obtained leadership of the league (see 4, 15 and 30), and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home.

8. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: perfect subjunctive in indirect discourse, for future perfect indicative of the direct form.
omnēs Belgārum cópiās in ûnum locum coāctās ad sē venire
neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs miserat explōrātōribus et
ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs
Rēmōrum finibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi
castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ûnum castrōrum ripīs flūminis
müniēbat, et (post eum quae erant) tūta ab hostibus reddēbat,
et commēātās ab Rēmīs reliquisque cīvitātibus ut sīne periculō
ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrum Sabi-
um lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdi-

12. Axonā, -ae, m. (Bf), the Axona
(Āk'sō-nā), a river, now the Aisne. 2.
15. tūtus, -a, -um, adj. [tūcor, pro-
tect], protected, safe, secure. *
reddō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [redd-
+dō, give], give back, return, restore;
give something due; make or cause to be,
render. *
16. commēātus, -ūs, m. [commēō,
go back and forth], trip, voyage; sup-
plies, provisions. *
17. efficiō, -ficēre, -fēcī, -fectum,
tr. [ex + faciō, make], make or do com-
pletely, complete, accomplish, construct;
make, cause, bring about, render. *
18. Sabinus, -i, m., Quintus Titūrus
Sabinus (kwin'tūs ti-tū'ri-us sā-bī'nūs),
one of Caesar's lieutenants. *
19. cohors, -tis, f., cohort. *

10. in ûnum locum: somewhere to the
northwest of the Axona river.
coāctās venire, lit. "having been
gathered were coming," = "had gath-
ered and were coming."
venire, abesse: indirect discourse,
depending on cognōvit.
11. ab iīs explōrātōribus cognōvit,
"learned from the scouts."
14. castra: the excavations made by
the engineers of Napoleon III have fixed
beyond question the site of this camp.
It is a hill situated on the north bank of
the Aisne, between that stream and a
little marshy tributary, the Miette,
which formed an excellent defense in
front. See plan, p. 177. The hill is
eighty feet high.
quae rēs et, "this position both."
latus ûnum: the left side, for the
camp faced west.
15. post . . . reddēbat, "rendered
safe from the enemy all that was behind
him"; i.e. that part of the Remi from
whom he had just marched, and the road
by which supplies were coming.
16. commēātās ut portārī possent
efficiēbat, lit. "made that provisions
could be brought up," = "made it pos-
sible for." ut . . . possent is a sub-
stantive clause of result, the object of
efficiēbat.
17. in, "over."
18. praesidium: a small fortified
camp, to defend the northern end of the
bridge.
in alterā parte, "on the other side";
i.e. at the southern end of the bridge.
This guard was posted to protect the
bridge in case some of the enemy should
cross the river by a ford.
19. sex cohortibus: how many men?
See Int. 33.
castra: the main camp on the hill.
For a plan of this camp and for details
of camp fortification, see Int. 49-52.
Ab his castris oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bībrax aberat milia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coeperunt. Aegrē eō die sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi circumsēcta multitūdine hominum tōtis moenibus undique in mūrum lapides iacēt sustentātum est, testūdine factā

1. Bībrax, -ctis, f. (Be), Bībrax (hū-brāks), a town of the Remi. 1. 2. sustentō, 1, tr. and intr. [freg. of sustineō, hold up], hold up, sustain, maintain; hold out; endure, withstand.

4. oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault; attack; plan or method of storming. 2.

circumiciō, -icere, -īcēi, -lectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw, set, or place around. 1.

5. moenia, -ium, n. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. 3.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. *

iaciō, iacere, iēci, iactum, tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. *

6. défensor, -ōris, m. [défendē, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. *
nūdō, 1, tr. [nūdus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. 3.
testūdō, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. 1.

20. duodēvigintī pedum: i.e. in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension of a trench he always means the width. The depth was about ten feet.

Chap. 6. The Belgae assault a town of the Remi.

1. nōmine: ablative of specification.

Bībrax: see map facing p. 162.

2. ex itinere: i.e. without stopping to make camp.

3. sustentātum est, lit. "it was held out"; but translate personally.

eadem atque Belgārum, "(which is) the same as (that) of the Belgae." See atque in the Vocabulary. In such expressions Latin never uses a word for "that."

4. haec, "as follows."

circumsēctā: this ablative absolute is best translated by a clause; "when a great number has been thrown around . . . and stones have begun, etc."

6. coeptī sunt: why not cœpērunt?


succeed mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiēbat. Nam cum tanta multitudō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō consis-
tendī potestās erat nūlli. Cum finem oppugnāndī nox fecisset, 
10 Icicus Rēmus, summa nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum 
oppidō praee rerat, unus ex iīs quī legātī dē pāce ad Caesarem 
vēnerant, nūntiōs ad eum mittit: Nisi subsidium sībi submittā-
tur, sēse diūtiius sustinēre non posse.

7. Eō dē media nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus usus qui

See App. 86, a: G.-L. 175, 5, a: A. 205, a: 
B. 133, 1; H.-B. 199, 2; H. 299, 1.

testādine: see Plate III, 3, facing p. 
34.
8. conicerent agrees with the meaning, 
not the grammatical form, of the 
collective noun multitudō.

10. summā, "(a man) of the high-
est."

11. unus ex iīs: App. 101, b: G.-L. 372, 
R. 2: A. 346, c: B. 201, 1, a: H.-B. 346, e: H.

2. mīlia: case? App. 130: G.-L. 335: 

impētū: case? App. 142: G.-L. 399: 


429, 2.

6. coepti sunt: mode and tense? 
App. 237: G.-L. 561: A. 543: B. 287, 1: 

390, 2: A. 401: B. 214, 1, b: H.-B. 408, 2: 
H. 463.

8. conicerent: mode? App. 240; 242, 
a: G.-L. 579, II, a: 585: A. 546: B. 288, 1, 
b: H.-B. 524: H. 600, II.


serve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, 
assistance. * 

submittā, -mittere, -mīti, -mīs-
sum, tr. [mittō, send], send up, send, 
send to the assistance of. *

444. unus is here used as a noun in ap-
position with Icicus.

12. submittātur: the subjunctive 
here stands for a future indicative of 
the direct form. nūntiōs mittit implies 
"saying."

Chap. 7. Failing to take the town, 
the Belgae march against Caesar.

1. eō: to Bibrax.

isdem ducibus usus, "employing 
the same persons as guides."

As explained under II, 1, each of the 
most common principles of syntax is re-
ferrred to three times in the notes on 
Book II. At the end of the chapter in 
which the third reference to any con-
struction has been given, attention is 
called to the fact; and if the pupil has 
not yet mastered the construction he 
should do so at once.

Third References:

Subject of infinitive
Ablative of time
Narrative cum clause
Infinitive in indirect discourses
nuntii ab Icicio venerant, Numidas et Cretes sagittariis et
funditores Baleares subsidii oppidiis mittit; quorum adventu
et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et
hostibus eadem de causa spee potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati,
omibus vicis aedificiisque quo adire potuerant incensis, ad
castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ã milibus
passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumō

2. Numidae, -ärum, m., the Numidae (numi-diēs), better the Numidians, a

* Cretes, -um, m., the Crete (krétezē),
better, Cretans, natives of the island of
Creta. 1.

sagittarius, -ri, m. [sagitta, arrow], bowman, archer. 3.

3. funditor, -ōris, m. [funda, sling],
slinger. 4.

Baliare, -e, adj., Balearic (bāl'v-rē-
rik), (i.e. coming from the islands Majorca
and Minorca). 1.

3. mittit: the auxiliaries probably
entered the town on the south side,
where the slope of the hill was very
steep. The Belgae could not attack ef-
effectively on that side and would be like-
ly to leave it unguarded.

quorum adventū, "at their arrival";
an ablative of time, but with a sugges-
tion of cause as well.

4. et . . . et, "not only . . . but
also."

cum spe defensionis, "along with
the hope of (making a successful) de-
fense."

5. hostibus discessit, lit. "went
away for the enemy" = "left the enemy."
hostibus is a dative of reference. As the
idea here is one of separation, it may be
called a dative of separation.

potiundi: the older form of the ger-
undive, for potiendi. How can potior, an
intransitive verb, have a gerundive?

6. morāti, depopulati: as moror and
depopular are deponent verbs, their per-
fect participes have active meanings;
therefore they agree with the subject of
contenderunt. But as incensus is passive
in meaning, the idea "having burned
their villages" must be expressed by the
ablative absolute.

7. quō: the adverb.

8. à . . . duōbus, "less than two
miles away"; i.e. from Caesar's camp.
aē is here used adverbially; milibus is
the ablative of degree of difference, the
comparative minus not affecting the
construction. See App. 139. b: G.-L.
296, R. 4: A. 407, c: B. 217, 3: H.-B. 416, d-
H. 471, 4.

9. ut, "as."

oppidanus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum,
town], of or pertaining to a town; in pl.
as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a
town. 2.

defensiō, -ōnis, f. [defendō, de-
defend], a defending, defense. 1.

propugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend;
rush out to fight, attack. 1.

6. paulisper, adv. [paulus, little],
for a short time, for a little while. 3.

adeō, -ire, -i, -itum, tr. and intr. [eō,
go, App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

9. fumus, -i, m., smoke. 1.
10 atque ignibus significābatur, amplius milibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multītūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opinīōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotidiē tamen equestribus proelīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostri audērent, periclitābatur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse inferiōres intellēxit, locō prō castris ad aciem instruendum

10. signīficō, 1. tr. [signum, signō, faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. 4.
1. prīmō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. *
2. eximius, -a, -um, adj. [eximō, take out], taken from the mass; hence

10. milibus: ablative after the comparative amplitus. The references on 1. 8 say only that plus, minus, amplitus, and longius are not necessarily followed by the ablative.

Chap. 8. Caesar fortifies his position and prepares for battle.
1. multītūdinem: if the states sent the quotas promised in chap. 4, the total was 296,000 men; but probably not all were sent.
2. opinīōnem virtūtis, "reputation for valor."


proelīō: ablative of separation.
4. nostri: especially the Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celtic Gauls.
5. The following description is less clear than most of Caesar's descriptions of places, so that it cannot be understood without constant reference to the plan. The camp and trenches were discovered in the course of excavations made at the order of Emperor Napoleon III. The ridge on which the camp lay is about two miles in length, extending

1: H.-B. 609; 610; 613, 1: H. 623: 626.

THIRD REFERENCES:
Possessive genitive
Direct object
Ablative absolute
nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, (quod is collis ubi castra posita erant paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat quantum locī aciēs inūstrōtca occupāre poterat, atque

6. opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, opportune; lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. *
   idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. *
7. paululum, adv. [paulus, little], a very little. 1.
   plānitiēs, -ēs, f. [plānus, level], level ground, plain. 4.
   ēditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of ēdō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. 2.

nearly east and west. The camp was at the east end, facing west. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing north. Therefore the front of the camp was the west side, looking toward the battle line; but the front of the hill was the north side, looking toward the enemy. Caesar calls the north and the south slopes of the hill its latera.

locō opportūnō, "since the place was suitable." The ablative absolute here has a causal meaning.
prō castris: i.e. to the west of the camp.

6. collis is the subject of patēbat, habebat, and rédibat.
7. tantum ... poterat, lit. "extended so much opposite (to the enemy) as of space a line drawn up could fill" = "was as wide on the side facing the enemy as a battle line could extend."
   in lātitūdinem: i.e. from the camp to the west end of the hill. Perhaps we should call this the length of the hill.
8. locī: we should expect this partitive genitive to limit tantum rather than quantum.
ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in fronte lēniter
fastigātus paulātīm ad plānitiem rediēbat; ab utrāque laterē
eius collis transversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et
ad extrēmās fossās castella constituit ibique tormenta collocāvit,
nē, cum aciem instrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine
poterant, ab lateribus pignantēs suōs circumveniēre possent.

Hoc factō, duābus legionibus quās proximē conscripserat in
castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reli-

9. uterque, utraque, utrurumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two, either of two; both. *
dēiectus, -ūs, m. [dēciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. *
frōns, frontis, f., forehead; front. 3. lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly,
smoothly, gently, gradually. 2.
10. fastigātus, -a, -um, adj., sloping. 1.
paulātīm, adv. [paulus, little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *
11. transversus, -a, -um, adj. [transvertō, turn across], turned
across, cross. 1.
obdūcō, -dūcre, -düci, -ductum, tr. [dücō, lead], lead towards; extend,
dig. 1.
12. tormentum, -I, n. [torqueō, twist], means of twisting; an engine for
hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista;
windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. 3.
16. quō, adv. [old dat. case of qui, who, which], (1) interrog., whither? to
what place? (2) rel., to which, to whom;
to where, whither; toward which;
where, wherein; (3) indef., to any place,
anywhere. *
opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est,
it is necessary, there is need, the thing
needed being expressed either by the nom.
or the abl. (App. 146). *

9. ex . . . lateris, lit. “at each end of
the side” = “at each end”; i.e.
the east and west ends of the hill. utrāque
parte alone might mean either the ends
or the sides. As latus means one of the
long sides of the hill, utrāque parte lateris
must mean the ends.
in fronte: i.e. the northern slope.
10. ab utrāque latere, “on each
side”; i.e. on the northern and southern
slopes.
11. transversam, “at right angles”
to the ridge. The plan shows that one
trench ran from the camp to the Miette,
the other from the camp to the Axona.
12. extrēmās: i.e. the outer ends.
tormenta: see Int. 63.
13. instrūxisset: implied indirect
discourse for the future perfect, for Ce-
sar’s thought was “that I may not be
surrounded when I shall have drawn up
my line.”
14. ab lateribus, “on the flanks.”
The trenches protected only the right
flank of the army, but the left was suffi-
ciently protected by the Miette.
15. quās . . . conscripsert: cf. 2,
1. These legions were not sufficiently
disciplined to be brought into the battle
unless it were necessary.
16. quō: the adverb; supply düci:
“if there should be need of their being
led anywhere.”
subsidiō: dative of purpose.
quâs sex legiônës prò castris in aciè cónstituit. Hostês item suàs cópiâs ex castris eductâs instrûxérunt.

9. Palûs erat nôn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri trànsirent, hostês exsectâbant; nostri autem, sí ab illis initium trànsundî fieret, ut impeditòs aggredérentur paràtì in armìs erant. Interim proeliô equestrì inter duàs aciès contendébatur. Ûbi neutri trànsundî initium 5 faciunt, secundiôre equitum proeliô nostrîs Caesar suûs in castra redûxit. Hostês pròtinus ex eò locô ad flûmen Axonam contendérunt, quod esse post nostra castra dêmônstrâtum est. Ibi vâdis repertis partem suàrum cópiârum tràdúcere cônàti sunt, eò cónsiliô, ut, sí possent, castellum qui praerat Q. 10 Titûrius lêgátus expugnârent pontemque interscinderent; si

1. palûs, -ús, s., marsh, morass, swamp. *
3. ut: if they should begin to cross." The clause depends on "ut aggredérunt," and the subjunctive is due to implied indirect discourse; for Caesar's thought was "I will have my men ready to attack if they shall begin."
impeditòs: i.e. by crossing the marsh.

Chap. 9-11. The Belgæ return home without risking a decisive battle.

Chap. 9. Not venturing to attack Caesar, the Belgæ attempt to pass him by a ford.

6. faciunt: historical present, for the more usual perfect after ubi.
secundiôre proeliô: ablative absolute.
7. pròtinus, adv. [tenus, as far as], continuously; forthwith, immediately.
8. contendérunt: ablative of means.
9. vâdis: the probable location of these fords is shown in the plan by crossed sabres.
10. eò cónsiliô, ut, etc., "with this design, to storm, if they could, etc."
possent: implied indirect discourse for the future indicative; for they thought "we will storm if we shall be able." But praerat is indicative, because it is an explanation added by Caesar, not a part of their thought.


THIRD REFERENCE:
Ablative of means
minus putuissant, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, qui magnō nōbis ūsui ad bellum ĝerendum erant, cōmeātūque nostrōs prohibērant.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pontem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impeditōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occidērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre conantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, qui trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō

13. ego, mei (App. 51), 1st person pronoun, 3rd person plural, he, she, us, etc. *

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.


18. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.

3. ūsui esse or ex ūsū esse, be of advantage or service; ūsū venire, come by necessity, happen. *

2. levis, -e, adj., light (in weight), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant.

2. armātūra, -ae, f. [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levis armātūrae, light-armed. 2.

12. minus, "not," as usual after sē. potuissant stands for a future perfect indicative of the direct form.

populārentur, prohibērant: in the same construction as expugnārent.

Chap. 10. The Belgae are repulsed at the ford and decide to return home.

1. equitātum: the cavalry and light-armed troops were not equal to the legions in fighting power, but they could get to the ford more quickly.

3. in eō locō: i.e. at the fords.

4. nostri is the subject of occidērunt, reppulērunt, and interfēcērunt.

8. ubi introduces intelligērunt, vidērunt, and coepit.
spem sē fesellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum iniqui-
ōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vidērunt, atque ipsōs rēs 10
frumentāriā déficere coeplit, conciliō convocātō cōnstituērunt
optimum esse domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in
finēs primum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs défen-
dendōs undique convenīrent; ut potius in suis quam in aliēni
finibus dēcertārent et domesticīs copīs rei frumentāriāe üt-
entur. Ad eam sententiam cum relīquis causē haec quoque
ratīō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciācum atque Haeduōs finibus
Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. His persuādērī ut

9. fallō, fallere, fēselli, falsum, tr.,
deceive, cheat, disappoint. 2.
inquīus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+aequus,
even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; un-
favorable, disadvantageous. *
10. prōgredior, -grēdi, -grēsus
sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go
forward, advance, proceed, go. *
11. dēāciō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum,
tr. and intr. [faciō, make], fall, desert,
fall away, revolt. *
14. potius, adv. [comp. of potie,
able], rather. 2.
15. dēcertō, 1, intr. [certō, contend],
fight to the end, fight out, struggle
fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. *
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus,
house], belonging to the home, domes-
tic; in or of one's own land. 1.
16. sententia, -ae, f. [sentīō,
think], way of thinking, opinion, senti-
ment; purpose, design, scheme, plan;
decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. *
18. appropinquō, 1, intr. [ad + pro-
pinquus, near], come near or close, ap-
proach. *

9. ubi . . . intellēxērunt, lit. "when
they saw that their hope about the town
to be taken . . . had disappointed them"
= "when they saw that they were dis-
appointed in their hope of taking the
town."
neque = et non.

nostrōs . . . prōgredī: i.e. the le-
gions would not descend the hill to the
Miete.

10. ipsōs: the enemy. It requires
thorough organization to supply so large
an army. Caesar's superiority to the
Gallic leaders is always evident in this
matter no less than on the battle field.
He sometimes marched into the heart of
a hostile country, where it is hard to
see how he secured supplies; but we hear
only once of a failure to keep his army
well fed.

11. cōnstituērunt has two objects,
(1) optimum esse, "that it was best" (in-
direct discourse), and (2) (at) convenīrent,
"to assemble" (a substantive volitīve
clause).

13. intrōdūxissent: implied indirect
discourse for the future perfect indica-
tive. Their thought was "let us assem-
ble to protect those into whose territory
the Romans shall have led."
16. cum, "in addition to."
17. Diviciācum . . . appropinquāre:
in accordance with Caesar's directions
See 5, 7.

finibus: indirect object of the com-
pound verb appropinquāre.

18. his persuādērī nōn potēra, lit.
"it could not be persuaded to these." Turn
into English. It will be remem-
bered that the Bellovaci had reason to
be lukewarm in their allegiance to his
confederation. See note on 5, 7.
diūtius morārentur neque suis auxilium ferrent nōn poterat.

11. Ea rē constitūtā secundā vigilīā magnō cum strepitū
ac tumultū castris egressī nūlō certō órdine neque imperiō,
cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum
duxerant ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō
vidērētur. Hác rē statim Caesar per speculātōres cognitā

19. neque = et nōn.

Chap. 11. The Belgae are pursued with great slaughter.
1. secundā vigilīā: i.e. during the second quarter of the night. As the
nights were short, this would be between ten and twelve.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Predicate adjective
Indirect object
Partitive genitive
Ablative of agent
Gerund
Gerundive
Two objects with compound verbs
Substantive volitive (purpose) clauses
Clauses with ubi, postquam, etc.
Dependent clauses in ind. discourse
Insidiās veritas, quod quā dē causā discēnderent nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castris continuāt. Prīmā lūce confirmātā re ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, qui novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculeium Cottam lēgātōs (praefēcit) T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribūs subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs ādorī et multa mīlia pāssuum persecūtī magnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concidērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impētum nostrōrum militum sustinērunt, priorēs, quod abesse ā persiculō vidērentur neque ûllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ordinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ûllō persiculō tantam eōrum

6. perspicīō, -spiere, -spexī, -spexit, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. *

10. Aurunculus, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculeus Cotta (lū'shy'ūs aw-rūng"-kū-lē'yūs cōt'a), one of Caesar’s lieutenants. 3.

11. subsequī, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. *

13. fugīō, fugēre, fugō, fugitum, tr. and intr. [fuga, flight], intr., flee, run away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. 4.

6. quod perspexerat: a causal clause.

7. castris, "in camp"; but the absence of in shows that the construction is means, not place.

8. qui morārētur, "to delay"; a purpose clause.

11. lēgātum: see Int. 38.

subsequī: the legions could not overtake the fugitives, but if the latter stopped to resist the cavalry the legions could make short work of them.

13. fugientium, "in their flight." cōnsisterent, "since (those) in the rear, whom (our men) had overtaken, would stop." cōnsisterent, sustinērent, and pōnerent are imperfects of repeated action: all through the day the cavalry kept overtaking bodies of the enemy, who were killed in the manner described in the text.

14. ventum erat is impersonal, but, as usual, the translation must be personal.

15. priorēs, "(but) those [of the enemy] in advance."


16. neque ... neque, "and ... not ... nor."
multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt quantum fuit dieī spatium; 
sub occāsum sólis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat 
imperātum, recēpērunt.

12. Postridē eīus dieī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex 
terrōre ac fugā recipiēnt, in finēs Susēssionūm, quī proximi 
Rēmīs erant, exercītum dūxīt et māgnō itinere ad oppidum 
Noviodūnum contendīt. Id ex itinere oppugnāre conātus,

quod vacuum ab défēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem 
fossae mūrique altitūdinem paucīs défendentibus expugnāre

---

2. terror, -ōris, m. terreō, fright-en], fright, alarm, panic, terror. 2.
4. Noviodūnum, -i, n., Noviodunum (nō"vi-dū'nūm) (Be) the capital of the 
Susseniones, the modern Soissons. 1.

19. quantum . . . spatium, lit. "as 
was the length of the day" = "as the length of the day permitted."
Chap. 12-15. The Susseniones, the 
Bellovaci, and the Ambiani surrender to 
Caesar.
Chap. 12. Caesar takes the chief 
town of the Susseniones.

1. priusquam recipiēnt: mode? 
Caesar had broken up the combination of states, it only remained for him to 
subdue them one by one.

5. vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō, be 
empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, 
destitute of. 2.

audiō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō au-
diēns, obedient. *

3. magnō itinere: about 28 miles, 
Caesar recrossed the Axona and marched 
along its south bank. See map facing 
p. 162.
4. ex itinere: i.e. before making 
camp and without letting the soldiers 
rest, although they were tired after their 
unusually long march (Int. 54). Caesar 
wanted to take the town before its garr 
sion could be reinforced. On this 
method of taking towns see Int. 60.

6. paucīs défendentibus, "although 
there were but few defenders"; ablative 
absolute with adversative meaning.

---

1. strepītū, tumultū, órdine, im-
perīō; case? App. 142: G.-L 399: A. 412: 
domum: case? App. 131: G.-L. 337: 
A. 527, 2: B. 182, 1, b: H.-B. 450, b: H. 
419, 1.

5. vidērētur: mode? App. 229, b: 
G.-L. 553, 3: A. 569, 2: B. 297, 2: H.-B. 
521, 3, a: H. 571, 1.
6. diecēderent: mode? App. 262: 
G.-L. 407: A. 573: 574: B. 300, 1, a: H.-B. 
637, b: H. 649, 11.

473, 1.


440, 1.

periculō: case? App. 134: G.-L. 390, 
1: A. 400: 401: B. 214, 3: H.-B. 408, 2, a: 
H. 461.

17. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 

---

THIRD REFERENCES:
Subjective genitive
Ablative of separation
Ablative of accompaniment
Ablative of manner
Indirect question

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs primīs civitātīs atque ipsīs Galbae rēgis duōbus filiīs armāisque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditionem Suessionēs accipit exercitumque in Bellovacoīs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter 5 milia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs maiōrēs nātū ex oppidō
dō animi, courage. *

7. vīnea, -ae, f. [vīnum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. 4.
10. aggere, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; embankment, mound; rampart. *
turris, -īs, f., tower. *
11. magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (posnae); magnitū-

ones] obtained their request." The verb is used absolutely.

Chap. 13. Caesar marches against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.
1. obsidibus, "as hostages"; in apposition with primīs, which is used as a noun, and with filiīs.
2. Galbae: who had been head of the league; see 4, 20.
3. Bellovacoīs: the strongest Bel- 
gian state. For the direction of his march see map facing p. 162.
6. ex oppidō: is ex needed with this verb? See 11, 2.

THIRD REFERENCE: 
Historical present
Pró hís Diviciácuś (nam post discessum Belgárum dimissís Haeduórum cópiis ad cum reverterat) facit verba: Béllovacós ómní tempore in fídé atque amicitíá cívitásí Hæduae fuisse; (impulsós) ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Hæduóés á Caesare in servítútem redáctós omnès indignítátés contuméliásque perferre, et ab Hæduís défécisse et populó Rómanó bellum intulisse. Qui eíus cónsili principés fuissent, quod

7. tendó, tendere, tetendi, tentum or tēnēnum, tr., stretch, stretch out; extend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. 1. vóx, vócis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc.

10. puérí, "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."


1. discessum: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.


3. omní tempore fuisse, "had always been." Diviciáculus claims the Béllovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Hædui. See Int. 29.

4. impulsós ... et défécisse et intulisse, "that they [the Béllovaci] instigated ... had both revolted and made."

5. redáctós perferre, "had been reduced ... and were enduring."

7. qui, "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of pro-fugisse.

186 CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, II, 14

égressi manús ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significáre coepé-
runt, sēsē in eius fidem ac potestátém venire neque contra-
populum Rómanum armís contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum
accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, (pueri mulierésque ex mūrō)
passis manibus suō móre pācem ab Rómanís petiērunt.

14. Pró hís Diviciácuś (nam post discessum Belgárum
dimissís Haeduórum cópiis ad cum reverterat) facit verba:
Béllovacós omní tempore in fídé atque amicitíá cívitásí Hæduae
fuisse; (impulsós) ab suis principibus, qui dicerent Hæduóés á
Caesare in servítútem redáctós omnès indignítátés contuméliásque
perferre, et ab Hæduís défécisse et populó Rómanó bellum intulisse. Qui eíus cónsili principés fuissent, quod

7. vōce significáre: the Romans did not understand the language, but did understand their meaning. sēsē ... con-
tendere depends on this expression.

10. puérí, "children," both boys and girls.

ex mūrō, "on the wall." The Romans thought of the entreaties as coming "from the wall."


1. discessum: i.e. the breaking up of the great army at the Axona.


3. omní tempore fuisse, "had always been." Diviciáculus claims the Béllovaci as members of the league which was headed by the Hædui. See Int. 29.

4. impulsós ... et défécisse et intulisse, "that they [the Béllovaci] instigated ... had both revolted and made."

5. redáctós perferre, "had been reduced ... and were enduring."

7. qui, "those who." The unexpressed antecedent is the subject of pro-fugisse.

Third References:

Ablative of specification
Coordinate relative
intellegent quantum calamitatem civitati intulissent, in
Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacōs sed etiam
prō his Haeduōs ut suā clémentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs
ütātur. Quod si fecerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud
omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliis atque opibus,
si qua bella inciderint, sustentāre consuerint.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciāci atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē
eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dixit, et, quod erat
civitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multi-
tūdine praestābat, sescentōs obsidēs poposcit. His trāditīs
omnibusque armis ex oppidō collātis, ab eō locō in finēs
Ambiānōrum perveniō, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dédīde-

8. quantam intulissent: indirect question.

9. Britanniam: the relations be-
tween the Belgae and the Britons appear
to have been rather close. See 4, 19.

10. suā, "his usual."

11. quod si fecerit, "if he should do
this." The direct form meant "if you
shall have done this."

12. quōrum: the antecedent is Bel-
gās.

13. qua: the usual form of the neu-
ter plural, nominative and accusative,
when quis is used as an indefinite.

Chap. 15. Caesar accepts the sur-
render of the Bellovaci and the Ambi-
ani. The character of the Nervi.

1. honōris causā, lit. "for the sake
of the honor of..." = "in deference to..."

2. eōs, i.e. the Bellovaci, is the ob-
ject of receptūrum et cōnservātūrum (esse).

3. multitūdine: ablative of speci-
cation.

6. Ambiānōrum: see map facing p.
162.

9. profugiō, -fugere, -fugiō, -fugie-
tum, intr. [fugīō, flee], flee, flee from,
run away, escape. 4.

10. clémentiā, -ae, f. [clēmēn,
gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy,
clenency. 2.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. [mānsuētus,
tame], gentleness, clemency, compasion.

12. amplificō, 1, tr. [amplus, large+
faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase,
expand. 1.

13. incīdō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr.
[cadō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in
with, meet; happen, arise. 2.

4. sescentī, -ae, -a (DC), card. num.
adj. [sex, six], six hundred. *

6. mōra, -ae, f., delay. 3.

dēdō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō,
give], give up or over, yield, surrender;
devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender.

* REFERENCES

Dative with compound verbs
Ablative with litor, etc.
runt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiēbat: Nūllum adītum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīni reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem existimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpītāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, qui sē popūlō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ullam condicionem pācis acceptūros.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvis Sabīm flūmen a castrīs suis nōn amplius milia

9. aditus, -ūs, m. [adeō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. *

vinum, -i, n., wine. 2.

10. lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. 1.

11. relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languī, —, intr. [re-+languēscō, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. 1.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remissus, pf. part. as adj., mild. *

7. quōrum, "their."

8. nūllum . . . mercātōribus, "that traders had no access to them."

9. patī, "that (they) allowed."

vīni, rērum: partitive genitives with nihil.

10. quod existimārent: causal clause in indirect discourse.

13. dēdidissent, prōiēcissent: may have been subjunctive in the direct form.


14. cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque mis-sūrōs, "they declared that they would neither send."

Chap. 16—28. Caesar narrowly escapes defeat by the Nervii, but secures their submission after almost entirely destroying their army.

Chap. 18. The Nervii encamp at the Sābis, prepared for battle.

2. Sabīm: note the accusative in -im.


THIRD REFERENCES:

Descriptive genitives
Causal clauses with quod, etc.
passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre unā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, finītimīs suis (nam his utrisque persuāserant uti eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur) spectāri etiam ab ipsis Atuatućōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtiles vidērentur in eum locum coniēcisse quō propter palūdēs exercitū aditūs nōn esset.

17. His rebus cognitis explorātōres centarionesque prae-

For the course of the river see map facing p. 162.

For the exact location see plan, p. 191.

For the order of march see Itineris.

THIRD REFERENCES:

Indirect object with intransitive verbs

Dative of possessor
10. diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -rep-tum, tr. [rapiō, seize], rend or tear
asunder; plunder, pilage. 1.
11. adiuvō, -iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; con-
tribute to, support. 1.
14. quisquis, quicquid, indef. (or
generalizing) rel. pron. (App. 60, a), who-
evertheless. 1.
pedester, -tris, -tre, adj. [pēs, foot].

on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cópiae, infantry. *

15. prædor, i, tr. [praeda, booty],
make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *
16. tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender.
arbor, -oris, f., tree. 2.
incidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, tr.
[caedō, cut], cut into. 1.

7. impedimentōrūm: see Int. 46.
numerus, “amount.” Caesar is think-
ing of the number of pack animals.
8. neque . . . negōtī, “and that it
would be [lit. was] no trouble.”
cæstra, “camping-ground.”
9. vēnissent, abessent: indirect dis-
course for the future perfect and the fu-
ture, respectively. The direct form
meant “when . . . shall have come and
. . . shall he be distant.”
spatium: accusative of extent of
space.
10. sarcinis: see Int. 37.
11. futūrum (esse) ut, “the result
would be that.” This clause is connect-
ed with the preceding by a relative, so
that it appears to be a subordinate clause
in indirect discourse. Why is the in-
finitive used instead of the subjunctive?
App. 269, a: G.-L. 635: A. 588, b: B. 814, 4:
H.-B. 535, 1; b: H. 643, 1.
adiuvābat: the subject is the clause
quod . . . effecerat; “the fact that the
Nervil had made, etc., assisted.”

334, R. 1: A. 390, c: B. 175, 2, b: H.-B. 387,
III: H. 416, 2.
14. ei rei: i.e. cavalry.
quicquid . . . cópīs, “whatever
strength they have consists in infan-
try.”
15. quō impedirent: a purpose
clause. Why is not ut used? App. 235,
a, 2: G.-L. 545, 2: A. 531, a: B. 282, a:
16. vēnissent: implied indirect dis-
course for the future perfect Indicative.
Their thought was “that we may check
the cavalry if they shall have come.”
teneris . . . interiectīs: a row of
young trees was planted around a field;
their trunks were partly cut through
(incisīs) and their tops bent over (inflex-
īs). The tops would then continue grow-
ing slowly, and many branches would
spring out from the sides of the trunk
below the cut (crēbris . . . ēnālis). In
all thin spots bramble bushes were plant-
ed (rubīs . . . interiectīs).
inflexis, crēbrisque in latitūdinem rāmis ēnātis, et rubis sentībusque interiectīs, effecerant ut instar mūrī hae saēpes mūni-
menta praebērent quà nōn modo nōn intrāri, sed nē per-
spicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agmini nostri 20

17. rāmus, -ī, m., branch, bough. 1. ēnāscor, -nāsci, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. 1. rubus, -ī, m., bramble. 1. sentis, -is, m., briar. 1. 18. intericiō, -icere, -iectum, tr. [iacio, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; inter-
ectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī

interiectō spatīō, not far away. 4. instar, n., indecl., likeness; with gen., like. 1. saēpes, -is, f., hedge. 2. mūnimentum, -ī, n. [mūniō, fortify], defense, fortification. 1. 19. praebō, 2, tr. [praē habēō, hold], hold out, offer, furnish, present. 3. intro, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. 1.

Battle on the Sabis

18. effecerant ut praebērent, "they had made these hedges furnish." 19. quō . . . posset: a clause of characteristic. Translate personally, " into which one not only could not penetrate, but could not even see."
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, II, 18

18. Locē nātūra erat haec quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequālīter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabīm, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitātē collis nāscēbātur adversus hūc et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfinūs apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn fācile ĵntrōrus perspicī possēt. Intrā eōs silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē contīnebant; in aperto locō secun-

21. omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -mīsīv, -missum, tr. [ob-mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. 1.

2. aequālīter, adv. [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. 1.

dēclīvis, -e, adj. [clāvis, a slope], sloping downward, declining; n. pl. as noun, slopes. 2.

3. nōminō, 1, tr. [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. 1.

4. acclīvitās, -tātis, f. [acclīvis, ascending], ascent, slope. 1.

nasō, nāsci, nātus sum, intr., be born or produced; rise, spring up, be reared; be found. 3.

contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite. facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. 3.

silvestris, -e, adj. [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. 1.

intrōrus, adv. [intrō, within, versus, pf. part. of vertō, turn], within, on the inside. 1.

occultus, -a, -ūm, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. 2.

secundum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. 3.

Chap. 18. Description of the battlefield.

1. haec, "as follows." locum: omit in translation.
nōstī: i.e. the scouts and centurions who had been sent on ahead; 17, 1.

collis: north of the river.

2. déligant: tense? App. 202; 203; 204, b: G.-L. 569, 1, 2, 1, a; 510: A. 482; 483; 485, e: B. 267; 208, 3: H.-B. 475; 491, 1, 2: H. 543; 544; 546.


dum flumen pancae statio<es> equitum vid<ebantur. Fluminis erat altitud<o pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemiss<o subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed rati<o ord<oque agminis alius <e habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquabat, consuetudine su<<a Caesar sex legiones expeditas duc<ebat; post e<nis totius exercitus impedimenta collo<erat; inde duae legiones quae proxim<e conscriptae erant totum agmen claud<ebant praesi<dioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittar<iss<ue flumen transgressi cum hostium equitat< proelium commi<erunt. Cum s< illi identidem in silv< ad suos recip<erent ac rursus ex silv< in nostr< impetus facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta perti-

3. statio, -onis, f. [st<, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentin<es, pickets, out<posts; in statione esse, be on guard. 4.
2. aliter, adv. [alius, other], otherwise; aliter ... ac, otherwise ... than. 2.
8. transgredior, -gredi, -gressus

sum, tr. [gradior, step], step over, cross. 1.
9. identidem, adv. [idem, the same], repeatedly. 1.
11. porrig<, -rigere, -rex<, -rectum, tr. [pro+-reg<, keep straight], extend; porrectus, pf. part. as adj., extended, in extent. 1.

d<us is thought of as a single idea, almost "method of arrangement." 4.
expeditas, "without baggage"; whereas the Nervi< had been told that each legion would be separated from the next by a long train of baggage.

6. legio<es ... conscriptae erant: as the enemy was known to be in front, Caesar did not expect these legions to be attacked. The same legions were left in camp at the Axona; 8, 15.
10. recip<erent, facerent, "kept retiring, kept making." 11. longi<us ... finem, "than the limit to which." Our idiom would lead


THIRD REFERENCES:
Place to which
Descriptive ablative
Adjectives with partitive meaning
nēbant cēdentēs insēquī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex quae primae vēnerant opere dimēnsō castra mūnire coēpērunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercītūs ab iīs qui in silvīs abditī latēbant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ērdīnsque consīstent eōs prōvōlāvērunt impetumque in nostros equītēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsiōs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdībili celeritāte ad flūmen dēcūrrō rērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine hostēs vidērunt. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs qui in opere occupātī erant contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vexillum

12. cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way. yield. retreat. 2.
13. dimētīōr, -mētīrī, -mēnus sum, tr. [metior, measure], measure out or off. 2.
15. lātō, -ēre, -ui, — intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. 2.
17. subītō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

us to expect ad finem, ad quem, but the antecedent is attracted into the relative clause.

porrēcta pertinēbant, lit. "extended stretched out" = "extended." The whole clause quem ... pertinēbant means "to the edge of the woods."

12. cēdentēs: sc. eōs; i.e. the enemy.
13. dimēnsō: this is one of a few deponent verbs whose perfect participles have a passive meaning.
14. prima impedimenta, "the head of the baggage train."
15. quod tempus, "the time which."
16. convēnerat, "had been agreed upon."

ut ... ipsi sēsē confirmāverant, "as ... they had pledged each other

19. prōvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush forth. 1.
20. ut vidērunt: a result clause.
21. adversō colle, lit. "by way of the hill facing them" = "up the hill." For the case of colle, see App. 144: G.-L. 389: A. 429, a: B. 218, 9: H.-B. 426, a: H. 476.
22. omers: i.e. of fortifying the camp.

The attack was a complete surprise. The Roman scouts had not done their work properly, and Caesar himself appears to have been careless in not keeping a part of his men under arms while the enemy were so near.

Chap. 20. The critical position of the Romans, and the value of their discipline.

1. Caesarī omnia erant agenda,


THIRD REFERENCES:

Double dative

Ablative of accordance
prōpōnendum, quod erat insigne cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocāndī militēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendi causā prōcesserant arcessendi, aciēs instruenda, militēs cohortandi, signum dandum. Quārum 5 rerum magnam partem brevitās et incursus hostium impedīēbat. His difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque īsus militum, quod, superiōribus proeliīs exercitāti, quid fieri oportēret nōn minus commodē īpsi sī praescribere quam ab aliīs docēri poterant; et quod ab opere singulīsque 10 legionibus (singulōs) īgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītis castrīs

2. concurrŏ, -currere, -currī, -currūsum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. 2.
3. tuba, -ae, f., trumpet. 1.
4. paulō, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *
5. prōcedēre, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. *
6. brevitās, -tātis, f. [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. 2.
7. incursus, -ūs, m. [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. 1.
8. exercitātus, -ātus, -ātum, adj. [pf. part. of exercītō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2.
9. praescribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. 3.

lit. “all things had to be done by Caesar” = “Caesar had to do everything.”

vexillum: a red banner which was displayed in front of the general’s headquarters.

prōpōnendum: supply erat. Similarly supply erat or erant with each of the future passive participles which follow.

3. signum: to form ranks.
4. paulō longius, “a little too far.”
5. aggeris: here the materials for building the rampart, especially timber; for the sod and earth were taken from the trench on the spot. See p. 30, fig. 5.
6. arcessendi: by messengers.
7. signum: here the signal for the attack.
8. duae rēs: explained by two appositives, first, scientia atque īsus, “the theoretical and practical knowledge of the soldiers”; second, quod . . . vetuerat (1. 10), “the fact that Caesar had forbidden, etc.”
9. quid fieri oportēret, “what ought to be done”; an indirect question, object of praescribere.
10. ab singulis . . . discēdērē, “each legate to leave a particular legion.” It is not quite correct to translate “leave his legion,” because the legates did not have permanent commands. See Int. 38.
11. nisi mūnītis castrīs, lit. “unless the camp having been fortified” = “until the camp had been fortified.”
vetuerat. Hí propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabat, sed per se quae vidēbantur administrābant.

21. Caesar necessariis rēbus imperātis ad cohōrandos militēs quam in partem fors obtulit dēcucurrit, et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Militēs nōn longiōre orātīone cohōrītus quam "utī suae pristinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant quam quō tērum adigi posset, proēi committēndi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohōrandī causā prefactus pugnantibus occurrit. Temp-

| 12. vetō, -āre, -ul, -itum, tr., forhild. | 14. administrō, 1, tr. [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. * |
| 14. administrō, 1, tr. [minister, servant], serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. * |


1. ad . . . militēs: with dēcucurrit.
2. quam in partem = in eam partem in quam. Cf. note on 19, 11.

3. nōn longiōre orātīone quam utī, "with a speech no longer than (this:) that they should, etc."


4. neu: the regular expression for "and not" in substantive volitive (purpose) clauses.

5. quod aberant: a causal clause, explaining signum dedit.


7. in alteram partem: the right wing. See plan.

8. pugnantibus occurrit, "he found (them already) fighting."
poris tanta fuit exigitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dimicandum animus ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtisque tegmenta dētrahenda, tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaēque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendis suis pugnaīdi tempus dīmitteret.

22. Instrucō exercītū magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessātās temporis quam ut reī militāris ratiō atque ērō postulābat, cum diversae legiōnēs aliae alīā in parte hostibus

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -trac-tum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. 4.
12. dēsum, deesse, dēfui, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fall. *
13. cōnspicīō, -spicērs, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look at, observe, deścry, perceive. *
3. diversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. 3.

quam in partem, "to whatever place."

13. quaēque ... cōnspexit, "and whatever standards he saw first." On the importance of the standards see Int. 44.

14. suis: sc. signīs.

Chap. 22. Caesar cannot plan the battle as a whole.
1. ut, "as."
2. reī ... ērō, lit. "the theory and arrangement of military matters" = "the theory of military tactics." When he could, Caesar drew up his army in three unbroken lines, the third of which acted as a reserve force to meet emergencies.
3. cum ... resisterent ... impe-


570.

Third References:
Objective genitive
Result clause
Clause of characteristic
registerent, saepibusque dēnsissimis, ut ante dēmonstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impēdirētur, neque certa subsidia collocāri neque (quid in quāque parte opus esset) prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrāri poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum iniquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae militēs, ut in sinistrā parte acıē cōnstiterant, pilīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine ēxanimātōs vulneribusquē cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flāmen computērunt, et trānsīre

4. dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed, thick, dense. 3.
5. prōspectus, -ūs, m. [prōspiciō, look forth], view, prospect; sight. 1.
6. prōvidēō,-vidēre,-vīdī,-visum, tr. [videō, see], see beforehand, foresee; care for, provide. *
8. iniquitās, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. 2.
9. ēventus, -ūs, m. [ěvenīō, turn out], outcome, issue, result, consequence. 3.
10. varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. 1.
11. nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. 2.

dēnāturus gives the reason for the main clause, neque . . . poterant.

diversae, lit. “separated” = “separately.”

āllae . . . parte, “some in one place, others in another.”

4. ante: see 17, 12-20.
5. interiectīs, “which intervened.”

neque: the principal clause begins here.
certa, lit. “sure” = “so that they could be counted on.”

6. quid . . . esset: an indirect question, subject of prōvidērī (poterat).


7. in . . . iniquitāte, “in such a diversity of circumstances.”

2. cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. *

lassitūdō, -inis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2.

exanimō, 1, tr. [āнима, breath], deprive of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. 2.

3. obveniō, -venire, -vēni, -venītum, intr. [venīō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. 1.

4. compellēō, -pellere, -pulī,-pulīsum, tr. [pellīō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. 1.

8. fortūnae: genitive limiting evenūs.

Chap. 23. The left wing repulses the Atrebates, the center repulses the Viromandui, and the Nervii attack the right wing.

1. nōnae et decimae: these legions were commanded by Labienus.


pilīs: see Int. 36, a.

cursū: the Atrebates had run a mile, much of it uphill.

cursū . . . cōnfectōs: translate after Atrebātēs.

3. ea pars: the left wing of the Romans.


THIRD REFERENCE:
Cum causal
cōnāntēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem ejusm impeditam interfēcérunt. Ipsī trānsire flūmen non dubitāvérunt, et in locum inīquum progressī rūrsus resistēntēs hostēs redintegrātō proelīō in fugam coniēcérunt. Item āliā in parte diversae duae legiōnēs, undecima et octāva, prōfligātīs Viromandūis, quibus-cum erant congressae, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis ripīs proeliābantur. At totīs fērē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextro cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eō intervallō septima conśtituēt, omnēs Nervīi confertissimō āgmine ducē Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eūm locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumveniēre, pars summūm castrōrum locum petēre coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equītes nostri levisque armātūrāe

5. cōnāntēs, "as they [the Atrebatae] were trying."

6. ipsī: the Romans of the left wing.

7. locum inīquum: up the hill south of the river. This gave the enemy the advantage of position.

10. ex locō superiōre, "(having come down) from their higher position."


 omnēs Nervīi: 60,000 in number.

14. ducē Boduognātō, "under the leadership of Boduognatus." Ablative absolute.

summam: the noun.

15. ab apertō latere: the right flank, because the shields were carried on the left arm. The part which pushed on for the camp passed the Roman left flank. Others, of course, attacked in front.

16. summum . . locum, lit. "the highest place belonging to the camp" = "the height on which the camp stood."

Chap. 24. The panic of the auxiliaries and the camp servants.

1. We expect Caesar to tell us at once of the fortunes of the 7th and 12th legions, but he pauses to give a vivid
peditēs, qui cum iis ūnā fuerant, quōs primō hostium impētū pulsēs dixeram, cum sē in castra recipērent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrūs aliam in partem fugam petēbant; et 5 cālōnēs, qui ab decumānā portā ac summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen transisse cōnspererant, praeceps causā egressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versāri vidēsant, praecepitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum qui cum impedimentīs veniebant clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, alique aliam in partem perterrītī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equītēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtīs opīniō est singulāris, qui (auxili causa) á cīvitāte missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdīne hostium castra complērī, legiōnēs

picture of the panic elsewhere, a panic which seemed to foretell the complete destruction of the Roman army.

levis armātūrae: a descriptive genitive. The reference is to the slingers and archers of 19, 7. 2. fīs: the cavalry.

fuerant: before their repulse.

quōe pulsēs dixeram, lit. "whom I had said to have been routed" = "who, as I said, had been routed." quōs refers to both equītēs and peditēs. dixī would be more natural and more usual than dixeram.

3. adversīs, "face to face." Evidently they had made a circuit and were entering the camp by the east gate just as the Belgae were entering by the west.
premi et paene circumventās tenērī, calōnēs, equitēs, fundi-
tōrēs, Numidās diversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere 15
vidissent, despērātis nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt;
Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedimentīsque eōrum
hostēs pōtītōs civitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum
cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgerī signisque in ūnum locum
collātīs duodecimae legiōnis confertōs militēs sībi ipsōs ad
pugnam esse impedimentō vidit, quārtae cohortis omnibus
(centurīonibus) officis, signifiō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquā-
rum cohortium omnibus fērē centurīonibus aut vulnerātīs aut

hard; oppress, burden, annoy, harass. * 15. dissipō, 1, tr., spread on all sides,
scatter, disperse. 1.
1. cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. 1.
5. signifer, -eri, m. [signum, standard + ferō, bear], standard-bearer. 1.
16. despērātis, "despairing of."
17. castrīs: what deponent verbs
govern the ablative?

Chap. 25. Caesar finds the 7th and
12th legions in desperate straits, and
reanimates them by his valor.

1. Caesar: subject of prōcessit (l. 15)
and iussit (l. 16). This is an excellent
Latin "period," with the subject first,
the subordinate clauses in the middle,
and the principal verbs toward the end.
The sentence is not hard to understand
in its Latin order, and is very effective;
for the mass of subordinate clauses rep-
resents the impression made on Caesar
when he saw all at once the many details
of the fearful struggle. But it is hard
to translate effectively, because such a
sentence is intolerable in English. After
the pupil thoroughly understands the
sentence he should translate it very
freely, breaking it up into a number of
short sentences. Each of the following
groups of words may be turned into a
sentence, or two or more may be com-
bined: Caesar ... profectus; ubi ... ur-
geō; signis ... vidit; quārtae ... āmis-
sō; reliquārum ... occīsis; in his ...
posset; reliquis ... vitēre; hostēs ... 1.
Instāre; et ... posset; scūtō ... prōces-
sit; centurīonibus ... possemt.
cohortātiōne: cf. 21, 2.
2. ubi, "when"; with vidit, l. 4,
which is repeated in l. 12.
urgerē: this and most of the other
infinitives before the end of l. 12 depend
on vidit. Other dependent ideas are ex-
pressed by the ablative absolute.
signis collātīs: the position of the
standards regulated the position of the
cohorts. As the standards were now
huddled together, the soldiers naturally
crowded together.
3. sībi ... impedimentō, lit. "were
themselves for a hindrance to them-
selves for fighting" = "hindered one an-
other in fighting."
4. quārtae cohortis: this cohort had
suffered especially, because it was sta-
tioned at the left end of the front line.
5. signō āmissō: regarded as a great
disgrace.
occisis, in his (primipilō) P. Sextii Baculō, fortissimō virō, multipīs gravibusque vulneribus confectō, ut iam sē sustinēre non posset, reliquōs esse tardiorēs et non nūllos ab novissimīs deserētō locō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vitāre, hostēs neque à fronte ex inferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque laterē instāre, et rem esse in angustō vidit neque āūlum esse subsidium quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs militīs detractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in primam aciem processīs centurionibusque nōminātīs reliquōs cohortātus militēs signa inferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius gladiīs utī possent. Cuius adventū spē illātā militibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in conspectū imper-

7. primipilus, -ī, m. [primus, first + pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.

Sextius, -ī, m., Publius Sextius Bacculus (pūb'ūlūs sēk'stī-ūs bāk'ū-lūs), a centurion in Caesar’s army. 2.

vir, virī, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. *

9. tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish. 1.

10. déserō, -serere, -serui, -serītum, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoin; abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. 3.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go, go out or away; withdraw, retire. *

16. manipulus, -ī, m. [manus, hand + pleō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard), a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), manipile. 1.

laxō, l. tr., stretch out, extend, open. 1.

18. imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō command], commander-in-chief, general. *

7. primipilō: see Int. 42.

8. multis gravibusque, “many severe.” When multī and another adjective modify the same noun, the two adjectives are usually connected by et or que.

sē eustinēre, “stand on his feet.”

9. ab novissimīs, “in the rear.”

10. désertō locō, “deserting their posts.”

tēla vitāre, “were getting out of the range of missiles.”

neque . . . et, “not . . . and.”

12. rem . . . angustō, “and affairs were in a critical condition.”

vidit: simply repeats the vidit of l. 4.


scūtō detractō, “snatching a shield.”

Here begins Caesar’s action.

militīs: dative of separation.

14. eō: the adverb.

15. signa . . . laxāre, “to advance and (by so doing) to open out the ranks.”

quō: cf. note on 17, 18.

17. spē . . . animō, “hope was inspired in the soldiers, and their courage renewed.”

18. prō sē, lit. “in proportion to himself” = “to the best of his ability.”
rātōris etiam in extrēmis suis rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnsitterat, iem urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribūnōs militum monuit ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa signa in hostēs inferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent ne āversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērent. Interim militēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine prāesidīō impedimentis fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciebantur; et T. Labienus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gerērentur cōnspicātus decimam legiōnem subsidīō nostrīs misit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōrum fugā quō in locō rēs esset quantōque in periculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versā-

19. opera, -ae, s. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. 1.

nāvō, l. tr., do zealously or well. 1.

20. paulum, adv. [paulus, little], a little, somewhat, slightly. *

tardō, l. tr. [tardus, slow], make slow, delay; hinder, check. 1.

1. iūxtā, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. 1.

2. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or miliāris, a military tribune. *

19. etiam . . . rēbus, "even in his own extreme danger."

Chap. 26. The 7th and 12th legions fight more successfully, and three other legions come to their rescue.

1. iūxtā: i.e. near the 12th legion, in whose ranks Caesar was fighting.

cōnsiterat, "had taken its position." Distinguish carefully between cōnsistō and cōnsītūrō.

2. tribūnōs: see Int. 41.

3. sēsē coniungerent: i.e. to close up the gap between them.

conversa signa inferrent, "to face about and attack." Of course only a part of the Romans were to face about. Probably the rear line faced about, and the cohorts at the ends of the line wheeled half around. Thus an oblong would be formed, facing the enemy on every side.

4. cum . . . ferret, "since they protected one another."

5. timērent: agreeing with miliātē, which is implied in alius aliī. āversā, "in the rear."

7. quae . . . fuerant: cf. 19, 5.

8. proeliō . . . incitātō, "quickening their step on hearing of the battle."

colle: at the rear of the Roman camp.


10. quae rēs gerērentur: indirect question.

11. qui cum, "when they"; i.e. the soldiers of the 10th legion.

12. quō in locō, "in what condition."

rētur cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliqui fēcérunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commutātiō est facta ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus conspectī prōduquissent, scūtīs innixī proelium redintegrārent; cālōnēs perterritīs hostēs conspicāti etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent; equītēs vōrō, ut turpītūdinem fugae virtūte délērent, omnibus in locīs pugnandō sē legionāriīs miliībus praerueissent. At hostēs etiam in extremā spē salūtīs tantam virtūtem praestītērunt ut, cum prīmi eōrum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnāreant; hīs dēiectis et coacervātīs cadāveribus, qui superesserunt ut ex tumulō tēla in nostros conicerent et pilā inter-

2. prōcumbō, -umbere, -cubui, -cubītum, intr. [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. 2.

3. innitor, -nīti, -nīxus sum, intr. [nītō, rest on], lean upon. 1.

4. inermēs, e, adj. [in + arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. 3.

5. turpītūdō, -inis, f. [turpis, disgraceful], disgrace. 1.

dēleo, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētum, tr., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. 1.

8. legionārius, -a, -um, adj. [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. 4.

14. nihil . . . fēcérunt, lit. "made nothing of a remainder as regards speed" = "made all possible speed." This legion fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

Chap. 27. The Nervii are slain, fighting desperately.


praerē, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, tr. [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praerēre ad alci, surpass. 1.

8. iaceō, iacēre, iacui, —, intr., lie; lie slain. 1.

insistō, -sisterē, -stīti, —, tr. and intr. [sistō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with rationem, adopt, use. 4.

9. coacervō, i, [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. 1.

cadāver, -eris, n. [cadō, fall], a fallen or dead body, corpse. 1.

10. tumultus, -i, m. [tumēō, swell],

4. inermēs . . . occurrerent, "(though) unarmed, attacked the armed (enemy)."

6. etiam . . . salūtīs, "even at the end of their hope of safety"; i.e. even in their extreme danger.

8. proximī . . . insisterent, "the next stood upon them as they lay prostrate."

9. his: i.e. proximī.

qui superesserunt: cf. note on qui, 1, 2.

10. ut ex tumulō, "as if from a mound."

conicerent: result. The force of ut (l. 7) still continues.

cepta remitterent: ut non néquiquam tantae viribus hominēs iūdicāri dēbēret ausōs esse trānsire lātissimum flūmen, ascen- dere altissimās ripās, subire inīquissimum locum; quae facilīa ex difficillimīs animi magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hoc proeliō factō et prope ad internecionem gente ac nōmine Nervīorum redāctō, maiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palādēs coniectōs dixerā- mus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impēditum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium qui supererant cōn- sānsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem misērant séque ei dēdīderunt; e', in commemorandā cīvitātīs calamitāte, ex sescentīs ad trūs senātōrīs, ex homīnīm mīlibus LX vīx ad quīngentōs qui arma forre possent sōsē redāctōs esse dixerunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miscrōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, diligentissimē

swelling; mound, hill. 4.

interciπiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capio, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; inter- cept, cut off. 1.

11. néquiquam, adv. [nē+-qu(d)-quam, anything], in vain, to no pur- pose. 1.

1. gēns, gentis, f., race, clau, tribe, people. 3.

3. aestuārīum, -ri, n. [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2.

5. cōnsēnsus, -ns, m. [consentiō, agree], united opinion, agreement, consent; coalition. 3.

8. senātor, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder, senator. 1.

10. miser, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortu- nate; poor, worthless. 2.

supplex, -licis, m. and f., supplicant. 1.

11. ut . . . dēbēret, "so that it must be believed that not without prospects of success had men, etc.": i.e. they were so brave that they had a right to expect success.

13. altissimās: at the point where the Nervī crossed, the bank of the river is higher and steeper than elsewhere.

quae, "deeds which": i.e. those summed up in the preceding infinitives.

14. ex, "instead of."

Chap. 28. The survivors submit to Caesar.

2. quōs coniectōs dixerāmus, "who, as I have said, had been, etc.": cf. note on 24, 2.

4. victōribus . . . tūtum, "that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing safe for the conquered."

5. qui supererant: compare qui su- peressent, 27, 9. This clause has pre- cisely the same meaning, but does not depend on a subjunctive.

8. vīx ad quīngentōs: this has been considered an exaggeration, because the Nervī revolted again three years later, and put 5,000 men in the field two years after that. But in so large a state there must have been thousands of boys too young to fight in the present battle, but old enough to fight a few years later.

qui possent: a clause of characteris- tic, and therefore subjunctive in the di- rect discourse.

9. ut . . . vidērētur, "that he might be seen to have shown mercy, etc."
conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit, et finitimis imperavit ut ab iniuriâ et maleficiō sō suōsque prohiberent.

29. Atuatuci, dē quibus suprā scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxiliō Nerviōs venirent, hāc pugnā nuntiātā ex itinere domum revertērant; cunctis oppidīs castellisque désertīs sua omnī in unum oppidum egregiō nātūrā mūnitum contulērant.

Quod cum ex omnibus in circītū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūs habērēt, ūnā ex parte lēnit acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem (nōn amplius) ducentūrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplici altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.īpsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīisque prōgnātī, qui, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iīs impedimentīs quae

misericordia, -ae, f. [misericōr, pity + +cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. 1.
1. scribē, scribere, scripsī, scriptūm, ēr., write, record or make mention in writing. 1.
3. cūctus, -a, -um, adj. [for con- finctus, joined together], all together, all. 1.
4. egregiē, adv. [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 1.
5. rūpēs, -is, f., rock, cliff. 1.
acclīvis, -e, adj. [ad+clīvus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. 2.
8. duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two+ plicō, fold], twofold, double. 2.
saxum, -ī, n., rock, large stone. 2.
praeacūtus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of praeacuō, sharpen at the end], sharp in front or at the end, sharpened, pointed. 3.
trabs, trābis, f., beam, timber, pile. 3.
10. prōgnātus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be born], born: descended, sprung. 1.

11. iussit, imperāvit: the sentence illustrates well the contrasting constructions with these verbs. ubeō regularly governs an accusative and infinitive; imperā, the dative with ut and the sub-junctive.

Chap. 29-33. Caesar subdues the Atuatuci.

Chap. 29. The Atuatuci take refuge in a stronghold. Their origin.
1. suprā: in 16, 7. cum venirent, “while coming.” omnibus copiis: ablative of manner. Such ablatives are often called “military accompaniment,” but it is not logical to say that the Atuatuci came in company with themselves.
4. oppidum: for its probable location see map facing p. 162.
5. quod cum, “although this town.” ex . . . partibus, “at all (other) points in its circumference,” or simply “on all (other) sides.”
6. ducentūrum pedum: descriptive genitive, modifying aditus. The comparative minus has no effect on the construction; cf. note on milia, 16, 2.
8. duplici mūrō: see plan, p. 207.
tum: at the time of Caesar’s approach.
sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs, custōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia homīnum

13. custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], custody, guard (state of being guarded); *pl.*, guards, keepers.

The Town of the Atuatuci

12. agere ac portāre, "to drive and to carry"; for impedimenta here means "possessions" rather than "baggage," and includes cattle.

citrā: the west side.

13. custōdiam . . . reliquerant, lit. "had left along (with their possessions) a guard of their (men) and a garrison, six thousand men (in all)."
ūnā reliquerant. Hi post eorum obitum multōs annōs a
ś infinitīmīs exagītāti, cum allās bellum īnterret, allās illātum
defenderent, consēnsu eorum omnium pace factā hunc sibi
domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Ac primō adventū exercitus nostri crēbrās ex oppidō
excurrōnes faciēbant parvulīque proelīs cum nostri contra
tendēbant; postea vallō pedum XII in circuitū XV milium crē-
brisque castellis circummūnīti oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubī
t vineis āclʾs aggerē extrūctō turriā procul consīstitū vidērunt,
primum irridēre ex mūrō atque incρεpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta

14. eōrum: the main bodies of the
Cimbrī and Teutōn.

15. cum . . . dēfenderent: some cum
clauses are best translated by partici-
pies; so here, "sometimes making war,
sometimes defending themselves against
war made on them," lit. "when they
. . . warded off war made (on them)."

18. consēnsu . . . factā, "peace was
made by common consent, and." ēōrum
refers to both the Atuatucl and their
neighbors.

hunc locum: the whole tract of coun-
try occupied by the Atuatucl at this
time.

Chap. 30. The Atuatucl scorn
the Roman preparations for attack.

2. faciēbant, "kept making": im-
perfect of repeated action.

386, n. 1: A. 403, a, n. 1: B. 215, 2: H.-B.
413, b: H. 469, 1.

sortie. 1.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of par-
vus, little], small, insignificant, slight;
parvula proelīa, skirmishers; parvulī,
children. 1.

4. circummūnīō, 4. tr. [mūnīō, for-
tify], wall around; fortify, protect. 1.

5. extrū, -struere, -struxi,
-structum, tr. [struō, build], build or
pile up, rear, construct, build. 2.

procul, adv., afar off, from afar, in
the distance, at a distance. 2.

6. irrideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum,
intr. [in-ridēō, laugh], laugh, jeer. 1.

3. pedum XII: in height.

XV milium: supply pedum as a parti-
tive genitive; "(of) 15,000 feet in cir-
cumference"; i.e. three miles. The plan
shows that the wall did not cross the
river, which itself forms a sufficient ob-
stacle.

4. oppidō: ablative of means, but to
be translated as if an ablative of place.

5. vineis, aggere, turriā: see Int.
61; 62, d. The vineae afforded shelter to
the soldiers who made the agger. In
this case the agger was intended only
as a roadway up which to push the
tower.

8. irrideō: on this use of the infinitive
see App. 381: G.-L. 647: A. 463: B.
335; H.-B. 595: H. 610.

māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō instituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs praē magnitudīne corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptūi est) tanti oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnſiderent?

31. Ubi vērō movērī et approquināre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē cōmmōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dé ūcē misērunt, qui ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē existimāre

| 7. māchinātiō, -ōnis, f. [māchinor, contrive], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. | of; on account of; in comparison with; in composition, before, at the head of, in front, very. |
| tantalus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of tantus, so great], so small or little, so diminutive; trifling. 2. | ozus, -tris, n., load, burden; weight, size. 4. |
| statūra, -ae, f. [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. 1. | 2. inūsitātus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + ûsitātus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3. |
| plērumque, adv. [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very often. | speciēs, -ī, f. [specīo, see], seeing, sight; look, appearance, show, pretense. 4. |
| * prae, prep. with abl., before, in front | 3. modus, -I, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modō, of such a kind, such; abl., modō, with gen., in the character of, like. *


8. hominēs: in apposition with the subject of cōnfiderent; "especially (as they were) men, etc." 10. contemptuī est, "is an object of contempt."

Rōmānōs sine ope divinā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dixērunt. 5 Ūnum petere ac dēprecāri: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliis aūdīre, statuisset Atuatcōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sībi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimicōs ac suae virtūtē invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditis armīs nōn possent. 10 Sībi præstāre, sī in eum cāsum dēduce- rentur, quamvis fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruçiatūm interīeri inter quōs domināri cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī priusquam

4. divinus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divīne], of the gods, divine, sacred. 1.
5. prōmovē-, mōvē-, mōvī-, mō-tum, tr. [moveō, move], move forward, advance, push forward. 2.
7. dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. 2.
9. dēspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], deprive. 1.
10. invidē-, -vidērēs, -vidī-, -vidum, intr. [vidēo, see]. look askance at; envy. 1.
12. quīvis, quaēvis, quīdvis, and quīvis, quaēvis, quodvis, indef. pron. (App. 62) [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom or what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3.
13. cruciātus, -ūs, m. [cruciō, torture; crux, cross], torture, torment. * dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. 1.

4. qui possent, “since they could,” may have been subjunctive in the direct form; App. 245: G.-L. 633: A. 535, e: B. 283, 3: H.-B. 523: H. 592.
6. ūnum, “one favor”; i.e. nē... dēspoliāret.
7. sī statuisset, “if he should decide.” The direct form used the future perfect indicative; lit. “if you shall have decided.”
prō, “in accordance with.”
quam audīre, “of which they kept hearing.”
9. nē dēspoliāret: the original form was probably nōt dēspoliāret; App. 219;
267: G.-L. 271, 2; 652: A. 450; 588: B. 276;

9. sibi: case? App. 120: G.-L. 350, 2:


THIRD REFERENCES:
Passive periphrastic conjugation
Dative of reference
mūrum ariēs attigisset sē dēdidissent; sed dēditionis nūllam esse condicionem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id quod in Nerviis fēcisset factūrum, fīnītīmisque imperātūrum nē quam dēditio-5 ciūs populi Rōmānī iniūriam īnterrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multi-
tūdine dē mūrō in fossam quae erat ante oppidum iactā, sic ut prope summam mūri aggerisque altitudinem aequī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut postea perspec-
tum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eo die pāce sunt īsi.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudiī militēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā militibus iniū-
riam acciperent. Ilī ante inītō, ut intellectum est, consiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum īs quae reti-

3. ariēs, ariēsī, m., a ram; batters-
ing-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, butt-
tress. 2.

9. acervus, -ī, m., a heap, mass. 1.

10. adaequō, 1, tr. [aequō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. 3.

3. ariēs: see Int. 63, c. Apparently in this case the battering-ram was hung in the lowest story of the tower.

attigisset, dēdidissent represent future perfect indicatives of the direct form.

4. nisi armīs trāditīs: cf. 20, 11, note.
in, in the case of.”

5. factūrum...que imperātūrum, “he would do... and would command” means “he would do...; namely, he would command.”

6. rē, “answer.”

7. facere: we might expect a future infinitive; but the envoys return and say that the people are already execut-
ing his commands.

Caesar's Concuram Intromitto, Intezetu, ut vimen, 1. Ignibus, cortex, "as una break, in pellis, -dari, weave. qua: refringit, evidently signification repente, sectionem: pliant labat, atque ridie peraverat, nostras munitiones ascensus vidēbatur, omnibus cōpiis repente ex oppidō eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, ignibus significatiōne factā, ex proximis castellis eō concursum est, pugnātumque ab hostibus ita acriter est ut a viris fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtīs, iniquō locō, contrā eōs qui ex vallō turrisbusque tēla iacerent, pugnāri debuit, cum in unā virtūte omnis spēs salūtīs cōnsisteret. Occisīs ad hominum milibus quattuor reliqui in oppidum rēiectī sunt. Postridē eius dieī refractīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissis militibus nostris, sectionem eius oppidi Unitē

6. ex... intexitis, "made of bark or of osiers woven together."
8. quā: the adverb.
mimē arduus: evidently the Roman wall was on rising ground. The desire to keep the wall on high ground accounts for its irregular course as shown on the plan.
10. imperāverat: therefore Caesar had foreseen the possibility of treachery.
11. ignibus, "by signal fires."
12. concurrem est, pugnātum est: translate personally.
14. ut pugnāri debuit, lit. "as it ought to have been fought" = "as brave men ought to have fought."
16. eōs qui iacerent, "men who threw"; a clause of characteristic.
18. sectionem: including the inhabitants as well as their possessions. The action was perfectly justifiable, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for their treachery. Such methods were probably the only means by which he could have secured the respect of the Gauls.
versam Caesar vendidit. Ab iis qui émerant capitum numerus ad eum relátus est milium quinquagintá trium.

34. Eódem tempore à P. Crassó, quem cum légione ãnã miserat ad Venetós, Venellós, Osismós, Coriosolítès, Esuviós, Aulercós, Redonés, quae sunt maritimae civitátès Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnès eas civitátès in dicionem potestátemque populí Rómáni esse redáctás.

35. His rébus gestís, omní Galliá pácatá, tanta huius bellí ad barbarós opiníó perlátá est uti ab iis nátiônibus quae tráns

19. iis qui émerant: slave dealers who were with Caesar constantly and who supplied the slave market at Rome.

Numerus . . . trium, lit. "the number was reported (to be) of 53,000" = "was reported as 53,000."

Chap. 34. The northwestern states submit to Crassus.

1. légione ãnã: this was the 7th, one of the two which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervi. Caesar must have sent Crassus immediately after that battle.

3. quae: agrees in gender with the predicate noun, civitates.

5. esse redactás: they gave hostages without fighting. One legion could not have conquered these states, for we learn in the next book that it took Caesar himself and most of his army to do it.

Chap. 35. German envoys offer submission. Arrangements for the winter. A thanksgiving in Caesar's honor.

1. omni Galliá: the map facing p. 162 shows that Caesar now controlled everything but Aquitania and two Belgic states.

2. opiníó, "impression."

quae incolerent: for mode see note on qui, 27, 2.
Rhēnum incolerent lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque civitātēs propinquae iis locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs in Italiam perfectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō decrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūlī.

5. Illyricum, -i, n., Illyricum (I-ll'rik-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.

6. Carnutēs, -um, m. (BCde), the Carnutes (kār'nū-tēz).

Andēs, -ium, or Andi, -ōrum, m. (Cc), the Andes (ān'dēz) or Andi (ān'dī).

7. Turonī, -ōrum, m. (Cd), the Tu-

roni (tū'rō-nī).

10. supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [sup-plex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving.

decernē, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree.

3. qui pollicērentur: a purpose clause.

4. datūrās: feminine, because sē refers to nātiōnibus.

5. initā proximā aestāte, "at the beginning of the next summer." At that time they had so far changed their minds that only the Ubiī sent hostages.

6. in Carnutēs: with dēductīs.

7. quaeque civitātēs = sē ēūs civitātēs quae.

8. in Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul.

He could not legally go outside of his province, which included Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum.

9. ex, "in consequence of."

10. supplicātiō: a public thanksgiving, voted by the senate in honor of a victory. The number of days was supposed to be in proportion to the importance of the victory. Before this time no more than twelve days had ever been voted.

quod, "(an honor) which." The antecedent is the preceding clause.
BOOK III. OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS, IN THE NORTHWEST, AND IN AQUITANIA

Since Rome was to possess Gaul, she needed to control the shortest route across the Alps—that which leads over the Great St. Bernard pass. Caesar accordingly sent Galba with one legion, in the autumn of 57, to subdue the mountain tribes which controlled that route. Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position. The tribes were not thoroughly conquered, but as we hear of no further operations against them it is evident that they stopped molesting travellers.

In 57 the northwestern states had submitted to Crassus and had sent him hostages; but when he established winter quarters among them and began sending out officers to levy tribute of supplies, they grew weary of the yoke. Ignorant of the Roman resources and power, three states took the fatal step of arresting the officers sent to them. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of the coast tribes between the Loire and the Seine. The Britanni, the Morini, and the Menapli sent men and ships to their aid.

As early as possible in 56 Caesar hastened to Gaul and gave orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent toward the Rhine to check a possible uprising among the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing. Quintus Titurius Sabinus went to the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and the western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus marched into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus, undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful sea-board state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. Their country was wild and barren and their strongholds were built on the ends of promontories which the tides cut off from the main land. Hence
supplies for the Roman army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or if necessary could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The Roman fleet would have prevented this, but it was kept away by stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the much superior fleet of the Veneti confidently sailed out to meet it; but Roman valor and ingenuity won the day. The destruction of their fleet forced the Veneti to submit. Their prominence in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment, as a warning to other Gallic states. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The legates of Caesar were as successful as himself. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the confederacy. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. In all Gaul only the Morini and the Menapii had made no submission. Therefore Caesar marched against them; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, in almost impenetrable forests and swamps, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes, as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The same territory is colored red as in the campaign map for Book II, facing page 162. In addition, a narrow strip leading into the Alps, most of the northwestern states, and three states of Aquitania are colored red. In all these cases it is difficult to decide on the coloring.

It seems probable that Galba did not completely subdue the Nantuates, the Veragri, and the Seduni, but that he did secure the route through the Alps.

It seems probable that all the revolting states in the northwest had sent so large a proportion of their ships and men to help the Veneti, that the defeat of the Venetan fleet amounted to a defeat of all the states. Hence they are colored red. The Redones are not mentioned among the revolting states.

It is possible that all of Aquitania should be colored red; but it seems improbable that other states than the Sotiates, the Tarusates, and the Vocates were so largely represented in the armies defeated by Crassus as to make further resistance impossible. They are colored blue on the theory that they submitted only because they were discouraged by the fate of the states which did fight.

Caesar’s army had probably been quartered along the Liger (Loire). Therefore the routes on this map begin at the point of the probable winter quarters farthest east, where Orleans now stands. Marching westward, he picked up another part of his army, and then probably collected the whole of it at the point on the map from which four lines diverge, which is now the site of Angers. From that point he sent out Labienus, Crassus, and Sabinus, and himself marched against the Veneti. From the Veneti Caesar marched against the Morini and the Menapii, and was probably joined on the route by Sabinus and Crassus.
Liber Tertius.

1. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecimâ et parte equitâtûs in Nantuátês, Veragrôs, Sedûniâque misit, qui ã finibus Allobrogum et lacû Lemannô et flûmine Rhodanô ad summâs Alpês pertinent. Causa mittendî fuit quod iter per Alpês, quô magnô cum

1. Servius, -â, m., Servius (sër'-vî'-üs), a Roman praenomen. 1. Galba, -â, m., Servius Sulpiçius Galba (sër'-vî'-üs sûl-pî'-shû'-s gâl'-bâ), one of Caesar's legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. *

2. Nantuátês, -um, m. (CDg), the Nantuates (nâns'-tû'-â'tûz). 4. Veragri, -ôrum, m. (CDg), the Veragri (vër'-gâ'-grî). 3. Sedûni, -ôrum, m. (Cgh), the Sedûni (sâ-dû'-nî). 3.

Chap. 5. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. Although he defeats the mountaineers in battle, he dares not winter in the mountains.

Chap. 1. Galba is sent to secure a pass over the Alps. He occupies Octodurus.

1. cum ... proficisceretur: as stated in II, 35. Therefore the narrative given in the first six chapters of Book III belongs chronologically with Book II.

2. legiône duodecimâ: this was one of the two legions which had suffered most severely in the battle with the Nervî; cf. II, 25.

Nantuátês, etc.: see the map facing p. 217.

3. misit: the pupil should notice carefully Caesar’s use of the indicative tenses. The distinction between the imperfect and the perfect is difficult for English speaking people to grasp, but Caesar was as careful in their use as in the choice of modes and cases. Study App. 197, 198. Notice that in this chapter the perfect is used in every principal clause. Notice, too, that all but one of these perfects tell something that Caesar or Galba did; i.e. they all narrate events in the story.

4. pertinent: several of the subordinate verbs in this chapter are in the present tense, because they state facts which are still true at the time when Caesar is writing.

5. fuit: this might have been imperfect, for it is not an event in the story. Very few such perfects will be found in Caesar.

quod volèbat, “that he wished”; a substantive quod clause, in apposition with causa. The imperfect does not narrate an event in the story, but describes something (Caesar’s feelings) as going on at the time of a main act (Caesar’s decision to send Galba). This is the most common use of the imperfect, and is called the descriptûs imperfect.

iter per Alpês: the route leading over the famous Great St. Bernard pass. For the other route used by Caesar see map facing p. 42.

periculō magnīisque cum portūriis mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefieri volēbat. Huic permīsit, si opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proelīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrūm expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquis eius legiōnis cohortibus in vicō Veragōrum, qui appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vicus posītus in valle, nōn magnā adiectā plānītīe, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Vīcīm hic in duās partēs flūmine dīvidērētur, alteram partem eius vicī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relictam cohortibus ad hie mandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. aliquot, indecl. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. 3.
13. Octodūrus, -I, m. (Cg), Octodūrus (ōk"tō-dū'rūs). 1.
14. vallēs, -is, f., vale, valley. 2.
adiciō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. 1.
19. attribūō, -tribuere, -tribui, -tribūtum, tr. [ad + tribuō, assign], assign, allot. 2.

6. periculō: from the natives.
portūriis, "tolls," levied by the natīves on all merchandise carried through their country.
7. arbitrārētur: implied indirect discourse. Caesar said arbitrāberis.
11. cohortēs duās: for the location of these cohorts, see map.
14. nōn . . . plānītīe, "with a little level ground adjacent."
17. vacuam relictam, "left vacant." 19. eum locum: the western half of the village.
2. Cum diès hibernōrum complūrēs trānsissent frūmentumque eō comportāri iussisset, subītō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī quam Gallīs concesserat omnēs noctū discississe montēsque quī impendērent ā maximā multitudine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenēri. Id aliquot dé causās acciderat, ut subītō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimenda cōnsilium caperent: primum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētractis cohortibus duābus et complūrēbus singillātim, qui commeātūs petendi causā missī erant, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter iniquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrent et tēla conicerent, nē primum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī existimābant. Accēdēbat quod suōs ab sē liberōs abstractōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occu-

6. renovō, 1, tr. [re-+novus, new], renew. 2. opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [ob+premō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. 4. plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full, whole, complete. 3. singillātim, adv. [singulī, one each], singly, one by one; individually. 1. paucitās, -tātis, f. [paucus, few], fewness, small number. * 10. abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. 1. perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent.

Chap. 2. The mountaineers revolt and occupy the neighboring heights.

2. eō: i.e. into the winter quarters.
3. quam... concesserat: this is not a part of the quotation, but is an explanation added by the writer; therefore it is not subjunctive.
4. montēs: the foot-hills, bordering on the valley.
5. aliquot dé causās: these reasons are (1) quod dēspiciēbant, l. 7; (2) quod existimābant, l. 10; (3) accēdēbat quod dōlēbant, l. 13; (4) (accēdēbat quod) habēbant. Note that the imperfect is used in these clauses because they all describe the condition of things existing at the time the Gauls revolted.
6. ut caperent: a substantive clause of fact (result), in apposition with id.

7. neque eam plēnissimam, "and that not at its full strength"; explained by the ablative absolute which follow.
8. complūrēbus singillātim, "many men individually."
11. cum dēcurrent et conicerent, "when they should, etc.," is a part of the indirect discourse. They thought "when we shall run down... they cannot withstand, etc."
12. accēdēbat quod, lit. "there was added that" = "a further reason was that" or "besides." liberōs abstractōs (esse), "that their children, etc."
14. obsidum nōmine, lit. "under the name of hostages" = "as hostages."
15. perpetuae possessionis: ac causā.
pāre cōnāri et ea loca finitimae prōvinciae adiungore sibi per-
suāsum habēbant.

3. His nūntiis acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum
mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē frūmentō reli-
quōque commētātū satis esset prōvisum, quod dēditiōne factā
obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum existimāverat,
cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquirere coepit. Quō in 5
cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentī periculi praetū opiniōnem ac-
cidisset ac iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitudine armā-
tōrum complēta cōnsipicērentur neque subsidīō venīrī neque com-
meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam
dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae eiūs modī sententiae dicēbantur, 10
ut impedimentīs relīctīs eruπtiōne factā īsdem itineribus quibus
eō pervēnissent ad salūtem contendorint. Maiōri tamen parti

lasting, continual; whole, entire; n. as
noun in phrase in perpetuum, for-
ever. 3. culmen, -inis, n., top, ridge. 1.
16. adiungō, -iunge, -iunxī,
-functum, tr. [iungō. join], join to,
attach, unite; add. 1.

16. finitimae: the province bounded
them on the west. See map.
sibi persuāsum habēbant: the clause
Rōmānōs . . . adiungere is the object of
habēbant, and persuāsum is a predicate
adjective in the neuter, agreeing with the
clause; lit. “they had . . . persuaded
to themselves” = “they were persuaded
that.”

Chap. 3. The Romans resolve to
defend their camp.
1. opus hibernōrum: especially the
making of huts. Although they were
occupying part of a village, it cannot
have been large enough to house all the
soldiers.
2. essent perfectae agrees with the
nearer subject, mūnītiōnēs.
3. esset prōvisum: translate per-
sonally.

2. plēnē, adv. [plēnus, full], fully. 1.
5. exquirē, -quiere, -quisīvi,
-quisītum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek
or search out, inquire, investigate. 2.
9. supportō, 1. tr. [sub + portō,
carry], carry or bring up from beneath;
bring, convey; supply, furnish. 4.

4. nihil timendum (esse), “that he
need have no fear.”
5. cōnsiliō: a, council of war, com-
posed of the tribunes and the centurions
of the first rank. See Int. 42.
8. neque . . . venīrī (posset), lit.
“and it could not be come to their as-
sistance.”
10. eiūs modī, “to this effect.”
dicēbantur: this narrates a new event
in the story, so that the perfect might
have been used; but the imperfect is
used to express repeated action; App.
484: H. 534, 3.
12. pervēnissent: implied indirect
discourse.
maiōri partī placuit, “the majority
determined.”
placuit, hoc reservató ad extrêmum consiliō, interim rei évem-
tum experiri et castra défendere.

4. Brevi spatiō interiectō, vix ut-iūs rēbus quās cōnstituis-
sest collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostēs
ex omnibus partibus signō datō decurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in
vāllum conicere. Nōstri primō integris viribus fortiter prō-
5 pugnāre neque úllum frūstra tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere,
et quaequeque pars castrōrum nūdāta défensōribus prēmi
vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxiliae ferre; sed hoc superāri,
quod diūturnitāte pugnacē hostēs défessi proelīō excédēbant,
alli integris viribus succédēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs
10 propter paucitātem fieri nihil poterat, ac nōn modo défessō ex

capiendo, 2. intr. [cf. plācēre, appease], please, satisfy; often impec.,
seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. 2.
reservō, 1, tr. [res-+servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. 2.
1. brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevi, in a short time. *
4. integer, -gra, -grum, adj., un-
touched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; rē integrā, before anything was
done. 3.
frūstra, adv., without effect, in vain, to no purpose. 3.
quicquam, quascumque, quod-
cumque, indef. (or generalizing) rel. pron., whoever, whatever; whosoever,
whatsoever, any . . . whatever; everyone who, everything that. *
diūturnitās, -tātis, f. [diūturn-
nus, long], long duration. 2.

Chap. 4. The mountaineers attack
the camp in great numbers.
1. vix: placed before ut for emphasis.
rēbus . . . administrandis: the da-
tive of the gerundive is not common.
quās cōnstituisserant: a determinative
clause; App. 231: B.-B. 550. Reason
for the subjunctive? App. 274: G.-L.
3. decurrēre: an historical infin-
tive. In what case is its subject. hos-
H.-B. 505: H. 610.
4. integris viribus: ablative abso-
lute. "while their strength was fresh."
5. ex locō superiōre: the top of the
rampart.
6. hoc superāri, quod, "they were
overmatched in this, that."
7. excédēbant, succédēbant, "kept

withdrawing, etc."; imperfects of re-
ppeated action.
9. integris viribus: descriptive ab-
lative. Contrast the construction of the
same words in l. 4.
quārum . . . poterat, "while none
of these things, etc." 10. poterat and dabātur are de-
scriptive imperfects, describing a con-
ditional of things that went on all through
the battle.
nōn modo défessō facultās dabā-
tur, ""not only was an opportunity not
given to an exhausted man." H.
656, 3; "Nōn modo (or sōlum) nōn,
sed nē . . . quidem means not only not,
but not even, and nōn modo (sōlum),
sed nē . . . quidem, has the same mean-
ing when the verb standing in the second
clause belongs also to the first."
pugnā excēndiō, sed nē sauciō quidem eius locī ubi cōnstituat relinquentiō ac sui recipiendī facultās dābatūr.

5. Cum iam amplius hōris sex continēnter pugnārētur, ac nōn sōlum vīrēs sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēsicerent, atque hostēs acriūs ĭnstantērē, languēdiōriōbus nostrīs vāllum scindēre et fossās complēre coēpissent, rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, primī pili centuriō, quem 5 Nervicō proeliiō complūriōs cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus militūm, vir ēt cōnsili magnī et virtūtīs, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, si ēruptione factā extrēmum auxiliō exērentur. Itaque convocātis centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certīōrēs facit 10

11. sauciōs, -a, -um, adj., wounded. 1.
3. languēdiō, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. 1.
scindō, scindere, scīdī, scīssum, tr., split; tear down, destroy. 1.
5. pilus, -i, m., century of soldiers; primus pilus, first century of a legion; primī pili centuriō, or primipilus, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. 1.
6. Nervicōs, -a, -um, adj. [Nervius], of the Nervil. 1.
7. C., abbr. for praenomen Gāius (gā’yus). *
Volusēnus, -i, m., Gatus Volusēnus Quadratus (gā’yus vōl’ū-sē’nūs kwā-drā’tūs), a tribūne of Caesar’s army, afterward commander of cavalry. 4.

11. excēndiō: gerund or gerundive?
locī relinquisendi: gerund or gerundive?

Chap. 5. As a last resort Galba dēcides on a sortie.
1. cum pugnārētur, "when the battle had lasted." The imperfect subjunctive is to be translated on the same principle as is laid down for the imperfect indicative in App. 191, 5: G.-L. 234: A. 471, 6: B. 260, 4: H.-B. 485: H. 585, 1.
hōris: ablative after the comparative, amplius; cf. note on mīlitūs, II, 7, 10.
3. languēdiōriōbus nostrīs, "as our men grew weaker"; ablative absolute. 5. cāsum, "extremity." quem . . . dīximus: cf. II, 25, 7.
8. accurrunt: the principal verbs in this chapter are all historical presents.
The historical present narrates a new event in a story just as the perfect does. It may be followed by either the primary or the secondary tenses of the subjunctive. In this chapter the dependent subjunctives are all imperfects, as if the principal verbs were perfects.
ānum . . . si experērentur, lit. "told him that there was one hope of safety, if they should try" = "that their only hope of safety was to try."
9. extrēmum auxiliō, "their last resource."

experērentur: indirect discourse for the future indicative.
10. mīlitēs certīōrēs facit, "he directed the soldiers." This phrase is followed by indirect discourse, as usual; but all the verbs are in the subjunctive mode, because they represent imperatives of the direct form.
paulisuper intermittent proelium ac tantummodo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficere, post datō signō ex castris ērumpere atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iussī sunt faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portis ērumpiōne factā neque cognoscendi quid fieret neque suī colligendi hostibus facultātem relinquent. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs qui in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant uduque circumventōs interficiunt, et ex hominum milibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnståbat, plus tertiā parte interfecit reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem suerīōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium cōpīs fūsīs armisque exūtis sē in castra mūnītiōnēs-

11. tantummodo, adn., only. 1.

12. excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cepi-tum, tr. and intr. [capiō, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. *
labor, -ōris, m., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *
reflciō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, tr. [re+faciō, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with sē, refresh one's self, rest. 3.

13. ērumpō, -umpere, -rumpī, -rump tum, intr. [rumpō, break], break forth,
sally. 1.

2. colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [con+legō, gather], gather together; collect; acquire; sē colligere, collect one's self, rally. 3.

6. cōnstō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, intr. [stā, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. *

9. fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsum, tr., pour, throw; rout, put to flight. 1.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -uētum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. 1.

12. excipere, lit. “catch,” on their shields = “shield themselves from.”

post: the adverb.

Chap. 6. The Gaules are routed with great loss. Galba retires from the mountains.

1. quod iussi sunt faciunt, “they did as they had been commanded.” iussi sunt is used instead of a pluperfect, just as factum is used instead of a perfect. Notice how regularly the indicative tenses are used in this chapter: all the principal verbs are in the perfect or historical present; all the subordinate verbs except iussi sunt are in the imperfect or pluperfect.

2. sui colligendi: cf. note on 4, 12.

3. commūtātā fortūnā: the dangerous plan succeeded, partly because the Romans, like other men, fought with more spirit on the offensive than on the defensive, partly because the enemy were taken by surprise, and partly because the Gaules always lacked persistence and ability to rally from a reverse.


circumventōs: translate by a coördinate clause.

5. ex milibus XXX depends on tertīā parte. Galba probably exaggerated the number in his report to Caesar, for those tribes cannot have had 30,000 soldiers.

9. armis: ablative of separation. The Gaules threw away their arms in their flight.
que suás recipiunt. Quō proelios factō, quod saepius fortūnam 10
temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hiberna cōnsiliō vēnisse
meminert, aliis occurrīsse rēbus viderat, māximē frūmentī
commētātūsque inopia permōtus, posterō diē, omnibus eius vīcī
eaedificiīs incēnsīs, in ċōrvīnciam revertī contendit ac nūlī
hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumnum legiōnem in 15
Nantuātēs, inde in Allobroges perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

7. His rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam
Galliam existīmāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs
Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus
eset, quod eās quoquē nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere
volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Eius bellī 5

12. memini, -isse (App. 86), tr., re-
member, bear in mind. 1.
15. dēmōrār, 1, tr. [mōrār, delay],
hinder, delay. 1.
incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, unin-
jured, safe and sound, unimpaired. 4.
3. hiems, -mis, f., winter time,
winter. *
5. subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subeō,
come up, come by stealth], unexpected,
sudden.
coorior,-orīrī,-ortus sum, intr. [co-
-orīr, rise], arise, spring up, break
out. 2.

10. quod . . . nōlēbat: Galba felt
that it would be foolish to court another
attack by remaining in so dangerous a
position. The complete victory which
he had gained made it possible for him
to retire with honor. Since Caesar nev-
er fought these tribes again, we may
suppose that they were taught by this
battle not to molest Roman travelers.
11. aliō cōnsiliō, "with one pur-
pose"; namely, to spend the winter there
quietly.
12. allīs . . . rēbus, "that he had
met a different state of affairs"; namely,
a dangerous battle.
15. in Nantuātēs: there, of course,
he picked up the other two cohorts of
his legion.

Chap. 7. The Aremoric states rev-
olt because Crassus demands sup-
plies from them.
1. omnibus dē causīs, "for every
reason"; explained by the ablatīves ab-
solute superātīs . . . Sedūnīs, which
should be translated by causal clauses.
pācātam (esse) Galliām: this belief
was premature, for it took Caesar seven
more years to subdue Gaul thoroughly.
victīs Sedūnīs: cf. I-6. The Seduni
were the most important of the tribes
there mentioned.
4. quod . . . volēbat: under Augus-
tus, Caesar’s successor, the Romans were
obliged to conquer the tribes between
the Adriatic and the Danube. No doubt
Caesar foresaw this necessity and hoped
to do the work himself, but Gaul kept
his hands full.
6. adulēscēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adulēscēre, grow up], youth, young man. 4.

7. mare, -is, n., sea; mare Òceanum, the ocean. *

8. praefectus, -i, m. [praeficiō, place over] overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). 4.

10. Terrasidius, -dī, m., Titus Terrasidius (tītūs tēr′a-sid′ī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Trebius, -bī, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (mār′kus tre′bi-ūs gāl′ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

11. Velanius, -nī, m., Quintus Velanius (kwīn′tūs vē-lā′nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.

Silius, -sī, m., Titus Silius (tītūs sīl′-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. 2.


9. in finitīmās civitātēs: especially the sea-board states of the northwest, called Aremorican states. These had all submitted to Crassus in the fall; see II, 34.

Chap. 8. Led by the Veneti, the Aremorican states arrest Roman envoys and form a league.

1. huius civitātēs: the Veneti, who were last mentioned.

2. òrae: partitive genitive, depending on amplitūsima.

regionum: depending on òrae.

quod: belongs with habent, 1.2; antecēdunt, 1.4; and habent, 1.7.

4. in magnō . . . interiectis, "there being only a few harbors in that dangerous stretch (lit. great violence) of vast and open sea."

7. habent vectīgālēs, "they treat
WAR WITH THE VENETI, B.C. 56

227

Velāni, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs existimābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimi ad-
ductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subīta et repentīna cōnsilia, ēadem dē 10 causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs
lēgātīs per suōs principēs inter sē coniūrānt nīhil nisi commūnī
cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs,
reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitānt ut in eā libertātē quam ā ma-
ōribus accēperint permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem 15
perferre mālīnt. Omnī orbā maritimā celerīt ad suam senten-
tiam perductā commūnēm lēgātiōnēm a P. Crassō mittunt:
Si velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certiōr factus, quod
ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interīm longāsaedificāri in fūmine
Ligerī, quod ēnīfluit in Ōceanum, rēmīgēs ex prōvinciāīnstitui,

9. recuperō, 1, tr., recover, regain.
89), tr. and intr. [magis, more + volō,
wish], wish more or rather, prefer. 1.
1. aedificō, 1, tr. [aedē, house +
faciō, make], build, construct. 1.
2. Liger, -eris, m. (Cce), the river
Liger (l'jēr), better the Loire. 1.
3. rēmex, -īgis, m. [cf. rēmus, oar].
oarsman, rower. 1.

as tributarīes”; i.e. the ship owners paid
a tax for the privilege of using the har-
bors.

ab... retinendī, lit. “a beginning
is made by these of arresting” = “they
began by arresting.”

9. fīnitīmi: the Esuvīl and the Cor-
osītes.

10. ut, “as,” almost “since.”

11. commūnī cōnsiliō, “by common
agreement.”

12. āctūrōs (ēce), “that they would
do.”

13. ut permanēre quam perferre
mālīnt, “to prefer to remain (rather)
than to endure.”

14. ut perpetuāt quern perferre
mālīnt, “to prefer to remain (rather)
than to endure.”

15. accēperint: implied indirect dis-
course.

16. sē velit, remittat: the direct
form was sē vis, remittē.

Chap. 9. Caesar equips a fleet. The
Veneti make preparations to resist him.

2. aberat longius, “was too far off,”
to take command in person.

nāvēs longās: cf. Int. 61.

in fūmine Ligerī: on the map facing
p. 217, notice that there are three towns
along the Liger, connected by a line of
march. These were the winter quarters
of the army, and no doubt ships were
built at all of them.

3. ex prōvinciā: the Gauls were not
competent oarsmen, for their ships were
managed by sails, not oars; otherwise
oarsmen might have been secured from
the friendly maritime states, the An-
des and the Pictones.
institūi, “to be procured.”
nautās gubernātōrēsque comparāri iubet. His rébus celeriter 5 administrātīs ipse, cum primum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitātēs cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod quantum in sē facinus ad- misissent intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen apud omnēs nā- tionēs sāctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et 10 in vincula coniectōs, prō magnītūdine periculī bellum parāre et maximē ea quae ad úsum nāvium pertinent prōvidēre instituunt, hōc maiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfide- bant. Pedestriā esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigationēnem impeditam propter inscientiam locōrum punctātemque por- tum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inop- piam diūtius apud sē morāri posse cōnfidebant; ac iam ut omnia contrā opinīōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque úllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūri essent vada, portūs, īnsulās

4. nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvita; nāvis, ship], sailor. 1.  
gubernātor, -āris, m. steersman, pilot. 1.  
facinus, -oris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. 2.  
sanciō, sanciēre, sānxi, sāctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; hind; sāctus, pf. part. as  
   adj., sacred, inviolable, established. 2.  
inviolātus, -a, -um, adj.[in-+violā-  
tus, injured], uninjured; ininviolate, sacred. 1.  
nāvigationō, -ōnis, f. [navigō, sail], sailing, navigation; voyage. 3.  
inscientia, -ae, f. [inscīēns, ignorant], ignorance. 3.  
insula, -ae, f., island. *  
lēgātōs.  
prō, "in proportion to."  
hōc: ablative of cause, explained by quod . . . cōnfidebant.  
pedestriā itinerā, "land routes."  
impeditam (esse), "was difficult."  
neque posse cōnfidebant, "and they trusted that . . . would not be able."  
iam, "even."  
uit: translation? App. 347: G.-L. 608:  
A. 597, a: H.-B. 532, 2, b: H. 586, II.  
sē posse, sc. sciēbant.  
facultātem, "supply."  
locōrum, depends on vada, etc.
WAR WITH THE VENETI, B.C. 56

20. **noscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvī, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. 4.**

**cončlūdō,-clūdere,-clūsi,-clūsum, tr. [claudō, close], shut up; conclūsum mare, an inland sea. 1.**

21. **Venetia, -ae, f., Venetia (vē-nē'-shya), the country of the Veneti. 1.**

22. **Lexovīli, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexovilī (lēk-sō'-vī-lī). 4.**

**Namnetēs, -um, m. (Cc), the Namnetes (nām'-nē-tēz).**

---

**20. aliam esse atque, "was different from (what it was)."**

**in conclusō mari: i.e. the Mediterranean, where the tides are very small. 23. in Venetiām: probably in the bay of Quiberon. See map, p. 232. primum: the adverb. 25. Ambliatiōs: their location is entirely unknown. The rest of the states should be looked up on the map.**

Chap. 10. Caesar plans to prevent a spread of the uprising.

1. **suprā: in chap. 9.**

2. **multa, "many considerations."**

---

**3. iniūria...aequitum, lit. "the outrage of knights arrested" = "the outrage of arresting knights."**

5. **nē, "the fear that." This clause, like the nouns iniūria, etc., is in apposition with multa. hāc parte neglēctā: translate by a conditional clause. sibi idem licēre, "that the same course was open to them."**

6. **cum: causal. 7. rēbus: what verbs, though transitive in English, govern the dative in Latin?**
10. partendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, qui proximī flūmini Rhenō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat Ré-mōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat, Ger-
mānōsque, qui auxiliō ā Belgīs accessītī dicēbantur, sī per vim
nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum
cohortibus legionāriīs xii et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aqui-
tāniam proficiiscī iubet, nē ex his nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam
mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūriūm Sa-
binum lēgātum cum legionibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitēs,

5. autem, "moreover."
6. consiprērent: translate this clause after the principal clause. The
subjunctive was probably used in the direct form; App. 228, 6: G.-L. 577: A.
551, b: B. 292, 1, b: H.-B. 507, 4, b: H. 605, 1.
9. consiprō, 1. tr. [spirō, breathe],
10. partor, 4, 6. tr. [pars, part], part,
share, divide. 1.

able], readily, easily. 1.
excitō, 1, tr. [citō, rouse], call forth,
excite, animate, arouse; erect, con-
struct (tōvere); kindle (fīres). 3.
9. consiprō, 1. intr. [spirō, breathe],
combine, conspire. 1.
10. partor, 4, 6. tr. [pars, part], part,
share, divide. 1.

started from Angers. See map facing
p. 217.
mandat adeat: note the primary
sequence after the historical present;
cf. note on accurrent, 5, 6. Note also
the lack of a conjunction; App. 228, a:
G.-L. 546, R. 2: A. 565, a: B. 295, 8: H.-B.
502, 3, a: H. 655, 4.
Rēmōs: this state had earned the
hatred of the other Belgae in the pre-
seding year, and it may have needed
support.
4. accessītī: sc. 688c.
5. consiprērunt: sc. 688d.
6. cohortibus legionāriīs: Roman
soldiers, in contrast to the cavalry,
which was Gallic.
7. in Galliam: i.e. Celtic Gaul.

12. Erant eius modi ferē sitūs oppidōrum ut posita in extrēmis lingulis prōmunturiāisque neque pedibus aditum habērent cum ex altō sē aēstus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXXIII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aēstū nāvēs in vadīs affictārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac si quando magnitudine operis

11. Brūtus, -i, m., Decimus Junius Brutus (dēs'-mūs jǔ'nī-ūs bru'ytūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony. 2.

classis, -is, f., fleet. *
Pictonēs, -um, m. (Cod), the Pictones (pīk'tō-nez). 1.
1. situs, -ūs, m. [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. 1.
2. lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. 1.
prōmunturium, -ri, n. [prēmineō, project], promontory, headland. 1.
3. aēstus, -ūs, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aēstū, at ebb tide. *
bis, num. adv. [for duis, from duo, two], twice. 3.
5. affictō, 1, tr. [freq. of affigō, strike against, damage], damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2.

10. qui . . . cūret, "to see that that force be kept away." For the construction of distinctam, see App. 285, II, b: G.-L. 430: A. 500, 4: B. 337, 7, b, 2: H.-B. 612, III: H. 622.
11. classis, nāvibus: indirect objects of the compound verb praeficit. The fleet had probably assembled in the Liger, near its mouth.
14. sō: i.e. in Venētōs. He probably moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described in this chapter, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar two legions and eight cohorts with which to attack the Veneti. cōpiīs: why may cum be omitted? App. 140, a: G.-L. 392, R. 1: A. 413, a: B.

222, 1: H.-B. 430: H. 474, 2, m. 1.

1. sitūs oppidōrum: see the small plan in the lower left hand corner of the map on p. 232. extrēmis, "the end of."
2. pedibus, "on foot": i.e. by land. At high tide the low ground between the towns and the mainland was overflowed.
3. sē incitāvisset, "had rushed in."
4. nāvibus: sc. adītum habērent.
5. in vadīs affictārentur, "were stranded on the shallows." The subjunctive is due to attraction.
6. si quandō . . . coeperant, . . . dēportābant, "whenever they began
forte superātī, extrūsō mari aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs déspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvīm appulsō, cuius reī summam facultātem habē-

7. extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsi, -trūsum, tr. [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. 1. 
mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. 1

9. appellō, -pellere, -pull, -pullum, tr. [ad+pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. 1.

Operations Against the Veneti

... they would carry off, etc." dēpor-tābant is an imperfect of repeated action, for they kept moving from town to town. coeperant is pluperfect because in each case they had begun to despair before they moved. Latin is more exact than English in its use of tenses of repeated action.

operis, "of the works"; explained by the following ablatives absolute.

7. extrūsō ... adaequātīs: apparently the Romans ran two parallel dykes from the mainland to the town, completing them at low tide, when the ground was dry. Thus the sea was shut out (extrūsō) from the space between the dykes, and the soldiers could work there continuously. The outer ends of these dykes (or of one of them) were built as high as the wall of the town, so as to serve as aggers.

aggere ac mōlibus: ablatives of means.

8. fortūnīs: indirect object. The ablative with dē is more common.

9. cuius reī: i.e. ships.
bant, sua déportábant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipi-erbant; ibi sē rūrsus isdem opportunitàtibus loci défendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nost-ræe nāvēs tempestātibus dētinebantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō mari, magnūs aestibus, rāris ac prope nullīs porti-bus, difficūtās navigāndī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armā-taeque erant: carinae aliquantō plāniōrès quam nostrārum nā-vium, quō facilius vada ac décessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad magnūtūdinem flūctuam tempestātumque accommodātæ; nāvēs tōtæ factae ex rōbere ad quamvis vim et contumēliam perferendam; tràns-

---

10. déportā, 1. tr. [portō, carry].
11. opportūnītās, -tātis, f. [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with loci, favorable situation or position; with temporīs, favorable opportunity. 3.
13. tempestās, -tātis, f. [tempus, time], time, season; weather, usually bad weather, storm, tempest.
14. rārūs, -a, -um, adj., scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. 1.
1. namque, conj. [nam, for], for. 3.
2. carīna, -ae, f., keel. 1.
3. alliquantō, adv. [alliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. 1.
4. planus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, flat, plain. 2.
5. decessus, -ūs, m. [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). 1.
6. prōra, -ae, f., prow. 1.
7. admodum, adv. [modus, measure], up to the measure; very much, very; with num., fully; with neg., at all. 1.
8. erīō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, tr. [regō, direct], lift or raise; ērēctus, pf. part. as adj., standing upright, high. 1.
9. puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. 2.
10. flūctus, -ūs, m. [flūō, flow], flood, billow, wave. 3.
11. accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. 2.
12. rōbur, -oris, n., oak. 1.
13. trānstrum, -i, n., cross-beam, thwart. 1.
14. word for "those."
15. quō: when is quō used in purpose clauses?
excipere, "meet," "encounter." They were less likely to strike bottom, and if stranded they would not heel over.
16. tōtæ, "entirely."
18. quamvis: accusative of quīvis.
19. trānstra: these heavy timbers, set in
tra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus cōnfixa clāvis ferreīs
digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs
revincla; pellēs prō velīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve
propter inopiam līni atque eius usūs inscientiam, sīve eō, quod
est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceani tantōsque
impetūs ventōrum sustinēri ac tanta onera nāvium regi velīs
nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus
nostrae classi eius modī congressus erat ut ūnā celeritāte et
pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vi tem-
pestātum illis essent aptīōra et accommodātīōra. Neque enim

7. pedālis, -e, adj. [pēs, foot], of a
toof in thickness or diameter. 1.
cōnfigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.
{figō, fix}, fasten. 1.
clāvus, -i, m., nail, spike. 1.
ferrus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron],
of iron, iron. 2.
8. digitus, -i, m., finger; as measure
of length, a finger's breadth, the 10th part
of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the
thumb. 1.
pollex, -icis, m., the thumb, with or
without digitus. 1.
crassitūdō, -inis, /crassus, thick],
thickness. 1.
ancoress, -ae, f., anchor; in ancoris,
at anchor. *.
fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable. 3.
catēna, -ae, f., chain; fetter. 3.
9. revincliō, -vincire,-vinxi,-vin-
tum, tr. [re-+vinciō, bind], bind back;
fasten, bind. 2.
vēlum, -i, n., covering, veil; sail. 3.
ālūta, -ae, f., soft leather. 1.
tenuiter, adv. [tenuis, thin],
 thinly. 1.
10. linum, -ī, n., flax; linen, can-
vas. 1.
11. similis, -e, adj., like, similar. 1.
12. ventus, -i, m., wind. *
regō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., keep
straight; guide, direct, control. 1.
13. congressus, -us, m., [congre-
dior, meet], meeting, engagement, con-
fict. 1.
14. pulsus, -us, m. [pellō, strike],
strike. 1.
rēmus, -i, m., oar. 4.
15. aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted,
suited, adapted. 1.

across the inside of the ship, strengthen-
ened the sides and helped them to with-
stand the Roman rōstra (l. 17). In
Roman ships they were rowers' benches,
but the Veneti had no rowers.

7. in altitūdinem, "in thickness."
8. crassitūdīne: this descriptive
ablative is modified by a genitive in-
stead of the usual adjective.
prō, "instead of."
9. pellēs . . . cōnfectae, "skins
and thinly dressed leather (served) as
sails."
11. quod: explaining eō.

12. tanta onera nāvium, "such
heavy ships."
13. nōn satis commodē, "not very
well."
ūnā celeritāte, "only in speed."
15. pulsū rēmōrum, "in rowing";
i.e. "in having oars." In the battle
which followed the fact that the Roman
ships had oars was an immense advan-
tage.
reliqua, "all other things."
prou, "in view of."
18. illis: the ships of the enemy.
235

iis nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iis erat firmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadis cōnsistērent tūtius, et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenīt ac prīmum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omni genere armōrum ornātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōn-

17. rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. 2.
	nocē, nocēre, nocu, nocitum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. 4.

firmītūdō, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. 2.

cōpula, -ae, f., grappling-boat. 1.

saevīō, -ire, -iē, -itum, intr. [sauvus, raging], rage; be fierce. 1.

tūtō, adv. [tūtus, safe], safely, securely. 2.

17. nostrae: sc. nāvēs.

18. adigēbātur, "could be thrown."

19. cōpulis: see int. 64.

accēdēbat ut et ferrent et cōnsistērent et timērent, "there was the additional advantage that they weathered, etc.," or simply, "besides, they weathered, etc."

20. sē ventō dedissent, "ran before the wind."

21. cōnsistērent, "came to anchor."

22. cautēs, -is, f., rest. 1.

23. extimēscō, -timeāscere, -timui, —, tr. [timēscō, incep. of timeō, fear], dread. 1.

3. reprimō, -primere, -pressē, -pressum, tr. [re-+premō, press], press or keep back, check, restrain. 1.

5. genus, -eris, n., descent, origin, race, class, tribe, family; kind, nature. *

6. örnō, 1, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; ornātus, pl. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. 1.

Romans ruin the rigging of the hostile ships.

1. expugnātīs: by the method described in chap. 12.


6. armōrum, "equipment," including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

nostri: sc. nāvibus.

cōnsistērunt, "took their position"; from cōnsistēō. See the map on p. 332.
stiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praerat, vel tribunis militum centuriônibusque, quibus singulae năvēs erant attribuētae, cōnstābat quid agerent aut quam rationēm pugnae insistenter. Rōstro enim nocēri nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs tamen ĕs altitūdō puppium ex barbaris nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex ĕnferiore locō satis commodē tēla adīgi posse et missa ā Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magnō ūsū rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtēs īntercēaeque longūris nōn ābsimilī fōrmā mūrāliōm falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs qui antennās ad mālos dēstīnābant comprehēnsī adduc-

14. praeparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. 1. 
fałx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). 2. 
insiērō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, tr., insert, thrust in. 1. 
affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxi, -fīxum, tr. [ad + affīgō, fix], fasten to. 1. 
15. longūrīus, -ri, m. [longus, long], a long pole. 2. 
ūbsimilīs, -e, adj. [similīs, like], unlike. 1. 
fōrma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. 1. 
mūrāliōs, -e, adj. [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrāliō pīlum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1. 
16. antennā, -ae, f., sail-yard. 3. 
mālus, -ī, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). 1. 
dēstīnō, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. 1. 
comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō, (prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (āre). 2. 

9. quid ... insisterent, "what to do or what plan of fighting to adopt." These are indirect questions, but the subjunctive would be used in corresponding direct questions; App. 210: G.-L. 265: A. 444: B. 277: H.-B. 503: H. 559 4. 
10. rōstrō: ablative of means. 
nocērī: sc. nāvibus hosīlium; cf. references on negue ... posse, 1. 2. 
turribus excitātīs, "even when the towers were erected." These towers were erected on the fore and after decks. One appears in Fig. 12, Int. 64; but the sculptor represented it in miniature, so as to get it into the available space. 
11. ex, "on." 
12. neque ... et = ēt (both) nōn ... ēt. In translating, omit the first ēt. 
mūrāliōs, -e, adj. [mūrus, wall], pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrāliō pīlum, mural javelin, a heavy javelin to be thrown from the top of a wall. 1. 
13. missa, "those thrown." 
erat magnō ūsū, "was very useful." In fact this device saved the day. 
15. longūrīus: dative with īntercēae and āffixae. 
nōn ... falcium, "of a form not unlike (that) of mural hooks." 
hīs ... concĭdēbant: the ships of the Veneti had each a single square sail, supported by a sail-yard. The sail was hoisted and held up by means of a rope (halyard) which ran from this sail-yard through a pulley at the top of the mast down to one side (gunwale) of the ship, where it was made fast. The Romans caught the halyard just above the gunwale and broke it, whereupon the sail fell. 
hīs: i.e. hooks. Ablative of means. 
tique erant, nāvigō rēmis incitātō praeureka partitum. Quibus absēcēsis antemnae necessāriō condicēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicēs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque consisteret, his ēreptīs omnis usus nāvium ūnō tempore ēripērētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostri militēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in conspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbatur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra unde erat propinquus déspectus in mare ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternaē nāvēs circumsteterant, militēs summā vī trānscedendē in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī sīери animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī rei nūllum reperiērētur auxiliūm, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt.

17. nāvigium, -gī, n. [nāvigō, sail], a sailing vessel, ship, craft. 2. praeureka partitum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeureka partitur, pf. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. 1. absēcēdō, -cidere, -cidī, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. 1. concidēdō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [cadē, fall], fall down fall. 1. armāmentā, -urum, n. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. 2. certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle. contest, combat. 1.

23. factum, -i, n. [pf. part. of facio, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. 1. déspectus, -us, m. [dēspiciō, look down upon], a looking down, view. 1. bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by two. 3. ternī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. 1. circumstetē, -sistere, -stīti, —, tr. [sistō, stand], flock or rally around, surround, hem in. * trānscedēdō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [scandō, climb], climb over; board. 1.

Chap. 15. Almost all the ships of the Veneti are destroyed.

1. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehendērunt, 14, 15.

2. cum circumsteterant: for mode see note on cum comprehēnsī erant, 14, 15.

3. quod, eī rei: both refer to the statement in the first sentence, cum . . . contendēbant.
Ac iam conversis in eam partem nāvibus quō ventus fērēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit ut sē ex locō mo-
vēre nōn possess. Quae quidem rēs ad nōgōtium cōnfiiciendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostri cōnsectātī expug-
nāvērunt, ut pervaucē ex omnī numero noctis intervenē ad
terram pervenirent, cum ab hōrā fērē quārta usque ad sóli-
sum pugnārērunt.

16. Quō proelīō bellum Venētōrnum tōtīusque ōrae marit-
mae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnīs iuventūs, omnēs etiam
graviōris actātis in quibus aliquid cōnsili aut dignitātīs fuit, eō
tcvēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubique fuerat in ūnum locum
coēgerant; quibus āmissis, reliquī neque quō sē recipiēnt
neque quem ad modum oppida défenderent habēbant. Itaque
sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdīdērunt. In quōs eō gravius Cae-
sar vindicandum statuit, quō diligentius in reliquum tempus à

7. malacia, -ae, f., a calm at sea. 1. tran-
quillitās, -tātis, f., calmness,
stillness; a calm. 1.
existō, -sistēre, -stīti, —, intr.
[sistō, stand], stand or come forth, ap-
pear, arise; ensue. 1.
2. cum pugnārētūr, “when the
battle had been going on.” For this
translation of the imperfect see note on
cum pugnārētūr. 5, 1.
3. in . . . fērēbat, “in that direction
ward which the wind was blowing.”
4. singulās, “one by one.”
5. cum pugnārētūr, “when the
battle had been going on.” For this
translation of the imperfect see note on
cum pugnārētūr. 5, 1.
hōrā quārta: between about 8:30 and
9:30 A.M., at that season.

Chap. 16. The Veneti surrender.
Caesar slays their senate and sells the
rest into slavery.

2. cum . . . tum, “not only . . . but
also.”
barbaris iūs légātorum cōnservārētur. Itaque omni senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis cópii quās ā Caesare accēperat in finēs Venellōrum pervēnit. His praerat Viridovix ac summam imperi tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāisque cópiās coēgerat; atque his paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovicēs Lexoviique senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērant sēque cum Viridovice coniūnxērant; magnāque praetereā multitudō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōspēs prae-
dandī studiumque bellandi ab agricultūrā et cotidīānō labōre revocābat. Sabinus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē

10. necō, 1. tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. 2. corōnā, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndere, sell at auction. 1. 3. Viridovix, -īcis, m., Viridovix vi-rīdō-viks), a chief of the Veneti. 4. 6. Eburovicēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Aulerci Eburovices (aw-lēr'sī ēb'ū-rō-

10 reliquōs: i.e. all who fell into his hands; certainly not all the state, since it remained in existence. sub corōnā: the phrase came down from early times, when it was the cus-
tom to put chaplets of leaves on the heads of captives who were to be sold.

The punishment of the Veneti, like that of the Atuatuci (II, 33, 18) seems barbarous to us. It is nevertheless true
that on the whole Caesar was merciful to the Gauls, judging him by the stand-
ards of his own times, and that these severe punishments were necessary for
the accomplishment of his purposes.

Chap. 17-19. Sabinus defeats the land forces of the allies.

Chap. 17. Sabinus encamps among the Venelli and refuses battle.

1. dum geruntur: for mode and tense, see App. 234, a: G.-L. 570: A. 556:
5. his paucīs diēbus, "a few days before"; i.e. before the arrival of Sabinus.

7. nōlēbant: the senators.
8. undique ex Galliā, "from all parts of Gaul"; not simply from the Aremorican states. This was the Romans’ third year in Gaul, and the long-
continued war had unsettled every-
thing.
11. idōneō . . tenēbat, "shut himself up in camp in a place suitable in all respects." Notice the three ablative:
rēbus is an ablative of specification: locō is an ablative of place, App.
tenēbat, cum Viridovix contrā eum duōrum milium spatiō cōn-
sēdisset cotidiēque prōductīs cópiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabinūs venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum militum vōcibus nōn nihil carpeētur; tantamque opinīōnem timōris praebeat ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quōd cum tantā multitudine hostium, praeeritim ēō absente qui summam imperi tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dimicandum nōn existimābat.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opinīōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex īis quōs auxīli causā sēcum babēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet uti ad hostēs trāneat, et quid fīerī velit ēdocet. Qui ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnīt, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetis premātur docet neque longius abesse quin proximā nocte Sabinūs clam ex castrīs exercitum

---

13. prōducē, -ducere, -düxi, -duc-tum. tr. [dücō, lead], lead out or forth, bring forth; prolong, protract; produce; with cópiās, arrange, draw up. *
14. contemptīō, -ōnis, f. [contem-nō, despise], disdain, contempt. 1.
15. carpō, carpere, carpsi, carp-tum, tr. pluck: censure, jeer at. 1.
16. absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absūm be absent], absent, at a distance. 2.
19. aequus, -a, -um adj. even level, equal; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. 3.
2. callidus, -a, -um, adj., shrewd. 1.
3. prae-rium, -mī, n., distinction, prize, reward *
pollicitātiō, -ōnis f. [pollicēor, promise], promise, offer. 2.
4. ēdocē, -docère, -docul, -doc-tum, tr. [docēō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 1.
7. clam, adv., secretly. 3.

151, b: castrīs appears to be an ablative of place, but is an ablative of means. App. 151, c.
12. cum, "although."
milium: sc. passuum,
spatiō: ablative of degree of difference; lit "opposite by a distance, etc."
18. ēō absentē, "in the absence of the man," i.e. Caesar.
20. lēgātō: dative of the agent with dimicandum (eess): "that a legate ought to fight."

Chap. 18. Sabinus tricks the enemy into attacking his camp.
2. Gallum, "a Gaul."
ex īis, "(one) of those."
5. prō perfugā, "pretending to be a deserter."
6. docet has as objects the two substantive clauses quibus ... premātur (Indirect question) and abesse, etc. (Indirect discourse).
neque ... nocte, lit. "and that it was not farther off but that on the next night." = "and that no later than the next night."
9. conclámó, 1, intr. [clámō, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. 2.
10. occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. 1.
11. bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melius; sup., optimē. 2.
12. cūnectātiō, -ōnis, f. [cūnctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2.
13. parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. 1.
16. ut . . . victōriā, "as if victory were assured." 18. quibus . . . compleant: a purpose clause.

Chap. 19. The enemy are . . . sed and the states are forced to surrender. 1. ab īmō, "from the bottom."
quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānis
darētur, examinātīque pervēnērunt. Sabinus suōs horātus
5 cupidentibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae
ferēbant onera, subītō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet.
Factum est opportūnōtāte locī, hostium inscientiā ac défatigā-
tiōne, virtūtē militūt et superiōrum pugnārum exercitiōne,
ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga
verterent. Quōs integris viribus militēs nostri consēcti
10 omun eorum occiderunt; reliquōs equites consēctati paucōs qui ex fugā ēvāserant reliquērunt. Sic ūnō tempore et
dē nāvāli pugnā Sabinus et dē Sabīni victōriā Caesar certior
factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dédidērunt.
15 Nam ut ad bella susciēnda Gāllōrum alacer ac prōmptus est
animus, sic mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamītātēs perfer-
endās mēns eorum est.

20. Eōdem fērē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquītāniām per-

7. défatigātiō, -onis, f. [défatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. 1.
8. exercitiō, -onis, f. [exercitō, freq. of exercēō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. *
9. tergum, -i, n., the back; terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergō, in the rear. *
10. vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, tr., turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. *
12. evādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, intr. [vādō, go], escape. 1.
13. nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvis, ship], pertaining to ships, naval. 1.
15. alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. 2.
16. prōmptus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active. 1.
17. mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsque,
minds and hearts; aliēnātā mente, bereft of reason. 4. 

8. quam . . . spatī, "the least possible time."
5. cupientibus, lit. "to them desiring," = "as they eagerly awaited it."
7. onera: the bundles of brush; 18, 18.
7. factum est opportūnōtāte, "it resulted from the advantage, etc." The subject of factum est is ut . . . verterent.
8. militūm: the Romans.
9. ac, "but." Latin usually says "and," when such an affirmative clause follows a negative one; English usually says "but."
11. equitēs: nominative.
15. ut . . . sic, "while . . . yet."
16. animus, "impulse."
17. mēns, "will-power."

Chap. 20-27. Crassus forces the Aquitani to submit.
Chap. 20. Crassus is attacked on the march by the Sotiates.
1. Crassus: read 11, 5-8, and see map facing p. 217.
vénisset, quae, ut ante dictum est, est tertia pars Galliae, cum intellegeret in iis locis sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praecōninus lægātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Manlius prócōnsul impedimentīs āmissis profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvisā, auxiliis equitātūque comparātō, multis praeterea virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Carcasōne et Narbōne, quae sunt civitātēs Galliae provinciae fīnitimae his regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sotīātum finēs exercitum 10 introdūxit. Cuius adventū cognōtō Sotīātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī primum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū snō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subītō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās ā convalle in insidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. 15 Hi nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

4. Praecōninus, -ī, m., Lucius Valerius Praecōninus (lū'shyūs va-lē'ri-ūs prēk"ō-nī'ntūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar's time. 1.


prōcōnsul, -īs, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. 1.

6. mediocris, -ore, adj. [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. 2.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking.

care. 4.

8. Tolōsā, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tō-lō'sa), now Toulouse. 1.

Carcasō, -ōnis, f. (Ee), Carcaso (kār'ka-so). 1.

9. Narbō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (när'bo), now Narbonne. 1.

10. ēvocō, 1. tr. [vocō, call], call forth or out, summon; ēvocātus, pf. part. as noun, reënlisted veteran. 3.

Sotīātēs, -um, m. (DeEd), the Sōtiaētes (sō'shl-ē'tēz). 4.

15. convallis, -īs, f. [vallīs, valley], enclosed valley, defile. 1.
21. Pugnátum est diú atque ácriter, cum Sotiátēs superióribus victóriis frētī in suā virtūte tōtius Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostri autem quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquis legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfecit vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfecit Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiátium oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus Tīnas turresque ēgīt. 11! ēlīr eīruptionē temptāta, ēlīr cuniculis ad aggērem vīneāsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptīōne temptātā, aliās cuniculis ad aggērem vīneāsque ēctās (cuius rēi sunt longē peritissimī Aquitānī, propterēa quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi diligentiā nostra rōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittānt sequi in deditionem ut recipiat petunt. Qua rē impetratā arma trādere iussi faciunt. 22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostra rōrum intentīs animīs,
2. Adiatunnus, -i, m., Adiatunnus (ā’di-tūn’ūs), the leader of the Soti-
ates. 2.
3. dēvōvēō, -vōvērē, -vōvēl, -vōtum, tr. [vōvēō, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; dēvōtus, p.p. part. as noun, a sworn follower. 2.
soldūrius, -rī, m., vassal. 1.
4. commodum, -ī, n. [commodus, convenient], convenience, interest, ad-
vantage. 2.
fruor, frui, frūctus sum, intr., en-
joy. 1.
7. aďhūc, adv. [hūc, hither], hither-
to, as yet. 1.
S. recūsō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, re-
ject; object to, make objections, com-
plain; with pericum, shrink from.
* 10. vehementer, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. 4.
1. Vocātēs, -um, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā’tēz). 2.
3. quōrum ... condiciō, ut fruan-
tur, “whose position is this, that they 

joy.”
4. ut ... fruantur ... ferant ... cōnsciscant: substantive clauses of fact (result).
commodis: what deponent verbs gov-
ern the ablative?
ūnā: the adverb.
6. quōrum ... dēdiderint: a deter-
274: G.-L. 663, 1: A. 593: B. 324, 1: H.-B.
539: H. 659.
ēi ... accidat: the mode is due to the same reason as that of dēdiderint.
Otherwise such a condition would be expressed by the indicative; App. 253: 
G.-L. 565: A. 515; 518, b: B. 302, 1, 3: H.-B.
579: H. 574, 1.
7. memorīā: ablative of time within

which.

quisquām: why is this the proper in-
definite? App. 177: G.-L. 317, 1: A. 311: 
8. dēvōvisset: cf. note on quōrum 
... dēdiderint, 1. 5.
recūsāret: subjunctive in a clause of characteristic.
cum his: this simply repeats cum DC 
dēvōtis, 1. 3, after the long parenthesis.
11. tamen, “nevertheless”; i.e. in 
spite of his attempt to escape after sur-
render. The offense was the same as 
that of the Atuatuci, II, 33, and might 
have been punished as severely.
12. ēādem: i.e. the same as those 
who had not attempted to escape.

Chap. 23. The Aquitani assemble 
a large force. Crassus decides to give 

battle.

1. in finēs, etc.: see map facing p. 
217.
et Tarusátium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnitum paucīs diēbus quibus eō ventum erat expugnātum cognōverant, légātōs quōqueversus dimittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coeptērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās civitātēs lēgātī quae sunt citeriōris Hispānīae finitimae Aquītānīae; inde auxilia ducēsque accessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum homīnīs multītūdīne bellum gereō conantur. Ducēs vērō iī deliguntur qui una cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summāque scientiam rei militāris habēre existimabantur. Hi consuetūdine populi Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instiunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suas cōpiās propter exiguitātem non facile didūcī, hostem et vāgāri et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidi rellinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeatumque sibi supportār, in dīes hostium numerum augēri, nōn cunctandum existimāvit quīn

2. Tarusātēs, -iūm, m. (Dec.), the Tarusates (tā'ru-sā'tēz). 2. quōqueversus, adv., in every direction, all around. 1. 10. Sertōriō, -ri, m., Quintus Sertōrius (kwint'ūs sēr-tō'ri-ūs) a partisan of Mariōs; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. 1. didūcē, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ducētum, tr. [dūcē, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. 1. obsīdeo, -sīdere, -sēdi, -sessum, tr. [sēdeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. 2. 18. cūnctor, 1, intr., delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2. 3. oppidum: subject of expugnātum (essee). paucīs . . . erat, lit. "within the few days, within which it had been come there." = "within a few days after his arrival." 7. citeriōris Hispānīae: Spain between the Pyrenees and the Ebro. finitimae agrees with quae and gov- erns Aquītānīas. 8. auctōritāte, "assurance." 10. ducēs, "as commanders." Sertōriō: as Sertorius was a Roman general of great ability and had organized his Spanish army after the Roman fashion, those who had served under him understood Roman tactics. But the result shows that it took more than Roman tactics to make a Roman general or army. 12. consuetūdīne: ablative of accordance. loca capere, "to choose suitable positions." 14. quod, "therefore"; conjunction, not pronoun. 15. nōn facile didūcī, "could not easily be divided." This and the following infinitives, through augēri, depend on animadvertīt. 18. nōn . . . dēcertāret, "he thought he must not delay to fight a de
pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, postērum diem pugnae cōstituit.

24. Primā lūce productīs omuibus cópiis, duplicī acīē institūtā, auxiliis in medium aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs consili caperent exspectābat. Illī, ētāi propter multitudinem et veterem bellī gloriām paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs existimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs s viōs commeātū interclāsō sine āllo vulnere victōriā potīrī et, si propter inopiam reī frumentāriāe Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impeditōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, productīs Rōmānōrum cópiis sēsē castris tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cūnctātiōne atque opinioāe timōris hostēs nostrōs militēs alacriōrēs ad pugnāndum effecissent, atque omnium vōcēs audirentur exspectāri diūtius nōn oportēre quīn ad castra īrētur, co-hortātus suōs omnibus cupientībus ad hōstium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās compleērent, aliī multīs tēlus considērābant.
iectis défënsóres valló múñitionibusque dépellerent, auxiliárësque, quibus ad pugnam nón múltum Crassus cónfìdëbat, lapidibus télisque subministrándis et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandis speciem atque opiniônem pugnantium præbèrent, cum itém ab hostibus cónstanter ac nón timidë pugnàrëtur télaque ex locó superiôre missa nón frûstrâ acciderent, equités circumítis hostium castrís Crassó renúntiáverunt nón ëadem esse diligentìa ab decúmáná portá castra múñita facílemque adítum habère.

26. Crassus equitum praefectós cohortáitus ut magnís praemiís polllicitátió nibusque suós excitarent, quid fìeri véllet osténìt. Ilii, ut erat imperátum, éductís iís cohortibus quae præsidìo castrís relictæ intritæ ab labore erant et longiore itinere circum ductís, nè ex hostium castrís cónspicì possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentís, celeriter ad eas quás díximus múñitionès pervènerunt atque hís pròrútis

8. circumeò, -ëre, -ìì, -itum, tr. [cëö, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. 1
4. intritus, -a, -um, adj. [in- tritus, worn], unwearied. 1
5. circumdúcö, -dúcere, -daxi, -ductum, tr. [dúcë, lead], lead or draw around. 2
7. pròruò, -ruere, -rui, -rutum, tr. [ruô, fall], overthrow. 1
9. ab, "at."

Chap. 26. The Romans capture the camp and cut down the fleeing enemy.
1. cohortáitus ut excitárent, "urging... to stimulate."
4. intritae ab labôre, "not worn out by fighting." ab labôre is strictly an ablative of separation, as if Caesar had said "free from"; hence the preposition.
longiore, "roundabout."
priors in hostium castris constiterunt quam plané ab his vidēri aut quid rei gereretur cognoscī posset. I. Tum vērō clāmōre ab ea parte auditō nostri redintegrātīs viribus, quod plērumque in spē victoriae accidere consuēvit, acrius impugnāre coepérunt. Hostēs undique circumventi despēratīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnitionēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātūs apertissimīs campīs consēctātus ex milium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrīisque convenisse constābat, vīx 15 quārtā parte relictā multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

27. Hāc audītā pugna maxima pars Aquitāniāe sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō misit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbelli, Bīgerriōnēs, Ptianīī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gātēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibusātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfissae, quod hiems suberat, id facere 5 neglēxerunt.

8. planē, adv. [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 1.
11. impugnō, 1, tr. [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. 2.
14. campus, -ī, m., plain, open space or country. 1.
15. Cantabrī, -ōrum, m. (Eab), the Cantabri (kān'ta-bri). 1.
2. ultrō, adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultrō citrōque, back and forth. *
Tarbelli, -ōrum, m. (Ec), the Tarbelli (tār-bē'li). 1.
3. Bīgerriōnēs, -um, m. (Ecd), the Bīgerriones (bi-jēr'ti-o'nez or bi'jē-ri-o'nez). 1.
Ptianīī, -ōrum, m. (Ec), the Ptianīī (ti-ā'ni'-li). 1.
Elusātēs, -um, m. (Ed), the Elusates (ēl'ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Gātēs, -um, m. (Ded), the Gates (gā'tēz). 1.
4. Auscī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Auscī aw'si). 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, m. (Ed), the Garumnī (ga-rum'ni). 1.
Sibusātēs, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (sib'ū-sā'tēz). 1.
Cocosātēs, -um, m. (Dc), the Cocosates (kōk'ū-sā'tēz). 1.

8. prius... quam: see App. 236, c. vidēri: supply possent from posset.
9. quid rei gerērētur, “what was going on”; subject of posset.
10. nostri: i.e. those who were attacking in front.
quod, “a thing which.” The antecedent is redintegrātīs viribus.
12. per, “over.”
14. camīps: ablative of the way, not of place; therefore without a preposition.

ex... numero depends on quartā parte.
15. quae (mīlia) convenisse is the subject of the impersonal constābat, “who were known to have gathered.”
16. multā nocte, “late at night.”

Chap. 27. Nearly the whole of Aquitania submits. 4. paucae ultimae nātiōnēs, “only a few tribes, the most remote”; probably those living among the Pyrenees.
5. tempore: cf. note on quībus, 26, 3.
28. Eòdem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pàcata Morini Menapìque superarent qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam légátos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter consìdi posse, eò exercitum duxit; qui longè alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coepérunt. Nam quod intellegébat maximà nátiones quae proelió contendissent pulsá superátásque esse, continentésque silvás ac paludes habebant, eò sè suaque omnia contulérunt. Ad quàrum initium silvàrum cum Caesar pervénisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subít ex omnibus partibus silvae évolaverunt et in nostròs impetum fecérunt. nostrì celeriter arma cépérunt eòsque in silvás reppulérunt et complúribus interféctiis longius impeditiòribus locis secúti paucós ex suis déperdidérunt.
29. Reliquis deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere instituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam māteriam quae erat caesa conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedimenta a nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, eius modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae quī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus militēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vastātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vicīs aedificiisque incensī Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviisquē, reliquis item civitātibus quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hibernīs collocāvit.

1. deinceps, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. 1. caedo, caedēre, cecidī, caesium, tr., cut; kill, slay. 2. 2. imprūdēns, -entis, adj. (in-+ prudēns, prudent), imprudent, off one’s guard, unwary. 1. 3. māteria, -ae, f., material; wood, timber. 4. 6. pecus, -oris, n., cattle, a herd; usually small cattle, sheep; meat; flesh. 2. 9. continuātiō, -onis, f. [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. 1. imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. 1.

Chap. 29. Caesar, ravages the country and withdraws to winter quarters.

2. nē quis impetus, "that no attack." inermibus ... militibus: ablative absolute.

4. conversam ad hostem, "with their tops turned toward the enemy." prō vāllō, "to serve as a rampart." Caesar cut a way through the forest, with this rampart on each side.

6. contōctō, lit. "finished," = "cleared."

7. ipsī: the Morini themselves, in contrast with their animals and baggage.

9. sub pellibus: in winter the soldiers lived in huts.
BOOK IV. WAR WITH THE GERMANS. FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN

The campaign of 55 B.C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were first carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel. The map facing page 217 shows how completely Gaul had come under Caesar's control, either by conquest or by peaceful submission. But Caesar knew that his task was not yet finished. If the Rhine was to be the Roman frontier (Int. 3), the Germans must be taught to respect that frontier. And the unknown Britain, lying so near Gaul, tempted him. It might be worth conquering. If not, at any rate both Gauls and Britons must be shown that Britain could afford neither to send aid to Gaul nor offer refuge to Gauls who wished to escape from Caesar. Only when Caesar had shown that neither the Rhine nor the Channel could stop a Roman army, might he expect Gaul to rest quietly under the Roman yoke.

Two German tribes, the Usipetes and the Tencteri, had been driven out of their homes, far in the interior of Germany, by the Suebi. After wandering homeless for three years, they crossed the Rhine into the Gallic possessions of the Menapii and there spent the early months of 55. Nothing shows more clearly the lack of unity among the states of Gaul than the indifference with which the neighbors of the Menapii regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some states even tried to repeat the mistake of the Sequani (I, 31), and invited the Germans to settle in their territory and make common cause with them against Caesar or the rest of Gaul. But Caesar interfered at once by marching against the Germans. Using as a pretext a treacherous attack by a small body of German cavalry, he made himself guilty of the most treacherous and indefensible act in his whole career. He arrested all their leaders, who had come to apologize for the attack and then surprised and slew almost the whole German host, men, women, and children. If the deed has an excuse it lies in the absolute necessity of teaching the other Germans never to invade Gaul.

Caesar decided to reinforce this terrible lesson by making the Germans fear for their own territory. The Sugambri, who had given refuge to the remnants of the Usipetes and the Tencteri, refused to give them up at Caesar's command. Moreover the Ubii begged Caesar's aid against
the Suebi. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge across the Rhine, over which he led his entire army. At the first news of his approach the Sugambri and the Suebi had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests. Since it was no part of Caesar's purpose to subjugate these peoples, he contented himself with ravaging the nearer possessions of the Sugambri. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and destroyed his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

Caesar had neither time nor ships enough to attempt a real invasion of Britain this summer, nor could he learn by inquiry anything about the country and the amount of force needed for accomplishing his purpose there. Therefore he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition which would at least show him what preparations he must make for the next year. Taking only two legions he sailed to Deal from the nearest point in Gaul. A landing was effected only after a sharp struggle with the Britons. A few nearby tribes surrendered, but Caesar waited for the arrival of his cavalry before penetrating the interior. Just as the cavalry transports were approaching the island, a storm not only drove them back to Gaul but shattered the main fleet, which lay in an exposed roadstead. Caesar beat off an attack of the natives, repaired his ships, and sailed back to Gaul.

Before leaving for Britain, Caesar had received the submission of a part of the Morini. During his absence the remainder of his army harried the Menapii and the rest of the Morini. On the return voyage two ships were driven out of their course, and the men carried by them were attacked by the Morini. A vigorous raid at last caused the final submission of the Morini; but the Menapii still remained unconquered in their forests and swamps.
EXPLANATION OF CAMPAIGN MAP

For the meaning of the colors, see the explanation of the campaign map for I, 1-29, facing page 42.

The coloring in this map is the same as in the campaign map for Book III, facing page 217, except that the Morini and a part of the Menapii are colored red.

Every important geographical point in this year's campaigning is open to discussion. Holmes agrees with some other authorities in locating the battle with the Usipetes and the Tencteri near the junction of the Mosella and the Rhine, but his discussion is less fair than usual. His own arguments, carefully sifted, seem decisive for the location near the junction of the Mosa and the Rhine. If the battle is rightly located, there is no valid argument for locating the bridge elsewhere than at Bonn. Holmes seems to have proved that Wissant, not Boulogne, was the sailing point for Britain. The landing point in Britain must have been either near Deal or a considerable distance west of Deal, near Hythe; it is almost certain that it was near Deal. The map on page 294 gives in more detail the parts of Gaul and Britain which are involved in discussions as to the sailing and landing points.
Campaign Map for Book IV
LIBER QUARTUS.

1. Eā quae secūta est hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeīō M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tēncterī magnā cum multitūdine homīnium flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus influit. Causa trānseundi fuit quod ab Suebīs complūrēs annōs exagītāti bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suebōrum gēns est longē maxīma et bellicosissima Germānōrum omnium. Hi centum pāgōs habēre dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armātōrum bellandi causā ex finibus ēduīcunt. Reliqui, qui domī mānsē-

1. Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nē'ūs), a Roman praenomen. 1.
Pompeius, -ī, m. Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'ūs pōm-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. 1.
2. Usipetes, -um, m., the Usipetes (u-sīp'e-tez). 4.
Tēncterī, -ōrum, m., the Tēncterī (tēngk'tē-ri). 4.

Chap. 1-4. Two German tribes cross the Rhine. Description of the German tribes who are concerned in the following narrative.

Chap. 1. Two German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul. The warlike character and training of the Suebi.

1. quī agrees with annus, though its antecedent is hieme; cf. quod, I, 38, 3, note.
quī ... cōnsulibus, "in the year when, etc."
Cn. Pompeius, etc.: Pompey and Crassus were Caesar's associates in the First Triumvirate; Int. 11. Their election as consuls for the year 55 had been planned at a meeting with Caesar in the preceding spring. Caesar had been given his province for only five years, and he needed more time. These consuls secured another five years for him, and an important province for each of themselves.

4. nōn longē ā marī: probably near Emmerich, a few miles above the point at which the Rhine divides to flow around the island of the Batavi. See map.
quō: the adverb.
8. singula: i.e. a thousand from each canton.

5. Suebus, -a, -um, adj. of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suebī (Bhi), the Suebi (swē'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. *

8. quotannis, adv. [quot, as many as-|-annU3, year], every year, yearly. 2.
9. maneō, manère, mānsī, mān-sum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. 2.

255
10 runt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in
armis sunt, illī domī remanent. Sic neque agricultūra nec
ratio atque usus bellī intermittitur. Sed privāti ac sēparāti
agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in
locō colendi causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed maxi-
mam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt multumque sunt in
vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibi genere et cotidiānā exercitātiōne
et libertāte vitae, quod ā puerīs nullō officiō aut disciplīnā assuē-
factī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et virīs alīt et
immānī corporum magnītūdine homiēs efficit. Atque in eam sē
cōnsuētūdinēm addūxērunt, ut locīs frigidissimīs neque vestītūs

10. vicīs, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alter-
nately, in turn. 1.
11. remanēō, -manēre, -mānī, -mānsum, intr. [re- + manēō, remain],
stay or remain behind, remain. *
12. sēparō, 1, tr. [sē- + parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; sēpa-
rātus, p. f. part. as adj., separate. 1.
14. colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr.,
cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. 1.
15. ķāc, lāctia, n., milk. 1.
16. vivō, vivere, vivi, victum, intr.,
live; subsist on. 2.
17. vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt],
hunting, the chase. 1.
cibus, -i, m., food. 1.
17. disciplīna, -ae, f. [discō, learn],
learning; discipline; instruction, sys-
tem. 2.
assuēfactū, -facere, -feci, -factum,
tr., accustom, train. 2.
19. immānīs, -e, adj., huge, im-
mense. 1.
20. frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold. 1.
vestītūs, -ūs, m. [vestīō, clothe]
clothing. 1.

10. illōs: i.e. those who are fighting.
annō post, lit. "afterwards by a
year," = "the following year."
12. ratio atque usus, "the [theo-
retical] training and practice in."
priāti . . . est: i.e. all the land be-
longed to the state, none to individuals.
This is generally true of barbarous
peoples.
14. frūmentō, "on grain"; ablative
of means with vivunt.
maximam partem: case? App. 198, b:
15. multumque . . . vēnātiōnibus,
"are devoted to hunting."
16. quae res, "a practice which";
subject of alīt and efficit.
17. quod . . . faciunt explains liber-
tāte.
ā puerīs, "from boyhood."
nullō officiō assuēfactī, "trained by
no service"; ablative of means.
19. hominēs: predicate accusative;
"makes (them) men of, etc."
in eam . . . addūxērunt, lit. "have
brought themselves into this custom,"
= "have trained themselves to such
hardiness."
20. locīs frigidissimīs, "though
their climate is extremely cold"; abla-
tive absolute.
vestītūs depends on quicquam. On
the choice of indefinites, see App. 177:
G.-L. 817, 1: A. 311: B. 252, 4: H.-B. 276,
7: H. 513.
praeter pellēs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut quae bellō cēperint quibus vēndant habeant, quam quō ēllum rem ad sē importārī désiderent. Quin etiam iūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretīō, Germānī importātīs nōn ētuntur; sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dē-fōrmia, haec cotidiānā exercitātiōne summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equis dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstigiō assuefēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum īsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur quam ephippīs

22. lavō, lavāre, lāvi, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., habe. 1.
3. dēsiderō, 1. tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. 1.
4. dēlectō, 1. tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. 1.
5. impēnseus, -a, -um, adj., expensive; with pretium, great. 1.
6. dēformis, -e, adj. [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. 1.
7. dēsiliō, -silire, -siluī, -sultum, intr. [salīō, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. *
8. vēstīgium, -ī, n. [vēstigō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. 2.
9. turpis, -e, adj., ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable. 2.
10. equestribus, -e, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. 1.

21. habērent, lavārentur: translate by presents. The use of the imperfect illustrates the fact that the Romans usually regarded the perfect indicative (here additus habēruit) as a secondary tense, even when it seems to us to refer to present time.

Chap. 2. Their freedom from luxury, and their cavalry tactics.
1. mercātōribus: dative of possessor.
eō, ut habeant, "on this account, that they may have."
cēperint: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse.
2. quibus vēndant: a purpose clause. Supply some word like "persons" as the antecedent of quibus and the object of habeant.

quam quō désiderent, "than because they desire." Nōn quō with the subjunctive is used to reject a reason. In this sentence magis quam takes the place of nōn. The meaning is "not because they want anything, but because they wish to sell."
3. iūmentis importātīs nōn ētuntur: the important word is the participle importātīs, as if he had said "they do not import the horses which they need."
4. quaeque = et quae.
6. hāc: antecedent of quae (iūmenta): summī . . . efficiunt, lit. "make that they be (capable) of the greatest labor." See App. 104.
7. pedibus, "on foot."
9. eōrum mōribus, "according to their standards."
10. habētur, "is considered."
ephippīs: the ancient saddles were of little real use, since they had no stirrups.
ütī. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatūrōm equitum quamvis paucī adire audent. Vinum omnīnō ad sē importāri nōn patiuntur, quod ēa re ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēmināri arbitrantur.

3. Pūblīcē maximam putant esse laudem quam lātissimē ā suis finibus vacāre agrōs: hāc re significāri magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter milīs passuum sescenta agrī vacāre dicuntur. 

Ad alteram partem succēdent Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque fōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; ī paulō, quamquam sunt eiusdem generis, sunt cēteris hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt mutumque ad eōs mercātōrēs venti-
tant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gāllicīs sunt mōribus as-
suēfacti. Hōs cum Suēbī multis saepe bellis expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātem finibus expellere nōn

11. ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj. [ephippium, saddle], using a saddle. 1. 
12. quamvis, adv. [quam, as+vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. 1. 
13. remollēscē, -mollēscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become emer-
vated. 1. 
1. laus, laudāre, f., praise, commendation: renown, popularity, glo-
y. 3. 
5. Ubiī, -ōrum, m. (ABgh), the Ubiī (ūbī-i). * 
6. fōrēns, -entis, adj. [fōrēs, flower], flourishing, prosperous, in-
fluential. 2. 
7. hūmānus, -a, -um, adj. [homō, man], natural to man, human; civ-
lized, cultured, refined, cultivated. 1. 
8. ventītō, 1. intr. [frec. of venīr, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. 2. 
11. amplitūdō, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. 1. 
gravitās, -tās, f. [gravis, heavy], heavi
ness, weight; power. 1. 

12. quamvis paucī, "however few (they may be)." Caesar does not exag-
gerate the strength of the German cavalry. In his seventh year in Gaul, when he had to face a revolt of the whole country, he hired a body of Ger-
man cavalry. In three decisive battles they saved the day for him.

vinum: but we know from Tacitus that they drank great quantities of a kind of beer.

Chap. 8. Their treatment of the Ubiī.
1. pūblīcē, "for the state." 

2. vacāre agrōs: subject of esse. 
3. ūnā ex parte: i.e. on the east of the Suehī. 
4. sescenta: this must be a great exaggeration. Caesar had no personal
knowledge of the interior of Germany. 
5. ad alteram partem: i.e. the northwest. See map.

fuit, "was (once)"; i.e. before their

6. paulō: with hūmāniōrēs. 
10. cum, "although." 

multis . . . expertī, "in spite of many attempts in numerous wars."
4. In eadem causâ fuérunt Usipetès et Têncetèri, quós suprà díximus, qui complûrês annós Suebórum vím sustinuérunt, ad extrêmum tamen agrîs expulsî et multîs locîs Germâ- niae trienniûm vagâtì ad Rhênum pervénérunt; quâs regiônês Menapîi incolèbant. Hî ad utramque ripam flûminis agrôs, aedíﬁcia, viöösque habébant; sed tantae multitûdïnis adventû perterrîtì ex iis aedíﬁciis quae tràns flûmen habuerant dêmigrár- vêrunt, et cis Rhênum dispositîs praesidiis Germânôs trànsîre prohibèbant. Illî omnia expertî, cum neque vî contendere propter inopiam návium neque clam trànsîre propter custôdiâs Menapîórum possent, reverti sî in suás sêdès regiônêsque simulâvêrunt, et triduí viam prôgressi rûrsus revertérunt atque omni hoc itinere ūnâ nocte equitâtû conﬁcctû inêsíos inopinántêsque Menapîós oppressérunt, qui dê Germânôrum discessû per explôrâtôrês certiôrês factî siue metû tràns Rhênum in suós

12. humilis, -e, adj. [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. 1
13. inûrmus, -a, -um, adj. [in- firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. 2
3. Germânia, -ae, f., Germânia (jûr-mâ'n-â), better, Germany, the country east of the Rhine. 1
4. triennîum, -î, n. [três, three- annus, year], three years. 1
7. dêmigrô, 1, intr. [migrô, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. 2
11. sêdès, -is, f. [sêdeô, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 4
simûlô, 1, tr. [simûlis, like], make like; pretend. 2
13. inscius -a, -um, adj. [scio, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. 1
15. metûs, -ûs, m. [metûô, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metû terrîtâs, terrify; hoc metû = metû huius reî, from fear of this. 2

Chap. 4. The stratagem by which the Germans crossed the Rhine.
1. in eâm causâ, "in the same condition"; i.e. of oppression by the Suebî. It is probable that the Usipetes and the Têncetèri lived in or near the kingdom of Saxony, to the northeast of the Suebî.
2. suprà: in 1, 2.
6. multitûdînis: 490,000 persons, according to a later chapter.
7. tràns: on the German side.
habuerant: before the arrival of the Germans.
9. vî contendere, "force a passage."
10. inopiam návium: the Menapii had, of course, taken all the boats with them.
13. equitâtû: although cavalry are persons, they are thought of here as the means employed by the Germans.
vicōs remigrāverant. His interfecēs nāvibusque eōrum occu-
pātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum quae cītrā Rhēnum erat
certōr fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum adi-
cificīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis se eōrum cōpiis
alūerunt.

5. His dē rēbus Caesar certōr factus et infirmātēm Gallōrum verītus, quod sunt in cōnsilīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs
plērumque rēbus studēnt, nihil his committendum existimāvit.
Est euīm hoc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōres etiam in-
vītōs consistere cōgant, et quid quīisque eōrum dē quāque rē
audīrīt aut cognōverīt quae rē, et mercātōres in oppidīs vul-
gus circūmsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāque ibi
rēs cognōverīnt prōnūntiāre cōgat. His rēbus atque auditiō-
nibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum
eōs in vēstigīō paenitēre necesse est, cum incerti rūmerībus
servīant et plēriquē ad voluntātem eōrum ficta respondēnt.

16. remigrō, 1. intr. [re-migrō, move], move back, return. 2.
   1. infirmātās, -ātīs, f. [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickleness, in-
      constancy. 2.
   2. mōbilis, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. 1.
   4. viātor, -ōris, m. [via, road], traveler. 1.
   8. prōnūntiō, 1, tr. [nūntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly,
      tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronouncē.
   auditiō, -ōnis, f. [audiō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. 1.

19. eōrum cōpiās, "on their supplies"; those which the Menapī had
   stored up for their own use.

Chap. 5-6. Caesar, fearing that the Gauls and the Germans will unite
against him, hastens his preparations for war.

Chap. 5. Caesar fears the fickleness of the Gauls.

3. nihil . committendum, "that no confidence should be placed in
   them."

4. cōnsuētūdinis: see App. 103.

10. paenitēt, paenitēre, paenituit, —, tr., impers., it causes regret; makes
   one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 109).

   necesse, indecl. adj., necessary, unavoidable, indispensable. 2.

   incertus, -a, -um, adj. [in-certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, un-
   trustworthy; indefinite, vague; disor-
   dered. 2.

11. servīō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay at-
   tention to, devote one's self to, follow. 1.

   fingō, fingere, fingī, fictum, tr.,
   form, imagine, devise. invent. 2.

   utī: with ēquot, quaerant, circumcis-
   tat, and cōgat.

7. quāsque = et quās.

8. rēbus, "stories."

9. quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse
   est, lit. "of which it must repent them"; App. 109: G.-L. 377: A. 354, 5:

11. plēriquē . . . respondeant,
"give answers shaped to their wishes"; i.e. the wishes of the questioners.
6. Qua consuetudine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōri bellō occurreret, mūtūrius quam consuērat ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea quae fore suspicātus erat facta cognōvit: missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōn nūllis civitātibus ad Germanōs, invitātōque eōs uth ab Rhēnō discēderent: omnia quae postulāssent ab se fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germanī lātius īam vagābantur et in finēs Eburōnum et Condрусōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, persuērunt. Principibus Galliāe evocātīs Caesar ea quae cognōverat dissimulānda sībī existimāvit, eōrūmque animīs permulsīs et cōnfirmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germanīs gerere cōnstituit.

7. Rē frumentāria comparātā equitūsusque dēlēctīs iter in ea loca facere coepit quibus in locīs esse Germanīs audīebat.

2. mātūris, adv. [mātūrus, ripe], early, speedily, soon. 3
3. suspicor, 1. tr. [suspiciō, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. *
4. invitō, 1. tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. 2.
5. dissimulō, 1. tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. 1.
10. permulceō, -mulcēre, -mulsi, -mulsum, tr. [mulceō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. 1.

Chap. 6. Caesar joins his army and learns that some Gallic states are welcoming the Germans.

2. ad exercitum: where was it? See III, 29, 11, and the map facing p. 254. Caesar himself, as usual, had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul.

3. ea facta (esse), "that those things had happened"; explained by the following clauses.

5. ab Rhēnō discēderent: i.e. to advance further into Gaul. The purpose of the Gauls was to get help against Caesar.

postulāssent: for the future perfect indicative of the direct form.

6. fore parātā, lit. "would be in a prepared condition." This is one of the ways of avoiding the rare future infinitive given in the grammars, parātum uth. The infinitive depends on a verb of saying implied in invitātōs.

lātius vagābantur, etc.: this only means that small bodies were sent out in various directions to see where they could best settle, and that some of them had got as far as the Condrusi (see the map facing p. 254). The main body remained among the Menapil, between the Mosa and the Rhine.

7. qui refers only to Condrusōrum.

10. permulceōs et cōnfirmātīs: Caesar pretended to believe that they were loyal to him and afraid of the Germans. equitātū: it appears later that he secured 5,000.

11. cōnstituit, "announced his decision." He had decided the matter long before.

Chap. 7-10. Being met by envoys, Caesar proposes that the Germans settle among the Ubii; he then marches on into a locality whose geographical features he describes.

Chap. 7. Caesar is met on his march by German envoys, who demand land.

1. dēlēctīs, "having levied." iter coepit: for his route see the map facing p. 254. The envoys must have met him near the point where the route crosses the Mosa.
A quibus cum paucórum diérum iter abesset, légáti ab íis vénécunt, quórum haec fuit órátió: Germánós neque príórís 5 populó Rómánó bellum inferre neque tamen recúsáre, si laces-
santur, quin armís contendant, quod Germánórum cónsuétüdó sit á maióribus trádita, quáicumque bellum ínferant, resistere neque déprecári. Haec tamen dicere: vénisse invítós, éictós.domó; si suam grátiam Rómání velint, posse íis útiles esse 10 amícós; vel sibi agrós attribuánt vel patiantur eós tenère quós armís posséderint; sésé únís Suébís concédere, quibus né dií quidem immortálés parés esse possint; reliquam quidem in terrís esse néninem quem nón superáre possint.

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit órátióniús: Sibi nüllam cum íis amícitiam esse posse, si in Galliá remanérent; neque vérum esse, qui suós finés tuéri nón potuerint, aliénos occupáre, neque ullós in Galliá vacáre agrós qui dari tantae praesertim multitúdini sine iniúriá possínt; sed licére, si velint, in Ubiórum finibus cónsidere, quorum sint legáti apud sé et de Suebórum iniúriis querántur et a sé auxi-
líum petant; hoc sé Ubiós imperatúrum.
9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlibē-
ratā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs; interea nē
propius sē castra movēret petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab
sē impertrāi posse dixit. Cognōverat enim magnum partem
equitātūs ab iis aliquot diēbus ante præcandī frūmēitandīque
causā ad Ambivāritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī
equitēs atque eius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

10. Mosa prōfluīt ex monte Vosegō, qui est in finibus
Lingōnūm, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur
Vacalus, insulam effīcit Batāvōrum neque longius inde millibus
passuum lxxx in Īceanum influit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex

3. propius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 122, b) [comp. of prope, near],
nearer. *
5. frumentor, 1, intr. [frumentum, grain], get grain, forage. 4.
6. Ambivāritī, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Ambivāriti (ām′bī-vār′i-tī). 1.
Mosa, -ae, m. (Af), the river Mosa (mō′sā), now the Meuse or Maas. *
7. interpōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place be-
tween, interpose; allege; cause; fidem interpōnere, pledge. 4.
1. prōfluō, -fiuere, -flūxi, —, intr. [flūō, flow], flow forth, rise. 1.
Vosegus, -ī, m. (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs′ē-gūs), better, the Vosges Moun-
tains. 1.
3. Vacalus, -ī, m. (Af), the Vacalus (vāk′a-lūs) river, now the Waal. 1.
Batāvi, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā′vī). 1.

them. The arrangement would have
been advantageous to both parties; for,
as the Ubīi were nearly a match for the
Suebi, the combined Ubīi, Usipetes, and
Tencerī should have more than held
their own.

Chap. 9. The envoys ask for time
to consider, but Caesar marches on.
2. post diem tertium, "on the third
day"; i.e. the next day but one, since
the present day was counted in.
3. propius sē: App. 122, b: G.-L. 359,
n. 1: A. 432, a: B. 141, 3: H.-B, 380, b: H.
420, 5.
5. diēbus: ablative of degree of dif-
fERENCE.
6. trāns: to the west.
expectārī equitēs: The German
cavalry was far superior to Caesar's,
and he could afford to take no risk.
However, it is quite possible that the
envoys were honest in asking time to
consider, for they can have had no
power to bind their people to accept
Caesar's proposition.

Chap. 10. Description of the
Rhine, the Mosa, and their conflu-
ence.
1. ex monte Vosegō: more correctly
from the plateau lying between the
Vosges and the Cevennes.
2. parte quādam, etc.: the Rhine
divides at the eastern end of the island
of the Batavi. The southern stream,
called Vacalus, flows west till it joins
the Mosa. The combined Mosa and
Vacalus flow on into the sea, making
the southern boundary of the island.
The confluence of the Mosa and the
Vacalus was probably eighty miles
from the sea, as Caesar says; but it is
now nearer the sea, owing to a change
in the river beds.
3. inde: from the confluence.
Lepontīs, qui Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per finēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomaticum, Tribōcorum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur; et, ubi Ōceanō approppinquāvit, in plurēs diffuit partēs multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quārum pars magna ā feris barbarisque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ōvis avium vivere existimantur, multitque capitis in Ōceanum influit.

I. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum xii millibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere nē longius prōgreserētur orābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant utī ad eōs equītēs quī agmen antecessissent praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sībique ut postestātem faceret in Ubīōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī principēs ac senātus sībi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset, eō condīcione quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās reēs cōnfiendiā spītis bī triūdi spatium daret. Haec omnia

5. Lepontīi, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontīi (lē-pōnˈshyl). 1.
6. Mediomatici, -ōrum, m. (Bīg), the Mediomatici (mēˈdē-ō-māˈtri-sī). 1.
   Triboci, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trīˈbō-sī). 2.
7. citātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of citō, put in motion], swift. 1.
8. dīfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, —, intr. [fluō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. 1.
   ingēns, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. 2.
9. piscis, -is, m., fish. 1.
   avīs, -is, f., bird. 1.

5. longō spatiō, "in a long course." Nantuātium: either there is some mistake, or we know nothing of this tribe of Nantuantes.
8. insulis effectis, "making islands."
10. sunt qui, "there are some who," is usually followed by the subjunctive of characteristic.

Chap. 11-15. Caesar slaughters the German host in revenge for a treacherous attack.
Chap. 11. Envoys beg for time to consult the Ubil. Caesar grants a short truce.
2. ut erat cōnstitūtum: translate after ad ... revertuntur. See 9, 2.
5. antecessissent: implied indirect discourse.
6. quōrum si, "and if their."
7. fēcisset: for the future perfect of the direct form.
8. eā condīcione sē ūsūrōs, "that they would accept the terms"; i.e. the offer to let them settle among the Ubil.
9. triūdi spatium: this seems a short time for the purpose, since the Ubil were some seventy miles away; but there are well authenticated instances of longer rides in less time. The envoy of the Ubil, who were with Caesar, could tell them where to find the authorities, so that no time would be lost in looking them up. darēt: for the imperative of the direct form.
Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā inter- 10 positā equītēs eōrum qui abessent reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prō- cessūrum eō diē dīxit; húc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, qui cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit qui 15 nūntiārent nō hostēs proelīo lacesserent et, si ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērunt quoad ipse cum exercūtī propius accessisset.

12. At hostēs ubi primum nostrōs equītēs cōnspeeōrunt, quōrum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equītēs habērent, quod iī qui frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgāti eōrum paulō ante ā Cæsare dīssesserant atque ā 5 diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celerīter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus cōnsueēūdine suā ad pedēs dēsилērunt, suffossīs equīs complūribusque nostrīs de-

10. iīlē, adv. [olī dat. of īlē], thither; to that place, there (= thither).
11. 12. aquātiō, -ōnis, f. [aqua, water], getting water. 1.
13. frequēns, -entēs, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. 2.
14. postulātum, -ī, n. [postulō, demand], demand, claim, request. 4.

10. eōdem iīlē pertinēres, "tended to that same object." See 9, 6, and note. It is quite likely that Caesar was mistaken. At any rate their request for time to consult the Ubii was perfectly natural, for they could not know whether the Ubii would respect Caesar's command (S, S).

13. hūc: i.e. to the camping ground.
14. convenīrent: see daret, l. 9, note.
15. qui nūntiārent, "men to give orders."

17. sustinērent: i.e. they were simply to defend themselves.
accessīssēt: implied indirect discourse for the future perfect.

Chap. 12. The German cavalry treacherously attack and rout Cæ-
iectis reliqüs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs
ēgērunt ut non prius fugā désisterent quam in cōnspectum
agmini nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostris
interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus,
Pisō Aquitanus, amplissimō genere nātus, cuius avus in cīvitāte
suā rēgnum obtinuerat amicīs a senātū nostrō appellātūs.

Hic cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum
ex periculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus quoad potuit
fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus accep-
tīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, qui iam proeliō excesserat,
procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque
interfectus est.

10. prius quam vēnissent: the subjunctive is probably due to attraction,
but may be explained by App. 236, b.
15. interclūsō: translate by a relative clause.

Chap. 13. Caesar decides on vengeance and detains the German leaders,
who have come to apologize.
10. neque iam, "no longer." 4. expectāre: subject of esse.
5. summae . . . esse, "was (an act)
of the utmost folly." 6. quantum auctorītātis, "what prestige."
9. quaestor: see Int. 39.

12. septuāgintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy.
13. Pīsō, -ōnis, m., Piso (pi'so), an Aquitanian.
5. dēmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], madness, folly. 1.
9. quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēs'tør), one of a
class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army.
3. communicō, 1, tr. [commūnis, common], make common, communicate.
ipart, share. 1.
quam diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima réss accidit, quod postridiē eius diēi māne éadem et perfdiā et simulātio ne úsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus principibus maiōribusque nātū adhibītīs, ad eum in castra vēnērant, simul, ut dicēbātur, suī pūrgandi causā, quod, contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium pridiē commīssissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dé indātiis fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvisus illōs retinēri iussit, ipse omnēs cópiās castris ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proelīō perterritum esse existimābat, agmen subsequī iussit.

14. Acīē triplicī institūtā et celeriter VIII milium itinere cónfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnīt quam quid a ģerētūr Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subītō perterritī,

10. praetermittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. 1.
11. māne, adv., in the morning, early. 1.
perfdiā, -ae, f. [perfdus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dis-
honesty. 2.
simulātīō, -ōnis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. 2.
17. gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvisus sum (App. 74), intr., rejoice. 1.

11. quod, "(namely) that."
13. ad eum . . . vēnērant: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.
contrā atque, "contrary to what."
15. ut . . . impetrārent, "to obtain whatever [lit. "if anything"] they could in the way of a truce by deceiving him."
16. quōs oblātōs (esse), "that they had come into his power."
17. retinēri: this, with what follows, was a shocking violation of the law of nations. Compare what Caesar says of the action of the Veneti, III, 9, 8. Cato, Caesar's enemy, proposed in the Roman senate that Caesar be handed over to the Germans for punishment. Caesar's motives may be summed up as follows: 1, a determination to teach the Germans, once for all, never to invade Gaul; 2, a determination to counteract at once the bad effect which the cavalry defeat must have had on the already disaffected Gaules; 3, irritation at the treacherous attack, although everything shows that it was not authorized by the leaders; 4, a real doubt as to whether the Germans were not trying to gain time for the return of their formidable cavalry; 5, the certainty that a pitched battle with the entire force of Germans would cost him the lives of many soldiers.
Chap. 14. Caesar surprises the German camp.
1. acī . . . institūtā: usually an army has to march in column along a road. Here the country was open and level, so that the army could march in battle formation.
2. prius quam possent: App. 236, 5.
et celeritâte adventûs nostrî et discessû suôrum, neque consiliî 5 habendi neque arma capiendi spatiô datô, perturbantur cöpi-
äsne adversus hostem dúcere, an castra défendere, an fugâ
salûtem petere praestâret. Quôrum timor cum fremitu et
concursû significâtetur, militès nostrî pristinî dieî perfidiâ
incitâtì in castra irrûperunt. Quô locô qui celeriter arma
capere potuérunt paulisîper nostrîs restitérunt atque inter
carròs impedimentaque proelium commisérunt; at reliqua
multitudó puerôrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suîs
domo excesserant Rhenumque trânsierant) passim fugere
cepît; ad quos cônsectandôs Caesar equitâtum misit.

15. Germâni 'post tergum clâmôre auditô cum suôs in-
ferici vidêrent, armîs abiectis signisque militâribus relictis sè ex
castrâs eicereunt, et cum ad consuetum Mosae et Rheni per-
vênissent, reliquâ fugâ désperâtâ magnô numerô interfecí
reliquí sè in flûmen praecipitavérunt atque ibi timôre, lassitu-

4. et . . . et, "both . . . and." 11. suôrum; i.e. their leaders, who had
been detained by Caesar. 12. perturbantur -ne praestâret,
"were in great confusion, (not know-
ing) whether it was better." On the
kind of question see App. 214; 264. c.
9. qui: sc. ëas antecedent.
14. cônsectandôs: the beginning of the
next chapter shows that the object
was massacre, not the taking of prison-
ers.

6. -ne, interro. enclitic: in direct ques-
tions, simply sign of a question (App. 213.
a); in indirect questions, whether: -ne
. . . -ne, -ne . . . an, utrum . . . -ne,
whether . . . or. -2.
adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus,
turned against], opposite to, against.
1.
an, conj., used to introduce the second
member of alternative questions, or, or
rather. *
9. irrupô,-rumpere,-rupî,-rup-
tum, tr. [in+rumpô, break], break in-
to, rush into; force a way into, storm.
1.
13. passim, adv., in all directions.
1.
2. abiciô,-icere, -iēci,-iectum, tr.
[laciô, throw. App. 7], throw away or
down; hurl. 2.
3. consuetûns, -antis, f. [consu-
fluens, flow together], a flowing together, con-
fluence. 1.
5. præcipitô, 1. tr. [praeceps, head-
long], throw or hurl headlong, precipi-
tate. 1.

Chap. 15. The Germans are routed
and slaughtered.
3. Rheni: i.e. the Vacalus; see parte
quâdam, 10, 2, note.
4. reliquâ, "further."
5. reliquî periérunt: some must
have escaped. At any rate in later
years there were Uspetes and Tencteri
living east of the Rhine, not far from
this battlefield. But they may be ac-
counted for by the escape of the ca-
avary.

16. Germánicó belló cónfectó multís dé causís Caesar statuit si Rhénum esse trànsœundum; quárum illa fuit iústitissima, quod, cum vidéret Germános tam facile impellí ut in Galliam venírent, quis quoque rébus eós timére voluit, cum intellegéret et posse et andére populi Rómáni éxercitum s Rhénum trànsire. Accessit etiam quod illa pars equitátús Usipetum et Téncterórum quam suprá commemórvì prae-dándi frúmentandique causá Mosam trànsisse neque proelíó interfuisse poóst fugam suórum sè tràns Rhénum in finés Sugambrórum recéperat sèque cum his coniúnxerat. Ad quós

6. persé, -íre, -i, -itum, intr. [se, go. App. s4], be destroyed or killed, perish. 2.

1. Germánicus, -a, -um, adj. [Germánus, German], of or pertaining to the Germans, German. 1.

6. oppressi, "overwhelmed."

ad unum, "to a man."

7. ex, "after," "relieved of."

9. discédéndi . . . fécit: if Caesar had believed the leaders guilty of treachery, they above all others should have been punished.

12. libertátem, "permission" to remain.

However unjust and brutal Caesar's treatment of the Germans may have been, it served his purpose. More than a year later, when Caesar had lost a legion and a half and all Gaul seemed ripe for revolt, the Treveri tried to get German help. But the Germans replied (V, 55) that the thing had been tried twice, by Arlovistus and by the Tenceri; they would tempt fortune no more.

2. iústus, -a, -um, adj. [iùs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, just, fair; proper, regular; with funéra, appropriate. 4.

10. Sugambri, -orum, m. (Ag), the Sugambri (sù-gám'bri). 4.

Chap. 16-19. Caesar crosses the Rhine, as a warning to the Germans.

Chap. 16. Caesar's reasons for deciding to cross the Rhine.

2. iústissima, "most valid," "strongest."

3. quod . . . voluit: in apposition with illa.

4. suis . . . rébus, "for their own possessions too." The possessive usually follows its noun; why does it here precede?

cum intellegéret, "(as they would) when they should see"; implied indirect discourse for the future indicative.

6. accessit etiam quod, lit. "there was added also the fact that," = "moreover," "and besides."

7. suprá: see 9, 5.
cum Caesar nāntiōs misisset qui postularent eōs qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populi Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum finire; sī sē invitō Germanōs in Galliam trānsire nōn aequum existimāre, cūr suī quicquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ûbi autem, quī ūni ex Trānsrhēnāniēs ad Caesarem lēgātōs miserant, amicitiam fēcérant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus rei pūublicae prohibērē tur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sībi ad auxilium spēmque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opinīōnem eius exercitiūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hoc novissimō proelio factō, etiam ad ultimās Germanōrum nātiōnēs, uti opinīōne et amicitīa populi Rōmāni tūtī esse possent. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causis quās commemorāvī Rhēnum trānsire dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsire neque satis tūtum

13. finiō, 4, tr. [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. 1.
14. cūr, interro. and rel. adv., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. 4.
16. Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., beyond or across the Rhine; pl. as noun, Trānsrhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. 1.

12. (ut) dēderent: object of postulārent.
13. sē refers to the subject of existimāret, not to the speaker; so suī, l. 14.

sui . . . Rhēnum, "that anything across the Rhine belong to (lit. "be of") his authority or control."

17. obsidēs dederant: see II, 35, 5, note.

ōrābant, "kept begging." The envoys had been with him for some time, having come before the battle with the Germans; see 8, 7.

19. occupātiōnibus rei pūublicae, "affairs of state."
20. trānsportāret: in the same construction as ferret, 1. 18.
21. reliquī temporis, "for the future."

futūrum: this and the following infinitives depend on a verb of saying implied in ōrābant.

Chap. 17. Description of Caesar’s bridge across the Rhine.

2. tūtum: an enemy could more easily prevent a landing from boats, and in case of defeat boats would offer a dangerous means of retreat.
esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsi sumīma difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propēr lātitūdinem, rapiditātem, altitūdinemque s flūminis, tamen id sibi contendēndum aut alter nōn trādūcendum exercitum existimābat. Ratiōnem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bīnā sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praecātū dimēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervālō pedum duōrum inter sē jungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissā in flūmen κ ordained statēbat, sistēmus ad eōne modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastigātē ut secundum nātūram.

5. rapiditās, -tātis, f. [rapīduis, swift], swiftness. 1.
6. tignum, -ī, n., log, timber, beam, pile. 2.
7. sesquipedālis, -a, adj. [sesquii, one and a half + pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. 1.
8. inmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [in + mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trābus immissīs, beams being let in. 2.
9. fastigō, -figerā, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in, plant. 1.
10. prinē, adv. [prōnus, inclined], sloping downwards. 1.
11. prōnē, adv. [prōnus, inclined], sloping. 1.
12. perpendiculum, -ī, n., plumb line. 1.
13. perpendiculum, -ī, n., plumb line. 1.
14. perpendiculum, -ī, n., plumb line. 1.
15. perpendiculum, -ī, n., plumb line. 1.

8. neque suae . . . statuēbat, "he considered it inconsistent with his own dignity, etc." dignitātis is a predicative possessive genitive. The construction of the bridge would impress the barbārians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.
9. intervālō . . . jungēbat, "he joined together [by spiking wooden cross-pieces on them] with a space of two feet [between them]." See plan and the pile-driver. p. 273. Intervallō is an ablative of attendant circumstance.
10. haec . . . dēfixerat, "when he had let them down into the river by machines and had secured them there." They were probably floated out to the raft on which the pile-driver (p. 273) stood, and were then handled by a derrick or some such simple machine. dēfixerat: mode? App. 241, b: G.-L. 584: A. 543: B. 288, 3: H.-B. 570: H. 601, 4.
11. nōn . . . perpendiculum, "not vertically, like a pile"; i.e. as piles are usually driven.
12. ut . . . prōcumbent: i.e. sloping down-stream.
Caesar's Bridge

a, a, tigna bina, l. 8.
b, b, tiglaria duo (tigna), l. 13.
c, bipedalis trabes, l. 16.
d, d, d, d, fibulae, l. 17.
e, derecta materia, l. 21.
f, longi crutesque, l. 22.
g, subica obliqua acta, l. 23.
h, aliae (subicae) supra pontem, l. 25.
fluminis procunberent, iis item contraria duo ad eundem modum iuncta intervallō pedum quadrāgēnum ab inferiorō parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuēbat. 15 Haece utraque, insuper bipedālibus trabibus immissis, quantum eōrum tignōrum iunctūra distabat, binīs utrimque fibulis ab

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>14.</th>
<th>quadrāgēnum, -ae, -a, distr. num.</th>
<th>17.</th>
<th>iunctūra, -ae, f.</th>
<th>[iunō, join], joining.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>adj.</td>
<td>[quadrāgintā, forty], forty each.</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated.</td>
<td>1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>insuper, adv.</td>
<td>[super, above], above, on the top, from above.</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bipedālis, -e, adj.</td>
<td>[bis, twice+pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick.</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

13. iis . . . statuēbat: i.e. a similar pair of piles was driven into the river bed opposite to these, forty feet down-stream (ab inferiorō parte), but sloping against the current. See plan, b, b.

duo: we should expect bina, as in l. 8.


The distance must have been measured c-v the surface of the water: the roadway was therefore a little less than forty feet.

16. haec utraque, “these two pairs,” is the subject of distinebantur.

A two-foot beam, exactly filling the space between the piles of each pair (quantum . . . distabat), was laid across from one pair of piles to the pair which faced it (plan, c). These pairs sloped toward each other, and although they were driven into the bottom they would sway with the current and would tend to fall together when the cross-beam had to carry a weight. Therefore they were held at the proper distance apart (distinebantur) by a pair of fastenings (fibulae) at each end of the two-foot cross beam.

quantum . . . distabat, lit. “as much as the joining of the timbers stood apart.” quantum is an accusative of extent of space and has bipedālibus as its antecedent.

17. fibulis: it is not certain what these “fastenings” were. Those shown in the plan (d, d) are simple and effective, and are occasionally used in modern engineering. The two-foot cross-beam rests on a cross-bar, which is spiked firmly to the outer sides of the piles. Another cross-bar is laid loosely in the opposite angle, and the outer ends of the two cross-bars are lashed firmly together. These two cross-bars are the fibulae. Any ingenious pupil can make a model which will show the effectiveness of this arrangement.
extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-
rium partem revinctīs tanta erat operis firmitūdō atque ea
rērum nātūra ut quō maior vis aquae sē incitāvisset hoc artius
illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā materiā iniectā contextēba-
tur ac longuriis crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētīus
sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis obliquē agēbantur,
quae prō arīte subiectae et cum omni opere consiunctae vim
flūminis exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocrī spa-
tiō, ut, si arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendi operis causā

18. quibus refers to fibulis. It is in the ablative absolute with disclūsīs and
revinctīs.

disclūsīs: by the cross-beam and the
piles.

in . . . revinctīs, "bound together
in the opposite direction"; i.e. opposite
to the direction of their separation.

19. ea rērum nātūra, "such was the
nature of the structure."

20. incitāvieset is subjunctive by
attraction.

hoc . . . tenērentur, "the more firm-
ly the parts of the structure were bound
together."

21. haec refers to the part of the
structure already described, for which
Caesar has no name. In modern engi-
neering it is called a trestle-bent. There
were probably between fifty and sixty
such trestle-bents. They were connected
by timbers laid from one cross-beam
to the next, lengthwise of the bridge (dē-
rēctā materiā). Plan, c.

22. nihilō sētīus: i.e. although the
bridge was already very strong.

23. et is correlative with et in l. 25.
obliquē: i.e. they were driven in with
a greater slant than the double piles
had. See plan, g.

24. quae prō arīte subiectae ex-
cipserent, "which, set below as a but-
tress, were to withstand, etc."

25. aliae: sc. sublicae agēbantur.
There is nothing in the text to show the
number of these piles, but the plan (a)
suggests an effective defense.

spatiō: ablative of measure of dif-
ference with supers.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in ēōrum finibus morātus, omnibus vicīs aedificiisque incensīs, frumentisque succīsīs, se in finēs Ubīorum recipit, atque īs auxilium suum pollicitus, si ā Suebīs premerentur, haec ab īis cognovit: Suebōs, posteāquam per explōratōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōrē suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimīsīsse utī dē oppidis dēmi-grārent, liberōs, uxōrēs, suāe omnia in silvīs dūpōnerent, atque omnēs quī arma ferre possent ūnum in locum conveni- rent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium fērē regiōnum ēārum quās
Suēbi obtinērent; hic Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus cōnfectīs quārum rērum causā trādūcere exer-
citum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum inceret, ut Sugamb-
brōs ulciserētur, ut Ubiōs obsidione liberāret, diēbus omnīnō
vītrāns Rhēnum cōnsumptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pontem-
que rescīdīt.

\[20.\] Exiguā parte aestātīs reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentrionēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hie-
mēs, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallīcīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrātā auxilia
inteligēbat et, si tempus ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen
magnō sībi usūi fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsumā adīsse,
genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portūs, adītūs cognōvissent;
quae omnia ferē Gallī erant incognīta. Neque enim temerē

10. hic, adv., here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned) there, in that place; (of an incident just mentioned) then, at this time. 1.
14. obsidīō, -ōnis, f. [obsidēō, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. 1.
liberō, 1, tr. [liber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. 2.

16. utītās, -tātis, f. [ūtīlis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. 1.
1. exiguus, -a, -um, adj. scanty, short, small, meager, limited. 1.
8. cognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in- cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. 2.
temerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without good reason. 2.

4. hostibus nostrīs: indirect object of subministrātā.
subministrātā auxilia: for an instance see III, 9, 26. In II, 14, 8, we learn that Britain had afforded refuge to some of Caesar’s enemies.
6. magnō . . . fore, “it would be of great advantage to him.”
sī adīsset, etc.: for the future perfect of the direct form. These clauses give the real object of the expedition, which was only preparatory to that of the following year.
8. quae . . . incognīta: the Gauls may have deceived Caesar; at any rate there are indications that some Gauls knew a good deal about Britain: in II, 4,19, we learn that a king of the Suessi-
praeter mercatórēs illō adit quisquam, neque ĕs īpsīs quicquam praeter ēram maritimam atque ēās regiōnēs quae sunt contra Gangliam nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercatórībus neque quanta esse ēnsulae magnitudō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolarent, neque quem ēsum bellī habērent aut quibus ēnstītūs ēterentur, neque quī ēssent ad maiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs reperīre poterat.

21. Ad hae cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitratō C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Hūc mandat ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīnum ēvertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpīs in Morīnōs proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regionibus et quam superiōre aēstāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat classem ēbūt. Interim, cōnsiliō eius cognītō et per mercatórēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus ēnsulae civitātibus ad ēum lēgātī veniunt qui pollicéantur obsidēs dare atque ēmerī 10 populi Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audiēs liberalēs iūs ēt hortētusque ut in ēā sententiā permanērent eōs domum

5. trāiectus, -ūs, m. [trāiciō, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. 1.
9. Britannus, -a, -um, adj. of Britāin, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni
11. obtemperō, 1, intr. [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. 1.

ones had been king of a part of Britain besides, and in VI, 13, we learn that Gallic Druids went to Britain to study.

9. illō: the adverb.

his īpsīs: the traders; dative with nōtum.
11. vocātīs mercatórībus, "although he summoned, etc."
12. neque, etc.: a series of indirect questions, depending on reperīre.

Chap. 21. Caesar sends men in advance to gain information and to advise submission.

2. Volusēnum: either the subject of esse or the object of praemittit; supply eum in one place or the other. See what Caesar says of Volusenus in III, 5, 7; (bri-tān'ī); better, the Britons. 1.

he is the only tribune whom Caesar mentions with honor.

nāvī longā: see Int. 64.

6. hūc: at a harbor among the Morīnī. This was probably Wissant, the point of France which is nearest to Britanī: see map facing p. 254. The harbor is now filled with sand, but was in use during the middle ages.

10. qui pollicéantur: a purpose clause, but best translated by a present participle.

dare, obtemperāre: verbs of promising are more often followed by the future infinitive with subject accusative, sē datūrōs esse.
remittit et cum iis unà Commium, quem ipse Atrebátibus superātis régem ibi cōnstituerat, cuius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cuiusque auctōritās in his regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Illic imperat quās possit adeat cīvitātēs, hortēturque ut populi Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntīt. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facūltātis dari potuit qui nāvēsēgredī ac sē barbaris committēre nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarēm revertitur quaeque ibi perspēsit renuntiat.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvēsēm parandārum causā morātūr, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod homīnēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuetūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūros pollicērunt. Hoc sībi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerēndi propter annī tempus facūltātem habēbat ne-

13. Commīus, -mi, m., Commius (κόμης), a chief of the Atrebates. 3.
14. ibi: i.e. among the Atrebates.
15. fidēlis, -e, adj. [fīdēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 1.
16. in his regiōnibus: i.e. in Belgium.
17. fidem sequantur lit. "follow the protection (of)," = "surrender (to)."
18. quantum ... potuit, lit. "as much as of opportunity could be given to a man," = "as much as a man could."
19. qui ... audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.
20. qui ... audēret: a clause of characteristic. Caesar cannot mean to blame Volusenus. Both the difficulty which Caesar himself experienced in landing with his army and the imprisonment of Commius will show that Volusenus could not possibly have landed and returned.
22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvēsēm parandārum causā morātūr, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt qui sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod homīnēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuetūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea quae imperāsset factūros pollicērunt. Hoc sībi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerēndi propter annī tempus facūltātem habēbat ne-
que hás tantulárum rērum occupātiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eōs in fīdem recipit. Nāvibus circiter lxxx onerāriīs coāctīs contractīsque, quot satis esse ad duās transportandās legiōnēs existimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat quaestōri, lēgātīs, praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant xviii onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō a mili-bus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur quōminus in eundem portum venire possent; hās equītibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Titūriō Sabinō et Aurunculēió Cottaē lēgātis in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant dūcēndum dedit; Sulpicium Rūfum lēgā-tum cum eō praesidiō quod satis esse arbitrābātur portum tenēre iussit.

23. His cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertīā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēisque in ulteriōrem

9. antepōnō, -pōner. -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place be-fore; prefer. 1.
12. onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [onus, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. * contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. 2.
16 quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+ minus, not], so that not, that not; from. 2.
20. Sulpicius, -ei, m., Publius Sul-picius Rufus (pub'li-ūs sūl-pish’yūs rûfũs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. 1.
1. nancisci nancisci, nactus sum, tr., get, obtain possession of; meet with, find. *
2. solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 3.


Chap. 23-27. After a sharp con- test Caesar effects a landing and ac- cepts the surrender of the Britons. 

23. Caesar crosses to Britain and makes preparations for landing.

1. idōneam tempestātem: a gentle southerly wind and clear weather, with the moon nearly full.

2. tertīā vigiliā: just after midnight, the morning of August 27th. The first part of the night was spent in launching the ships, which had been
portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī
circiter quārtā cum primīs nāvibus Britanniam attigī atque
ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōn-
spexis. Cuius locī haec erat nātūra atque ita montibus angustē
mare continēbātur utī ex locīs superiōribus in litus tēlum
adigi possēt. Hunc ad āgreidiendum nēquāquam idōneum
locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōrām
nōnam in ancoris exspectāvīt. Interim légātīs tribunīisque
militum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset et quae
fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque, ut rā militāris ratiō, maximē
ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īstābilem
mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab īis ad-
ministrāreōntur. His dīmissīs et ventum et aēustum ūnō

3. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsum, tr. [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 1.
4. tardē, adv. [tardus, slow], slowly; comp. tardius, too slowly. 1.
6. expōnē, -pōnere, -posuī, -posi-
tum, tr. [pōnē, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. 2.
7. angustē, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. 1.
8. litus, -orīs, n., seashore, beach, shore. 3.

3. drawn up on the sandy beach, and in
embarking.
4. tardius, "too late." The wind
changed and delayed them for three
days.
5. hōrā quārtā: about 9 A.M. At this
time of year the fourth hour began about
8:30 and ended after 9:30.
5. Britanniam attigīt: probably at
or near Dover. The hills spoken of are
the famous chalk cliffs.
7. haec, "such."
235, b.
11. ad hōrām nōnam: somewhere near 3
P.M.
12. in ancoris, "at anchor."
13. ut ... postulārent, "as mili-
tary science, and especially as seaman-
ship requires"; the subjunctive is due
to implied indirect discourse.
14. ut quae habērent, lit. "as
(things) which have,"="since it has to
do with"; a causal relative clause, App.
245: G-L. 633: A. 535, e. n. 1: B. 283, 3:
H.-B. 523, 6: H. 592, 1.
15. (ut) administrāreōntur: the ob-
ject of monuit.
ad tempus, "on the instant."
16. ventum et aēustum secundum:
on other grounds it is supposed that
Caesar sailed northeast, to Deal; but it
has been proved that at this time the
tide was running southwest. Possibly
tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancoris, circiter milla passuum septem ab eo locō progressus apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriis, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquis cōpiīs subsecūti nostrōs nāvibus ēgređī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa diffīcultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitudīinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, militibus autem ignōtōs locīs, impeditīs manibus, māgnō et grāvi onérc armōrum oppressī simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsicendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut cx āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expeditīs nōtissimīs locīs audāctē tēla conicerent et equōs ĵnsuēfactōs incitarent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterrītī atque huius omnīnō generīs pugnāe ĵmperītī nōn ēadem alacritāte ac studīō quō in pedestribīs ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērunt ĵtēbantur.

25. Quod ĵubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs ĵnūsitātor et móitus ad ĵsum expeditiōr,
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, IV, 26

Paulum removēri ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmis incitāri et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostēs prēpellī ac submovēri iussit; quae rēs magnō īstī nostrīs fuit. Hoc et nāvium figura et rēmōrum mōtū et inōsītō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī constitērunt ac paulum etiam pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs militibus cūntantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, qui decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs ut ea rēs legiōnī fēliciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'committōnēs, nisi vultīs aquilam hostibus prōdere; egō certē meum rē publicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hoc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiect atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī, cohortātī inter sē nē tantum dēdecus admittēretur, unīversi ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus approquināvērunt.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrisque ācriter. Nōstri tamen, quod neque ordīnēs servāre neque fīmter insisterē neque signa sub-

4. funda, -ae, f., sling. 1. sagitta, -ae, f., arrow. 1.
6. figura, -ae, f. [āgō, form], form, shape, figure. 1.
10. aquila, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard (as the aquila was the chief standard of the legion). 3.
obtestor, -i, tr. [tester, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. 1. fēliciter, adv. [fēlix, happy], happily, fortunately. 1.
11. ēvenīō, -venire, -vēnī, -vēntum, intr. [venīō, come], turn out, result. 1.

more like the trading vessels, with which the Britons were acquainted.
mōtus . . . experītor, lit. "whose motion was freer for use," = "which were more easily managed."
4. latus apertum, "the right flank," which was unprotected by shields.
9. qui, "the man who"
10. aquilam: see Int. 43, and Plate I, 6, facing p. 27.
13. praestiterō: note the force of

inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations and following one or more words of the quotation, say. 1. committō, -ōnis, m. [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. 1.
12. certē, adv. [certus, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. 1. meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. [ct. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. 1.
15. dēdecus, -oris, n. [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. 1.
2. fīmter, adv. [fīrmus, strong], firmly. 1.

the tense. "(whatever the result shall be) I at least shall have done my duty."
15. inter sē, "one another."
16. ex proximis nāvibus, "those who were in the nearest ships."

Chap. 26. After a fierce contest the Britons are put to flight.
2. fīmter insisterē, "get a firm footing."
signa subsequi: i.e. keep their formation by cohorts.
sequi poterant, atque alius alīā ex nāvī quibuscumque signīs occurrerat sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliqūōs singulārēs ex 5 nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impeditōs adoriēbantur, plurēs puncōs circumsistēbant, alīi ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla conicībant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia militibus complēri iussit et, quos labōrantēs cōnspexerat, his subsidia 10 submittēbat. Nostri, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtis in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dēdērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuerunt, quod equītes cursum tenēre atque insulam capere nōn potuerant. Hoc ūnum ad prōstīnām fortūnam Caesari dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsīdēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē polliciti sunt. Una cum his lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem supra dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemīssum. Hunc illī ē 5 nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta

4. aggregō, I, tr. [ad+grex, flock], unīte in a flock; assemble; join, attach.
9. scapha, -ae, f., skiff, boat.
speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [speculātor, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting.
3. alius ... nāvī, "men from different ships."
quibuscumque ... aggregābat, "gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon"; as in the battle with the Nervii, II, 21, 13.
6. ubi cōnspexerant: the pluperfect instead of the usual perfect with ubi, expressing repeated action, just as the following imperfects do.
7. plurēs, "several" of the enemy.
in ūniversōs, "upon the main body."
9. scaphās, speculātōria nāvigia: these boats could be rowed into shallow water.
11. simul = simul atque.
10. laborō, I, intr. [labor, toll], toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed.
6. ōrātor, -ōris, m. [ōrō, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy.
13. neque, "but ... not."
longius, "very far."
hoc ūnum: the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement.

Chap. 27. The Britons sue for peace.
3. datūrōs, factūrōs sēsē: the regular construction after verbs of promising; see note on dāre, 21, 10.
4. supra: see 21, 13.
6. cum, "although."
modō, "in the capacity of," "as."
dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant; tum 
proeliō factō remisērunt, et in petendā pāce eius reī culpam in 
multitudinem contulērunt et propter imprūdentiam ut ignōs-
cerētur petivērunt. Caesar questus quod, cum ultrō in conti-
mentem lēgātīs missis pācem ab sē petissent, bellum sine causā 
intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dixit obsidēscque imperāvit; 
quōrum illi partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus 
locīs arcessītam paucīs diebus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Interēa 
suōs remigrārē in agrōs iussērunt, principēsque undique con-
venīre et sē civitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepĕrunt.

28. His rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diēm quārtum quam 
est in Britanniam ventum nāvēs xviii, dē quibus suprā dēmōn-
strātūm est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī 
ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex 
castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subītō coorta est ut nūlla 
eārum currum tenēre possēt, sed aliae eōdem unde erant pro-
fectae referentur, aliae ad inffeārem partem īnsulae, quae est 

cō], forgive, pardon. 3.
13. longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; 
long, long continued. 2.
15. commendō, 1, tr. [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. 1.
3. lēnis, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth. 1.

1. post . . . quam = diē quārtō postquam. When postquam is divided, post 
is usually an adverb, "afterwards . . . than." Here it is a preposition. The 
day was August 30th, the third day after 
his arrival, according to our reckoning.

2. suprā, see 22, 15 and 23, 4.
6. aliae, aliae: the wind must have 
come from the north or northeast. The 
ships that were farthest out at sea were 
driven back at once; the others got some 
shelter west of Dover, but as the storm 
proved too severe they preferred to re-
turn to Gaul rather than land on the 
hostile shore of Britain, miles from Cae-
sar’s camp.

Chap. 28-31. A storm turns back 
Caesar’s cavalry and wrecks his fleet. 
Although he partially repairs 
the fleet, the Britons are encouraged to 
attack him.

Chap. 28. The cavalry transports 
are driven back by a storm.
propis sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum periculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactīs, cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem pētiērunt. 10

29. Eādem nocte accidit ut esset lūna plēna, qui diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Oceanō efficere consuevit; nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita únō tempore et longās nāvēs, quās in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātāe, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostri trīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs, reliquisque armamentīs amissīs ad navigandum inūtiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae quibus reportāri possent, et omnia deerant quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant usūi, et, quod


11. auxiliāriōs, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion.

8. occāsum: for construction see note on propius sē, 9, 3.

9. cum complērentur, “since they began to fall.”

10. adversā nocte, “in the face of the night.”

Chap. 29. The storm and the tide wreck Caesar’s fleet.

1. lūna plēna: there was a full moon on the night of August 30th. This is what enables us to calculate the day of Caesar’s arrival in Britain.

2. aestūs maximōs: the “spring” tide. The average rise and fall of the tide at Deal is said to be 16 feet. This tide, helped by the wind, rose much higher.

3. nostrī ... incognitum: the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranea, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Venetí.

4. quae ... dēligātēs, “which were riding at anchor.” The transports were heavier than the war-ships and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.

5. administrandī, “of managing them.”

6. quibus possent: a clause of characteristic.

Mediterranea, where the tides rise only a few inches. Yet they had had some experience with the tides in the war with the Venetí.

4. quae ... dēligātēs, “which were riding at anchor.” The transports were heavier than the war-ships and Caesar had not thought it worth the effort to beach them.

6. administrandī, “of managing them.”

10. quibus possent: a clause of characteristic.

11. omnia quae erant ūnei, “all the things which were needed”; a determining clause. App. 231.
omnibus cōnståbat hiemāri in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvisum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cognītīs principēs Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellexerent et paucitātem militum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedimentīs Cae-

sar legiones transportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebellīōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōducēre, quod hīs superātīs aut rēditū interclūsis nēminem posteā bellī inferendi causā in Britanniam trānsitū-

rum cōnfidēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātīm ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agris dēdūcere coepe-

runt.

31. At Cæsar, etsī nondum eōrum consilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicābatur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissīmē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbā-

tur et quae ad eās rēs erant úsui ex continenti comparāri iube-

8. redītus, -ūs, m. [redō, return], returning, return. 1.
9. affīgō, -figere, -fixī, -flictum, tr., strike against; overthrow; damage.
10. optimum: predicate adjective with esse, the subject being prohibēre and prōducēre.
11. factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.
12. hiemāri oportēre, “that they must pass the winter.”
13. in hiemem, “for the winter.”

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to re-

new hostilities.

1. principēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 6.
2. ētiam, “still.”
3. optimum: predicate adjective with esse, the subject being prohibēre and prōducēre.
4. factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.
5. factā: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with prohibēre.

8. āerīs, āeris, n. copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; āerīs num, another’s money, debt. 1.
12. hiemāri oportēre, “that they must pass the winter.”
13. in hiemem, “for the winter.”

Chap. 31. Caesar repairs his fleet.

1. ex . . . eō, “from the disaster to his ships and from the fact.”
2. quod accidit, “which really did happen.”
3. cāsūs, “emergencies.”
4. quae nāvēs, eārum, “of those ships which.”
5. āerīs num, another’s money, debt. 1.
6. āerīs num, another’s money, debt. 1.

12. hiemāri oportēre, “that they must pass the winter.”
13. in hiemem, “for the winter.”

Chap. 30. The Britons plan to re-

new hostilities.

1. principēs: subject of dūxērunt, l. 6.
2. ētiam, “still.”
3. optimum: predicate adjective with esse, the subject being prohibēre and prōducēre.
4. factū: App. 296. It is not needed in translation.
5. factā: translate as an infinitive, coördinate with prohibēre.
8. āerīs, āeris, n. copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; āerīs num, another’s money, debt. 1.

bat. Itaque cum summō studiō a mīlitibus administrāretur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquis ut navigāri commodē posset effēcit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex consuētūdine ūnā frumentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspiciōne interpositā, cum pars homīnum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventītāret, iī qui prō portīs castrōrum in statione erant Caesāri nūntiāvērunt pulvere m maiōrem quam consuētūdō ferret in ea parte vidērī quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id quod erat suspicātus, ali-quid novī ā barbarīs initūm consiliī, cohōrtēs quae in stationibus erant sēcum in eam partem proficiscī, ex reliquis duās in stationem succēdere, reliquās armāri et confestim sēsē subseci o iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs processisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustīnēre et confertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvērit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquis partibus dēmessō frumentō, pars ūnā erat reliqua, suspicāti hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūros noctū in silvis delituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ordinibus perturbāve-rant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

5. pulvis, -eris, m., dust. 1.
10. confestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. 1.
14. dēmetō, -metere, -messui, -messum, tr. [metō, reap], mow, reap. 1.
15. dēlitāscō, -litāscere, -litūi, —, intr. [latāscō, incept. of lateō, I lie hidden], hide one’s self, lurk. 1.
16. mētō, metere, messui, messum, tr., mow, reap. 1.
18. essedum, -ī n., a two-wheeled war chariōt of the Britōns. 2.

8. summō studiō: the soldiers were as anxious to get away as Caesar was.
9. reliquis ... effēcit, lit. “made that it could be salled by the rest,” = “made the others fit to sail in.”

Chap. 32-36. After repelling the Britons, who attack first one legion, then the camp, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chap. 32. The Britons attack one legion while it is engaged in foraging.
1. frumentātum: App. 295.
3. interpositā, “having arisen.”
in agrīs remanēret: ostensibly en-
gaged in labor on the farms near the camp.

6. quam ... ferret, “than usual.”
8. cohōrtēs: probably four, one at each gate.
10. succēdere, “to take their places.”
14. āna, “only one.”
17. incertis ordinibus: owing to
33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitānt et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ordinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turмās insinuāvērunt, ex essedīs désiliunt et pedibus proeliāntur. Aurīgēs interim paulātīm ex proeliō ex-cēdunt atque ita currūs collocant ut, si illī ā multitūdine hos-tium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilītātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praēstānt, ac tantum ūsū cotidiānō et exercitātiōne efficient utī in dēclīvī ac praepiciēt locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsis-tēre et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rébus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tem-

| circumdō, -dare, -dēdi, -datum, tr. | 8. stabilitās, -tātis, f. [stabilīs, firm], firmness, steadiness. 1. |
| dō, put; | 11. moderor, 1, tr. [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. 1. |
| put around, encompass, surround. 3. | flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, tr., bend, turn, direct. 1. |
| 2. perequītō, 1, intr. [equītō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. 1. | tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of a wagon). 1. |
| 3. rota, -ae, f., wheel. 1. | percurrō, -currere, -cūrri, -cūrsum, intr. [cūrro, run], run along or over. 1. |
| 4. turma, -ae, f., troop or squadron of about thirty cavalrymen. 1. | 12. cītō, adv., quickly, speedily. |
| insinuō, 1, tr. [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. 1. | Comp., cius, sup., citissimē. 1. |
| 5. aurīgā, -ae, m., charioteer. 1. | 1. novitās, -tātis, f. [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. 1. |
| 6. currus, -ūs, m., chariot; wagon. 2. | 10. ac, "and even." |
| 7. receptus, -ūs, m. [recipīō, receive, retreat; refuge, shelter. 1. | incitātōs, "when at full speed." |
| 8. praestāt, "display." | sustinēre, "to check"; depending on cōnsuērint. |
| the surprise the usual line of battle could not be formed. | brevī, "quickly." |
| Chap. 33. How the Britons use their war-chariots in battle. | 11. per, "along." |
| 2. equōrum, "caused by the horses." | iugō: the crossbar attached to the end of the pole and resting on the horses' necks. |
| 4. equitum turmās: the cavalry of the enemy, whom they thus attacked. | Chap. 34. Caesar rescues the imperiled legion, and the Britons march against his camp. |
| Caesar had no cavalry this year, but this is a general description; in the next expedition his cavalry were thus defeated. | 1. rēbus: ablative of means. |
| 6. I111: the warriors, who had alighted. | nostrīs: indirect object of tūlit. perturbātīs agrees with it. |
| 7. expedītum receptum, "a ready retreat." | novitāte, "because of the strangeness." |
pore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit; namque eius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostri sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad laccussendum hostem et ad committiendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuēt et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, qui erant in agrīs reliquī discēsērunt. Secūtāe sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempētātēs quae et nostros in castrīs continerent et hostem a pugnā prohibērunt. Interim barbarī nūntios in omnēs partēs dimissērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum militum sūs praedicaverunt et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sūi liberandī facultās darētur, si Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. His rēbus celerīter magnā multitūdīne peditātūs equitātēsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar ētsī idem quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsi, celeritāte periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equītēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum tranṣportāverat, legiōnēs in acī prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō prōeliō diūtius nostrōrum militum impetum hostēs ferre non potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī quantum cursū et

8. continuus, -a, -um, adj. [continēo, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 2.
11. praedicō, 1, tr. [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. 3.

5. aliēnum, lit. "belonging to another," = "unfavorable." suō, "his own," almost illustrates the corresponding meaning, "favorable.
6. dum haec geruntur, "in the meantime." 7. qui ... reliquī: mentioned in 32, 3.
9. quae continérunt: App. 230, a, examples.
12. praedae faciendae: they would have been disappointed, for the Romans had left their baggage in Gaul. 30, 5. sui liberandi: see note on sui purgandi, 13, 14.

Chap. 35. The Britons are put to flight.
1. idem fore, ut, "that the same thing would occur ... namely, that." 
4. ante: in 21, 14 and 27, 4.
5. diūtius, "very long." 
6. ac, "but"; for this translation see note on III, 19, 9.
7. tantō spatiō quantum ... po-
vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iis occidērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiis incēnsis sē in castra recēpērunt,

36. Eōdem diē légātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. 'Hīs Caesar numerum obsidēn quam ante imperāverat duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfirmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigationēnem subiciendam nōn existimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs in- columēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iis onerāriāe duae eōsdem portūs quōs reliquae capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī militēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contendērunt, Morīnī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficiscēns pācātōs reliquerat, spē prædae adductī primō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstētērunt ac, si sēsē interfici nōllent, arma pōnerē iussērunt. Cum illī orbe tuērunt, "over as great a distance as their speed and strength permitted." spatiō is an ablative of the way (App. 144), where an accusative of extent of space would seem more natural; see H.-B. 426, c.

Chap. 36. Caesar returns to Gaul.

1. hīs: dative of reference.
2. eōs ... iussit: It is not surprising to learn later that most of the tribes failed to do this.
3. propinquā diē: ablative abso- lute. As Caesar reached Britain August 27th, and the equinox then fell on Sept. 24th, he must have remained in Britain about three weeks.
4. hiemī ... subiciendam, "that his voyage should be exposed to wintry weather."
5. orbe: a formation like the modern hollow square, used when troops were attacked on all sides.
6. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." capere, "reach," "make." et, "but." 
7. infrā: to the south. They may have landed at Ambleteuse.
8. quōs reliquae, "as the rest." capere, "reach," "make."
9. orbis terrārum, the world.

than 1.

2. trecentī,-ae,-a (CCC), card. num. adj. [trēs, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. 1.
5. orbīs, -is, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the world. 1.

Chap. 37. The Morini revolt and are conquered.

1. quibus ex nāvibus: i.e. the two transports.
2. in castra: at Wissant.
3. pācātōs: see 22, 1-11.
4. primō: the adverb.
5. pōnerē: "to lay down."
factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātūm suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostri mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplierīs hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex his occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in conspectrum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnus-que eōrum numeros est occīsus.

THE DIRECT FORM OF THE INDIRECT DISCOURSE
IN BOOKS I AND II

I, 13, 7-19. Si pæcem populus Römānus cum Helvētiīs factīst, in eam partem ībunt atque ībi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs tū cōnstitueris atque esse volueris; sin bellō persequī perseverābis, reminiscere et veteris incommodī populi Römānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvisō ānum pāgum adortus es, cum ī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūtī trībuere aut nōs dēspicerē; nōs īta ā patribus maiōribusque nostrīs didicimus ut magis virtūtē contīdāmus quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nītāmur. Quārē nōli committēre ut ħic locus ībī cōnstititus ex calamītāte populi Römānī et internecīōne exercītūs nōmen cāpiat aut memoriām prōdat.

I, 14, 1-20. Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis datur, quod eās rēs quās vōs commemorāvīstis memoriā teneō, atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populi Römānī accidērunt; quī si alicuīus iniūriāe sībi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficīle cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegēbat quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putābat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī velīt, num etiam recentiūm iniūriārūm, quod eō invitō iter per prōvinciām per vim temptāvīstis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāvīstis, memoriam dēpōnere potest? Quod vestrā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriāminī, quodque tam diū vōs impūne iniūriās intulisse admirāminī, eōdem pertinent. Čōnsuēvērunt enim ā immortālēs, quō gravius homīnēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulciscī volunt, hīs secundīōres interdūm rēs et diūturnīōrem impūnītātem concēdere. Cum haec īta sīnt, tamen, si obsidēs ā vōbis mihi dābuntur, utī ea quae pollicēminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, et si Haeduīs dē iniūriīs quās ipsīs
sociisque intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam.

20-23. Ita Helvētii à maiōribus suīs institūti sunt uti obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; huius reī populus Rōmānus est testīs.


I, 18, 6-24. Ipse est Dumnorīx, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter liberālitātem grātiā, cupidus rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs pōrtōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habet, propterea quod illō licente contrā licēri audet nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familīarem auxit et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāvit; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alit et circūm sē habet; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud finītimās cīvitātēs largīter potest, atque huius potentīāe causā mātre in Biturīgibus homīnī illic nōbilissīmō ac potentissīmō collocāvit, ipse ex Helvētiōs uxōrem habēt, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāvit. Favet et cupit Helvētiōs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia eius dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in antiquum locum grātiae atque honōris est restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgni obtinēndi venit; imperiō populi Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat.
I, 20, 2-12. Scio ista esse vēra, nec quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego doloris capīt, propterea quod, cum ego grātīā plūri-
mum domī atque in reliquā Galliā possem, ille minimum propter
adulēscēntiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervīs
nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad pernicium
meam āūtitur. Ego tamen et amōre frāternō et existimātiōne
vulgī commoveor. Quod sī quīd eī ā tē gravius acciderit, cum
ego hunc locum amīcitiae apud tē teneam, nēmō existimābit nōn
meā voluntātē factum; quā ex rē tōtīus Galliae animī ā mē
āvertentūrt.

I, 30, 3-10. Intellegimus, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum
iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetierīs, tamen
eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populī Rōmānī acci-
disse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās
Helvētiī reliquērunt, utī . . . habērent.

I, 31, 5-8. Nōn minus id contendimus et labōrāmus, nē ea
quae dixerimus ēnūntiēntur quam utī ea quae volumns impe-
trēmus, propterea quod, si ēnūntiātum erīt, summum in cruci-
ātum nōs ventūrōs vidēmus.

8-56. Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs sunt duae: hārum alterius
principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantu-
pere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderit, factum
est utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserent-
tur. Hōrum primō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt;
posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs fēri
ac barbarī adamārunt, trāductī sunt plūrēs. Nunc sunt in
Galliā ad centum et vīgintī mīlium numerum. Cum hīs
Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendē-
runt; magnam calamitātēm pulsi accēpērunt, omnem nōbili-
tātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmisērunt. Quī-
bus proelīs calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et
populi Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitia plūrimum ante in
Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs obsidēs dare . . .
imperīō essent. Ŭnus ego sum ex omnī cīvitāte Haudnō-
rum qui addūcī nōn potuerim ut iūrārem aut liberōs meōs

I, 32, 8-15. Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adsit, horrent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultās datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recēpērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte eius sunt, omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendi.

I, 34, 5-12. Si quid mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ego ad eum vēnissem; si quid ille mē vult, illum ad mē venire oportet.
Praeterea neque sine exercitu in eis partibus Galliae venire audeo quas Caesar possidet, neque exercitum sine magnô commeatu atque molimentò in unus locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mirum videtur quid in meâ Galliâ, quam bellô vici, aut Caesarî ant omnînî popolù Römânî negocii sit.

I, 35, 2-18. Quoniam tantô meô populique Römânî beneficii affectus, cum in consulâtù meô rîx atque amîcûs à senâtû appellâtû est, hanc mihi populôque Römânî grâtiam refert, ut in colloquium venire invitâtûs gravêtur neque de commûni ré dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putet, haec sunt quae ab eo postulô: primum, nêque quam multitûdinem hominum amplius trâns Rhênum in Galliam tràduçât; deinde, obsidês quôs habet ab Haeduïs redât Séquanisque permittat ut quôs ipsî habent voluntâte eius reddere illîs liceat; nêve Haeduôs iniurîa lacesât, nêve hîs sociisque eórum bellum inferât. Si ita ficerit, mihi populôque Römânî perpetua grâtia atque amicîtúa cum eo erit; si nôn impetribô, quoniam M. Messâlâ M. Pisônè consulisbus senâtus censuit uti quicumque Galliam prôvinciam obtinëret, quod commodô reî publicae facere posset, Haeduôs ceterosque amîcîs populî Römânî dëfeuderet, Haeduôrum iniurîas nôn neglegam.

I, 36. Iûs est bellî ut qui victîr int iîs quôs vicerint quem ad modum velint imperent; item populûs Römânûs victîs nôn ad alterius præscriptûm, sed ad suum arbitrium imperâre censuerit. Si ego populù Römânû nôn præscribo quem ad modum suô iûre ütâtur, nôn oportet mè à populù Römânû in meô iûre impedirì. Haeduï mihi, quoniam bellì fortûnam temptâvèrent et armis congressî ac superâti sunt, stipendiârii sunt factî. Magnam Caesar iniuriam facit, qui suò adventu vectigália mihi déteriôra facît. Haeduïs obsidês nôn redadâm, neque hîs neque eórum sociis iniurîa bellum inferam, si in eó manébunt quod convenit stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nôn ficerint, longè iîs fraternum nômen populî Römânî aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dënuntiât sê Haeduôrum iniurîas nôn neglectûrûm, nêmô mécum sine suà pernicie contendit. Cum volet, congre-
**DIRECT FORM OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE**

**dixitur:** intellet quid invicti Germani, exercitâtissimī in armīs, qui inter annos xiv tectum nōn subiērunt, virtūte possīnt.

I, 40, 3-47. Prīnum (vōs incūsō) quod aut quam in partem aut quō consiliō dūcāmini vōbis quaerendum aut cōgitandum putātis. Ariovistus mē consule cupidissimē populi Rōmānī amīcitiam appetit; cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicet? Mihi quidem persuādētur, cognītis meīs postulātīs atque aequitūnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populi Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod si furōre atque amentiā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem vereāminiī? aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē melā diligentiā desperētis? Factum est eius hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbris et Teutoniī à C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus videbātur; factum est etiam nūper in Itāliā servīli tumultū, quōs tamen aliqūid īsus ac disciplīna quam ā nōbis accēperant sublevābant. Ex quō iūdicāri potest quantum habēat ēn sē bonī constantiā, propterē quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuīstis, hōs postea armātōs ac victōrēs superāvīstis. Dēnique hī sunt ēdem Germani quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētii congressī nōn sōlum in suis, sed etiam in illōrum finibus, plērumque superāvērunt, qui tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuērunt. Si quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēt, hī, ēi quaerent, reperire possunt ... vicīsse. Cui rationī contra homīnēs barbarōs atque imperītōris locūs fuit, hāc nē ipse quidem spērat nostrōs exercitus capit posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frumentāriāe simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferunt faciunt arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris desperāre aut praeścribere videantur. Hac mihi sunt curae: frumentum Sequanī, Leucī, Lingonēs subministrant, iamque sunt in agrīs frumenta mātūra; dē itinere īpsi brevī tempore iūdicābitis. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūri dicimīnī, nihil ēa rē commoveor; scīō enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audienās nōn fuerit, aut male rē
gestā fortūnam defuisset aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; mea innocentia perpetua vitā, fēlicitās Helvētiōrum bellō est perspecta. Itaque quod in longiore diem collātūrus fui reprezentābō et hāc nocte dē quārtā vigiliiā castra movēbō, ut quam primum intellegere possim utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat. Quod si prae-
terea nēmō sequētur, tamen ego cum sōlā decimā legiōne ībō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihiqve ea praetūria cohors erit.

I, 44. Trānsī Rhēnum nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīisque praemīis domum propinquōisque reliquī; sēdēs habēō in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stipendium capiō iūre bellī quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallīs, sed Gallī mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliāe civitātēs ad mē oppugnandum vēnērunt ac contrā mē castra habērunt; eae omnēs cópiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superātās sunt. Si iterum experirī volunt, iterum parātus sum décer-
tāre; sī pāce ītū volunt, inīquum est dē stipendīō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pependērunt. Amīcitiam populi Rōmānī mihi ōrnāmentō et praeśiōdō, nōn détrimentō esse oportet, atque hāc spē petīū. Si per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittētur et dēditicii subtrahentur, non minus libenter recūsābō populi Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetīū. Quod multītūdinem Germanōrum in Galliām trādūcō, id mēi mūniendi nōn Galliāe impugnandae causā faciō; eius rei testīmōnium est quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intuli, sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliām vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populi Rōmānī Galliāe prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tībī vis? Cūr in meās possessionēs venīs? Prōvincia mea haec est Galliā, sicut illa vestra. . Ut mihi concēdi nōn oporteat, sī in vestrōs finēs impetum faciam, sic item vōs estis inīqūi, quod īn meō iūre mē interpellātīs. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dicis, nōn tam barbarus neque tam imperītus sum rērum ut nōn sciam neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs
auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in his contentionibus quās Haeduī mēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuērunt auxiliō populi Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Débeō suspicāri simulātā tē amīciā, quod exercītum in Galliā habēs, meī opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque exercītum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habēbō. Quod sī tē interfēcerō, multīs nōbilibus prīncipiibusque populi Rōmānī grātum faciam; id ab ipsīs per eōrum nōntiōs compertum habeō, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amicītiam tuā morte redimere possum. Quod sī dēcessēris et liberam possessiōnem Galliae mīhi trādideris, magnō tē prae-miō remūnerābō et quaecumque bella gerī volēs sine ūllō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam.


II, 3, 4-14. Nōs nostraque omnia in fidem atque potestātem populi Rōmānī permittimus. Neque (nōs) cum reliquis Belgīs cōnsēnsimus, neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrā-vimus, parātique sumus et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frumentō cēterīisque rēbus iuvāre. Reliquī omnēs Belgae in armīs sunt, Germānīque quī cīs Rēnum incolunt sēsē cum his coniūnxērunt; tantusque est eōrum omnium furor ut nē Suessionēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque nostrōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem légibus ūtuntur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum nobiscum habent, dēterrēre potuerimus quīn cum īs consentīrent.

II, 4, 2-28. Plērique Belgae sunt ortī à Germānīs, Rē-numque antiquitus trāductī propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē-dērunt, Gallōsque quī ea loca incolēbant expulērunt, sōlique
sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria, omnī Galliā vexātā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs finēs ingredi prohibuerint; quā ex re fit utī eārum rērum memoria magnam sībi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē militāri sūmant. Dē numerō eōrum omnia (nōs) habēmus explōrāta, propertēa quod propinquitātibus affinitātibusque coniunctī, quantam quisque multitudinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognōvimus. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacī et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valent; hī possunt cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitī sunt ex eō numerō clēcta mīlia sexāgintā, totiusque bellī imperium sībi postulant. Suessionēs nostrī sunt finītīmi; finēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēnt. Apud eōs fuit rēx nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciācus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magna partis hārum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuīt; nunc est rēx Galba; ad hunc propert iūstitiam prūdentiamque summa totius bellī omnium voluntāte défertur; oppida habent numerō xii; pollicentur mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nervī, qui maximē ferī inter ipsōs habentur longissimēque absunt; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānī decem mīlia, Morīnī xxv mīlia, Menapīi vii mīlia, Caletī x mīlia, Veliocasses et Viroman-dūi totidem, Atuatucī xix mīlia; Condruśi, Eburōnēs, Caerōsī, Caemānī, qui ūnō nōmine Germanī appellantur, arbitrāmur ad xl mīlia.

II, 14, 2-13. Bellovaci omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitīā civitātīs Haeduauē fuērunt; impulsī ab suīs principibus, qui dicēbant Haeduōs a tē in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs défēcērunt et populō Rōmānō bellum intulērunt. Quī eīus consiliē principēs fuerant, quod intellegēbant quantam calamitātem civitātī intu-lissent, in Britanniam profugiērunt. Petunt non sōlum Bellovacī sed etiam prō hīs Haeduī ut tua clēmentiā ac mānṣnētūdine in eōs ütāris. Quod si feceris, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificābis; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, si qua bella incidērunt, sustentāre consuērunt.
II, 15, 8-15. *Nullus aditus est* ad eos mercatóribus; nihil *patiuntur* viní reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod his rébus relanguéscere animós et remitti virtútem existimant. *Sunt hominés férí* magnaeque virtútis; increpitant atque incúsan reliquós Belgás, qui sè populó Rómanó dèdiderint patriamque virtútem pröiécerint; cónfirman té sésé neque légátós missúros neque ullam condícionem pácis acceptúros.

II, 16, 2-9 *Sabísi flúmen à castris tuís nón amplius milia passuum x abest*; tráns id flúmen omnés *Nervíi cónsédérunt* adventumque ibi Rómanórum exspectant uná cum Atrebáttibus et Viromanduis, fínitímis suís; *exspectantur* etiam ab íis Atuatucórum cópiæ atque sunt in itinere; mulierés quique per actátem ad pugnam inútilés *vidébantur* in eum locum coniécérunt quó propter palúdés exercítui aditus nón esset.

II, 31, 3-13. *Non existimámus* Rómanós sine ope déorum bellum gerere, qui tantae altitúdinís máchinátiónes tantá celerité prómovére possint. *Nós nostraque omnia eórum potestáti permittimus.* Únum petínus ac dèprecámur: sí forte pró tuá clémentia ac manusétiúdine, quam nös ab aliís audímus, statueris nös esse cónservandós, nólî nös armís déspoliáre. *Nóbis omnés féré fúntimí sunt inimíci ac nostra virtúti invidént; à quibús nös défendere tràditís armís nón possumus.* *Nóbis praestat*, sí in eum cásum dédúcémur, quamvis fortúnam a populó Rómanó patí quam ab his per cruciátum interfící, inter quós dominári cónsuevimus.

II, 32, 1-6. *Magis consuétiúdine meá quam meritó vestró civitátem cónservábó*, sí priusquam múrum ariés attrigerit vós dèdideritis; sed dèditionis núlla est condíció nisi armís tràdítís. Id quod in Nervís fécì faciam fínitimísque imperábó né quam dèdíticiis populí Rómaní iniúriam inferant.
APPENDIX

INTRODUCTION

The Appendix was originally prepared for use in the revision of Bel-
luum Helveticum (1900). It has now received a thorough revision, but
the numbering has been left unchanged, except at a very few points.
It is intended to include all the grammatical material which need be
put into the hands of a class for second year work. The regular para-
digms are given in full, with only such exceptional forms as are needed
for the reading of Caesar and Cicero. Rules of syntax are almost invar-
iabley stated in full, so that when the student takes up a more com-
plete grammar he will have to master only the exceptions, not the
principles.

The examples are drawn chiefly from Caesar, especially the first
half of the first book. Some are made up, for the sake of brevity and
clearness, and a few are taken from Cicero. References like I, 14, 3
indicate the book, chapter, and line of Caesar.

The writer has consulted the usual authorities, and is under special
obligations, as regards the treatment of the verb, to the writings and
personal instruction of Professor William Gardner Hale. He has re-
ceived much assistance in revising the work from the thoughtful and
practical suggestions of Messrs. Janes and Jenks of the Boys' High
School, Brooklyn, N. Y.

303

(Copyright 1900, by Scott, Foresman & Co.)
PRONUNCIATION

QUANTITY OF VOWELS

1. A vowel is usually short:
   a. Before another vowel, or h; as eō, nihil.
   b. Before nd and nt; as laudandus, laudant.
   c. In words of more than one syllable, before any other final consonant than s; as laudem, laudat.

2. A vowel is long:
   a. Before nf, ns, nx, and nct; as ìnferō, cōnsul, iūnxī, iūnctum.
   b. When it results from contraction; as īsset, for īisset.

3. A vowel is usually long:
   a. In monosyllables not ending in b, d, l, m, or t; as mē, hēc, but ab, ad.

SOUNDS OF VOWELS

4. Long vowels, whether accented or not, should be given twice the time given to short vowels. This is the chief difficulty in the Roman pronunciation, because in English only accented syllables are commonly given more time than others.

   a = a in Cuba  ae = ai in aisle 
   e = e in net  oe = oi in oil 
   i = i in pin  au = ow in how 
   o = o in for (not as in got)  ú = oo in boot 
   u = oo in foot  ü = oo in boot 
   y = French u or German ü; it rarely occurs.

5. The following are the commonly recognized diphthongs which appear in classical Latin:
   ae = ai in aisle 
   oe = oi in oil 
   au = ow in how
eu has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds eh'-oo.

ui has no English equivalent. Run together in one syllable the sounds oo'-ee. The diphthong appears in cui, huic, cuius, and huius.

a. When the consonant i (= j) stands between two vowels, as in maior, eius, Troia, and cuius, though i was written only once it was pronounced twice, as if the spelling were, maior, eius, Troia, and cuius. The second i is the consonant, pronounced like y in yet.

The first i makes a diphthong with the preceding vowel. In such cases,

\[
\begin{align*}
  ai &= ai \text{ in aisle} \\
  ei &= ey \text{ in they} \\
  oi &= oi \text{ in oil} \\
  ui &= \text{as indicated above.}
\end{align*}
\]

SOUNDS OF CONSONANTS

6. The consonants are, in general, pronounced as in English; but the following points should be noted:

- c and g are always hard, as in can, go
- i (consonant, sometimes printed j) = y in yet
- n before c, g, q, and x = ng in sing
- r pronounced distinctly
- s as in this, never as in these
- t as in tin, never as in nation
- v = w
- x = ks
- ch, ph, th = c, p, t
- bs, bt = ps, pt
- qu = qu in quart
- ngu = ngu in anguish
- su = sw in suadeo, suavis, suasco, and their compounds.

a. When consonants are doubled, as in mittō, annus, both consonants should be sounded, as they are in out-talk, pen-knife. We sound only one consonant in ditty, penny.

7. i is generally a consonant between vowels, and at the beginning of a word before a vowel. In compounds of iaciō, the form iciō was written. It is commonly believed that in these words consonant i was pronounced, though not written, before vowel i; as déiciō, pronounced as if déiiciō; abiciō, as if abiiciō.
SYLLABLES

8. Every Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs.
   a. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the second vowel; as fe-rō, a-gō, mo-nē.
   b. The combination of a mute and a liquid (b, c, d, g, p, t, ch, ph, or th, followed by l or r) is pronounced together so easily that it goes with the second vowel like a single consonant; as pa-tris, a-grī. But in poetry such a combination was often divided; as pat-ris, ag-ri.
   c. Any other combination of two or more consonants is divided before the last consonant, or before the combination of a mute and a liquid; as mit-tō, dic-tus, magis-ter, magis-trī.

QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES

9. A syllable is long:
   a. If it contains a long vowel or diphthong; as both syllables of laudō, and the first syllable of eius (5, a).
   b. If its vowel is followed by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, or by one of the double consonants x and z. The quantity of a short vowel is not changed by this position: est is est, not ēst. The time taken in pronouncing a consonant at the end of the syllable before the consonant at the beginning of the next syllable (8, c), lengthens the syllable. This will be felt if the consonants are pronounced distinctly in mit-tō (6, a), an-nus, dic-tus, par-tēs, nos-ter.
   c. Often in poetry when a short vowel is followed by a mute and a liquid. The pronunciation is then pat-ris, ag-ri (8, b). In prose such a syllable is always considered short.

ACCENT

10. Words of two syllables are accented on the first syllable; as omˈnis.
11. Words of more than two syllables are accented on the penult if it is long, otherwise on the antepenult; as diviˈsa, appelˈlō, inˈcolunt.
12. When an enclitic is joined to another word, the accent falls on the syllable immediately preceding the enclitic; as Galliaˈque.

INFLECTIONS

NOUNS

GENERAL RULES OF GENDER

13. The gender of most nouns is determined by the nominative
ending or must be learned for the individual words; but the following rules will prove helpful.

a. The names of male beings, rivers, winds, and months are masculine.
b. The names of female beings, countries, towns, islands, plants, trees, and of most abstract qualities are feminine.
c. Indeclinable nouns, and infinitives, phrases, and clauses used as nouns are neuter.

DECLENSIONS

14. There are five declensions of Latin nouns, distinguished from each other by the final letter of the stem, and the ending of the genitive singular.

DECLENSION FINAL LETTER OF STEM ENDING OF GEN. SING.

I.  ā -ae
II.  o -i
III. { consonant -is
     { i
IV.  u -ês
V.   ē -ê or -ê

a. Strictly speaking, the cases are usually formed by adding case-endings to the stem. But when the stem ends in a vowel, that vowel is often modified in some way, or is so combined with the true case-ending that neither the stem-vowel nor the true case-ending can be seen. Therefore it is more convenient to apply the name case-ending to the combined stem-vowel and true case-ending, and to say that the cases are formed by adding case-endings to the base. The base of a noun is found by dropping the ending of the genitive singular.

FIRST DECLENSION

15. The stem ends in -ā; the nominative in -a. The gender is usually feminine.

lingua, f., tongue, language

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>ENDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative lingua</td>
<td>a language (as subject) -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive linguae</td>
<td>of a language, language's -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative linguae</td>
<td>to or for a language -ae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative linguam</td>
<td>a language (as object) -am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative lingua</td>
<td>O (or thou) language -a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative linguā</td>
<td>by, from, in, or with a language -ā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**APPENDIX**

**PLURAL**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nominative</td>
<td>linguae</td>
<td>languages (as subject) -ae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Genitive</td>
<td>linguārum</td>
<td>of languages, languages’ -ārum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dative</td>
<td>linguis</td>
<td>to or for languages -is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative</td>
<td>linguās</td>
<td>languages (as object) -ās</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vocative</td>
<td>linguae</td>
<td>O (or ye) languages -ae</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ablative</td>
<td>linguis</td>
<td>by, from, in, or with languages -is</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Exceptions in gender are shown by meanings (13); as Belgae, m., the Belgae; Matrona, m., the (river) Marne.

b. The locative singular ends in -ae; as Samarobrīvae, at Samarobrīva.

**SECOND DECLENSION**

16. The stem ends in -o; the nominative masculine in -us, -er, -ir; the nominative neuter in -um.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Case</th>
<th>Gender</th>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SINGULAR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>animus</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>aniūm</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>animō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>animūm</td>
<td>puerūm</td>
<td>agrūm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>anime</td>
<td>puer</td>
<td>ager</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>animō</td>
<td>puerō</td>
<td>agrō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLURAL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>animūm</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>animōrum</td>
<td>puerōrum</td>
<td>agrōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>animōs</td>
<td>puerōs</td>
<td>agrōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>animūs</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>animī</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>animūs</td>
<td>puerī</td>
<td>agrī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>filius, m., son</th>
<th>Gāius, m., Gaius the Boii god</th>
<th>deus, m.,</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N.</td>
<td>filius</td>
<td>Gāius</td>
<td>Bōi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G.</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td>Gāt</td>
<td>Bōiōrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D.</td>
<td>fillō</td>
<td>Gātō</td>
<td>Bōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A.</td>
<td>fillum</td>
<td>Gāium</td>
<td>Bōiōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V.</td>
<td>fill</td>
<td>Gāt</td>
<td>Bōi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Exceptions in gender are usually shown by the meanings (13). Vulgus, crowd, is usually neuter. Locus, m., place, has plural loca, n., places.

b. The locative singular ends in -i; as Agedinci, at Agedincum.

c. Nouns in -ius regularly form the genitive and vocative singular in -i, instead of -ii and -ie, and nouns in -ium form the genitive in -i. The words are accented as if the longer form were used; cōnsiˈlī, of a plan; iniˈti, of a beginning.

d. Proper names ending in -āius, -ēius, and -ōius are declined like Gāius and Bōi.

e. A few words have -um instead of -ōrum in the genitive plural; socium (or sociōrum), of allies.

THIRD DECLENSION

17. Third declension stems end in a consonant or in -i. Nominative case-ending for masculines and feminines, -s or none; for neuters, none.

A. CONSONANT STEMSS

18. Stems ending in a labial mute, b or p. The nominative ending is -s.

princeps, m., chief

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. princeps</td>
<td>principēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. principis</td>
<td>principum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. principi</td>
<td>principibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. principem</td>
<td>principēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. princeps</td>
<td>principēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. princepe</td>
<td>principibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

19. Stems ending in a dental mute, d or t. The nominative ending for masculines and feminines is -s, and the final d or t of the stem is dropped before it.

laus, r., praise

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. laus</td>
<td>laudēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. laudis</td>
<td>laudum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. laudī</td>
<td>laudibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. laudem</td>
<td>laudēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. laus</td>
<td>laudēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. laude</td>
<td>laudibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

miles, m., soldier

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militis</td>
<td>militum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militī</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>militem</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>miles</td>
<td>militēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>milite</td>
<td>militibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

caput, n., head

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitis</td>
<td>capitum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitī</td>
<td>capitisbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caput</td>
<td>capita</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capite</td>
<td>capitibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
20. Stems ending in a guttural mute, ġ or c. The nominative ending is -s, which unites with the final ġ or c of the stem to form x.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. lēx</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. lēgis</td>
<td>lēgum</td>
<td>ducis</td>
<td>ducum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. lēgī</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>ducī</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. lēgem</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
<td>ducem</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. lēx</td>
<td>lēgēs</td>
<td>dux</td>
<td>ducēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. lēge</td>
<td>lēgibus</td>
<td>ducē</td>
<td>ducibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

21. Stems ending in a liquid, l or r. There is no nominative case-ending.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. cōnsul</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cōnsulis</td>
<td>cōnsulum</td>
<td>patris</td>
<td>patrum</td>
<td>aequoris</td>
<td>aequorium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cōnsulī</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>pātrī</td>
<td>pātribus</td>
<td>aequorī</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cōnsulem</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>pātre</td>
<td>pātres</td>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. cōnsul</td>
<td>cōnsulēs</td>
<td>pater</td>
<td>patrēs</td>
<td>aequor</td>
<td>aequora</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. cōnsule</td>
<td>cōnsulibus</td>
<td>pātre</td>
<td>pātribus</td>
<td>aequore</td>
<td>aequoribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

22. Stems ending in a nasal, m or n. There is no nominative case-ending, except in hiems, the only stem in -m. The nominative of masculines and feminines usually drops the final n and changes the preceding vowel to ē.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. homō</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>ratiō</td>
<td>ratiōnēs</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. hominis</td>
<td>hominum</td>
<td>ratiōnis</td>
<td>ratiōnum</td>
<td>flūminis</td>
<td>flūminum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. homini</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
<td>ratiōnī</td>
<td>ratiōnibus</td>
<td>flūmini</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hominem</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>ratiōnem</td>
<td>ratiōnēs</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. homō</td>
<td>hominēs</td>
<td>ratiō</td>
<td>ratiōnēs</td>
<td>flūmen</td>
<td>flūmina</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. homine</td>
<td>hominibus</td>
<td>ratiōne</td>
<td>ratiōnibus</td>
<td>flūmine</td>
<td>flūminibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
23. Stems ending in s (apparently r, because s changes to r between two vowels). The nominative has no case-ending, but usually ends in s, sometimes in r.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{mōs, m., custom} & \text{honor, m., honor} & \text{tempus, n., time} \\
\text{Stem mōs-} & \text{Stem honōs-} & \text{Stem tempōs-} \\
\text{SING.} & \text{PLUR.} & \text{SING.} & \text{PLUR.} & \text{SING.} & \text{PLUR.} \\
N. mōs & mōrēs & honor & honōrēs & tempus & temporēs \\
G. mōris & mōrum & honōris & honōrum & temporis & temporum \\
D. mōrī & mōribus & honōrī & honōribus & temporī & temporibus \\
A. mōrem & mōrēs & honōrerī & honōrēs & tempus & temporēs \\
V. mōs & mōrēs & honor & honōrēs & tempus & temporēs \\
A. mōre & mōribus & honōre & honōribus & tempore & temporibus \\
\end{array}
\]

B. i-STEMS

24. Here belong (1) masculine and feminine nouns ending in -is or -ēs if they have the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative, and (2) neuters in -e, -al, -ar.

25. Theoretically the i should appear in all cases except the nominative and vocative plural of masculines and feminines, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular of some neuters; but this declension became confused with that of consonant stems, and no absolute rule can be given for the endings. Masculine and feminine nouns usually have acc., -em, abl., -e, acc. plural either -ēs or -īs. Neuters have abl. -i.

\[
\begin{array}{ccc}
turris, f., tower & hostis, m., f., enemy & caedēs, f., slaughter \\
\text{Stem turri-} & \text{Stem hosti-} & \text{Stem caedi-} \\
\text{SINGULAR} & & \\
N. turris & hostis & caedēs \\
G. turris & hostis & caedis \\
D. turri & hosti & caedi \\
A. turrim or -em & hostem & caedem \\
V. turris & hostis & caedēs \\
A. turri or -e & hoste & caede \\
\text{PLURAL} & & \\
N. turrēs & hostēs & caedēs \\
G. turrium & hostium & caedium \\
D. turribus & hostibus & caedibus \\
A. turrēs or -ēs & hostēs or -ēs & caedēs or -ēs \\
V. turrēs & hostēs & caedēs \\
A. turribus & hostibus & caedibus \\
\end{array}
\]
APPENDIX

cubile, n., couch
Stem cubili-

SINGULAR

N. cubila
G. cubilis
D. cubili
A. cubile
V. cubile
A. cubili

PLURAL

N. cubilia
G. cubilium
D. cubilibus
A. cubilia
V. cubilia
A. cubilibus

vectigal, n., tax
Stem vectigali-

SINGULAR

vectigal
vectigalis
vectigali
vectigal
vectigal
vectigal

PLURAL

vectigalia
vectigalium
vectigalibus
vectigalia
vectigalia
vectigalibus

26. Some consonant stems have borrowed from -i stems the genitive plural in -ium and the accusative plural in -is. Here belong most monosyllables in -s and -x preceded by a consonant; most nouns in -ns and -rs; and a few nouns in -tās, -tātis.

C. MIXED STEMS

a. Most nouns in -is are declined like hostis. Arar (for Araris), m., the Saone, and Liger (for Ligeris), m., the Loire, are declined in the singular like turris. Ignis, m., fire, and nāvis, f., ship, often have abl.-i. Mare, n., sea, is declined like cubile, but commonly has no other plural cases than nominative and accusative.

ciēns, m., retainer
Stem client-

SINGULAR PLURAL

N. ciēns clientēs
G. clientis clientium
D. clienti clientibus
A. clientem clientēs or -ēs
V. ciēns clientēs
A. cliente clientibus

urbs, f., city
Stem urb-

SINGULAR PLURAL

urbs urbe
urbis urbēs
urbis urbēs or -ēs
urbem urbēs
urbs urbēs
urbibus urbibus
D. IRREGULAR NOUNS

27. The following nouns present peculiarities of inflection:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>senex</strong>, m.</td>
<td><strong>ossa</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>os</strong>, n.</td>
<td><strong>vis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bōs</strong>, m., f.</td>
<td><strong>vīrius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iuppiter</strong>, m.</td>
<td><strong>vīrius</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Senex**, m., **os**, n., **vis**, f., **bōs**, m., f., **Iuppiter**, m., **bone**, **force**, **ox**, **cow**, **Jupiter**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>vis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bōs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iuppiter</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>vīrius</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bovēs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iouvem</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>N. senex</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>os</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bōs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iuppiter</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>G. senis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ossis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bovis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iovis</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>D. senī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ossī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bovī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iovi</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A. senem</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>os</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vim</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bovem</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iovem</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>V. senex</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>os</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vis</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bōs</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iuppiter</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A. sene</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>osse</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>vī</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>bove</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Iove</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

28. The gender of many nouns is shown by the meaning (13). There are numerous exceptions to the following rules.

a. **Masculine** are nouns in ő (except those in -dō, -gō, -iō) -or, -ōs, -er, -es.

b. **Feminine** are nouns in -dō, -gō, -iō, -ās, -ēs, -is, -ūs, -ys, -x, and in -s when preceded by a consonant.

c. **Neuter** are all others; namely, nouns in -a, -e, -i, -y, -c, -l, -n, -t, -ar, -ur, -us.

FOURTH DECLENSION

29. Stem ends in -u; nominative masculine in -us, nominative neuter in -ā.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>passus</strong>, m., pace</td>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, n., horn</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornu</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, cornuum</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornū</strong>, cornibus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornu</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornu</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornu</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plur.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>cornu</strong>, cornua</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. **Domus**, house, **manus**, hand, **Īdūs**, Ides, are feminine.

b. The dative singular of nouns in -us sometimes ends in -ā.

c. The dative and ablative plural of a few nouns sometimes end in -ubus.
d. Domus, f., house, has some second declension forms. The forms in common use are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nom. domus</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gen. domūs</td>
<td>domūnum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. domūl or domū</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. domūm</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Voc. domūs</td>
<td>domūs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. domū or domū</td>
<td>domibus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loc. domī (at home)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIFTH DECLENSION**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. diēt</td>
<td>diērum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. diēt</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. diēm</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. diēs</td>
<td>diēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. diē</td>
<td>diēbus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

31. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. magnūs</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. magnī</td>
<td>magnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D magnō</td>
<td>magnae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnum</td>
<td>magnam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. magne</td>
<td>magna</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. magnō</td>
<td>magnā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

liber, free

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. liberī</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḍ. liberō</td>
<td>liberae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberum</td>
<td>liberam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. liber</td>
<td>libera</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. liberō</td>
<td>liberā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

noster, our

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
<th>PLURAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. noster</td>
<td>nostra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. nostrī</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḍ. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrae</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrum</td>
<td>nostram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. noster</td>
<td>nostra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. nostrō</td>
<td>nostrā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVE IN -ius.

32. Nine adjectives of the first and second declensions have the genitive singular in -ius (in alter usually -ius) and the dative singular in -i in all genders. These are alius, another, sólus, only, tótus, whole, ullus, any, nǔllus, no, únus, one, alter, the other, uter, which (of two), neuter, neither. In the plural the case-endings of these adjectives are exactly the same as in magnus. Note the ending -ud in the neuter of alius.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SINGULAR</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. únus</td>
<td>únā</td>
<td>únum</td>
<td>tótus</td>
<td>tóta</td>
<td>tótum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. únius</td>
<td>únīs</td>
<td>únīs</td>
<td>tótius</td>
<td>tótīs</td>
<td>tótius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḍ. únī</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>únī</td>
<td>tótī</td>
<td>tótī</td>
<td>tótī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. únun</td>
<td>únam</td>
<td>únum</td>
<td>tótum</td>
<td>tótam</td>
<td>tótum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. únō</td>
<td>únā</td>
<td>únō</td>
<td>tótō</td>
<td>tótā</td>
<td>tótō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. alius</td>
<td>alia</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>alter</td>
<td>altera</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. allius</td>
<td>allīs</td>
<td>allius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
<td>alterius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḍ. aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>aliī</td>
<td>alteri</td>
<td>alteri</td>
<td>alteri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. alium</td>
<td>aliam</td>
<td>aliud</td>
<td>alterum</td>
<td>alteram</td>
<td>alterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. aliō</td>
<td>aliā</td>
<td>aliō</td>
<td>alterō</td>
<td>alterā</td>
<td>alterō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECENSION

33. There are both consonant stems and i-stems. Adjectives of three terminations have a special form in the nominative singular for each gender; adjectives of two terminations have one form in the nominative singular for the masculine and feminine, another for the neuter; adjectives of one termination have the same form in the nominative singular for all genders. Except comparatives, all adjectives of two or three terminations have only -i in the ablative singular.

A. CONSONANT STEMS

34. Two Terminations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. fortioris</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
<td>fortiorum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. fortior</td>
<td>fortior</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortioris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. fortior</td>
<td>fortius</td>
<td>fortioribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all comparatives; but plus, more, is irregular and defective. In the singular it is used only as a noun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>Mas. and Fem.</td>
<td>Neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. plus</td>
<td>plures</td>
<td>plurium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. pluris</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ...</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. plus</td>
<td>plurés or -is</td>
<td>plurés</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. plúre</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
<td>pluribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

35. One termination.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veteres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. veteris</td>
<td>veteris</td>
<td>veterum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. veteri</td>
<td>veteri</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. veterem</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veteres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. vetus</td>
<td>vetus</td>
<td>veteres</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. vetere</td>
<td>vetere</td>
<td>veteribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
a. Here belongs princeps, chief. Dives, rich, also belongs here, but has ditia for the nominative, accusative, and vocative neuter plural.

B. i-STEMS

36. Three terminations.

acerb, sharp

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. acer</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. acris</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. âcri</td>
<td>âcri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. âcrem</td>
<td>âcrem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. acer</td>
<td>acris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. âcri</td>
<td>âcri</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong celeber, famous, equester, equestrian, pedester, pedestrian; names of months in -ber; and a few others.

37. Two terminations.

omnis, all

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omnem</td>
<td>omne</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. omnis</td>
<td>omnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. omni</td>
<td>omni</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong all adjectives in -is, -e.

38. One termination.

audâx, bold

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. audâx</td>
<td>audâx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. audâcis</td>
<td>audâcis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. audâci</td>
<td>audâci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audâcem</td>
<td>audâx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. audâx</td>
<td>audâx</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. audâci</td>
<td>audâci</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

oriëns, rising

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Mas. and Fem.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Neut.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N. oriëns</td>
<td>oriëns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. orientis</td>
<td>orientis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. orientī</td>
<td>orientī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. orientem</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. oriēns</td>
<td>oriēns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A oriente or -ī</td>
<td>oriente or -ī</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Here belong most adjectives of one termination, and all participles in -āns and -ēns. Participles usually have the ablative singular in -ī only when used as adjectives, in -ē when used as participles or nouns.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

39. The regular comparative endings are -ior, -ius; superlative, -issimus, -a, -um. They are added to the base of the positive (found by removing the case-ending from the genitive singular). Examples: altus, high; altior, -ius. higher; altissimus, -a, -um, highest; fortis, brave; fortior, braver; fortissimus, bravest.

40. Adjectives in -er form the comparative regularly, but form the superlative by adding -rimus to the nominative of the positive. Example: ācer, sharp (base, ācr-), ācior, ācerrimus.

41. Most adjectives in -ilis are compared regularly. Six, while forming the comparative regularly, form the superlative by adding -limus to the base of the positive. They are facilis, easy; difficilis, difficult; similis, like; dissimilis, unlike; humilis, low; gracilis, slender. Example: facilis, facilius, facillimus.

42. IRREGULAR COMPARISON

| bonus, melior, optimus, good, better, best. |
| malus, peior, pessimus, bad, worse, worst. |
| magnus, maius, maximus, great, greater, greatest. |
| parvus, minor, minimus, small, less, least. |
| multus, plús, plúrimus, much, more, most. |
| dexter, dexterior, dextimus, on the right, dexterous, etc. |
DEFECTIVE COMPARISON

43. The following comparatives and superlatives appear without a positive because formed from stems not used as adjectives:

(citrā, adv., on this side) citerior, citimus, hither, hithermost.
(dē, prep., down) dēterior, dēterrīmus, worse, worst.
(intrā, prep., in, within) interior, intimus, inner, inmost.
(prae, prep., before) prior, prīmus, former, first.
(prope, adv., near) propior, proximus, nearer, next.
(ultrā, adv., beyond) ulterior, ultimus, farther, farthest.

44. Of the following the positive forms are rare, except when used as nouns (generally in the plural):

exterus, exterior, extrēmus (extimus), outer, outmost.
Inferus, inferior, infimus (imus), lower, lowest.
posterus, posterior, postrēmus (postumus), latter, last.
superus, superior, suprēmus (summus), higher, highest.

COMPARISON BY ADVERBS

45. Most adjectives in -us preceded by a vowel, and many others, form the comparative and superlative by using the adverbs magis, more, and maxime, most. Example: idōneus, suitable; magis idōneus, more suitable; maxime idōneus, most suitable.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

46. Most adverbs are formed from adjectives in all the degrees of comparison.

a. The positive is formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions by adding -ē to the base; as lātus, wide, lātē, widely: from adjectives of the third declension by adding -er or -iter to the base, except that adjectives whose base ends in nt add only -er; as audāx, audācis, bold, audāciter, boldly; fortis, brave, fortiter, bravely; prūdēns, prūdentis, prudent, prūdenter, prudently. But the neuter accusative singular of adjectives of all declensions may be used adverbially; as multum, much, facilē, easily.

b. The comparative is the accusative singular neuter of the comparative of the adjective; as lātius, more widely, audācius, more boldly, fortius, more bravely, prūdentius, more prudently, plūs, more, faeilius, more easily.
c. The *superlative* is formed by adding -ē to the base of the superlative of the adjective; or, less often, is its accusative singular neuter; as lätissimē, *most widely*, audācissimē, *most boldly*, fortissimē, *most bravely*, prudentissimē, *most prudently*, plurimum, *most*, facillimē, *most easily*.

**NUMERALS**

47. Numeral adjectives are of three classes: *cardinals*, answering the question how many? as *one*, *two*, etc.; *ordinals*, answering the question which in order? as, *first*, *second*, etc.; and *distributives*, answering the question how many each? as, *one each*, *two each*, etc.

**Roman**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numerals</th>
<th>Cardinal</th>
<th>Ordinal</th>
<th>Distributive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I. ūnus, -a, -um</td>
<td>prīmus, -a, -um</td>
<td>singulī, -ae, -a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II. duo, -ae, -o</td>
<td>secundus or alter</td>
<td>bīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III. trēs, trīa</td>
<td>tertius</td>
<td>ternī or trīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV. quattuor</td>
<td>quārtus</td>
<td>quaternī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V. quīnque</td>
<td>quintus</td>
<td>quīnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI. sex</td>
<td>sextus</td>
<td>sēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VII. septem</td>
<td>septimus</td>
<td>septēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VIII. octō</td>
<td>octāvus</td>
<td>octōnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IX. novem</td>
<td>nōnus</td>
<td>novēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>X. decem</td>
<td>decimus</td>
<td>dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XI. ūndecim</td>
<td>undecimus</td>
<td>ūndēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XII. duodecim</td>
<td>duodecimus</td>
<td>duodēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIII. tredecim</td>
<td>tertius decimus</td>
<td>ternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIV. quattuordecim</td>
<td>quārtus decimus</td>
<td>quaternī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XV. quīndecim</td>
<td>quintus decimus</td>
<td>quīnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVI. sēdecim</td>
<td>sextus decimus</td>
<td>sēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVII. septendecim</td>
<td>septimus decimus</td>
<td>septēnī dēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XVIII. duodēvīgintī</td>
<td>duodēvīcesimūs</td>
<td>duodēvīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XIX. ūndēvīgintī</td>
<td>ūndēvīcesimūs</td>
<td>ūndēvīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XX. vīgintī</td>
<td>vīcesimūs</td>
<td>vīcēnī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XXI. ūnus et vīgintī</td>
<td>vīcesimūs prīmus</td>
<td>vīcēnī singulī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(vīgintī ūnus)

| XXVIII. duodētrīgintā | duodētrīcesimūs | duodētrīcēnī |
| XXIX. ūndētrīgintā | ūndētrīcesimūs | ūndētrīcēnī |
| XXX. trīgintā | trīcesimūs | trīcēnī |
| XL. quadrāgintā | quadrāgēsimūs | quadrāgēnī |
| L. quīnquāgintā | quīnquāgēsimūs | quīnquāgēnī |
| LX. sexāgintā | sexāgēsimūs | sexāgēnī |
### APPENDIX

LXX. septuāgintā | septuāgēsimus | septuāgēni
LXXX. octōgintā | octōgēsimus | octōgēni
XC. nōnāgintā | nōnāgēsimus | nōnāgēni
Centum | centēsimus | centēni
Cl. centum (et) | centēsimus (et) | centēni (et)
Unus | primus | singuli
CC. ducentī, -ae, -a | ducentēsimus | ducehī
CCC. trecentī | trecentēsimus | trecēni
CCCC. quadringentī | quadringentēsimus | quadringēni
D. quīngentī | quīngentēsimus | quīngēni
DC. sescentī | sescentēsimus | sescēni
DCC. septingentī | septingentēsimus | septingēni
DCCC. octingentī | octingentēsimus | octingēni
DCCCC. nōngentī | nōngentēsimus | nōngēni
M. mille | millēsimus | singula milia
MM. duo milia | bis millēsimus | bina milia

---

a. The ending -ēnsimus is often used for -ēsimus.

48. Of the cardinals, unus, duo, and trēs are declined; quattuor to centum, inclusive, are indeclinable; ducentī to nōngentī, inclusive, are declined like the plural of magnus (31); mille as an adjective is indeclinable, as a substantive is declined like the plural of cubile (25) and generally spelled mília. Ordinals are declined like magnus, distributives like the plural of magnus.

49. For the declension of unus see 32. Its plural usually means only or alone, but is used in the sense of one with nouns used only in the plural; as, ëna castra, one camp. Duo and trēs are declined as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. duo</td>
<td>duae</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. duōrum</td>
<td>duārum</td>
<td>duōrum</td>
<td>trium</td>
<td>trium</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōs, duo</td>
<td>duās</td>
<td>duo</td>
<td>trēs, trīs</td>
<td>tria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. duōbus</td>
<td>duābus</td>
<td>duōbus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
<td>tribus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

50. The numbers intermediate between those given in the table are expressed as follows: In a combination of tens and units the units may precede, followed by et; as trēs et quadrāgintā, three and forty; or the tens may precede without an et; as quadrāgintā trēs, forty three. In other combinations of two numerals the higher precedes, with or without et; as ducentī (et) vigintī, two hundred and twenty. In com-
binations of three or more numerals, the order is as in English, without et; as \textit{duo mília sescenti vigintī sex}, \textit{two thousand six hundred and twenty six}.

### PRONOUNS

#### 51. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First person, ego, \textit{I}</th>
<th>Second person, \textit{tū}, you (thou)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textbf{SING.}</td>
<td>\textbf{PLUR.}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{N.} ego</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{G.} meī</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{D.} mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{A.} mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{A.} mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textit{a.} There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun, usually is, \textit{he, ea, she, id, īt, 57}; or, when \textit{him, them, etc.}, refer to the subject (163), by the reflexive pronouns.

\textit{b.} nostrum and vestrum are the forms used as partitive genitives (101); nostrī and vestrī, as objective genitives (98).

\textit{c.} The preposition cum is enclitic with personal pronouns; as, nōbis-cum, with us.

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

#### 52. A reflexive pronoun can neither be the subject of a finite verb nor agree with such a subject: therefore there can be no nominative. For the first and second persons the personal pronouns are used as reflexives. For the third person there is a special pronoun.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>First person, meī, of myself</th>
<th>Second person, tui, of yourself</th>
<th>Third person, sui, of himself, etc.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\textbf{SING.}</td>
<td>\textbf{PLUR.}</td>
<td>\textbf{SING.}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{G.} meī</td>
<td>nostrum</td>
<td>tūi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{D.} mihi</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tībi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{A.} mē</td>
<td>nōs</td>
<td>tē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\textit{A.} mē</td>
<td>nōbīs</td>
<td>tē</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\textit{a.} The preposition cum is enclitic with reflexive pronouns; as, sēcum, with himself.
53. **POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS**

1st pers. meus, -a, -um, my

2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, your (of one)

3d pers. suus, -a, -um, his, her, its (when referring to the subject)

eius (gen. sing. of is) his, her, its (when not referring to the subject)

noster, -tra, -trum, our

vester, -tra, -trum, your (of more than one)

suus, -a, -um, their (when referring to the subject)

eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) their (when not referring to the subject)

**DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS**

54.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. hic</td>
<td>haec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. huius</td>
<td>huius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. huic</td>
<td>huic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hunc</td>
<td>hanc</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. hōc</td>
<td>hāc</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The nominative and accusative neuter, hoc, is pronounced hōcc when the next word begins with a vowel. The syllable is therefore long. See 6, a.

55. **iste, that (near the person spoken to)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. iste</td>
<td>ista</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. istius</td>
<td>istīus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. istī</td>
<td>istī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. istum</td>
<td>istam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. istō</td>
<td>istā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

56. **Ille, that (something more remote)** is declined like iste.

57. **is, this, that, he, she, it (unemphatic)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. is</td>
<td>ea</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. eius</td>
<td>eius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. ei</td>
<td>ei</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eum</td>
<td>eam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. eō</td>
<td>eā</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

58. | SING. | Idem, the same | PLUR. |
--- | --- | --- |
N. idem | eadem | idem | idem or eadem | eadem |
G. eiusdem | eiusdem | eiusdem | eorumdem | eorumdem |
D. eadem | eadem | eadem | isdem or eisdem | eisdem |
A. eundem | eandem | idem | eosdem | eisdem |
A. oedem | eadem | eodem | isdem or eisdem | eisdem |

59. | THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN | ipse, self |
--- | --- | --- |
N. ipse | ipsa | ipsum | ipsi | ipsae | ipsa |
G. ipsius | ipsius | ipsius | iporum | ipsorum | ipsorum |
D. ipsi | ipsi | ipsi | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |
A. ipsum | ipsam | ipsum | ipsos | ipsas | ipsa |
A. ipso | ipsa | ipso | ipsis | ipsis | ipsis |

60. | THE RELATIVE PRONOUN | qui, who |
--- | --- | --- |
N. qui | quae | quod | qui | quae | quae |
G. cuius | cuius | cuius | quorum | quorum | quorum |
D. cui | cui | cui | quibus | quibus | quibus |
A. quem | quam | quod | quos | quas | qua |
A. quod | quae | quod | quibus | quibus | quibus |

61. | INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS |
--- | --- |
Qui, quae, quod, the adjective what? is declined like the relative. Quis, quid, the substantive who? what? is used in the singular.
APPENDIX

quis, who?

SING.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mas. and Fem.</th>
<th>Neut.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N. quis</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G. cuius</td>
<td>cuius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D. cui</td>
<td>cui</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quem</td>
<td>quid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A. quō</td>
<td>quō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. The enclitic -nam is sometimes added to an interrogative to strengthen it; quisnam, who, pray?

b. Cum is usually enclitic with the interrogative pronoun.

62.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

The indefinite pronouns are quis, qui, and their compounds. Quis and qui in this sense are in general declined like the interrogatives.

SUBSTANTIVE

quis, quid, any one
aliquis, aliquum, some one
quispiam, quidpiam, some one
quisquam, quicquam (quidquam), any one (abl. sing. and entire plural supplied by illus, -a, -um)
quivis, quaevís, quivís
quilibet, quaelibet, quidlibet
any one etc., you like
quidam, quaedam, quiddam, a certain man
quisque, quidque, each

ADJECTIVE

quī, quae (qua), quod, any
aliquī, aliquā, aliquod, some
quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, some
(quadruplicature supplied by illus)
quivis, quaevís, quodvís
quilibet, quaelibet, quodlibet
any you like
quidam, quaedam, quoddam, a certain
quisque, quaequē, quodquē, each

a. In qui and aliqui the nominative and accusative plural neuter are qua (or quae) and aliqua.

b. In the declension of quidam, m becomes n before d; as quendam.
VERBS

63. There are four conjugations of Latin verbs, distinguished from one another by the final vowel of the stem, best seen in the present infinitive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CONJUGATION</th>
<th>FINAL VOWEL OF STEM</th>
<th>PRESENT INFINITIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I.</td>
<td>ā</td>
<td>-āre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II.</td>
<td>ē</td>
<td>-ēre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>III.</td>
<td>e (i, u)</td>
<td>-ere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IV.</td>
<td>ī</td>
<td>-īre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

64. All forms of a verb are formed on one or another of three stems,—the present stem, the perfect stem, and the supine stem. In regular verbs the perfect and supine stems are based on the present stem, but in some irregular verbs they are formed on distinct roots.

a. On the present stem are formed: active and passive,—present, imperfect, and future indicative; present and imperfect subjunctive; imperative; present infinitive: active,—present participle; gerund: passive,—gerundive.

b. On the perfect stem are formed: active,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive.

c. On the supine stem are formed: active and passive,—future infinitive; active,—future participle; supine: passive,—perfect, pluperfect, and future perfect indicative; perfect and pluperfect subjunctive; perfect infinitive; perfect participle.

65. The principal parts are forms which show to which conjugation a verb belongs and what each of its stems is. They are, in the active, (1) the first person singular present indicative (as the first form of the verb), (2) the present infinitive (to indicate the conjugation and give the present stem), (3) the first person singular perfect indicative (to give the perfect stem), (4) the supine (to give the supine stem).

For example, the principal parts of laudō are:

laudō, laudāre (present stem, laudā).
laudāvi (perfect stem, laudāv).
laudātum (supine stem, laudāt).
The supine of the majority of verbs is not found in Latin literature so that other forms of the verb are often given instead of the supine. But no one form is found for every verb, and it is simpler to give the supine always.

In the passive the principal parts are (1) the first person singular present indicative, (2) the present infinitive, (3) the first person singular perfect indicative.

66. **CONJUGATION OF SUM** (irregular verb)

Principal parts: sum, esse, fui

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>INDICATIVE</strong></th>
<th></th>
<th><strong>SUBJUNCTIVE</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
<td>SING.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sum</td>
<td>sumus</td>
<td>sim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>es</td>
<td>estis</td>
<td>sís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>est</td>
<td>sunt</td>
<td>sit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eram</td>
<td>erāmus</td>
<td>essēmus (or foremus)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erās</td>
<td>erātis</td>
<td>essēs (or fores)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erat</td>
<td>erant</td>
<td>esset (or foret)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erō</td>
<td>erimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eris</td>
<td>eritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>erit</td>
<td>erunt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fui</td>
<td>fuimus</td>
<td>fuerim</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuisti</td>
<td>fuistis</td>
<td>fueris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuit</td>
<td>fuĕrant or -ère</td>
<td>fuerit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueram</td>
<td>fuerāmus</td>
<td>fuissem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerās</td>
<td>fuerātis</td>
<td>fuisēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerat</td>
<td>fuerant</td>
<td>fuisset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future Perfect</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerō</td>
<td>fuerimus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fueris</td>
<td>fueritis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fuerit</td>
<td>fuerint</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperative

**Present**
- 2d pers. es este
- Future
- 2d pers. estō estōte
- 3d pers. estō suntō

### Participles

**Fut.** futūrus

**Infinitive**
- Pres. esse
- Perf. fuisse
- Fut. futūrus (esse) or fore

### First Conjugation

**Active Voice**

**Principal parts:** laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum

### Indicative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudō</td>
<td>laudāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudās</td>
<td>laudātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudat</td>
<td>laudant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābam</td>
<td>laudābāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābās</td>
<td>laudābātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābat</td>
<td>laudābant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudābō</td>
<td>laudābimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābis</td>
<td>laudābitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudābit</td>
<td>laudābunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāvī</td>
<td>laudāvīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvistī</td>
<td>laudāvistīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāvit</td>
<td>laudāvērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāveram</td>
<td>laudāverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverās</td>
<td>laudāverātīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverat</td>
<td>laudāverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudāverō</td>
<td>laudāverīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāveris</td>
<td>laudāverītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudāverit</td>
<td>laudāverint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## APPENDIX

### IMPERATIVE

| Present | | Infinitive |
|---------|------------------|
| **2d pers.** | laudā | laudāte | _Pres._ laudāre |
| **Future** | laudātō | laudātōte | _Perf._ laudāvisse |
| **3d pers.** | laudātō | laudantō | _Fut._ laudātūrus (esse) |

### PARTICIPLE

| Present | | Supine |
|---------|------------------|
| **Pres.** | laudāns | laudātum | _Acc._ |
| **Fut.** | laudātūrus | laudātū | _Abl._ |

### GERUND

| |
|---|---|
| _Gen._ | laudandī |
| _Dat._ | laudandō |
| _Acc._ | laudandum |
| _Abl._ | laudandō |

### FIRST CONJUGATION

### PASSIVE VOICE

- Principal parts: laudor, laudāri, laudātus sum

### INDICATIVE

| Present | | Subjunctive |
|---------|------------------|
| **Sing.** | | **Plur.** |
| laudor | laudāmur | lauder | laudēmur |
| laudāris _or-re_ | laudāmini | laudēris _or-re_ | laudēmini |
| laudātur | laudantur | laudētur | laudentur |

| **Imperfect** | | **Imperfect** |
|---------------|------------------|
| laudābar | laudābāmur | laudārer | laudārēmur |
| laudābāris _or-re_ | laudābāmini | laudārēris _or-re_ | laudārēmini |
| laudābātur | laudābantur | laudārētur | laudārentur |

| **Future** | | **Perfect** |
|-------------|------------------|
| laudābor | laudābīmur | laudātūs _sum_ | laudātī _sim_ |
| laudāberis _or-re_ | laudābīmini | laudātūs _es_ | laudātī _estis_ |
| laudābitur | laudābuntur | laudātūs _est_ | laudātī _sunt_ |

| **Perfect** | | |
|--------------|------------------|
| laudātus _sum_ | laudātī _simus_ | |
| laudātus _es_ | laudātī _estis_ | |
| laudātus _est_ | laudātī _sunt_ | |
Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus eram</td>
<td>laudātī erāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erās</td>
<td>laudātī erātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erat</td>
<td>laudātī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erō</td>
<td>laudātī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus eris</td>
<td>laudātī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laudātus erit</td>
<td>laudātī erant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**IMPERATIVE**

**Present**

2d pers. laudāre laudāmini

**Future**

2d pers. laudātor

3d pers. laudātor laudantor

**PARTICIIPLE**

**Perfect**

Perf. laudātus

Fut. laudandus

**SECOND CONJUGATION**

**ACTIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: moneō, monēre, monēs, monēt

**INDICATIVE**

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneō</td>
<td>monēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēs</td>
<td>monētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monet</td>
<td>monent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbam</td>
<td>monēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbās</td>
<td>monēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbat</td>
<td>monēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>monēbō</td>
<td>monēbimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbis</td>
<td>monēbitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēbit</td>
<td>monēbunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Second Conjugation

#### Passive Voice

Principal parts: moneor, monērī, monitus sum

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>monear</td>
<td>monēámur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēris or -re</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>moneāris or -re</td>
<td>monēámīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>momentur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>momentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moneor</td>
<td>monēmur</td>
<td>monear</td>
<td>monēámur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monēris or -re</td>
<td>monēmini</td>
<td>moneāris or -re</td>
<td>monēámīnī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>momentur</td>
<td>monētur</td>
<td>momentur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

| monēbōr | monēbāmūr |
| monēbāris or -re | monēbāmini |
| monēbātur | monēbantur |

### Future

| monēbor | monēbimūr |
| monēberis or -re | monēbimini |
| monēbitur | monēbuntur |

### Perfect

| monitus sum | moniti sumus |
| monitus es | moniti estis |
| monitus est | moniti sunt |

### Pluperfect

| monitus eram | moniti erāmus |
| monitus erās | moniti erātis |
| monitus erat | moniti erant |

### Future Perfect

| monitus erō | moniti erimus |
| monitus eris | moniti eritis |
| monitus erit | moniti erunt |

#### IMPERATIVE

**Present**

- 2d pers. monēre | monēmini

**Future**

- 2d pers. monētor
- 3d pers. monētor | monentor

#### INFINITIVE

**Present**

- monēri

**Future**

- monitus esse

## PARTICIPE

**Present**

- monitus

**Future**

- monendus

### THIRD CONJUGATION

**ACTIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum

#### INDICATIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcō</td>
<td>dūcimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcis</td>
<td>dūcitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcit</td>
<td>dūcunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### SUBJUNCTIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>dūcāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcās</td>
<td>dūcātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcat</td>
<td>dūcant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single</th>
<th>Plural</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbam</td>
<td>dūcēbamus</td>
<td>dūcerem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbās</td>
<td>dūcēbātis</td>
<td>dūcerēs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēbat</td>
<td>dūcēbant</td>
<td>dūceret</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcam</td>
<td>dūcēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcēs</td>
<td>dūcētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūcet</td>
<td>dūcent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūxi</td>
<td>dūximus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxistī</td>
<td>dūxistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxit</td>
<td>dūxērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* or -ēre

**Pluperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūxeram</td>
<td>dūxerāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerās</td>
<td>dūxerātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerat</td>
<td>dūxerant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūxerō</td>
<td>dūxerēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerīs</td>
<td>dūxerētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dūxerit</td>
<td>dūxerint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. dūc*</td>
<td>dūcite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. dūcitō</td>
<td>dūcitōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. dūcitō</td>
<td>dūcuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Participle**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dūcēns</td>
<td>dūctūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Infinitive**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pres. dūcere</td>
<td>Perf. dūxisse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perf. dūxisse</td>
<td>Fut. ductūrus (esse)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Supine**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dūctum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. ductū</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Gerund**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gen. dūcēndī</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dat. dūcēndō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acc. dūcēndum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abl. dūcēndō</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* Irregular for dūce.
THIRD CONJUGATION
PASSIVE VOICE

Principal parts: dūcor, dūci, ductus sum

INDICATIVE

Present

SING. PLUR.

dūcor dūcimur
dūceris or -re dūcimīni
dūcitur dūcuntur

Imperfect
dūcēbar dūcēbāmur
dūcēbāris or -re dūcēbāminī
dūcēbātur dūcēbantur

Future
dūcar dūcēmur
dūcēris or -re dūcēminī
dūcētur dūcentur

Perfect
ductus sum ductī sumus
ductus es ductī estis
ductus est ductī sunt

Pluperfect
ductus eram ductī erāmus
ductus erās ductī erātis
ductus erat ductī erant

Future Perfect
ductus erō ductī erimus
ductus eris ductī erītis
ductus erit ductī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present

2d pers. dūcere dūcimīni

Future

2d pers. dūcitor
3d pers. dūcitor dūcuntor

SUBJUNCTIVE

Present

SING. PLUR.

dūcar dūcāmur
dūcāris or -re dūcāminī
dūcātur dūcuntur

Imperfect
dūcērer dūcērēmur
dūcērēris or re dūcērēminī
dūcēretur dūcērentur

Perfect
ductus sim ductī simus
ductus sis ductī sitis
ductus sit ductī sint

Pluperfect
ductus essem ductī essēmus
ductus essēs ductī essētis
ductus esset ductī essent

INFINITIVE

Pres. dūci
Perf. ductus esse
Fut. ductum iri

PARTICIPLE

Perf. ductus
Fut. dūcendus
### Fourth Conjugation

**Active Voice**

Principal parts: audiō, audiēre, audīvī, auditum

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
<td><strong>Present</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SING.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiō</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audit</td>
<td>audiēunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Imperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbam</td>
<td>audiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbās</td>
<td>audiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēbat</td>
<td>audiēbant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
<td><strong>Future</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiam</td>
<td>audiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiēs</td>
<td>audiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audiet</td>
<td>audient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Perfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvī</td>
<td>audīvīmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvistī</td>
<td>audīvīstīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīvit</td>
<td>audīvērunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>or -ēre</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
<td><strong>Pluperfect</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīveram</td>
<td>audīverāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverās</td>
<td>audīverātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīverat</td>
<td>audīverant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperative**

- **Present**
  - 2d pers. audi
  - Future audiēte

- **Future**
  - 2d pers. auditō
  - 3d pers. auditō audiuntō

**Infinitive**

- Pres. audiēre
- Perf. audiēvīse
- Fut. auditūrus (esse)
### PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pres.</th>
<th>audiēns</th>
<th>Fut.</th>
<th>auditūrus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### SUPINE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acc.</th>
<th>auditum</th>
<th>Abl.</th>
<th>auditū</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### FOURTH CONJUGATION

#### PASSIVE VOICE

**Principal parts:** audior, audīrī, auditus sum

#### INDICATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Present</th>
<th>Subjunctive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sing.</strong></td>
<td><strong>PLUR.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audior</td>
<td>audimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīris or -re</td>
<td>audiāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditur</td>
<td>audiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audīēbar</td>
<td>audiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīēbāris or -re</td>
<td>audiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīēbātur</td>
<td>audiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future</th>
<th>Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audiar</td>
<td>audiēmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>audīrīsis or -re</td>
<td>audiēminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditētur</td>
<td>audientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>audītus eram</td>
<td>audiērāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūs erās</td>
<td>auditīrātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūs erat</td>
<td>auditīrānt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>auditūs erō</td>
<td>auditī erimus</td>
<td>auditī essēmus</td>
<td>auditī erimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūs eris</td>
<td>auditī eritis</td>
<td>auditī essētis</td>
<td>auditī eritis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auditūs erit</td>
<td>auditī erunt</td>
<td>auditī essent</td>
<td>auditī essent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### IMPERATIVE

**Present**

| 2d pers. audire | audímini |

**Future**

| 2d pers. audiōtor | audiuntor |

### INFINITIVE

**Pres. audīri**

**Perf. auditus esse**

**Fut. audītum īri**

### PARTICIPLE

**Perf. auditus**

**Fut. audiendus**

### 71.

**THIRD CONJUGATION IN iō**

**ACTIVE VOICE**

Principal parts: capiō, capere, cēpī, captum

#### INDICATIVE

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiō</td>
<td>capimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capis</td>
<td>capitís</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capit</td>
<td>capiunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Imperfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiēbam</td>
<td>capiēbāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbās</td>
<td>capiēbātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbat</td>
<td>capiēbant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>capiam</td>
<td>capiēmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēs</td>
<td>capiētis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēt</td>
<td>capiēnt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Perfect**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēpī</td>
<td>cēpimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpisti</td>
<td>cēpistis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēpit</td>
<td>cēpērunt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SING.</th>
<th>PLUR.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperim</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>cēperītis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Pluperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Pluperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperam</td>
<td>cēperāmus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperās</td>
<td>cēperātis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperat</td>
<td>cēperant</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future Perfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Future Perfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>cēperō</td>
<td>cēperimus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperis</td>
<td>cēperit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cēperit</td>
<td>cēperint</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperative

**Present**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. cape</td>
<td>capite</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Future**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Imperative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2d pers. capitō</td>
<td>capitōte</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3d pers. capitō</td>
<td>capiuntō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Participle

**Pres. capiēns**

**Fut. captūrus**

#### Supine

**Acc. captum**

**Abl. captū**

#### Third Conjugation in iō

### Passive Voice

Principal parts: capior, capī, captus sum

#### Indicative

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capior</td>
<td>capimur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>caperis or -re</td>
<td>capimini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitūr</td>
<td>capiuntur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Imperfect

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>Imperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbar</td>
<td>capiēbāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbāris or -re</td>
<td>capiēbāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēbātur</td>
<td>capiēbantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Future

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>capiemur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēris or -re</td>
<td>capiēmini</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiētur</td>
<td>capientur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Subjunctive

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infinitive</th>
<th>Infinitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SING.</td>
<td>PLUR.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiar</td>
<td>capiāmur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capiēris or -re</td>
<td>capiāminī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>capitūr</td>
<td>capiantur</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Gerund

**Gen. capiendi**

**Dat. capiendō**

**Acc. capiendum**

**Abl. capiendō**
APPENDIX

Perfect

captus sum  captī sumus
captus es  captī estis
captus est  captī sunt

Pluperfect

captus eram  captī erāmus
captus erās  captī erātis
captus erat  captī erant

Future Perfect

captus erō  captī erimus
captus eris  captī eritis
captus erit  captī erunt

IMPERATIVE

Present
2d pers. capere  capimini

Future
2d pers. capitor
3d pers. capitor  capiuntor

PARTICIPLE

Perf. captus
Fut. capiendus

CONTRACTED FORMS

72. When the perfect stem ends in v, the v is sometimes dropped, and usually the two vowels thus brought together contract into one.

a. Perfects in -āvi, -ēvi, and -ōvi, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes (apparently) drop ve, vē, or vi before r or s.

Examples: laudāsti for laudāvīstī; laudāsse for laudāvīssē; délērunt for délēvērunt; nōrim for nōverim.

b. Perfects in -īvi, and the other tenses based on the same stem, sometimes drop v in all forms. When the resulting combination is iis it usually contracts to is.

Examples: audit for audīvī; audieram for audīveram; audīsse for audīvīssē.
DEPOHENT VERBS

73. Deponent verbs have passive forms with active meanings. But the future passive participle is passive in sense, and the perfect participle is sometimes so. On the other hand they have the following active forms: future infinitive, present and future participles, gerund, supine.

Of the following verbs the principal parts, indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are precisely the same as those for the passive voice of the verbs already given for the corresponding conjugations.

hortor, urge  vereor, fear  sequor, follow  partior, share

INFÍNITIVE

| Pres. hortāri | verēri | sequī | partāri
| Perf. hortātus esse | veritus esse | secūtus esse | partītus esse
| Fut. hortātūrus (esse) | veritūrus (esse) | secūtūrus (esse) | partītūrus (esse) |

PARTICIPLE

| Pres. hortāns | verēns | sequēns | partīēns
| Perf. hortātus | veritus | secūtus | partītus
| Fut. hortātūrus | veritūrus | secūtūrus | partītūrus
| Fut. Pass. hortandus | verendus | sequendus | partiendus

GERUND

hortandi, -ō, etc.  verendi, etc.  sequendi, etc.  partiendi, etc.

SUPINE

hortātum, -tū  veritum, -tū  secūtum, -tū  partītum, -tū

74.

SEMI-DEPOHENT VERBS

Semi-deponent verbs have active forms for the tenses based on the present stem, passive forms for those based on the perfect stem. They are:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, dare
gauđēre, gauđēre, gaŭtīsus sum, rejoicē
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, be accustomed
fidē, fidēre, fītīsus sum, trust
PERIPHERASTIC CONJUGATION

75. The active periphrastic conjugation expresses *future* or *intended action*. It is formed by combining the future active participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

*Pres.* laudātūrus *sum*, *I am about to praise, I intend to praise,*
*Imp.* laudātūrus *eram*, *I was about to praise, I intended to praise,* etc.

76. The passive periphrastic conjugation expresses *obligation* or *necessity*. It is formed by combining the future passive participle with the verb *sum*: thus,

*Pres.* laudandum *sum, I am to be (must be) praised, I have to be praised.*
*Imp.* laudandum *eram, I was to be praised, I had to be praised,* etc.

IRREGULAR VERBS

SUM AND ITS COMPOUNDS

77. For the conjugation of *sum* see 66. *Sum* is inflected in the same way when compounded with the prepositions *ad, dē, in, inter, ob, prae, sub, super.* *Praesum* has a present participle, *praesēns.*

78. In *abs*um, *sum* is inflected in the same way, but ā is used for ab before f, giving āful, āfutūrus, etc. There is a present participle *absēns.*

79. In *prōsum, sum* is inflected in the same way, but the preposition prō has its original form prōd before all forms of *sum* beginning with e; as, prōdesse, prōderam. The present tense is, prōsum, prōdes, prōdest, prōsumus, prōdestis, prōsunt.

80. Possum, *be able, can,* is a compound of pot- and sum.

Principal parts: *possum, posse, potuī*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em>Pres.</em></td>
<td>possum, potes, potest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>possumus, potestis, possunt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Imp.</em></td>
<td>poteram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut.</em></td>
<td>poterō</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Perf.</em></td>
<td>potuī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Plup.</em></td>
<td>potueram</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Fut. Perf.</em></td>
<td>potuerō</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
APPENDIX

81. ferō, ferre, tuli, látum, bear

ACTIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Pres. ferō, fers, fert,
ferimus, fertis, ferunt

Imp. ferēbam

Fut. feram

Perf. tuli

Plup. tuleram

Fut. Perf. tulerō

PARTICIPE

Pres. potēns

SUBJUNCTIVE

feram

ferrem

tulerim

tulissem

GERUND

ferendi, etc.

PASSIVE VOICE

INDICATIVE

Pres. feror, ferris, fertur
ferimur, ferimini, feruntur

Imp. ferēbar

Fut. férar

Perf. látus sum

Plup látus eram

Fut. Perf. látus erō

PARTICIPE

Pres. ferēns

Fut. látūrus

Fut. látūrus (esse)

GERUND

ferar

ferrer

látus sim

látus essem

SUPINE

látum, -tū

82. volō, velle, volui, be willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling
mālō, mālle, mālui, prefer
APPENDIX

INDICATIVE

Pres.       volō       nōlō       mālō
vis         nōn vis    māvis
vult        nōn vult   māvult
volumus     nōlumus    mālumus
vultis      nōn vultis māvultis
volunt      nōlunt     mālunt

Imp.        volēbam   nōlēbam   mālēbam
Fut.        volam     nōlam     mālam
Perf.       volūi     nōluī     māluī
Plup.       volueram  nōlueram  mālueram
Fut. Perf.  voluerō   nōluerō   māluerō

SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.       velim     nōlim     mālim
Imp.        vellem    nōllem    mālem
Perf.       voluerim  nōluerim  māluerim
Plup.       voluissem nōluissem māluissem

IMPERATIVE

Pres.       nōli      nōlite
Fut.        nōlitō    nōlitōte
nōlītō     nōluntō

INFINITIVE

Pres.       velle     nōlle     mālle
Perf.       voluisse  nōluisse  māluisse

PARTICIPLE

nōlēns

83. Fiō, be made, be done, become, happen, is the irregular passive of faciō, make. Note the ī before all vowels, except before ē in the combination -er.

Principal parts: fiō, fierī, factus sum

INDICATIVE          SUBJUNCTIVE

Pres.       fiō, fis, fit     fiām
fimus, fitis, fiunt   fierem

Imp.        fiēbam
Fut.        fiām
Perf.       factus sum
Plup.       factus eram
Fut. Perf.  factus erō

factus sim
factus essem
APPENDIX

IMPERATIVE           INFINITIVE           PARTICIPLE
Pres. fi, fite        Pres. fieri              Perf. factus
Perf. factus esse    Fut. factum iri

84. eō, ire, ī, ītum, go

INDICATIVE
Pres. eō, īs, īt,
imus, ītis, eunt
Imp. ībam
Fut. ībō
Perf. īī for īvī
Plup. īeram
Fut. Per. īerō

SUBJUNCTIVE
cam
Irem
ierim
iīsem or īssem

IMPERATIVE           INFINITIVE           PARTICIPLE
Pres. ī, īte          Pres. īre              Pres. īēns (Gen. euntis)
Fut. ītō, ītōte       Perf. lisse or lisse  Fut. ītūrus
ītō, euntō            Fut. ītūrus (esse)

GERUND
eundī, etc.

SUPINE
itud, -tū

a. In the tenses based on the perfect stem, īi usually contracts to ī before s.

85. Dō, dare, dedī, datum, give, is conjugated like a verb of the first conjugation, except that the stem-vowel is regularly short ā. ā appears only in the following active forms,—dās, dā, dāns.

86. DEFECTIVE VERBS

The most important of these are the perfects memini, I remember; ēdi, I hate; and coepī, I have begun. Notice that memini and ēdi have the meanings of presents. Their pluperfects and future perfects have the meanings of imperfects and futures.

INDICATIVE
Perf. memini          ēdi              coepī
Plup. memineram       ēderam           coepēram
Fut. Perf. meminerō   ēderō            coeperō
SUBJUNCTIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminerim</th>
<th>üderim</th>
<th>coeperim</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plup.</td>
<td>meminissem</td>
<td>üdissem</td>
<td>coepisse</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IMPERATIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sing.</th>
<th>mementō</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Plur.</td>
<td>mementōte</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

INFINITIVE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>meminisse</th>
<th>üdisse</th>
<th>coepisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>üsūrus (esse)</td>
<td>coeptūrus (esse)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PARTICIPLE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Perf.</th>
<th>üsus</th>
<th>coeptus</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fut.</td>
<td>üsūrus</td>
<td>coeptūrus</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Instead of coepī the passive form coeptus sum is regularly used when a passive infinitive depends on it. Example: laudāri coeptus est, he began to be praised.

87. IMPERSONAL VERBS

Impersonal verbs correspond to English impersonals with it. They have no personal subject, but most of them take as subject a substantive clause or sometimes a neuter pronoun. They appear only in the third person singular of the indicative and subjunctive tenses, the present and perfect infinitives, and occasionally in the participles and gerund. They are:—

a. Most verbs expressing actions of nature; as pluit, it rains.

b. The following, which are exclusively impersonal: decet, it becomes; libet, it pleases; licet, it is permitted; miseret, it causes pity; operet, it is right; paenitet, it repents; piget, it displeases; pudet, it shames; réfert, it concerns; taedet, it wearies. All of these except réfert belong to the second conjugation.

c. Personal verbs used impersonally with a special meaning; as accédit, it is added, from accēdō, I approach.

d. The passives of most intransitive verbs; as pugnātur, it is fought.
88. A sentence is a group of words so related as to express a complete thought. It consists of at least two parts — the subject (that of which something is said), and the predicate (that which is said about the subject). These two essential parts may be modified in various ways. A sentence may consist of a single verb, because the subject is implied in its ending.

Sentences are declarative, interrogative, imperative, or exclamatory as in English.

89. A Simple Sentence has one subject and one predicate. Example: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came.

90. A Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences of equal value. These sentences are called coordinate clauses, and are connected by coordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as and, but, for, or. Example: Caesar vēnit et Gallī fūgērunt, Caesar came and the Gauls fled.

91. A Complex Sentence consists of a simple sentence (called a principal clause), modified by one or more dependent sentences (called subordinate or dependent clauses). The clauses are connected by relative pronouns or by subordinating conjunctions; i.e., by conjunctions with such meanings as in order that, so that, if, because, although, when, after, before. Example: ubi Caesar vēnit, Gallī fūgērunt, when Caesar came, the Gauls fled.

THE FUNCTION OF CASES

92. The cases help to show in what relation to the rest of a sentence any given substantive stands. This is shown in English almost entirely by the order of words or by the use of prepositions; yet the so-called possessive case illustrates the use of the Latin cases, for the ending 's in the soldier's arms indicates that soldier modifies arms and that the soldier is the possessor of the arms. But in the English sentences the soldier (subject) fights, he kills the soldier (direct object), he gives the soldier (indirect object) a sword, only the order of words shows the relation of the word to the rest of the sentence; while in Latin mīles would be used in the first sentence, mīlitem in the second, and mīlitī in the third.
93. But each of the cases, except the nominative and the vocative, expresses more than one thing. Consequently one must know just what uses each case can have, and must then determine which one of these uses it has in the sentence in which it occurs. This can be determined sometimes by the meaning of the word itself, sometimes by the obvious meaning of the sentence, sometimes by the fact that another word needs a certain case to satisfy its meaning and that case appears but once in the sentence. Examples: the accusative may express duration of time, but militem, a soldier, could not be used in this sense, while multōs annōs, many years, is quite probably so used. Dicit pī-lum militem vulnerāvisse might mean either he says that a javelin wounded the soldier, or a soldier wounded the javelin, but the latter makes no sense. Persuāsit, he persuaded, needs a dative to express the person persuaded, and if there is but one dative in the sentence its use is evident.

94. For further clearness many relations are expressed in Latin by prepositions, though not so many as in English. Examples: a milite interfectus est, he was killed by a soldier; cum milite vēnit, he came in company with a soldier.

95. AGREEMENT OF SUBSTANTIVES

RULE: A noun which explains another noun and means the same person or thing is put in the same case.

Compare 97. Such a noun may be either a predicate noun or an appositive.

a. RULE: A predicate noun is connected with the subject by sum or a verb of similar meaning.

Such verbs are those meaning appear, become, seem, be called, be chosen, be regarded, and the like. Examples: Pīsō fuit cōnsul, Piso was consul; Pīsō factus est cōnsul, Piso became consul; Pīsō appellātus est cōnsul, Piso was called consul. For the (predicate accusative) with verbs of calling, etc., see 126.

b. RULE: An appositive is set beside the noun which it explains, without a connecting verb.

EXAMPLES: Pīsō, cōnsul, militī Pīsōnī gladium dedit. Piso, the consul, gave a sword to Piso, the soldier.
96. **NOMINATIVE**

**RULE:** The nominative is used as the subject of a finite verb (i.e., the indicative, subjunctive, and imperative modes).

**EXAMPLE:** Gallia est divisa (I, 1, 1), Gaul is divided.

97. **GENITIVE WITH NOUNS**

**GENERAL RULE:** A noun which explains or limits another noun and does not mean the same person or thing (compare 95) is put in the genitive.

The relation between the two nouns is usually expressed in English by *of*, but often by *for* or by other prepositions. These combinations of nouns are divided, according to their meanings into the groups given in 98–105.

A genitive may be either (a) *attributive*, depending directly upon another noun; as domus Caesaris, Caesar's house; or (b) *predicative*, connected by sum or a verb of similar meaning; as domus est Caesaris, the house is Caesar's.

a. **Appositional Genitive.** But the genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive; i.e., it sometimes means the same person or thing as the noun on which it depends. Example: tuorum comitum sentina (Cic. Cat. I, 12), that refuse, your comrades.

98. **Subjective and Objective Genitives.** These depend on nouns which have corresponding verbal ideas, as amor, *love*, amō, *I love*. The thought expressed by the noun and limiting genitive can be expanded into a sentence. If the genitive then becomes the subject it is a subjective genitive; if it becomes the object it is an objective genitive. Examples: amor patris, *the love of the father*, may imply that the father loves, (subjective), or that some one loves his father (objective); occasum sōlis (I, 1, 22), *the setting of the sun* (subjective); régnum cupiditāte (I, 2, 2), *by desire for power* (objective).

99. **Possessive Genitive.**

**RULE:** The genitive may express the possessor.

The possessive pronouns are regularly used instead of the possessive genitive of personal pronouns. Examples: finibus Belgārum (I, 1, 16), by the territory of the Belgae; finibus vestris, by your territory.
a. A genitive or possessive pronoun must precede causā or grātiā, for the sake of. Examples: huius potentiae causā (I, 18, 14), for the sake of this power; meā causā, for my sake.

100. Descriptive Genitive.

**RULE**: The genitive modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

Compare the descriptive ablative (141). This genitive is regularly used to express measure. Examples: huiusce modī senātūs cōnsulūm (Cic. Cat. I, 4), a decree of this kind; trium mēnsium molīta cībāria (I, 5, 7), provisions for three months.

101. Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole).

**RULE**: The genitive may express the whole of which a part is mentioned.

This genitive may depend on any substantive, adjective, pronoun, or adverb which implies a part of a whole. Examples: eōrum ūna pars (I, 1, 15), one part of them; hōrum omnīum fortissimī (I, 1, 6), the bravest of all these; ubīnam gēntium sumus (Cic. Cat. I, 9), where in (not of) the world are we?

a. Note especially the genitive of a noun, or of the neuter singular of a second declension adjective used substantively, depending on a neuter singular adjective or pronoun or on satis used substantively. Examples: quantum bonī (I, 40, 17), how much (of) good; satis causae (I, 19, 6), sufficient (of) reason.

b. In place of this genitive the ablative with dē or ex is often used, especially with cardinal numerals and with quīdam. Example: ūnus ē filīīs captus est (I, 26, 12), one of his sons was captured.

c. English often uses of in apparently similar phrases when there is really no partitive idea. Latin does not then use the genitive. Example: hī omnēs (I, 1, 3), all of these.

102. Genitive of Material.

**RULE**: The genitive may express the material of which a thing is composed.

Example: aciem legiōnūm quattuor (I, 24, 3), a battle line (consisting) of four legions.
APPENDIX

Predicative

103. Possessive Genitive. The possessive genitive (99) is often used predicatively. Note especially such phrases as est hominis, it is the part (duty, characteristic) of a man. Example: est hoc Gallicae consuētūdinis (IV, 5, 4), this is a characteristic of the Gallic customs.

104. Descriptive Genitive. The descriptive genitive (100) is often used predicatively. Example: senatūs consultum est huiusce modi, the decree is of this kind.

105. The Genitive of Value. With sum and verbs of similar meaning, and with verbs of valuing, indefinite value is expressed by the genitive. Compare the ablative of price (147). The words commonly so used are magni, parvi, tantī, quantī, plūris, minōris. Example: tanti eius gratiam esse ostendit (I, 20, 14), he assured him that his friendship was of such value.

B. GENITIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

106. RULE: Many adjectives take a genitive to complete their meaning. They are:

a. Regularly, adjectives with such meanings as conscious (of), desirous (of), mindful (of), sharing (in), skilled (in), and their opposites, and plēnus, full (of). Examples: bellandī cupidī (I, 2, 13), desirous of fighting; rei militaris peritissimus (I, 21, 9), most skilled in military science.

b. Sometimes with the genitive, sometimes with the dative (122), similis, like; dissimilis, unlike. The genitive is more common of living objects, and regular of personal pronouns. Example: tu similis (Cic. Cat. I, 5), like you; vēri simile (III, 13, 11), probable (like the truth).

c. Occasionally other adjectives. Example: locum medium utriusque (I, 34, 2), a place midway between them.

C. GENITIVE WITH VERBS

107. Verbs of Remembering and Forgetting.

RULE: Meminī, bear in mind, reminiscor, remember, and obliviscor, forget, govern either the genitive or the accusative.

The genitive is regular of persons, the accusative of neuter pronouns. Examples: reminiscerētur veteris incommodī (I, 13, 11), he should remember the former disaster; veteris contumēliae oblivisci (I, 14, 7), to forget the former insult.

**RULE:** Verbs of accusing, acquittting, convicting, and condemning take a genitive of the charge.

The penalty is expressed by the ablative. Example: me inertiae condemnō (Cic. Cat. I, 4), *I pronounce myself guilty of inactivity*.


**RULE:** The impersonal verbs miseret, pity, paenitet, repent, piget, dislike, pudet, be ashamed, taedet, be disgusted, take the genitive of the person or thing which causes the feeling, and the accusative of the person who has the feeling.

The personal verb misereor, pity, also takes the genitive. Examples: me meorum factorum numquam paenitet (Cic. Cat. IV, 20), *I shall never repent of my deeds*; me eius miseret or eius misereor, *I pity him*.

110. Interest and Réfert.

**RULE:** The impersonal verbs interest and réfert, it concerns, it is to the interest of, take the genitive of the person concerned.

But if the person is expressed in English by a personal pronoun, interest is used with the ablative singular feminine of a possessive pronoun. Examples: rei publicae intersit (II, 5, 5), *it is to the interest of the state*; mea interest, *it is to my interest*.

111. **RULE:** Potior occasionally governs the genitive.

For potior with the ablative see 145. Example: Galliae potirī (I, 3, 22), *to become masters of Gaul*.

**THE DATIVE**

112. The dative expresses that to or for which anything is or is done. It may depend on a verb or an adjective or, very rarely, a noun; or it may modify a whole sentence without depending on any one word.

113. Indirect Object.

**GENERAL RULE:** The dative denotes the person or thing indirectly affected by the action of a verb.

The indirect object depends closely on the verb, while the dative of reference (120) modifies the whole clause.

114. Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs.

**RULE:** Many verbs govern an indirect object in addition to a direct object.
These are especially verbs of *giving* and *saying*. The dative is usually translated by *to*, less often by *for*. For the indirect object with transitive verbs compounded with a preposition see 116. Example: *el filiam dat* (I, 3, 15), *he gives (to) him his daughter*.

a. *Dōnō, give, present*, and a few other verbs take either the dative of the person and the accusative of the thing, or the accusative of the person and the ablative of the thing. Examples: *el librum dōnō, I give (to) him a book; eum librō dōnō, I present him with a book.*

b. Some verbs, instead of admitting both the accusative and the dative, admit either, but with a different meaning. Especially *cōnsulō, consult or consult for*, and *metuō, fear or fear for*. Examples: *si mē cōnsulis* (Cic. Cat. I, 13), *if you consult me (ask my advice); cōnsulite vō-bis* (Cic. Cat. IV, 3), *consult for yourselves (for your own interests).*

c. This dative is retained with the passive voice. Example: *el filia datur, his daughter is given to him.*

115. *Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs*. The dative is used with all intransitive verbs whose meaning permits. Many of these verbs seem to be transitive in English, so that the indirect object must be translated by the English direct object.

*RULE*: *The dative (usually of the person) is used with many verbs meaning benefit or injure, command or obey, please or displease, serve or resist, trust or distrust, believe, envy, favor, pardon, persuade, spare, threaten, and the like.*

*Examples*: *civitātī persuāsīt* (I, 2, 3), *he persuaded the state; novīs rēbus studēbat* (I, 9, 8), *he was anxious for a revolution; Allobrogibus imperāvit* (I, 28, 7), *he commanded the Allobroges.*

a. The dative is used with some phrases of similar meanings, as *audiēns sum, obey, and fidem habēre, trust*. Example: *cui fidem habēbat* (I, 19, 15), *whom he trusted.*

b. Many of these verbs which are ordinarily intransitive occasionally take an accusative of the thing, usually a neuter pronoun. Examples: *prōvinciae mīlitum numerum imperat* (I, 7, 4), *he levies a number of soldiers on the province; id īs persuāsīt* (I, 2, 6), *he persuaded them to this* (literally, *he persuaded this to them).*

c. Not all verbs with the meanings given above are intransitive. The most important exceptions are the verbs *dēlectō, delight, iubeō*
command, iuvō, please, vetō, forbid, which are transitive and therefore take the accusative (124). Example: Labiēnum iubet (I, 21, 5), he commands Labienus.

d. Since only the direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive (124, b), no intransitive verb can have a personal subject in the passive. The verbs of ιης can be used in the passive only impersonally, and the dative is retained, though it is usually translated as a subject. Examples: Caesari persuādeō, I persuade Caesar, becomes Caesar a mē persuādētur, Caesar is persuaded by me (literally, it is persuaded to Caesar).

116. The Indirect Object with Compound Verbs. I. Certain prepositions usually give to verbs with which they are compounded a meaning which, in Latin idiom, requires the dative. If the simple verb is transitive the compound governs a direct object in addition to the indirect. The dative is variously translated with these verbs: when it is translated by from, it is sometimes called the dative of separation.

RULE: The dative is required with many compounds of ad, ante, con, dē, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super; and with some compounds of ab, circum, and ex.

EXAMPLES: cum omnibus praestārent (I, 2, 5), since they excelled all; finitimus bellum inferre (I, 2, 12), to make war upon their neighbors; munitionī Labiēnum praeficit (I, 10, 7), he puts Labienus in command of the works; scūtō militī dētractō (II, 25, 13), having snatched a shield from a soldier.

II. RULE: The dative is used with compounds of satis and bene.

EXAMPLE: si Haeduǐs satisfaciant (I, 14, 19), if they should make restitution to the Haeduī.

a. The meaning of the compound does not always permit the dative. Among the most important exceptions are the transitive verbs, aggerdior, attack; incendō, burn; interficio, kill; oppugnō, assault; but there are many others. Example: eōs aggressus (I, 12, 9), having attacked (or attacking) them.

b. Very often with these compounds the preposition is repeated, or some other preposition is used, governing its proper case, instead of the dative. So especially if place is designated, or if motion is expressed. Example: illum in equum intulit (VI, 30, 15), he put him on a horse.

c. The dative is retained with the passive. Example: munitionī Labiēnus praeficitur, Labienus is put in command of the works.
117. Dative of Possessor.

**RULE:** The dative is used in the predicate with sum to denote the possessor.

It may be translated as a nominative with the verb have. Examples: mihi est liber, I have a book (literally a book is to me); démonstrant sibi nihil esse (I, 11, 12), they declared that they had nothing (lit. there was nothing to them).

118. Dative of the Agent.

**RULE:** The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation (76) to express the agent.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137), which is used with the other forms of the passive. Example: nón exspectandum sibi statuit (Caes. I, 11, 13), he decided that he must not wait (lit. that it must not be waited by him).

119. Dative of Purpose.

**RULE:** The dative may express purpose or tendency.

This dative is especially common with sum. It is often found in connection with another dative (indirect object, dative of reference, dative of the possessor). Examples: quem auxilió Caesari miserant (I, 18, 27), whom they had sent to aid Caesar, lit. whom they had sent for an aid to Caesar; qui novissimís praesidió erant (I, 25, 14), who were guarding the rear, lit. who were for a guard to the rear.

120. Dative of Reference.

**RULE:** The dative may name the person with reference to whom the statement is made.

This dative does not depend on any one word (compare 113) but loosely modifies the whole predicate. It often takes the place of a genitive modifying a noun. Examples: cibária sibi quemque efferre iubent (I, 5, 8), they order each one to carry food for himself; sésepé Caesari ad pedés proiecérunt (I, 31, 4), they cast themselves at Caesar’s feet.
121. Ethical Dative. The ethical dative is a dative of reference with so weak a meaning as to be unnecessary to the sense. It designates the person to whom the thought is of interest, and usually shows some emotion. Its use is confined to the personal pronouns. Example: Tongilium mihi edixit (Cic. Cat. II, 4), he took me out Tongilius, he took out my Tongilius, or simply he took out Tongilius.

122. Dative with Adjectives.

RULE: Adjectives meaning friendly or unfriendly, like or unlike, useful or useless, equal, fit, near, suitable, govern the dative.

Examples: plebī acceptus (I, 3, 14), acceptable (pleasing) to the people; proximī sunt Germanīs (I, 1, 9), they are nearest to the Germans; castrīs idōneum locum (VI, 10, 5), a place suitable for a camp.

a. With some of these adjectives a preposition with its proper case is often used instead of a dative. Example: ad amīcītiam idōneus, suitable for friendship.

b. The adjectives propior and proximus and the adverbs propius and proximē sometimes govern the accusative, like the preposition prope. Example: proximī Rhēnum (I, 54, 3), nearest the Rhine.

c. For similis and dissimilis see 106, b.

ACCUSATIVE

123. Subject of Infinitive.

RULE: The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

Example: certior factus est Helvētiōs trādūxisse (I, 12, 5), he was informed that the Helvetii had led across.

124. Direct Object.

RULE: The accusative is used with transitive verbs to express the direct object.

The direct object may be either (a) the person or thing directly affected by the action of the verb, as puerum laudas, he praises the boy; or (b) the thing produced by the action of the verb, as coniūrātiōnem fēcit, he made a conspiracy.

a. The direct object may be a substantive clause (228, 229, 262, 277).

b. The direct object of the active voice becomes the subject of the passive. Examples: puer laudātur, the boy is praised; coniūrātiō facta est, a conspiracy was made.
c. Many compounds of intransitive verbs with prepositions, especially ad, circum, in, per, praeter, sub, trāns, have transitive meanings. Example: ire, to go, intransitive; but flūmen trānsīre, to cross (go across) the river.

d. Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin; see especially 115.

THREE CLASSES OF VERBS GOVERNING TWO ACCUSATIVES (125–127).

125. Two Objects. A few verbs take two objects, one of the person, one of the thing.

a. RULE: Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, (also cēlō, I conceal) have a direct object of the thing, and may have another of the person.

But with verbs of asking and demanding the person is usually expressed by the ablative with ab. Examples: Haeduōs frūmentum flāgitāre (I, 16, 1), he kept asking the Haedui for the grain; eadem ab aliis quaerit (I, 18, 5), he asked the same question of others.

b. RULE: Moneō, I warn, advise, and a few other verbs may take an accusative of the person and the neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective of the thing.

The pronoun is an inner accusative (128, a). Examples: eōs hoc moneō (Cic. Cat. II, 20), I give them this advice; si quid ille sē velit (I, 34, 6), if he wanted anything of him.

c. With the passive of these verbs the accusative of the person becomes the subject, and the accusative of the thing is retained. Example: Haedui frūmentum flāgitābantur, the Haedui were asked for the grain; (if) hoc momentur, they are given this advice.

126. Object and Predicate Accusative.

RULE: Verbs of making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing, and the like, take a direct object and a predicate accusative, both referring to the same person or thing.

The predicate accusative may be either a noun or an adjective. Examples: quem rēgem cōnstituerat (IV, 21, 14), whom he had appointed king; Ĉaesarēm certiōrem fēcit, he informed Caesar (made Caesar more certain).
a. With the passive of these verbs the direct object becomes the subject, and the predicate accusative becomes the predicate nominative (95, a). Examples: qui rēx constitūtus erat, who had been appointed king; Caesar certior factus est (I, 12, 5), Caesar was informed (made more certain).

127. Two Objects with Compounds.

RULE: Transitive verbs compounded with trāns may take one object depending on the verb, another depending on the preposition.

Example: trēs partēs flūmen trādūxērunt (cf. I, 12, 6), they led three parts across the river.

a. With the passive of these verbs the object of the verb becomes the subject, the object of the preposition is retained. Example: trēs partēs flūmen trāductae sunt, three parts were led across the river.

128. Cognate Accusative.

RULE: An intransitive verb may take an accusative of a noun of kindred meaning, usually modified by an adjective or genitive.

Examples: eam vitam vivere, to live that life; tridui viam prōcēdere (I, 38), to advance a three days' march.

a. A neuter accusative of a pronoun or adjective is often used in a similar way. This is sometimes called an inner accusative. Examples: id iīs persuāsit (I, 2, 3), he persuaded them of this (lit. he persuaded this to them); multum posse, to have much power.

b. Adverbial Accusative. A few accusatives are used adverbially. In some cases it is impossible to decide whether an accusative should be classed here or under a. The most common adverbial accusatives are multum, much, plūs, more, plūrimum, most, plērumque, for the most part, and nihil, not at all. Here belong also id temporis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), at that time, and maximam partem (IV, 1, 14), for the most part. Example: multum sunt in vēnātiōne (IV, 1, 15), they engage much in hunting.

129. Accusative in Exclamations.

RULE: An accusative is sometimes used as an exclamation.

Example: O fortūnātam rem pūblīcam (Cic. Cat. II, 7), Oh, fortunate state! The nominative and vocative are less often used in the same way.
130. Accusative of Time and Space.

**RULE:** The accusative is used to express duration of time and extent of space.

The noun must be one meaning time or distance, as, diēs, day; pēs, foot. Compare 152 and 148. Examples: regnum multōs annōs obtinuerat (I, 3, 10), he had held the royal power many years; mília passuum ducenta quadrāgintā patēbant (I, 2, 16), extended two hundred and forty miles.

131. Place to Which.

**RULE:** Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with ad or in, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.

Compare 134, a, and 151. Examples: ad iūdicium coēgit (I, 4, 14), he brought to the trial; in agrum Nōricum trānsierant (I, 5, 11), they had crossed over into the Noreian territory; sē Massilīam cōnferet (Cic. Cat. II, 14), he will go to Marseilles; domum reditīonis (I, 5, 6), of a return home.

a. Ad is, however, sometimes used in the sense of towards (not to), or in the neighborhood of. Example: ad Genavam pervenit (I, 7, 4), he reached the neighborhood of Geneva.

132. VOCATIVE

The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative. Example; dēsilite, commilitōnēs (IV, 25, 11), jump down, comrades.

133. ABLATIVE

The language from which Latin developed had two more cases than Latin has,—the instrumental and the locative. The original ablative meant separation (from), the instrumental meant association or instrument (with or by), and the locative meant place where (in). The forms of these three cases united in the Latin ablative; so that this one case has meanings which belonged to three separate cases. This fact accounts for the many and widely differing uses which the case has.

134. Ablative of Separation.

**RULE:** Separation is usually expressed by the ablative, with or without ab, dē, or ex.
With some verbs both constructions are used; the individual usage of others must be noted. For the so-called dative of separation see 116, 1. Examples: suis finibus eōs prohibent (I, 1, 13), they repel them from their own territory; quae hostem a pugnā prohibērent (IV, 34, 9), which kept the enemy from battle; à Bibracte aberat (I, 23, 2), he was distant from Bibracte.

a. Place from which: with verbs expressing motion:—

RULE: Place from which is expressed by the ablative with ab, dē, or ex, but names of towns and domus and rūs omit the preposition.

Compare 131 and 151. Examples: ut dē finibus suis exirent (I, 2, 4), to go out from their territory; qui ex provinciā convenerant (I, 8, 2), who had gathered from the province; Rōmā profugērunt (Cic. Cat. I, 7), they fled from Rome; domō exīre (I, 6, 1), to go out from home.

Ab is, however, used with names of towns to express from the neighborhood of.

b. RULE: With verbs and adjectives of depriving, freeing, being without, and the like, the ablative without a preposition is generally used.

Examples: magnō mē metū liberābis (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will free me of great fear; proeliō abstīnēbat (I, 22, 11), refused battle (literally refrained from battle).

135. Ablative of Source.

RULE: The ablative, usually without a preposition, is used with the participles nātus and ortus, to express parentage or rank.

Examples: amplissimō genere nātus (IV, 12, 13), born of the highest rank; sorōrem ex mātre (nātam) (I, 18, 16), his sister on his mother's side.


RULE: The material of which anything is made is expressed by the ablative with ex, less often dē.

Example: nāvēs factae ex rōbore (III, 13, 5), the ships were made of oak.

137. Ablative of Agent.

RULE: The agent of the passive voice is expressed by the ablative with ab.
The agent is the person who performs the act. Compare the ablative of means (143), and the dative of agent (118). Example: exercitum ab Helvētiis pulsum (I, 7, 13), that his army had been routed by the Helvetii.

138. Ablative of Cause.

**RULE:** Cause is expressed by the ablative, generally without a preposition.

Examples: grātiā et largītiōne (I, 9, 5), because of his popularity and lavish giving; quod suā victōriā gloriārentur (I, 14, 11), that they boasted (because) of their victory.

a. Cause is more frequently expressed by causā and the genitive (99, a); by the accusative with ob, per, or propter; and by dē or ex with the ablative. Examples: propter angustiās (I, 9, 2), because of its narrowness; quā dē causā, (I, 1, 11), and for this reason.

139. Ablative of Comparison.

**RULE:** With comparatives, "than" may be expressed by the ablative.

Examples: lūce sunt clāriōra tua cōnsilia (Cic. Cat. I, 6), your plans are clearer than day; nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnīs miliibus passuum (I, 15, 14), not more than five or six miles (compare b).

This is not to be confused with the ablative of measure of difference (148).

a. When quam is used for than, the two nouns compared are in the same case. The ablative is generally used only when the first noun is nominative or accusative, and when the sentence is negated.

b. Plūs, minus, amplius, and longius are often used instead of plūs quam, etc. Example: quae amplius octingentae ūnō erant visae tempore (V, 8, 19), of which more than 800 had been in sight at one time.

140. Ablative of Accompaniment.

**RULE:** Accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with cum.

Example: ut cum omnibus cōpiis exīrent (I, 2, 4), to go out with all their troops.

In military phrases cum is sometimes omitted.

Example: Caesar subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiis (II, 19, 1), Caesar followed with all his troops.
141. Descriptive Ablative.

RULE: The ablative modified by an adjective may describe a person or thing by naming some quality.

It may be used either attributively or predicatively. Compare the descriptive genitive (100). Examples: hominēs inimīcō animō (I, 7, 15), men of unfriendly disposition; nondum bonō animō vidērentur (I, 6, 11), they did not yet seem (to be) well disposed (of a good spirit).

142. Ablative of Manner.

RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative, usually with either cum or a modifying adjective, rarely with both.

Examples: pars cum cruciatū necābatur (V, 45, 5), some were killed with torture; magnīs itineribus (I, 10, 8), by forced marches.

a. Ablative of Accordance.

RULE: In some common phrases the ablative means in accordance with.

These are especially the following nouns, modified by either an adjective or a genitive,—consuetūdine, iūre, iussū (iniussū), lēge, mōribus, sententiā, sponte, voluntāte. Examples: iniussū suō (I, 19, 4), without his orders; mōribus suīs (I, 4, 1), in accordance with their customs; suā voluntāte (I, 20, 11), in accordance with his wish.

b. Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

RULE: Sometimes the ablative expresses situation or an attendant circumstance.

Usually it is impossible to distinguish clearly such an ablative from the ordinary ablative of manner. Examples: imperiō populi Rōmānī (I, 18, 22), under the sovereignty of the Roman people; intervāllō pedum duōrum iungēbat (IV, 17, 9), he joined at a distance a part of two feet.

143. Ablative of Means.

RULE: The means or instrument by which a thing is done is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

Compare the ablative of the agent (137). Example: rēgni cupiditāte inductus (I, 2, 2), influenced by the desire for royal power.
a. Notice the ablative with the following words,—verbs and adjectives of filling (except plenus, 106); fidô, confidô, trust in; nitor, rely upon; lacessô (proelîô), provoke (to battle); assuëfactus, assuefactus, accustomed to; frûtus, relying upon. Examples: nàtûrâ locî confidîbant (III, 9, 12), they trusted in the nature of the country; nullô officiô assuefacti (IV, 1, 17), accustomed to no obedience.

144. Ablative of the Way.

RULE: The road or way by which a person or thing goes is expressed by the ablative of means.

Examples: frûmentô quod flûmine Ararî nàvibus subvexerat (I, 16, 5), the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Saone; eôdem itinere contendit (I, 21, 8), he advanced by the same road.

145. Ablative with Special Deponent Verbs. The ablative is used with iîtor, use, fruor, enjoy, fungor, perform, fulfill, potior, get possession of, vîscor, eat, and their compounds.

This is an ablative of means, but is to be translated by a direct object. Examples: eôdem úsî cônssiliô (I, 5, 9), adopting (having used) the same plan; imperiô potiîri (I, 2, 6), to get possession of the government.

146. Ablative with opus est.

RULE: The ablative of means is used with opus est and ûsus est, meaning there is need of.

Example: Caesâri multis auxilîis opus est, Caesar needs many auxiliaries.

a. But if the thing needed is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective it may be used as the subject, with opus as predicate noun. Example: si quid opus esset (I, 34, 5), if he needed anything.

b. Sometimes the ablative neuter of the perfect passive participle is used with opus est. Example: si opus factô esset (I, 42, 19), if there should be need of action.

147. Ablative of Price.

RULE: With verbs of buying, selling, and the like, price is expressed by the ablative.

Compare the genitive of value, 105. Example: parvô pretiô redêmpta (I, 18, 9), bought up at a low price.

**RULE:** The ablative is used with comparatives and words of similar meaning to express the degree of difference.

Compare 139. Examples: nihilō minus (I, 5, 1), lit. less by nothing, = nevertheless; paucīs ante diēbus, (I, 18, 25), a few days before (lit. before by a few days).

a. Eō ... quō, in this construction, may be translated the ... the. Example: eō gravius ferre quō minus merito accidissent (I, 14, 3), lit. he endured them with more anger by that amount by which they had happened less deservedly, = he was the more angry the less deservedly they had happened.

149. Ablative of Specification.

**RULE:** The ablative is used to express that in respect to which a statement is true.

Examples: lingua inter sē differunt (I, 1, 3), they differ in language; maiō nātū, older (greater in birth).

a. The ablative is used with dignus, worthy, and indignus, unworthy. Example: ipsīs indignum (V, 35, 11), unworthy of themselves.

150. Ablative Absolute.

**RULE:** A noun and a participle in the ablative may modify a sentence as a subordinate clause would.

**RULE:** Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, may stand in the ablative absolute when the English would connect them by the word "being."

The construction is called absolute because it does not depend syntactically on anything in the sentence. It is used much more frequently than the nominative absolute in English; hence it should be translated in some other way. It is always possible to translate by a subordinate clause, but sometimes other translations are more convenient. Notice the translations of the following examples: (translated by active past participle) remōtis equīs proelium commīsīt (I, 25, 2), having sent the horses away, he began the battle; (translated by prepositional phrase) M Messālā M. Pisōnē cōnsulibus (I, 2, 2), in the consulship of, etc.; eō dēprecātōre (I, 9, 4), by his mediation; (translated by subordinate clause) omnibus rēbus comparātīs diem dicunt (I, 6, 13),
when everything was ready they set a day; Sèquani invités ire nón pote-
rant (I, 9, 1), if the Sequani should refuse they could not go; monte occup-
pató nostrōs expectābat (I, 22, 11), though he had occupied the mountain
he waited for our men; (translated by coordinate clause) locīs superiōri-
bus occupātīs .... conantur (I, 10, 12), they occupied advantageous posi-
tions and tried, etc.

151. Place in Which.

RULE: Place in which is regularly expressed by the ablative with in.

Compare 131 and 134, a. Example: in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt
(I, 1, 13), they fight in their territory.

a. RULE: Names of towns and small islands stand in the locative
(15, b; 16, b) if they are singular nouns of the first and second declen-
sions; otherwise in the ablative without a preposition.

The locatives domī, at home, and rurī, in the country, are also in regu-
lar use. Examples: Samarobrivae (V, 24, 1), at Samarobriva; domī
largiter posse (I, 18, 13), he had great influence at home.

b. RULE: No preposition is regularly used with locō, locīs, parte,
partibus when accompanied by an adjective or an equivalent genitive; or
with any noun modified by tōtus.

Examples: nōn nullīs locīs trānsītur (I, 6, 8), is crossed in several
places; vulgō tōtīs castrīs (I, 39, 17), everywhere throughout the entire
camp.

c. Latin often uses some other construction where the English would
lead one to expect the construction of place in which. So ab and ex
are used to express position; and the ablative of means is often used in-
stead of the ablative with in if the construction is at all appropriate.
Examples: ënā ex parte (I, 2, 7), on one side; cotidiānīs proelīs conten-
dunt (I, 1, 12), they contend in (by means of) daily battles; memoriā tenē-
bat (I, 7, 12), he held in (by means of) memory.

152. Ablative of Time.

RULE: Time at or within which is expressed by the ablative without a
preposition.

Compare the accusative of time (130). Examples: eō tempore (I,
3, 14), at that time; id quod ipse diēbus vigintī aegerrīmē cōnīcerant (I,
13, 4), a thing which they had barely accomplished in(within) twenty days.

a. The ablative rarely denotes duration of time. Example: eā tōtā
nocte iērunt (I, 26, 13), they marched during that whole night.
CASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

153. Ablative. The following prepositions govern the ablative: ab, absque, cōram, cum, dē, ex, prae, pró, sine, tenus.

a. The forms ab and ex must be used before words beginning with a vowel or h. It is always safe to use ā and ē before words beginning with a consonant, though ab and ex are often found.

b. Cum is enclitic with the personal and reflexive pronouns, and usually with the relative and interrogative.

154. Accusative or Ablative. In and sub with the accusative imply motion from outside into and under, respectively. Subter and super sometimes govern the ablative.

155. Accusative. All other prepositions govern the accusative.

156. PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTIVE ADJECTIVES

A predicate adjective is connected with its noun by some part of the verb sum or a verb of similar meaning (see 95, a); as, flūmen est lātum, the river is wide. An attributive adjective modifies its noun without such a connecting verb; as, flūmen lātum, the wide river.

157. AGREEMENT OF ADJECTIVES

RULE: Adjectives (including participles and adjective pronouns) agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

Examples: homō bonus, a good man; mulierī bonae, to a good woman; bellōrum magnōrum, of great wars.

a. An adjective which belongs in sense to two or more nouns,—

1. If attributive, regularly agrees with the nearest noun. Examples: vir bonus et mulier, a good man and woman; bella et victoriae magnae, great wars and victories.

2. If predicative, regularly agrees with all the nouns, and must, therefore, be plural. If the nouns are of the same gender the adjective usually takes that gender; otherwise it is neuter unless one or more of the nouns denote things with life, when the adjective is usually masculine rather than feminine, feminine rather than neuter. But the adjective may be neuter under almost any circumstances. Examples: hominēs et mōrēs sunt boni, the men and their characters are good; hominēs et arma sunt magnī, the men and their arms are large; montēs et flūmina sunt magna, the mountains and rivers are large.
ADJECTIVES USED SUBSTANTIALLY

Adjectives are rarely used as substantives in the singular, more commonly in the plural. The masculine is used in all cases in the sense of man or men, and the feminine in the sense of woman or women. The neuter is used in the sense of thing or things, and commonly only in the nominative and accusative because they are the only cases in which masculine and neuter forms can be distinguished. But the genitive singular neuter is common as the partitive genitive (101, a). Examples: mstitial, many men; multorum, of many men; multae, many women; multarum, of many women; multa, many things; multarum rerum, of many things.

ADJECTIVES FOR ADVERBS

Some adjectives are commonly used where the English idiom suggests the use of adverbs, chiefly when they modify the subject or object. Examples: invitus venit, lit. he came unwilling, = he came unwillingly or he was unwilling to come; primus venit, lit. he the first came, = he came first, or he was the first to come.

ADJECTIVES WITH PARTITIVE MEANING

Some adjectives mean only a part of an object. The most common of these are, imus, inimus, the bottom of; medius, the middle of; summus, the top of; primus, the first part of; extremus, the last part of; reliquus, the rest of. Examples: in colle mediō (I, 24, 3), on the middle of (halfway up) the slope; summus mōns (I, 22, 1), the top of the mountain; primā nocte (I, 27, 12), in the first part of the night; multō diā, late in the day.

COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES

Comparatives and superlatives of both adjectives and adverbs are usually to be translated by the corresponding English forms; but the comparative is sometimes to be translated by quite, rather, somewhat, or too, the superlative by very. Examples: diūturnōrem impūnitātem (I, 14, 15), quite long immunity; cupidius Ínsecūtī (I, 15, 5), following too eagerly; monte Íurā altissimō (I, 2, 9), by the very high mountain Jura.

a. The superlative is often strengthened by quam, with or without a form of possum. Examples: quam maximum numerum (I, 3, 3), quam maximum potest numerum (I, 7, 4), as great a number as possible, or the greatest possible number.
PERSONAL PRONOUNS

A personal pronoun (51) is rarely used as the subject of a finite verb except for emphasis or contrast. Example: ego maneō, tū abis, I remain, you go.

a. The plural of the first person is more often used for the singular than in English. The plural of the second person is not used for the singular, as is done in English. Example: utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus (II, 1, 1), as I (lit. we) have said before.

REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

163. GENERAL RULE: Reflexive pronouns refer to the subject of the clause or sentence in which they stand.

They correspond to myself, himself, etc., in such sentences as I praise myself, he praises himself. This use of myself, etc., must not be confused with the use in such sentences as I myself praise him, where myself emphasizes I and is in apposition with it. The latter use corresponds to the Latin intensive pronoun (172). The reflexive of the third person has two uses.

164. The Direct Reflexive.

RULE: Sui and suus are used in every kind of sentence or clause to refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand.

Example: eum videō quī sē laudat, I see the man who praises himself.

165. The Indirect Reflexive.

RULE: In a subordinate clause which expresses the thought of the principal subject sui and suus are also used to refer to the principal subject instead of the subject of the clause in which they stand.

This is especially important in indirect discourse (271) where the whole indirect discourse expresses the thought of the speaker, and consequently every pronoun referring to the speaker is regularly some form of sui or suus. Example: Caesar dicit mē sē laudāvisse, Caesar says that I praised him (Caesar).

166. The Reciprocal Expression. The reflexive pronouns are used with inter to express the reciprocal idea, one another, each other. Examples: inter nōs laudāmus, we praise one another or each other; obsidēs utī inter sēsē dent (1, 9, 10), that they give hostages to each other.
POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

167. The possessive pronouns (or adjectives) are rarely expressed except for clearness or contrast. Example: Caesar exercitum duxit, Caesar led (his) army.

a. Suus is the adjective of the reflexive pronoun sui, and is used in the same way. See 164 and 165.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

168. Hic refers to something near the speaker, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. Example: hic liber, this book (near me).

169. Iste refers to something near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the second person. Example: iste liber, that book (near you). When used of an opponent it often implies contempt.

170. Ille refers to something more remote from the speaker or person spoken to, and is often called the demonstrative of the third person. Example: ille liber, that book (yonder).

a. Ille and hic are often used in the sense of the former, the latter. Hic is usually the latter, as referring to the nearer of two things mentioned; but it may be the former if the former object is more important and therefore nearer in thought.

171. Is is the weakest of the demonstratives and the one most used as the personal pronoun of the third person, or to refer without emphasis to something just mentioned, or as the antecedent of a relative.

a. When is is used substantively it is translated by a personal pronoun; when used as an adjective, by this or that; when used as the antecedent of a relative it is translated in various ways,—the man, a man, such a man, that, etc.

THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

172. Ipse emphasizes the noun with which it agrees. It is usually translated by self, and is not to be confused with the reflexive pronouns. Examples: ipse Caesar eum laudat, Caesar himself praises him; ipse Caesar se laudat, Caesar himself praises himself.
a. Ipse is often used to strengthen a possessive pronoun. It then stands in the genitive to agree with the genitive implied in the possessive. Examples: meus ipsitus liber, my own book (the book of me myself); vester ipsorum liber, your own book (the book of you yourselves).

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

173. RULE: A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its construction in its own clause.

If it is used as subject the verb agrees in person with the antecedent. If the relative has two or more antecedents it follows the same rules of agreement as predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). The relative is never omitted. Examples: Caesar, quem laudō, Caesar, whom I praise; ego, qui eum laudō, I, who praise him; Caesar et Cicerō, qui mē laudant, Caesar and Cicero, who praise me.

a. Coordinate Relative. It is often necessary to translate a relative by a coordinating conjunction (and, but, etc.) and a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: relinquēbatūr ūna via, quā īre nōn poterant (I, 9, 1), there was left only one way, and by it they could not go. Latin is fond of letting a relative stand at the beginning of an entirely new sentence, with its antecedent in the preceding sentence. It is then usually best translated by a personal or demonstrative pronoun. Example: qui (I, 15, 5), they.

INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

174. RULE: Quis, anyone, is the indefinite commonly used after si, nisi, nē, and num.

Example: si quis laudat, si anyone praises.

175. RULE: Aliquis (aliqui) is the indefinite commonly used in affirmative sentences to mean some one, some, etc.

Example: aliquis dicit, some one may say.

176. Quispiam has almost exactly the same meaning as aliquis, but is rare. Example: quispiam dicit, some one may say.

177. RULE: Quisquam and ullus are the indefinites commonly used in negative sentences (except with nē), and in questions implying a negative, to mean any, anyone, etc.

Examples: neque quemquam laudō, nor do I praise anyone; cur quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose?
178. Nesciō quis (nesciō qui), originally meaning I know not who, is often used in a sense very much like that of aliquid, but with even more indefiniteness. Example: nesciō quis laudat, some one or other praises.

AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT

179. RULE: A finite verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

In the compound tenses the participle agrees with the subject in gender. Examples: Caesar laudātus est, Caesar was praised; mulierēs laudātae sunt, the women were praised.

a. But the verb sometimes agrees with the meaning of the subject rather than its grammatical form. Thus a singular collective noun sometimes has a plural verb, and a neuter noun a masculine participle in agreement. Examples: multītūdō vēnērunt, a great number came; duo mīlia occīsī sunt, two thousand were killed.

180. If there are two or more subjects, the verb is usually plural. In the compound tenses of the passive the participle follows the rule given for predicate adjectives (157, a, 2). If the subjects differ in person the first person is preferred to the second and the second to the third. Examples: homō et mulier occīsī sunt, the man and the woman were killed; ego et tū vēnimus, you and I came.

a. The verb may agree with the nearest subject, especially if the verb stands first or after the first subject. It regularly does so if the subjects are connected by conjunctions meaning or or nor. Example: Caesar vēnit et Labiēnus, Caesar and Labienus came; neque Caesar neque Labiēnus vēnit, neither Caesar nor Labienus came; filia atque unus ē filīis captus est (I, 26, 11), his daughter and one of his sons were taken.

b. If the two or more subjects are thought of as forming a single whole, the verb is singular. Example: Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit (I, 1, 5), the Marne and Seine separate (they make one boundary line).

THE VOICES

181. The voices have the same meanings and uses as in English. An intransitive verb can not be used in the passive except impersonally. Examples: laudat, he praises; laudātur, he is praised; ei crēditur (115, d) lit. it is believed to him = he is believed.
182. The Latin verb has three modes,—the indicative, the subjunctive and the imperative. The name mode is applied to them because they indicate the manner in which the action of the verb is spoken of; for example, as a fact, as wished, as willed.

183. The Indicative speaks of the action as a fact, either stating a fact or asking a question about a fact. Examples: laudat, he praises; non laudat, he does not praise; laudatne? does he praise?

184. The Subjunctive has three classes of meanings, some of which may be further subdivided.

a. The Subjunctive of Desire. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express will (then called volitive) or wish (then called optative). Examples: laudet, let him praise or may he praise; impero ut laudet, I command that he praise, i.e., I give the command “let him praise.”

b. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity. Both in independent sentences and in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express what would take place under some condition, either expressed or implied, or, very seldom, it may express what may possibly take place. The latter use is the potential. Examples: laudet, he would praise (if there should be reason); is est qui laudet, he is a man who would praise.

c. The Subjunctive of Fact. Only in dependent clauses the subjunctive may express certainty and be translated like the indicative.

Example: laudatur cum laudet, he is praised because he praises. Compare laudatur quod laudat, he is praised because he praises.

185. The Imperative is used only in independent sentences. It expresses a command. Example: laudá, praise (thou); desílite (IV, 25, 11), jump down.

OTHER VERBAL FORMS

186. The Infinitive is not, strictly speaking, a mode, but a verbal noun. It is, however, used as a mode in certain kinds of dependent clauses. Example: dicit Caesarem laudári, he says that Caesar is praised.
187. Verbal Nouns and Adjectives. The gerund and the supine are verbal nouns; the gerundive and the participles are verbal adjectives. None of these can form clauses in Latin, though they are often best translated into English by clauses.

THE NEGATIVES

188. There are two kinds of negatives in Latin.

   a. RULE: Non, not, and neque, and not, nor, are used to negative statements and questions.

      That is, they are used with the indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity (184, b), the subjunctive of fact (184, c), and the infinitive. Examples: non laudat, he does not praise; non laudet, he would not praise; nonne laudat? does he not praise?

   b. RULE: Ne, not, and neve, and not, nor, are used to negative the subjunctive of desire (184, a).

      But ne . . . quidem, not even, is used in statements. Examples: ne laudet, let him not praise, or may he not praise: ne laudat quidem, he does not even praise.

THE TENSES

189. The tense of a verb tells either one or both of two things: (1) the time of the action, whether past, present, or future; and (2) the stage of progress of the action at that time, whether already completed, still going on, or about to take place. For example, the following forms are all past, and yet express different things: laudavit, he praised, simply puts the action in the past; laudaverat, he had praised, means that the action was already completed in the past time; laudabat, he was praising, means that the action was going on in the past time; and laudatūrus erat, he was going to praise, means that in the past time the action was on the point of taking place. Latin is much more accurate in its use of tenses than English is.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE

190. The Present regularly puts the action in the present time and corresponds to all the forms of the English present. Example: laudat, he praises (simple), he is praising (progressive), he does praise (emphatic).
a. The historical present speaks of a past fact as if it were present, in order to put it vividly before the mind. It is much more common in Latin than in English, and therefore should usually be translated by a past. Example: oppida sua omnia incendunt (I, 5, 3), they burned (burn) all their towns.

b. With such expressions as iam diū, iam pridem, for a long time, multōs annōs, for many years, the Latin present is to be translated by the English present perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē moneō, I have been warning you for many years. There are really two ideas, “I have been in the past” and “I still am.” English expresses one of them; Latin, like French and German, expresses the other.

c. For the present with dum, etc., see 234, a.

191. The Imperfect puts the action in the past and represents it as going on at that time. See 189. Example: laudābat, he was praising.

a. The imperfect is often used of repeated past action; as laudābat, he used to praise, or he kept praising. It is less often used of attempted past action; as laudābat, he tried to praise.

b. With the expressions mentioned in 190, b, the imperfect is to be translated by the English past perfect. Example: multōs annōs tē monebam, I had been warning you for many years.

192. The Future puts the action in the future time and corresponds to the English future. See 199. Example: laudābo, I shall or will praise, or be praising.

193. The Perfect has two uses.

I. The present (or definite) perfect corresponds to the English present perfect with have. It represents the action as completed at the present time. Example: laudāvi, I have praised.

a. This perfect is often nearly equivalent to a present. For example, vēnī, I have come, is nearly equivalent to I am here. A few perfects are regularly translated by presents; especially nōvī, cognōvī, I know (literally I have found out), and cōnsuēvī, I am accustomed (literally I have become accustomed). Cf. the English, “I’ve got it,” for “I have it.”
II. The historical (or indefinite) perfect simply puts the action in the past, without telling anything about the stage of progress (189) at that time. It corresponds to the English past tense. Example: laudāvi, I praised.

194. The Pluperfect describes the action as already completed in the past, or puts it at a time before another past point of time. See 189. Example: laudāveram, I had praised.

a. The pluperfect of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to imperfects. Examples: vēneram, I had come, i.e., I was there; nōveram, I knew; cōnsuēveram, I was accustomed.

195. The Future Perfect represents the action as completed in future time, or as to take place before some future point of time. See 199. Example: laudāverō, I shall or will have praised.

a. The future perfects of the verbs mentioned in 193, I, a, are nearly equivalent to futures. Examples: vēnerō, I shall have come, i.e., I shall be there; nōverō, I shall know; cōnsuēverō, I shall be accustomed.

196. The Active Periphrastic (75) Tenses represent the action as about to take place in a time future to the time of the tense of sum. Examples: laudātūrus est, he is about to praise; laudātūrus erat, he was about to praise; laudātūrus erit, he will be about to praise.

INDICATIVE TENSES IN NARRATION

197. In telling of past events the indicative tenses used are the historical perfect (or the equivalent historical present), the imperfect, the pluperfect, and occasionally the imperfect periphrastic. The perfect is the narrating tense in which the successive main events of the story are told. The other tenses are the descriptive tenses in which the details which surround the main events are told. See 189.

For example, suppose one wished to begin a story with the following points. "The Helvetii lived in a small country; they planned to leave; Caesar went to Gaul." Told in that way all the verbs would be perfects; but the story is badly told. One would certainly pick out some chief event or events and group the others about them; and whatever events he so picked out would be expressed by the perfect, while the rest would be imperfect and pluperfect. He might begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived . . . . . . , planned . . . . . . . But Caesar went . . . . . . ." Then planned and went are perfects, each being
thought of as a separate step in the story; but *lived* is thought of as subordinate detail, telling something that was going on at the time of the main event, *planned*, and must be imperfect in Latin, though English uses the simple past tense. Or he might prefer to begin in this way, "The Helvetii, who lived.........., had planned........ But Caesar went." Then *went* is thought of as the first main event, and is the only perfect; *lived* is still imperfect; but *had planned* is thought of as a subordinate detail, giving something which had happened before the *went* and which led up to it, and is, therefore, a pluperfect.

198. The chief events, thus expressed by perfects, are usually made the principal, or independent clauses; and the subordinate details, thus expressed in imperfets and pluperfects, are usually made the subordinate, or dependent clauses. Therefore the following principle is a good one to follow unless there appears a clear reason for violating it:

**RULE:** *In a narrative of past events the independent clauses generally use the perfect, the dependent clauses generally use the imperfect and pluperfect.*

a. But there are dependent indicative clauses in which this principle does not hold. The following are the most important.

1. After *postquam, ubi, etc.* (see 237), the perfect or historical present is regularly used. See also 235, a, and 236, a.

2. After *dum, while* (see 234, a) the present is regularly used.

**THE FUTURE AND FUTURE PERFECT**

199. Latin is very accurate in the use of the future and future perfect, while English is very inaccurate. In many subordinate clauses English uses the present for the future or the future perfect, while Latin uses the tenses required by the meanings. For an example see 256.

**THE TENSES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE**

200. The tenses of the subjunctive have two sets of meanings.

a. When the subjunctive has the same meaning as the indicative (184, c), the tenses of the subjunctive mean the same as the corresponding indicative tenses.
b. When the subjunctive has one of its other meanings (184, a, b), the time denoted by the tenses is future to that denoted by the corresponding indicative tenses. Examples: laudet, let him praise, is a command to praise in the future; imperāvit ut laudaret, he commanded that he praise, is a past command, to be carried into effect after the time of commanding.

201. The following table shows the meanings of the subjunctive tenses.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Interpretation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>present or future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperfect</td>
<td>imperfect or future to a past</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect</td>
<td>perfect or future perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>pluperfect or future perfect to a past</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Some tenses have developed special meanings in certain constructions. See 221, 226, 254.

b. Any tense of the subjunctive may thus refer to the future. But where the meaning would be doubtful and it is necessary to express the future clearly, the periphrastic tenses are used. So rogō quid faciäs regularly means I ask what you are doing, and would not be understood to mean I ask what you will do. Therefore the latter meaning must be expressed by rogō quid factūrus sis.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE TENSES IN DEPENDENCE

202. When a subjunctive clause depends on some other clause, a little knowledge of the real meaning of the English will enable one to use the right tense, just as in the indicative. When the tenses mean the same as those of the indicative they will be used in the same way (197, 198). When they have the future set of meanings, it will be found that a present or perfect is usually required after a tense of present or future meaning, and the imperfect and pluperfect after one of past meaning. For example: I come, or I shall come, that I may praise, laudem; I came that I might praise, laudārem. In the subjunctive the usage is more regular than in the indicative, so that the convenient but not very accurate rule, called the rule of sequence of tenses, can be followed.

**RULE:** In dependent subjunctive clauses principal tenses follow principal, and historical follow historical.
203. Principal tenses are those which have to do with the present and future, historical are those which have to do with the past. The following table of examples shows which are the principal and which the historical tenses of both indicative and subjunctive.

### Principal Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDICATIVE</th>
<th>SUBJUNCTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogō,</td>
<td>quid faciat,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I ask</td>
<td>what he is doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogābō,</td>
<td>quid fēcerit,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall ask</td>
<td>what he has done (or did)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present perfect</td>
<td>rogāvi,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I have asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future perfect</td>
<td>rogāverō,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall have asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Historical Tenses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Imperfect</th>
<th>Imperfect</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>rogābam,</td>
<td>quid faceret,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I was asking</td>
<td>what he was doing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Historical perf.</td>
<td>rogāvi,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I asked</td>
<td>pluperfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pluperfect</td>
<td>quid fēcisset,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>rogāveram,</td>
<td>what he had done</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I had asked</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. Notice that the perfect subjunctive, even when it means past time, is called a principal tense.

204. Exceptions to Rule of Sequence. Two special points must be mentioned, not hard to understand if one remembers that this rule tells only how the natural meanings of the tenses make them depend on each other.

a. An exception may occur whenever the meaning of the sentence makes it natural. Still, Latin is not fond of these exceptions, and if exceptional tenses must be used it is better to use an indicative construction instead of a subjunctive, when there is a choice. For example, if the sentence, he marched around because the mountains are high, is to be put into Latin, cum sint would be an exception to sequence and it is better to use the indicative construction quod sunt.

The most common exceptions are in result clauses, where a perfect subjunctive sometimes follows a perfect indicative. Example: temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, ut tempus dēfuerit (II, 21, 9), so short was the time that there was no opportunity.
b. A subjunctive following an historical present may be either principal or historical, for it may either keep up the liveliness of the present or behave as if the perfect had been used. Examples: diem dicunt quâ die conveniant (I, 6, 14), they appoint a day on which they are to assemble; omne frumentum comburunt ut paratiôres ad pericula sub-eunda essent (I, 5, 5), they burned all the grain that they might be more ready to undergo danger.

TENSES OF INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES

205. RULE: The time denoted by infinitives and participles is relative to the tenses of the verbs on which they depend.

That is, a present infinitive or participle expresses action as going on at the time of the main verb, whether that is present, future, or past; a future expresses action as future to the time of the main verb; and a perfect expresses action as completed at the time of the main verb. The following table gives examples of the infinitive. The tense meanings of the participles are the same.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dicó eum</th>
<th>laudâre</th>
<th>laudâtûrum esse</th>
<th>laudâvisse</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lit. him</td>
<td>to be praising</td>
<td>to be about to praise</td>
<td>to have praised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I say that he is praising</td>
<td>will praise</td>
<td>has praised, or praised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dicit eum,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall say that he is praising</td>
<td>will praise</td>
<td>has praised, or praised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dixi eum,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I said that he was praising</td>
<td>would praise</td>
<td>had praised</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a. With such perfects as débui, licuit, oportuit, potuï, Latin correctly uses the present infinitive, though English illogically says ought to have, etc. Example: laudâre potuï lit. I was able to praise, = I could have praised.

b. Some verbs lack the supine stem and therefore have no future active infinitive. The future passive infinitive which is given in the paradigms is rarely used. In both cases the place of the future infinitive is taken by fore (futûrum esse) ut, it will (would) be that, with the present or imperfect subjunctive. Examples: dicit fore ut timeat, lit. he says that it will be that he fears, = he says that he will fear; dixit fore ut laudârëturus, lit. he said that it would be that he was praised, = he said that he would be praised.
APPENDIX

STATEMENTS

206. The Indicative is used to state facts. Examples: Caesar vēnit, Caesar came; Caesar nōn veniet, Caesar will not come.

207. The Subjunctive of Contingent Futurity (184, b) is used to state what would take place under some condition. The condition is usually, but not always, expressed. This kind of statement is the conclusion of the conditional sentences in 254 and 257. For the peculiar use of tenses see those paragraphs. In many grammars this use of the subjunctive is called potential. Examples: Caesar veniat, Caesar would come; Caesar nōn vēnisset, Caesar would not have come; velim, I should like.

208. The Potential Subjunctive (184, b) is sometimes used to state what may or can happen. It is very rarely used except where a negative is expressed or implied and in the phrase aliquis dicit, some one may say. In an independent sentence the student should always express may, might, can, could, by such words as possum and licet. Example: nēmō dubitet, but usually nēmō dubitāre potest, no one can doubt.

QUESTIONS

USE OF MODES

209. The indicative, the subjunctive of contingent futurity, and, rarely, the potential subjunctive, are used in questions with precisely the same meanings as in statements (206-208). Examples: quis veniet? who will come? quis veniat? who would come? quis dubitet? who can doubt (implying that no one can)?

210. A Deliberative Question is one that asks for an expression of some one's will. The answer, if any, is a command. This kind of question is asked by the subjunctive. Example: quid faciam? what shall I do? what am I to do?

a. Under deliberative questions are usually classed those subjunctive questions which ask why one should do something or what one should do. Example: cūr dubitem? why should I doubt?

211. A rhetorical question is one which is used for rhetorical effect and which expects no answer. Any of the above questions may be either rhetorical or real. The rhetorical character of the question has no effect on the mode.
INTRODUCTORY WORDS

212. Questions which can not be answered by yes or no are introduced in Latin, as in English, by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb. Examples: quis vēnit? who came? quālis est? what sort of man is he? ubi est? where is he?

213. RULE: Questions which can be answered by yes or no are usually, but not always, introduced by an interrogative particle.

In written English the interrogation point and usually the order of words show that a sentence is a question. The Romans had no interrogation point, and the order of words was free, so that an introductory particle was usually necessary.

a. RULE: When the question asks for information, without suggesting the answer, the enclitic -ne is added to the first word.

The first word is regularly the verb, unless some other word is put first for emphasis. Examples: scribitne epistulam? is he writing a letter? epistulamne scribit? is it a letter that he is writing?

b. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer yes, the interrogative particle is nōnne.

Example: nōnne epistulam scribit? is he not writing a letter?

c. RULE: When the form of the question suggests the answer no, the interrogative particle is num.

Example: num epistulam scribit? he is not writing a letter, is he?

DOUBLE QUESTIONS

214. Double questions ask which of two or more possibilities is true. Utrum may stand at the beginning not to be translated, but as a mere warning that a double question is to follow; or -ne may be added to the first word; or no introductory word may be used, as always in English. The or is expressed by an; or not is annōn. Examples: utrum pugnāvit an fūgit? pugnāvit an fugit? did he fight or run away? pugnāvit annōn? did he fight or not?

ANSWERS

215. Latin has no words answering exactly to yes and no. It often replies by repeating the verb as a statement; or it may use ita, sānē, etc., for yes, nōn, minimē, etc., for no. Example: epistulamne scribit? scribit, yes; nōn scribit, no.
COMMANDS AND PROHIBITIONS

216. These are expressions of will, for which the appropriate modes are the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and the imperative (185). The negative with the subjunctive is nē (188, b).

217. RULE: An Exhortation is a command or prohibition in the first person plural of the present subjunctive.

Examples: laudēmus, let us praise; nē eāmus, let us not go.

218. RULE: A Command in the second person is expressed by the imperative.

The future imperative is seldom used unless the verb used has no present. Examples: venīte, come (ye); mementō, remember.

219. RULE: A Prohibition (Negative Command) in the second person is usually expressed by nōli, nōlite, be unwilling, and the present infinitive.

A prohibition is less often expressed by cavē (with or without nē), take care, and the present subjunctive; or by nē and the perfect subjunctive. Examples: nōli dubitāre, do not doubt; less often cavē (nē) dubitēs, or nē dubitāveris.

220. RULE: A Command or Prohibition in the third person is regularly expressed by the third person of the present subjunctive.

Examples: eat, let him go; nē veniant, let them not come.

WISHES

221. Wishes are regularly expressed by the subjunctive of desire (184, a) and are usually introduced by utinam (not to be translated).

a. RULE: A wish for something in the future is expressed by the present subjunctive, with or without utinam.

Example: (utinam) adsit, may he be here!

b. RULE: A wish for something at the present time is expressed by the imperfect subjunctive with utinam.

c. RULE: A wish for something in the past is expressed by the pluperfect subjunctive with utinam.

Both of these express a wish, or rather a regret, for something unattainable. Examples: utinam adesset, would that he were here! utinam affuisset, would that he had been here!
COORDINATE CLAUSES

222. A coordinate clause is connected with another clause by means of a coordinating conjunction. The coordinating conjunctions are such as mean and, but, or, for, and the like. They are used exactly as in English.

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

223. Dependent clauses are those which are attached to other clauses by a relative or interrogative pronoun or adverb, or by a subordinating conjunction. Subordinating conjunctions are such as mean if, because, although, when, after, before, in order that, so that, and the like.

Neither the relatives nor any of the conjunctions have in themselves any effect on the mode of the verb in the dependent clause; but that clause may contain the indicative or the subjunctive with any of its meanings (184, a-c).

Dependent clauses are classified according to their meaning and use in the following groups: purpose clauses (225), result clauses (226), substantive clauses of desire (substantive purpose) (228), substantive clauses of result or fact (229), relative clauses of characteristic (230), determining relative clauses (231), parenthetical relative clauses (232), temporal clauses (233-242), causal clauses (243-245), adversative (conjunctive) clauses (246, 247), substantive quod clauses (248), conditional clauses (249-259), clauses of proviso (260), clauses of comparison (261), indirect questions (262-264), indirect discourse (265-273), attracted clauses (274), infinitive clauses (277-280).

PURPOSE AND RESULT CLAUSES

224. The subjunctive of desire (184, a) is used in purpose clauses, the subjunctive of fact (184, c) in result clauses. This explains the difference in negatives (188), and on the other hand the presence of a negative determines the kind of clause. In the ut clauses, or when an English clause is to be translated into Latin, the only test is the meaning: if any feeling of will or intention is implied, the clause is one of purpose; otherwise, of result.

PURPOSE CLAUSES

225. RULE: Purpose may be expressed by the subjunctive with ut, ne; quod, or a relative.
The infinitive, common in English, is never to be used. For the so-called substantive clause of purpose, see 228. The connecting words are used as follows:

a. In affirmative clauses:

1. If the principal clause contains a noun which can conveniently be used as an antecedent, a relative pronoun or adverb is commonly used. Example: homines misit qui vidērent, he sent men to see, lit. who were to see.

2. If the purpose clause contains an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree, quō is used. Example: vēnit quō facilius vidēret, he came that he might see more easily, lit. by which the more easily he might see.

3. Otherwise, and most commonly, the conjunction ut is used. Example: vēnit ut vidēret, he came to see, that he might see, or in order to see; venit ut videat, he comes to see.

b. In negative clauses the conjunction nē is always used. Example: hoc fēcit nē quis (not ut nēmō) vidēret, he did this that no one might see, or to keep anyone from seeing.

RESULT CLAUSES

226. RULE: Result is expressed by the subjunctive with ut or ut nōn.

For the so-called relative clause of result see 230, a. For the substantive clause of result see 229. Examples: mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent (I, 6, 4), a mountain overhung, so that a very few could easily check; incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut iūdicāri nōn possit (I, 12, 2), of extraordinary sluggishness, so that it can not be determined; tam fortis est ut pugnet, he is so brave that he would fight, or as to fight, or that he fights.

SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE) AND OF RESULT

227. These clauses differ from clauses of purpose and result in that they are used like nouns, either as the object of a transitive verb, or as the subject of the passive, or in apposition with a noun or neuter pronoun.

They are also called complementary clauses, because they serve to complement (complete) the meaning of such expressions as I command, I hinder, the result is.
There is the same difference between substantive clauses of desire (purpose) and substantive clauses of result as between purpose clauses and result clauses, and they are to be distinguished in the same way (224).

**SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES OF DESIRE (PURPOSE)**

228. These clauses all consist of the subjunctive of desire (184, a) introduced by a conjunction. As the subjunctive of desire is divided into the volitive (expressing will) and the optative (expressing wish), some grammars divide these clauses into substantive volitive clauses and substantive optative clauses. The older name, substantive purpose clauses, is not good, because they do not really express purpose. For example: imperō ut eás, I command you to go, does not mean I command in order that you may go, but rather I give the command “go”.

a. **RULE:** Most verbs expressing any form of desire, or of attempt to carry out a desire, may take the subjunctive with ut or nē.

Such are verbs meaning accomplish (when the subject is a conscious agent), command, permit, persuade, request, resolve, strive, urge, wish, and the like.

But after most of these verbs the infinitive may be used instead, and it always is used after iubeō, command, cōnor, attempt, petior, sīnō, permit. See 280, a. Ut is often omitted after verbs of asking, commanding, and wishing, especially after volō. The subjunctive, usually without ut, is often used with oportet, it is right, and licet, it is permitted; but see 276. Examples: cīvitātī persuāsit ut exirent (I, 2, 3), he persuaded the citizens to leave; cīvitātī persuāsīt nē exirent, he persuaded the citizens not to leave; oportet eāt, he ought to go; eī licet eāt, he may go; obsidēs utī dent perficīt (I, 9, 11), he causes them to give hostages.

b. **RULE:** Verbs expressing fear take the subjunctive with nē meaning that, or ut meaning that not.

But nē nōn, that not, is often used instead of ut. Examples: timeō nē veniat, I fear that he will come (originally timeō: nē veniat, I am afraid: let him, or may he, not come); timeō ut (or nē nōn) veniat, I fear that he will not come (originally timeō: veniat, I am afraid: let him or may he, come; ut or nē nōn was then used as the opposite of nē).

c. **RULE:** Verbs meaning avoid, hinder, prevent, and refuse may take the subjunctive with nē, quīn, or quōminus.
But the infinitive may be used instead. Ne is used after an affirmative principal clause, quin after a negative, quominus after either positive or negative. Examples: eum impediô ne, or quominus, veniat, I hinder him from coming; eum non impediô quin, or quominus, veniat, I do not hinder him from coming; neque recusâturôs quominus esset (I, 31, 24), and that they would not refuse to be.

SUBSTANTIVE UT CLAUSES OF RESULT OR FACT

229. These clauses are all usually called substantive result clauses, but most of them are better called ut clauses of fact, since they do not express result. They usually contain the subjunctive of fact (184, c) and are to be translated by the indicative.

a. RULE: Verbs meaning accomplish take the subjunctive with ut or ut non when the subject is not a conscious agent.

Compare 228, a. Example: montes efficiunt ut non exire possint, the mountains make (that they can not) it impossible for them to leave.

b. RULE: Impersonal verbs meaning the result is, it happens, it remains, there is added, and the like, may take the subjunctive with ut or ut non.

The clause is the subject of the verb. But with some of these verbs an indicative quod clause of fact may be used with the same meaning. See 248. Example: his rebus fiëbat ut vagarentur (I, 2, 11), the result was that they wandered.

c. RULE: Such phrases as mös est, cōnsue tôdó est (it is the custom), may take the subjunctive with ut or ut non.

The clause is a predicate nominative. But a substantive clause of desire (with ut or ne) may be used with such phrases, especially with iüs est, lêx est. Example: mös est ut ex equis pugnent, it is their custom to fight on horseback.

d. RULE: Negatived verbs and phrases meaning doubt take the subjunctive with quin.

After an affirmative expression of doubting an indirect question with num, an, or si is used, as whether is in English. Dubitô with the infinitive means hesitate. Example: non est dubium quin hoc fêcerit, there is no doubt that he did this.
RELATIVE CLAUSES OF CHARACTERISTIC

230. **GENERAL RULE:** The subjunctive is used in certain kinds of relative clauses which describe an indefinite antecedent.

The subjunctive is not used in all relative clauses which describe an antecedent. If the antecedent is definite, the clause is parenthetical (232). If the clause is used chiefly to tell who or what the antecedent is, it is a determining clause (231). If the clause can be turned into a condition without changing the meaning of the sentence, it is a conditional clause (250). Clauses of characteristic are of the following kinds.

a. **RULE:** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which are equivalent in meaning to ut clauses of result.

These clauses complete the meaning of an expressed or implied antecedent like is = (such) a man (171, a), eius modi, such, or an adjective modified by tam. Certain grammars call some of these clauses relative result clauses. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: is est qui pugnet, he is a man who fights; secutae sunt tempestatès quae nostrès in castrès continèrent (IV, 34, 8), storms followed which kept our men in camp (= such storms ... ... ... that they kept); tam improbus qui nòn fateâtur (Cic. Cat. I, 5), so villainous as not to admit.

b. **RULE:** The subjunctive is used in relative clauses which complete statements and questions of existence and non-existence.

So after est qui, there is a man who; nòn or nèmò or nûllus est qui, there is no one who; quis est qui? who is there who? sòlus or õnus est qui he is the only man who; etc. Usually the subjunctive is to be translated as if it were indicative.

Examples: nûllî sunt qui putent, there are none who think; erant omnînò itinera duo quibus exîre possent (I, 6, 1), there were only two ways by which they could leave.

c. In some relative clauses of characteristic the subjunctive is to be translated by can, could, or by should, ought. Examples: õnum (iter) vîx quâ singulîs càrrî dûcerentur (I, 6, 4), one road by which wagons could be moved; neque commissum intellegeret quàrè timèret (I, 14, 6), he did not know that anything had been done on account of which he should be afraid.
DETERMINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

231. **RULE:** Relative clauses which are used for the purpose of telling what person or thing is meant by an indefinite antecedent, employ the indicative.

Example: *ad eam partem Ōceanī* quae est ad Hispāniam (I, 1, 21), to that part of the ocean which is near Spain.

PARENTHETICAL RELATIVE CLAUSES

232. **RULE:** A relative clause for which a parenthetical statement may be substituted usually employs the indicative.

The antecedent of a parenthetical clause must always be definite, so that the relative clause may be entirely removed without destroying the meaning of the rest of the sentence. When the antecedent is indefinite the clause is either characterizing (230), determining (231), or conditional (250). Example: *Dumnorīgī, quī prīncipātum obtinēbat,* persuādet (I, 3, 14), he persuaded Dumnorix, who held the chief power; the same meaning could be expressed by *Dumnorīgī* (is prīncipātum obtinēbat) persuādet.

TEMPORAL CLAUSES

233. There are many conjunctions denoting time relations. The most common is *cum* which must be treated by itself, but the others may be classified according to their meanings.

*While, as long as*

234. Conjunctions with these meanings show that one act was going on at the same time as another. *Cum* with the imperfect subjunctive does the same.

a. **RULE:** Dum meaning while (i.e., at some time during the time that) is used with the present indicative, even in speaking of past time.

See 198, a, 2. Example: *dum haec geruntur, Caesārī nūntiātum* est (I, 46, 1), while these things were going on, it was reported to Caesar.

b. **RULE:** Dum, dōnec, quoad, and quam diū, as long as, while (i.e., during the entire time that) are used with the indicative, which is usually in the same tense as the main verb.

Example: *quoad potuit, restitit* (IV, 12, 16), he resisted as long as he could.
235. Conjunctions meaning *until* show that the action of the principal clause lasted up to that of the subordinate clause. Sometimes the actor in the principal clause foresees the second act and intends to bring it about, or prepares for it, and sometimes he does not. This is the basis for the distinction in the use of modes.

   a. **RULE:** Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning *until* are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen. The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: Gallī fuērunt liberi dum Caesar vēnit, the Gauls were free until Caesar came.

   b. **RULE:** Dum, dōnec, and quoad meaning *until* are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen. Examples: Gallī exspectāvērunt dum Caesar veniret, the Gauls waited until Caesar should come, or for Caesar to come, or until Caesar came.

236. Conjunctions meaning *before* also represent the action of the subordinate clause as subsequent to that of the principal clause, and the principle on which the choice of modes is based is the same as that given in 235.

   a. **RULE:** Priusquam and antequam are used with the indicative when the subordinate act is not represented as foreseen. The perfect is regularly used for past time. Example: Gallī inter sē pugnāvērunt priusquam Caesar vēnit, the Gauls fought with one another before Caesar came.

   b. **RULE:** Priusquam and antequam are used with the subjunctive when the subordinate act is represented as foreseen. Example: Gallī magnās cōpiās comparāre cōnātī sunt priusquam Caesar veniret, the Gauls tried to prepare large forces before Caesar should arrive, or arrived, or in view of Caesar's arrival.

   c. These conjunctions are often written as two words, the prius or ante standing in the principal clause, and the quam at the beginning of the subordinate clause. Translate as if the complete word stood where quam does. Example: Gallī prius inter sē pugnāvērunt quam Caesar vēnit, translated as in a.
After

237. **RULE:** Postquam, *after*, *ut*, *ubi*, *when* (*after*, *not while*), *simulac*, *cum primum*, *as soon as* (*immediately after*), are used with the indicative, generally *the perfect* or *the historical present*.

Example: *ubi certiores facti sunt, legatos mittunt* (I, 7, 6), *when they were informed of it they sent envoys*.

Cum

238. **Cum** has three chief uses:—

- temporal, *when*, *after*;
- causal, *since*, *because*;
- adversative (concessive), *although*.

It is in reality an undeclined relative, whose antecedent is something like *at the time* or *at a time*, sometimes expressed, more often only implied. The use of modes with *cum* is much the same as with the declined relative (230-232, 245, 247, 250).

239. **Causal and Adversative Cum.**

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *since* or *although* is used with all tenses of the subjunctive.

Compare the causal relative (245) and the adversative relative (247). Examples: *quae cum ita sint, perge* (Cic. Cat. I, 10), *since this is so, go on*; *his cum persuadere non possent, legatos mittunt* (I, 9, 2), *since they could not persuade them, they sent envoys*; *cum ad vesperum pugnatum sit* (I, 26, 4), *although they fought till evening*.

240. **Temporal Cum.** Inaccurate but convenient rules are:—

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is always used with the indicative when the principal verb is present or future.

**RULE:** *Cum* meaning *when* is generally followed by the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive when the principal verb is past.

See examples under 241 and 242, which give more accurate rules for the same clauses.

241. **Temporal Cum with the Indicative.**

* a. **Clauses of Date.**
**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the clause merely dates the action of the principal clause.*

These clauses are in reality determining clauses (231), and are especially common when an antecedent like *cum* or *eō tempore* is expressed in the principal clause. But a subjunctive is often found where an indicative might be expected. Examples: *tum cum ex urbe Catilina eiciēbam* (Cic. Cat. III, 3), *at the time when I was trying to drive Catiline from the city*; *cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, principēs erant Haeduī* (VI, 12, 1), *at the time when Caesar came to Gaul the Haeduī were the leaders*.

**b. Clauses of Repeated Action.**

**RULE:** *Cum meaning whenever is usually followed by the indicative.*

These clauses correspond exactly to conditional relative clauses (150). It is necessary only that *whenever* be a possible translation of *cum*; *when* is usually a better translation. For the occasional subjunctive in such clauses see 242, b.

Example: *haec cum dēfixerat, contrāria duo statuēbat* (IV, 17, 10), *when he had set them firmly (in each of several cases) he put two others opposite.*

**c. Inverted Cum Clauses.**

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is followed by the indicative when the principal action is stated in the cum clause.*

In the most common type of cum clauses (242, a) the principal action is stated in the principal clause, and the cum clause describes the situation under which it happened. In the inverted clause this relation is reversed.

Example: *vix agmen prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī (sunt) inter sē (VI, 8, 1), hardly had the line advanced, when the Gauls encouraged one another (for cum...... prōcessisset,...... cohortātī sunt, when the line had advanced the Gauls encouraged, etc.).*

242. Temporal Cum with the Subjunctive.

**a. Situation and Narrative Clauses.**

**RULE:** *Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause describes the situation under which the principal action took place.*
RULE: Cum meaning when is followed by the subjunctive when the clause states a new point in the story. (Unless the clause is inverted, 241, e.)

These rules are given together because most subjunctive clauses are both situation and narrative clauses. Sometimes, however, one rule seems to apply better than the other. The situation clause corresponds to the relative clause of characteristic (230). Examples: cum esset Caesar in citeriore Galliā, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur (II, 1, 1), when Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul, frequent rumors came to him (mainly situation, for the fact that Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul has been stated before, so that it is no new point in the story); cum civitās iūs suum exsequī cōnārētūr, Orgetorix mortuus est (I, 4, 2), while the state was trying to enforce its laws, Orgetorix died (both situation and narrative, for the fact that the state tried to enforce its laws is told only in this cum clause).

b. Clauses of Repeated Action.

RULE: Cum meaning whenever is sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

Compare 241, b. Example: cum ferrum sē inflexisset, neque έvelle-re poterant (I, 25, 7), when the iron had bent (in each of many cases), they could neither draw it out, etc.

CAUSAL CLAUSES

243. Dependent causal clauses are introduced by the conjunctions cum, quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, or by the relative. The conjunctions nam, enim, etenim, for, introduce coordinate clauses.

244. RULE: Quod, quia, quoniam, and quandō, because, since, are used with the indicative unless the reason is quoted.

When the writer wishes to imply because (as he said), (as he thought), (as I said), (as I thought), the subjunctive is used. See 273. Examples: (with the indicative) reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, quod contendunt (I, 1, 11), they surpass the other Gauls because they fight; (with the subjunctive) quod sit dēstitutus queritur (I, 16, 18), he complained because (as he said) he had been deserted.

245. RULE: Cum, since, because, and often qui, since he, etc., are used with the subjunctive.
But the indicative is often used with qui, where the causal idea is perfectly clear. If præsertim, especially, stands in a subjunctive qui or cum clause, the clause is probably causal. Examples: (with the subjunctive) illi autem, qui omnia præclara sentirent, negotium suscepérunt (Cic. Cat. III, 5), and they, since they had none but patriotic thoughts, undertook the matter; (with the indicative) fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui adaequarunt (V, 8, 12), the energy of the soldiers deserved praise, who (= since they) kept up with, etc. For example with cum, see 239.

ADVERSATIVE (CONCESSIVE) CLAUSES

246. RULE: Quamquam, although, and etsi, tametsi, even if, although, are used with the indicative.

Example: etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverant, tamen suspicabatur (IV, 31, 1), although he did not yet know their plans, nevertheless he suspected. But quamquam sometimes introduces an independent sentence, and is then best translated by and yet.

247. RULE: Cum, although, and less commonly quamvis (in Cicero), however much, however, although, qui, although he, etc., ut, although, are used with the subjunctive.

Examples: (for cum see 239) quamvis senex sit, fortis est, however old he may be, he is brave; ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent (Caes. III, 9, 17), though everything should turn out contrary to their expectations. But the indicative is sometimes used with qui when the adversative idea is clear.

SUBSTANTIVE QUOD CLAUSES

248. RULE: Substantive clauses with quod, that, employ the indicative.

This clause is most commonly used as the appositive of a neuter pronoun. Example: illa praetereō, quod Maelium occidit (Cic. Cat. I, 3), I pass over this, that he slew Maelius.

a. Sometimes the quod clause, standing at the beginning of its sentence, is used in the sense of as to the fact that, whereas. Example: quod ãnum págum adortus es, nóllo ob eam rem despicere (compare I, 13, 12), as to your having attacked one canton, do not despise us on that account.
CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

249. A conditional sentence has two essential clauses, a condition and a conclusion. The condition is the dependent clause, and is so called because it states the condition on which the truth of the principal clause depends; the conclusion is the principal clause. Example: if he comes (condition) I shall see him (conclusion).

CONNECTIVES IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

250. The connectives are the conjunctions si, if, si non, if not, nisi, if not or unless, sin, but if, and relative pronouns and adverbs used in a conditional sense.

Whenever a relative has for its antecedent, either expressed or implied, a word like anyone, everyone, always, everywhere (any word that includes all of a class of objects), it is a conditional relative, and the clause is a condition. For example, anyone who thinks will see, means if anyone thinks he will see; whenever I saw him he used to say, means if at any time I saw him he used to say. Compare this use of the relative with those given in 230-232.

CLASSES OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

251. There are four classes of conditional sentences, two for those dealing with present or past time, two for those dealing with future time:

a. Undetermined Present or Past (253). si pugnat, vincit, if he fights he conquers; si pugnâvit, vîcit, if he fought he conquered.

b. Present or Past Contrary to Fact (254). si pugnâret, vînceret, if he were fighting he would be conquering; si pugnâvisset, vicisset, if he had fought he would have conquered.

c. More Vivid (Confident) Future (256). si pugnâbit, vincet, if he fights (shall fight) he will conquer.

d. Less Vivid (Confident) Future (257). si pugnet, vincat, if he should fight he would conquer.

A. Present or Past

252. In present or past time a conditional sentence may either express no opinion as the truth or falsity of a statement, simply saying
that one thing is true if another is; or it may imply that a condition is not fulfilled, and that in consequence the conclusion is not fulfilled. There is no form of condition which affirms the truth of a statement. The speaker or hearer may know it to be true, but the sentence does not say so.

253. Undetermined Present or Past. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form affirms nothing as to its fulfillment employs the present or past tenses of the indicative.

Examples: si fortis est eum laudō, if he is brave I praise him; qui fortis est prō patriā pugnat, whoever is brave fights for his country; nisi prō patriā pugnāvit non fortis fuit, unless he fought for his country he was not brave.

254. Present or Past Contrary to Fact. RULE: A present or past conditional sentence whose form implies that the condition is not or was not fulfilled employs the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express present time, the pluperfect to express past time. Examples: si fortis esset eum laudārem, if he were brave I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he is not, and I do not); nisi prō patriā pugnāvisset eum nōn laudāvissem, unless he had (if he had not) fought for his country I should not have praised him (implying but he did, and I do; the contrary of the negative supposition); si pugnāvisset eum laudārem, if he had fought I should praise, or be praising, him (implying but he did not, and I do not; notice the change of tense).

a. When the conclusion of such conditions contains a verb meaning could or ought, or such expressions as if would be hard, or just, the verb of the conclusion is usually in the indicative, the imperfect for present time, the perfect or pluperfect for past time. The condition requires the subjunctive, like any other condition contrary to fact.

This is because the conclusion is not usually really contrary to fact, though the English idiom makes it seem so. When the conclusion is really contrary to fact, the subjunctive is used. Examples: si fortis esset pugnāre poterat, if he were brave he could fight (he has the power in any case; hence the indicative); si fortis fuisset pugnāre débuit or débuerat, if he had been brave he ought to have fought (the duty rested upon him in any case; hence the indicative).
APPENDIX

B. Future

255. There are two forms of future conditions, one expressing less confidence in the fulfillment of the condition than the other. There is no form to express nonfulfillment, since one can not be sure of the nonfulfillment of a future condition.

256. More Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains shall or will employs the future or future perfect indicative.

The English commonly uses the present with a future meaning in the condition. If I see him I shall tell him, means if I shall see him I shall tell him, and the Latin is precise in using the future. Moreover, if the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can take place, the Latin uses the future perfect, while the English commonly uses the present. If he arrives first he will tell him, means if he shall have arrived first, and the Latin is precise in using the future perfect. Examples: si pugnabit eum laudabó, if he fights or is fighting (shall fight or shall be fighting) I shall praise him; qui pugnaverit laudabitur, whoever fights or has fought (shall have fought) will be praised.

257. Less Vivid (Confident) Future. RULE: A future conditional sentence whose translation contains should or would employs the present or perfect subjunctive.

The difference between the present and perfect is the same as that between the future and future perfect indicative in 256. Examples: si pugnet vincat, if he should fight, or were to fight, he would conquer; qui pugnet laudētur, whoever should fight, or should be fighting, would be praised; si non pugnáverit eum non laudem, if he should not fight, or should not have fought, I should not praise him.

MIXED CONDITIONS

258. In Latin, as in English, the condition and the conclusion are usually of the same form. But sometimes, in both languages, one may wish to use a condition of one form, a conclusion of another. Example: si veniat hic adsumus, if he should come we are here.

CONDITION OMITTED OR IMPLIED

259. Instead of being expressed by a clause as in the examples given above, the condition may be implied in a phrase or even in a single
word. Sometimes it is omitted altogether, but is supplied in thought. Examples: damnatūm poenam sequi oportēbat (I, 4, 3), (if) condemned, it was necessary that punishment be inflicted on him; dicat, he would say (if he should be asked); velim, I should like. The last two are simply the independent subjunctive of contingent futurity (207).

CLAUSES OF PROVISO

260. RULE: Dum, modo, and dummodo in the sense of if only, provided that, are used with the subjunctive.

Notice that although these seem like conditions the construction is not the same, for the subjunctive is always used, and the negative is often nē. This is because the construction originally meant only let (him come: I will, etc), and the mode is the subjunctive of desire (184, a). Examples: magnō nē metē liberābis dummodo mūrus intersit (Cic. Cat. I, 10), you will rid me of much fear if only there be (only let there be) a wall between us; modo nē (or nōn) discēdat eum vidēō, if only he do not leave I shall see him.

CLAUSES OF COMPARISON

261. RULE: The subjunctive is used with ac sī, quam sī, quasi ut sī, tamquam, tamquam sī, velut, velut sī, as if, just as if.

The tenses follow the rule of sequence although the English translation might lead one to expect always the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive. Examples: currīt quasi timēret, he runs as if he were afraid; cucurrīt quasi timēret, he ran as if he were afraid.

INDIRECT QUOTATION

A. INDIRECT QUESTIONS

262. GENERAL RULE: The subjunctive is employed in all indirect questions.

An indirect question is a substantive clause introduced by an interrogative word. A direct question may be quoted in the exact words in which it was asked, as he asked "where are you going?"; or it may be quoted indirectly; that is, with such changes as make it a dependent clause, as he asked where I (or he) was going. In the latter form it is an indirect question.

263. RULE: Subjunctive questions (909, 910) retain the subjunctives in the indirect form.
The modal meaning is unchanged. Examples: (direct) quis veniat? who would come? (indirect) rogō quis veniat, I ask who would come; (direct) quid faciam? what am I to do? (indirect) rogāvi quid facerem, I asked what I was to do.

264. RULE: All indicative questions change to the subjunctive in the indirect form.

a. When the direct question is introduced by an interrogative pronoun, adjective, or adverb (212), the same word serves to introduce the indirect form. Examples: (direct) quis vēnit? who came? (indirect) rogō quis vēnerit, I ask who came; (direct) ubi est? where is he? (indirect) mihi dīxit ubi esset, he told me where he was.

b. When the direct question can be answered by yes or no (213) the indirect form is introduced by num or -ne, whether (no difference in meaning). Si is also used in the sense of to see whether or whether, Examples: (direct) venitne? is he coming? (indirect) rogō num veniat, or rogō veniatne, I ask whether he is coming; exspectāvit si venirent, he waited to see whether they would come.

c. Indirect double questions are introduced by the same particles as direct double questions (214), but or not is expressed by necne, instead of annōn. Examples: rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset, an fugisset, I asked whether he had fought or run away; rogāvi utrum pugnāvisset necne, I asked whether he had fought or not.

B. INDIRECT DISCOURSE

265. Direct discourse repeats the exact words of a remark or a thought. Example: he said, "the soldiers are brave." Indirect discourse repeats a remark or thought with such changes in the words as to make of it a dependent construction. Example: he said that the soldiers were brave.

Indirect discourse may quote a long speech consisting of separate sentences, and periods may be used between these sentences; but, none the less, each sentence is to be thought of as depending on a verb of saying or thinking, which may be either expressed or implied at the beginning. When one speaks of a principal clause in indirect discourse one means a clause that was principal in the direct form.
Principal Clauses

266. Declarative Sentences. RULE: Every principal clause containing a statement requires the infinitive with subject accusative in indirect discourse (279).

But the subject is not always expressed. Example: miles est fortis, the soldier is brave, becomes dixit militem esse fortem, he said that the soldier was brave.

a. For the meanings of the infinitive tenses see 205. It follows from the statements there made that the present infinitive must be used for an original present indicative, the future for the future indicative, and the perfect for the imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect indicative.

267. Imperative Sentences. RULE: Every sentence, containing a command or prohibition requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

This is a use of the subjunctive of desire; the negative is nē. Examples: ad Id. Apr. revertimini, return about the thirteenth of April, becomes respondit:....ad Id. Apr. reverterentur (I, 7, 19), he replied:.... (that) they should return, etc.; is ita ēgit:....nē....dēspiceret (I, 13, 14), he should not despise (from an original nōli dēspicere (219), do not despise).

268. Interrogative Sentences. I. RULE: An indicative question (209), if real (211), changes to the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: respondit:....quid sibi vellet (I, 44, 24), what did he want (for an original quid tibi vis, what do you want?)?

II. RULE. An indicative question (209), if rhetorical (211), changes to the infinitive in indirect discourse.

This is because a rhetorical question is equivalent to a declarative sentence, which would require the infinitive (266) Example: respondit:....num memoriam dēpōnere posse (I, 14, 8), could he forget (for an original I can not forget [can I?]?)

III. RULE. A subjunctive question (209, 210), whether real or rhetorical, retains the subjunctive in indirect discourse.

Example: incūsāvit:.....cūr quisquam iūdicāret (I, 40, 6), why should anyone suppose (for an original iūdicet. See 210, a)?
269. Subordinate Clauses. **RULE: Every subordinate indicative or subjunctive clause of the direct form requires the subjunctive in indirect discourse.**

Infinitives remain unchanged. Example: incusavit:...ex quo iūdicārī posse quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod ...superāssent (I, 40, 17), from which it could be seen what an advantage courage had, since they had conquered (for original iūdicārī, potest, habēat, superāvistis).

a. But a coordinate relative clause (173, a), being equivalent to a clause connected by et, or some other coordinating conjunction, sometimes has the infinitive in indirect discourse. See example under 269: since quo connects with the preceding sentence posse might have been a subjunctive.

Tenses of the Subjunctive

270. The tenses of the subjunctive regularly follow the rule of sequence, taking their time from the verb of saying or thinking.

a. **Repraesentātiō.** But after a past verb of saying or thinking the person who quotes very often drops the secondary sequence and uses the tenses of the original speaker, for the sake of vividness. It is best to use past tenses in translating. Example: respondit:...cum ea ita sint ...sēsē pācem esse factūrum (I, 14, 16), he replied...that although these things were so he would make peace.

b. After a perfect infinitive the secondary sequence must be used even if the infinitive depends on a primary verb of saying or thinking; for the perfect infinitive is past, even though it depends on a present. Example: dicit Caesarem laudātum esse quod fortis esset, he says that Caesar was praised because he was brave.

c. In changing from the direct form to a subjunctive of the indirect the following rule is helpful: **keep the stem of the original and follow the sequence.** So for example a present or future indicative becomes present subjunctive after dicit, imperfect after dixit, in either case retaining the present stem; a perfect or future perfect indicative becomes perfect subjunctive after dicit, pluperfect after dixit, in either case retaining the perfect stem.

Other Changes

271. If a pronoun of the first person changes to one of the third person it must be to some form of sui or suus (rarely of ipse). See 165.
All other changes of person or pronouns are the same as in English. Example: hunc militem laudō, I praise this soldier, may become dícō mē hunc militem laudāre, I say that I praise this soldier, or dicit sē illum militem laudāre, he says that he praises that soldier. Adverbs will be changed in the same way, now to then, here to there, etc. Vocatives will become nominatives or disappear.

Conditions in Indirect Discourse

272. I. The condition, since it is the dependent clause, must have its verb in the subjunctive. The tense follows the rule of sequence except that the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive of conditions contrary to fact never change, even after a primary tense.

II. The conclusion, since it is the principal clause, must have its verb in the infinitive. Indicative tenses change to infinitive tenses according to 266, a. The present and perfect subjunctive of less vivid (confident) future conclusions become the future infinitive, in urs esse. The imperfect and pluperfect of conclusions contrary to fact become an infinitive not elsewhere used, in urs fuisse.

Examples are needed for only the conditions contrary to fact, since all others follow the regular rules of sequence and indirect discourse. Sì pugnāret eum laudārem, if he were fighting I should praise him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, sì pugnāret sē eum laudātūrum fuisse; sì pugnāvisset eum laudāvissem, if he had fought I should have praised him, becomes, after either dicit or dixit, sì pugnāvisset sē eum laudātūrum fuisse.

C. IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE

273. RULE: The subjunctive may be used in any subordinate clause to imply that it is a quotation.

This is the reason for the subjunctive in causal clauses with quod, etc. (244) It is also especially common in clauses depending on purpose clauses and substantive clauses of desire (purpose). Examples: Caesar frumentum quod essent pollitici flagitāre (I, 16, 1), Caesar kept demanding the grain which (as he said) they had promised; erat ei praecessum nē proelium committeret nisi ipsius cōpiāe visae essent (I, 23, 8), he had been commanded not to give battle unless Caesar's forces should be seen (Caesar had said nisi meae cōpiāe visae erunt, unless my forces shall be seen).
APPENDIX

SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

274. RULE: Sometimes a verb that would otherwise stand in the indicative is put in the subjunctive only because it depends on another subjunctive or on an infinitive.

Example: cum certissimae réss accéderent, quod Helvétios tráduxisset (I, 19, 1), since the most clearly proven facts were added (namely) that he had led the Helvetii.

THE INFINITIVE

For the tenses of the infinitive see 205.

A. WITHOUT SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

275. RULE: Many verbs which imply another action of the same subject take a present infinitive to complete their meaning.

Such are verbs meaning be able, be accustomed, attempt, begin, cease, dare, determine, ought, wish, and the like. But with some of these verbs a substantive clause of desire (purpose) is often used. See 228, a. Examples: ire potest, he can go; ire potuit, he could have gone, literally he was able to go; ire débet, he ought to go; cónstituérunt comparáre (I, 3, 2), they determined to prepare.

a. As these verbs have no subject accusative, either expressed or understood, a predicate noun or adjective must agree with the nominative subject of the principal verb. Example: fortis esse cónatúr, he tries to be brave.

INFinitive AS Subject

276. The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) without an expressed subject accusative may be used as the subject of the verbs mentioned in 278. With licet, it is permitted, the dative is commonly used instead of a subject accusative. Examples: ire oportet, one must go, literally to go is right; ire oportuit, one ought to have gone (205, a), literally to go was right; et ire licuit, he might have gone, literally to go was permitted to him; ire nécèsse est, one must go.

a. Since a subject accusative is easily supplied in thought with these infinitives, a predicate noun or adjective is regularly in the accu-
APPENDIX

sative. But with licet a predicate is commonly dative. Examples: 
fortem esse oportet, one ought to be brave; virō licet esse fortī (fortem), a 
man may be brave, lit. it is permitted to a man to be brave.

B. WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

277. The infinitive with a subject accusative (123) forms an infini-
tive clause (186).

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS SUBJECT

278. RULE: The present infinitive (rarely the perfect) with subject 
accusative may be used as the subject of such impersonal verbs as decet, libet, 
opportet, placet, praestat, visum est, and of est with a predicate noun or 
adjective.

But with some of these verbs the subjunctive is also used. See 
228, a, and 229, c. As stated in 276, the subject accusative is not al-
ways expressed with these verbs, and with licet the dative is much 
more common. Examples: mē ire oportet, I ought to go; Caesarem ire 
opportuit, Caesar ought to have gone (205, a); mē ire necesse est, I must go.

INFINITIVE CLAUSE AS OBJECT

279. RULE: The infinitive in all its tenses, with subject accusative, 
is used as the object of verbs of knowing, learning, and telling.

This is indirect discourse. For examples see 205 and 266.

a. When these verbs are made passive either the personal construc-
tion or the impersonal is possible; but the personal is the more com-
mon in the uncompounded tenses. Examples: (personal) Caesar 
vēnisse fertur, Caesar is said to have come; (impersonal) Caesarem vē-
nisse dictum est, it has been said that Caesar came.

280. Note the use of the accusative and infinitive with the following 
verbs.

a. Regularly with iubeō, order, vetō, forbid, patior, sinō, permit, 
which might be expected to take the substantive clause of desire (228, 
a). Example: militēs pugnāre iussit, he ordered the soldiers to fight.

b. With volō, nōlō, mālō, cupiō, regularly when the subject of the 
infinite is not the same as that of the principal verb, sometimes when 
it is the same (compare 275). Examples: volō eum ire, I wish him to 
go; cupiō mē esse clementem (Cic. Cat. I, 4), I desire to be merciful.
c. Regularly the accusative and future infinitive with verbs of hoping and promising. But posse may be used instead of a future infinitive, after verbs of hoping, because possum implies futurity. Examples: id sese effecturos sperabant (VII, 26, 4), lit. they hoped that they could accomplish this; sese potiri posse sperant (I, 3, 22), they hoped that they could get possession.

C. WITH SUBJECT NOMINATIVE

281. Historical Infinitive. RULE: The infinitive is sometimes used with a nominative subject, as an equivalent for an independent past indicative.

Example: cotidie Caesar frumentum flagitare (I, 16, 1), Caesar daily demanded the grain.

PARTICIPLES

282. Participles are verbal adjectives and are used either attributively or predicatively (157). Like other adjectives they may be used substantively (158). They may govern cases just as the finite verb does. For the meanings of their tenses see 205.

283. Participles are often used in Latin where English uses a coordinate or a subordinate clause. Only the meaning of the sentence shows what conjunction to use in translating. Examples: victus fugit may mean he was conquered and fled, when he had been conquered he fled, or because he had been conquered he fled; victus fugiet may be translated by similar clauses, or by if he is conquered he will flee. See also the examples under 150.

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

284. The present active participle corresponds in meaning to the English present participle, but is much less frequently used. There is no present passive participle.

a. Therefore such forms as seeing, usually, and such forms as being seen, always, must be translated into Latin otherwise than by a present participle.

1. Present participles are often used in English where the action is really completed before the action of the verb: Latin then uses the perfect participle. For example, seeing this he fled, means having seen, etc., and may be translated hoc viso (150) fugit, lit. this having been seen.
2. Present participles are very often used in English where Latin uses *dum* with the present indicative (234, a.) or *cum* with the imperfect (or pluperfect) subjunctive (242, a). Examples: *he was killed* (while) *fighting*, sometimes *pugnans occisus est*, usually either *dum pugnat occisus est*, or *cum pugnaret, occisus est*; *seeing this he fled, cum hoc vidisset fugit*.

b. Remember that *he is running* is always *currit*, never *est currēns*.

285. **FUTURE PARTICIPLES**

I. The future active participle is used by Caesar and Cicero only with some form of *sum*, making either the active periphrastic conjugation (75 and 196) or the future active infinitive. Example: praeter quod sēcum portārī erant (I, 5, 5), lit. *except what they were about to take with them,* = *except what they intended,* etc.

II. The future passive participle has the same form as the gerundive (288), but in usage is quite distinct. It has two uses.

a. The future passive participle is used with the verb *sum* to form the passive periphrastic conjugation (76). This denotes duty or necessity; as *laudandus est*, *he is to be praised, he must (ought, deserves to) be praised*. The English form is usually active: remember that the Latin is passive. The agent is regularly dative (118). Intransitive verbs must be used impersonally. Examples: *Caesar est mihi laudandus*, lit. *Caesar must be praised by me,* = *I must praise Caesar; mihi pugnandum fuit* (impersonal), lit. *it had to be fought by me,* = *I had to fight.*

b. The future passive participle is sometimes used, to denote purpose, in agreement with the objects of verbs meaning *to have* (a thing done) or *to undertake* (to do a thing); especially *cūrō, cause, have* (literally *take care), dō, give over, suscipiō, undertake*. Examples: pontem faciendum cūrat (I, 13, 2), *he had a bridge made; cōnsulibus senātus rem pūublicam dēfendendam dedit,* *the senate entrusted the defense of the state to the consuls.*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

286. Latin has a perfect passive participle, corresponding to such English forms as *seen* or *having been seen*, but no perfect active participle (but see a), corresponding to such English forms as *having seen*. The English perfect active participle with a direct object can usually
be translated into Latin by putting the English object in the ablative and using the passive participle in agreement with it (ablative absolute, 150). Examples: visus fūgit, having been seen he fled; Caesare visō fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled; literally, Caesar having been seen he fled. See also 150.

a. But the perfect passive form of deponent verbs usually (not always) has an active meaning, so that with these verbs the change described in 286 is not to be made. Example: Caesarem cŏspicātus fūgit, having seen Caesar he fled.

b. The perfect passive participle is sometimes used in agreement with the object of habeō. The meaning is nearly the same as that of the past active tenses of the simple verb; but the resulting fact is emphasized, rather than the past act. Example: magnās cŏpiās coāctās habet, he has great forces (which he has) collected, or he has collected great forces (and still has them); while magnās cŏpiās coēgit, he (has) collected great forces, leaves it uncertain whether he still has them.

c. Note the translation of such phrases as post urbem conditam, after the founding of the city; literally, after the city founded.

GERUND

287. The gerund is an active verbal noun and corresponds to the English verbal nouns in -ing. It governs the case that is governed by the finite forms of the verb; but see 289, II. Examples: fugīendi cauṣā (99, a), for the sake of fleeing; ad persuādendum ei (115), for persuading him; urbem vidīndi causā, for the sake of seeing the city.

GERUNDIVE

288. The gerundive is a passive verbal adjective, and must agree with its noun in gender, number, and case. For the same form used as a future passive participle, see 285, II.

The gerundive construction is commonly used in place of the gerund with a direct object. In this construction the English direct object takes the Latin case which the gerund would have, and the gerundive agrees with it. There is no exact English equivalent; the translation is the same as for a gerund with a direct object. For example, in the gerund construction urbem vidīndi causā, vidīndi is the genitive modifying causā, and urbem is the direct object of vidīndi. In the gerundive construction urbis videndae causā, urbis is the genitive mod-
ifying causā and videnda says agrees with urbis, literally for the sake of the city to be seen. Both alike must be translated for the sake of seeing the city.

CHOICE OF CONSTRUCTION

289. I. RULE: If the verb is intransitive the gerund must be used.

The gerundive is passive, and intransitive verbs can be used in the passive only impersonally. Example: ei crēendi causā, for the sake of believing him (115).

a. But the gerundive of ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor (145) is used. Example: spēs potiundī oppidi (II, 7, 5), hope of taking the town.

II. RULE: If the verb is used transitively the gerundive construction is more common, and must always be used after a preposition.

A direct object is sometimes used with a gerund in the genitive or the ablative without a preposition. Examples: (always) ad effēminiandōs animōs (I, 1, 8), to weakening the courage; (usually) urbīs videndae causā, for the sake of seeing the city; sometimes urbēm videndi causā, for the sake of seeing the city.

USE OF CASES

290. Neither the gerund nor the gerundive is used as the subject or direct object of verbs.

291. The Genitive is used with nouns and adjectives. With causā and grātiā it forms a common expression of purpose. Examples: bellandī cupidītās, a desire of fighting; Caesāris (or Caesarem) videndi cupidus, desirous of seeing Caesar; belandī causā vēnit, he came to fight (for the sake of fighting).

a. If the substantive is a personal or reflexive pronoun, an irregular construction is used — mei, tu, sui, nostri, or vestri with a genitive in -ī (sometimes called gerund, sometimes gerundive), regardless of gender and number. Example: sui cōnservandi causā, for the sake of saving themselves The usual gerund would be sē cōnservandī; the gerundive sui cōnservandōrum.

292. The Dative is very rare.

293. The Accusative is used with a few prepositions, especially ad expressing purpose. Examples: parātus ad proficiscendum, ready to set
out; ad Caesarem videndum (gerundive, see 289, II), venit, he came to see Caesar.

294. The Ablative is used, with the prepositions ab, dē, ex, in, and as the ablative of means or cause. Examples: in quærendō reperiēbat, in questioning (them) he learned; lapidibus subministrandīs (III, 25, 4), by furnishing stones.

THE SUPINE

295. RULE: The Accusative of the supine is used after verbs of motion to express purpose.

It may govern a direct object. Examples: gratulātum vēnerunt (I, 30, 2), they came to offer congratulations; lēgātōs mittunt rogātum auxiliōm (I, 11, 4), they sent envoys to ask aid.

296. RULE: The Ablative of the supine is used as an ablative of specification (149).

It does not take a direct object. The supine of the verbs audiō, cognōscō, dīcō, faciō, videō, is most commonly found; and with the adjectives facilis, difficilis, crēdibilis, incrēdibilis, iūcundus, iniūcundus, optimus, mīrābilis, and the expressions fās est, nefās est, opus est. Example: perfacile factū (I, 3, 16) lit. very easy as to the doing, = very easy to do.

THE ROMAN CALENDAR

297. The Months. The Latin names of months are adjectives, not nouns as are ours. In the times of Caesar and Cicero the names of the months were Iānūārius (-a, -um), Februārius, Mārtius, Aprīlis (-e), Maius, Iūnius, Quīntīlis, Sextīlis, Septembris (-bris, -bre), Octōber, Novembris, and Decembris. Later Quintilis was changed to Iūlius, in honor of Julius Caesar, and Sextilis to Augustus, in honor of the emperor Augustus.

Before 46 B. C., that is till near the death of Caesar and Cicero, March, May, July, and October had 31 days, February had 28, and each of the others had 29. In 46 B. C. Caesar reformed the calendar and gave the months their present number of days.

298. Calends, Nones, and Ides. The Romans counted the days backwards from three points in each month, the Calends, the Nones, and the Ides, instead of forward from the first as we do; that is, they called
the days "the third before the Ides," "the fourth before the Calends," etc.

The Calends (Kalendae, —ārum, f. pl.) were always the first of the month. The Nones (Nōnae, -ārum, f. pl.) were the seventh, the Ides (Īdūs, -uum, f. pl.) the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October. In all other months they were the fifth and thirteenth.

299. Method of Reckoning. In reckoning dates they counted both the first day and the last day; for example, while we should speak of Monday as the second day before Wednesday, a Roman would have counted Wednesday as one, Tuesday as two, and Monday as three, and would thus have called Monday the third day before Wednesday.

In counting back from the Calends, remember that the Calends do not belong to the month in which the required day is. Add one to the number of days in the preceding month, then reckon backwards, counting both ends as usual.

300. Method of Expressing Dates. An idiomatic formula is commonly used, which can neither be parsed nor translated literally; for example a. d. IV. Īd. Ian. = ante diem quārtum Īdūs Ianuāriās. The logical, but less usual form is diē quarto ante Īdūs Ianuāriās, on the fourth day before the Ides of January. For examples take the dates:

(LATIN-ENGLISH) (ENGLISH-LATIN)


VOCABULARY

In this vocabulary the figures 1, 2, and 4, following verbs, mean that the principal parts are formed like those of laudó, moneó, and audió, respectively; or, if the verb is deponent, like those of hortor, vereor, and partior (App. 73).

To all words occurring in the first four books of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the book and chapter of first occurrence. If the word occurs first in chapters 30-54 of Book I, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the first four books.

Words in Italics are purely explanatory, and are never intended as definitions for translation purposes.

After geographical names letters are given, enclosed in parentheses. They correspond to letters on the margin of the general map, and thus serve as an index to the position of the names on the map.

Pronunciation of Proper Names. It is generally agreed that the English pronunciation of proper names should be used in translation; but as no modern grammar gives the rules for the English pronunciation, the greatest confusion exists in practice. Therefore the pronunciation of all proper names is indicated in parentheses. To indicate the sounds of vowels, diacritical marks are used with the following values:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{ā} &= \text{a in mat.} \\
\text{ā} &= \text{a in mate.} \\
\text{ā} &= \text{a in arm.} \\
\text{ā} &= \text{a in Cuba.} \\
\text{ē} &= \text{e in met.} \\
\text{ē} &= \text{e in me.} \\
\text{ē} &= \text{e in fern.} \\
\text{ē} &= \text{e in ice.} \\
\text{ō} &= \text{o in note.} \\
\text{ō} &= \text{o in or.} \\
\text{ō} &= \text{o in up.} \\
\text{ō} &= \text{o in use.} \\
\text{ū} &= \text{u in u.} \\
\text{ū} &= \text{u in rude.} \\
\end{align*}
\]

y has the sounds of i, and is used in indicating pronunciation only as the consonant (= y in youth), or to indicate an i sound so rapidly uttered that it is barely distinguishable from the consonant y, as in Lūcius = Lu' shyus.

It must be understood, however, that unaccented syllables are so hastily pronounced that their vowel sounds are usually somewhat indistinct.

The main accent is indicated by a single mark ('), the lighter, secondary accent by a double mark ("').

In giving tribe names it is best to use always the Latin forms of the names (Nervii, Helvetii, etc.), rather than the anglicized forms (Nervians, Helvetians, etc.). Most of these anglicized forms have no warrant in good English usage, none has much warrant. The few that are possible are given in the vocabulary, but are not recommended for use. Modern geographical names may well be used, so far as they are familiar.
VOCABULARY

a., abbr. for ante. I, 6.
à (before consonants), ab (before vowels and some consonants), abs (before tē, and in some compounds), prep. with abl., originally denoting separation; (1) of place, persons, time, etc., from, away from, from the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, in some phrases, at, in, on, on the side of; à tergō, in the rear; (3) with expressions of measure, away, off; ab milibus passuum duobus, two miles away; (4) with the pace, voice often denoting the agent, as the person from whom the action comes, by; (5) variously translated in other relations, from, by, in respect to, after. I, 1.

abō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], put away, remove, withdraw, conceal. I, 12.

abducō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead away, draw or carry off, withdraw. I, 11.

abēo, -ire, -i, -itum, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go away, depart.

abicīō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum, tr. [iacēō, throw. App. 7], throw away or down; hurl. IV, 15.

abiēs, -ietis, f., fir tree.

ablungō, -lungere, -lūnxī, -lūnctum, tr. [lūngō, join], disjoin, detach.

abs, see ā.

abscidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, tr. [caedō, cut], cut or lop off, tear off or away. III, 14.

absēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of absum, he absent], absent, at a distance. I, 32; III, 17.

absimilis, -e, adj. [similis, like], unlike. III, 14.

absistō, -sistere, -stītī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], keep away from.

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, intr. [teneō, hold], keep aloof from, refrain; spare. I, 22.

abstrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], to drag away, carry away by force. III, 2.

absūm, abesse, āfuī, intr. [sum, be. App. 78], be away from, be absent or distant, be wanting or free from. I, 1.

abundō, I, intr. [unda, wave], overflow; abound.

ac, see atque.

accēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [ad-cessō, go], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; accēdēbat, it was added. I, 19.

accelerō, I, intr. [ad+cēlerō, hasten], hasten.

acceptus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accipiō, accept], acceptable, beloved by (with dative). I, 3.

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [ad+caēdō, fall], fall to or upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur; accidit, it happens. I, 14.

accidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cism, tr. [ad+caēdō, cut], cut into.

acciplō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [ad+capīō, take], take or receive to one’s self; accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take. I, 14.

acclivis, -e, adj. [ad+clivus, a slope], sloping upward, rising, ascending. II, 29.

acclivitas, -tātis, f. [acclivis, ascending], ascent, slope. II, 18.

Accō, -ōnis, m., Acco (āk’ō), a chief of The Σενονες.

accommodātus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of accommodō, adapt], fit, adapted, appropriate. III, 13.

accommodō, I, tr., adjust or adapt to one’s self, fit or put on. II, 21.

accurātē, adv., carefully.
accurrē, -currere, -currī or -cucurrī, -cursum, intr. [ad+currō, run], run or hasten to. I, 22.
accūnē, I, tr. [ad+causa, cause], bring a case or charge against; blame, censure, accuse. I, 16.
acerbē, adv. [acerbus, harsh], harshly, with pain.
acerbitās, -tātis, f. [acerbus, harsh], harshness, rigor.
acerbus, -a, -um, adj., harsh, biting, severe.
ācerrimē, see ācriter.
acervus, -I, m., a heap, mass. II, 32.
acēs, -ēi (old gen. acēi), f., sharp point or edge of a weapon; sharp or keen sight, glance; a line (as forming an edge), battle line; prima, the van, media, the centre; novissima, the rear. I, 22.
acquirō, -quīrere, -quisīvī, -quisītum, tr. [ad+quaerō, seek], seek or gain in addition, win, acquire.
ācriter, adv. [ācer, sharp], sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. Comp. ācrius; sup. ācerrimē (App. 40). I, 26.
āctūālīus, -a, -um, adj. [āgō, move, drive], fitted with oars.
āctus, see agō.
acūtus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of acūō, sharpen], sharpened, pointed.
ad, prep. with acc., originally denoting motion toward: (1) denoting motion, to, toward, against, to the vicinity of; (2) denoting position, at, by, near; (3) denoting purpose, with gerund and gerundive, to, for; (4) with numerals, up to, about; (5) of time, up to, until; at, on; (6) variously translated in other relations, at, after, for, to, according to, in the eyes of, among. I, 1.
ādāctus, see adīgō.
adāsqūō, I, tr. [aquisīō, make equal], make level with or equal to, equal; keep up with. I, 48; II, 32.
adamē, I, tr. [amē, love], love strongly, covet. I, 31.
addō, -dere, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō, put], place on; add.
addūcō, -ducere, -ducī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead or draw to, bring to; induce, influence. I, 3.

adēmptus, see adimō.
adēo, adv. [ēō, thither], to such an extent, so much, so very, so; in fact.
adēo, -īre, -ī-ī, -ītum, tr. and intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, 7.
adēptus, see adipiscor.
adēquitō, I, intr. [equītō, ride; equus, horse], ride up. I, 46.
adαιrēo, -haiēre, -haiēi, -haisum, intr. [haiēo, stick], cling or stick to.
adībeō, 2, tr. [habeō, have], bring to, bring in, summon; employ, use. I, 20.
adhortor, I, tr. [hortor, encourage], encourage, incite.
adūcē, adv. [hūc, hither], hitherto, as yet. III, 22.
adūcēo, -lacēre, -lacui, — intr. [lacēo, lie], lie near or close to, adjoin.
Adiatunnus, -I, m., Adiatunnus (ā’diatun’nūs), the leader of the Siatiae. III, 22.
adiciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectum, tr. [iacēo, throw. App. 7], throw to, throw up, hurl; add. III, 1.
adīgō, -igers, -īgēi, -āctum, tr. [āgō, move], drive or bring by force, move; thrust, plunge, hurl (af weapons); bind (by an oath). II, 21.
adīmē, -imāre, -ēmi, -emptum, tr. [emē, take], take away, remove.
adipiscor, -ipiscī, -iptus sum, tr., attain to, gain.
adītus, -ūs, m. [adsō, go to], approach, means of approach, right of approach, access. I, 43; II, 15.
adīndicō, I, tr. [lūdicō, judge], adjudge, assign.
adīungō, -iungere, -iünxi, -iunctum, tr. [iungō, join], join to, attach, unite; add. III, 2.
adītūtor, -ōris, m. [adīuvō, aid], helper, abettor, assistant.
adīuvō, -iuvōre, -iūvī, -iūtum, tr. [iuvō, aid], aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, 17.
administer, -tri, m. [minister, servant], attendant; priest.
administrō, I, tr. [minister, servant]
serve, attend, wait upon; manage, guide. II, 20.
admiror, 1, tr. [miror, wonder at], wonder at, be surprised at, admire. I, 14.
admittō, -mittere, -misset, -museum, tr. [mittō, send], admit; commit; incur; let go; give reins to (a horse). I, 22.
admodum, adv. [modus, measure], up to the measure; very much, very; with num., fully; with neg., at all. III, 13.
admineō, 2, tr. [moneō, warn], warn.
adoleō, -olēscere, -olēvi, -ultum, intr., grow up.
adorlōr, -orīri, -ortus sum, tr. [orīrō, arise], rise against, assail, attack. I, 13.
adsum, adesse, afful, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be near or present, be at hand, appear. I, 16.
adulescēns, -entis, m. [pres. part. of adolēscō, grow up], youth, young man. I, 47; III, 7.
adulescentia, -ae, f. [adulēscēns, youth], youthfulness, youth. I, 20.
adulescentulus, -i, m. [dim. of adulescēns, youth], a very young man. III, 21.
aventus, -ūs, m. [veniō, come], coming, arrival, approach. I, 7.
adversarius, -rī, m. [adversus, turned against], antagonist, foe.
adversus, -a, um, adj. [p. part. of advertō, turn to], turned or to against; opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable; unsuccessful; adversō fūmīne, up the river; in adversum ōs, full in the face. I, 18.
adversus, prep. w. acc. [adversus, turned against], opposite to, against. IV, 14.
avocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call to, summon.
avolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly to or against, rush on or at.
sedificium, -cī, n. [sedīficō, build], building, house. I, 6.
sedificō, 1, tr. [sedēs, house + faciō, make], build, construct. III, 9.
seger, -grā, -grum, adj., ill, sick.
Aemilius, -ii, m., Aemilius (aemilī-ūs), I, 23.
aequālīter, adv. [aequālis, equal; aequus, equal], equally, evenly. II, 18.
aequinocxtium, -tī, n. [aequus, equal+nox, night], the equinox. IV, 36.
aqueātās, -tātis, f. [aequus, equal], equality; fairness, equity; animi aequitās, contentment. I, 40.
aequō, 1, tr. [aequus, equal], make even or equal, equalize. I, 25.
aequus, -a, -um, adj., even, level; equitable, impartial, just; aequus animus, equanimity, composure. I, 43; III, 17.
aerāria, -ae, f. [aes, copper], copper mine. III, 21.
aes, aeras, n. copper; anything made of copper, coin, money; aes aliēnum, another's money, debt. IV, 31.
aestās, -tētis, f., summer. I, 54; II, 2.
aestimātiō, -ōnis, f. [aestimō, value], valuation.
aestimō, 1, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, 20.
aestivus, -a, -um, adj. [aestus, heat; aestās, summer], of summer, summer.
aestuārium, -ri, n. [aestus, tide], low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, 28.
aestus, -ūs, m., heat; boiling, surging; tide; minuente aestū, at ebb tide. III, 12.
aestās, aestātis, f., period of life, age. II, 16.
aeternus, -a, -um, adj., everlasting.
afferē, afferre, attuli, allātum, tr. [adv-ferō, carry. App. 81], bring, take or carry to, present; occasion, cause; bring forward, allege; report. I, 43; II, 1.
amāciō, -ficere, -ficēi, -fectum, tr. [ad-faciō, do], do to, treat, affect; magnō dolōre afficerē, to annoy greatly. I, 2.
afigō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [ad-fīgō, fix], fasten to. III, 14.
affingo, -singere, -svxi, -sctum, tr. [adv + affingo, invent], invent in addition.

affinitas, -tatis, f., alliance by marriage, relationship. I, 18.

affirmatio, -onis, f. [affirmo, affirm; adv + firmus, strong], declaration, assertion.

affixus, see affigō.

afflictō, 1, tr. [freq. of affigō, strike against, damage, greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, 12.

affigō, -figere, -figxi, -Figctum, tr., strike against; overthrow; damage, injure. IV, 31.

affore, adv. inf. of adsum. 

Affricus, -I, m., Africus (Ā'fr'i-küs), the southwestern wind.

aflui, see absum.

Agedincum, -I, n. (Be), Agedincum (Ā'jē-ding'kūm), now Sens.

ager, agri, m., field, land; district, territory. I, 2.

agger, aggeris, m., material for earthworks, earth; embankment; mound; rampart. II, 12.

aggregō, -greger, -gressus sum, tr. [adv + gradior, step], advance to or against; attack. I, 12.

aggregō, 1, tr. [adv + greg, flock], unite in a flock; assemble; join, attach. IV, 26.

agitō, 1, tr. [freq. of agō, move; discuss], discuss.

agmen, -inis, n. [agō, move], a moving body; a marching column; army; in agmine, on the march; primum agmen, the van; novissimum or extremum agmen, the rear. I, 15.

agō, agere, ēgī, ēctum, tr., set in motion; drive (of animals); move forward, advance (of military works); do, transact, carry on (of business); discuss, speak; hold (conventum); give, render (grātīas); plead (causam or rem); quod agitur, the matter in hand; rēs agitātur, something is at stake. I, 13.

agricultūra, -ae, f. [ager, land + oculō, cultivate], cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, 17.

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, 19.

alacritas, -tatis, f. [alacer, lively], liveliness, ardor. I, 41; IV, 24.

alārius, -a, -um, adj. [āla, wing], on the wing; pl. as noun, auxiliaries. I, 51.

albus, -a, -um, adj., white.

alēscēs, -Is, f., elk.

Alesia, -ae, f. (Cl), Alesia (ā-lē'zha), now Alise Ste. Reine.

aliās, adv. [alius, another], at another place, elsewhere; at another time; aliās . . . aliās, at one time . . . at another. II, 29.

aliēnō, 1, tr. [aliēnus, of another], make another's or foreign; estrange, alienate; aliēnātē mensē, maddened.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius, other], of or belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; unfavorable; foreign to the purpose; aes aliēnum, debt; aliēnissiē, entire strangers. I, 15.

aliō, adv. [alius, other], to another place, person or thing, elsewhere.

aliquamdiē, adv. [aliquis, some + diē, long], for some time. I, 40.

aliquamdiō, adv. [aliquis, some], at some time, at length, finally.

aliquantā, adv. [aliquantus, some], somewhat, a little. III, 13.

aliquantus, -a, -um, adj., some, considerable; neut. as noun with partitive gen., a good deal, not a little.

aliquis, -quid, and aliqûi, -qua, -quod, indep. pron. [quis, who. App. 62, a], some one, something; anyone, anything, any. 1, 14.

aliquot, indep. num. adj. [quot, how many], some, a few, several. III, 1.

alter, adv. [alius, other], otherwise; alter . . . ac, otherwise . . . than. II, 19.

alius, -a, -ud, gen. allus (App. 32), another, other; alius . . . alius, one . . . another; in pl., some . . . others. I, 1.

allātus, 333 afferō.

alliciō, -licere, -lexi, -lectum, tr., attract, allure, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, m. (Dfg), the Allo-
broges (ä-löbr‘ö-jës), a powerful Gallic people in the Province. I, 6.

alō, alere, alü, altum, tr., nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, 13.

Alpēs, -iūm, f. pl. (Cghi), the Alpes (äl'pëz), better, the Alps. I, 10.

alter, -era, -erum, gen. alterius (App. 33), the other (of two); second; the one... alter... alter... the other... the other... alter... alter, one party... the other. I, 2.

alterius, -a, -um, adj. [alter, the other], one after another, in turn.

altitudō, -inis, f. (altus, high, deep), height; thickness (of timber). I, 8.

altus, -a, -um, adj. high, lofty; deep; neut. as noun, the deep, the sea. I, 2.

alēta, -ae, f., soft leather. III, 13.

ambactus, -i, m., vassal.

Ambarri, -orum, m. (Cf), the Ambarri (äm'bar'i), clients of the Haedu. I, 11.

Ambīani, -orum, m. (Abde), the Ambiāni (äm'bi-a'ni), II, 4.

Ambibāri, -orum, m. (Bbc), the Ambibāri (äm'bi-bär'i-i).

Ambiliati, -orum, m., the Ambiliati (äm'bi-lä'ta-li), III, 9.

Ambiorix, -igis, m., Ambiorix (äm-bär'ı-ös), king of the Eburones.

Ambivareti, -orum, m. (Ce), the Ambivareti (äm-bivär'e-ti), clients of the Haedu.

Ambivarii, -orum, m. (Af), the Ambivarii (äm-bivär'i-i), IV, 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], bewildering of mind, folly, insanity. I, 40.

āmentum, -i, n., strap or thong, fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.

amicitia, -ae, f. [amicus, friend], friendship. I, 3.

amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō, love], friendly, well disposed; devoted; as noun, m., a friend, an ally. I, 3.

āmittō, -mittere, -misí, -missum, tr. (mittō, send), send away, dismiss; let go; lose. I, 28.

amor, -āris, m., amīō, love, love. I, 20.

amplē, adv. [amplus, large], largely; comp., amplius, more, farther. I, 36; II, 16.

amplificāo, I, tr. [amplus, large+faciō, make], extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, 14.

amplitūdō, -inis, f. [amplus, large], wide extent, size; importance, consequence, dignity. IV, 3.

amplus, see amplē and amplus.

amplus, -a, -um, adj., of large extent, spacious, large; illustrious, splendid, noble; generous, magnificent; amplius, comp. as noun, more, a greater number, a greater distance. I, 15.

an, conj., used to introduce the second member of alternative questions, or, or rather. I, 40; IV, 14.

Anartēs, -orum, m., the Anarites (a-nár'tēz), a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.

Anacalītās, -um, m. (Ac), the Anacalites (än-kä'lē-tēz).

aniceps, ancipitis, adj. " [ambō, both+caput, head], two headed, with two sides or fronts, double. I, 26.

ancora, -ae, f., anchor; in ancoris, at anchor. III, 13.

Andēbrogius, -gi, m., Andēbrogius (än'dé-brō'jës). II, 3.

Andēs, -ium, or Andī, -orum, m. (Co), the Andes (än'dëz) or Andi (än'di). II, 35.

änfractus, -ūs, m., circuitous route.

angulus, -i, m., corner.

angustē, adv. [angustus, narrow], narrowly; in close quarters. IV, 23.

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl. [angustus, narrow], narrowness; a narrow place or pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, 9.

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [angō, squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow; in angustō, in a critical condition. I, 2.

animal, -ālis, m. [anima, breath of life], a living creature, animal.
animus, -i, m., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings; character; resolution, courage; animi causa, for amusement; in animō habēre, intend. I, 1.

annōtinus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], of last year.

annus, -i, m., year. I, 3.

annuus, -a, -um, adj. [annus, year], yearly. I, 16.

ānsīr, -āsīr, m. goose.

ante (1) adv., before, above, previously; 
(2) prep. w. acc., before, in advance of. I, 3.

anteā, adv. [ante, before + ē, this], formerly, before, previously, once; always with a verb. I, 17.

antecedēō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. (cēdō, go), go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, 8.

anteācsor, -ārors, m. [currū, run], fore-runner; pt., vanguard.

anteferō, - ferre, - tuli, -lātum, tr. (ferō, bear). App. 81], bear or carry before; prefer.

antemna, -ae, f., sail-yard. III, 14.

anteponō, - pōnere, -posuí, -postum, tr. (pōnē, place), place before; prefer. IV, 22.

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], put before, prefer.

antiquitās, adv. [antiquae, ancient], from early or ancient times; long ago, anciently. II, 4.

antiquus, -a, -um, adj. [ante, before], former, old, ancient. I, 18.

Antistius, -āsīs, m., Gaius Antistius Regni- 

nus (gā' yūs ān-tīs/tī-ūs rē-jīnīs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -nī, m., Marcus Antonius (mār' kūs ān-tō-nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants, afterward triumvir.

Ap., abbr. for Apollus (āp' lūs), a Roman praenomen.

aperīō, -perire, -perī, -pertum, tr., open, expose.

aperē, adv. [aperētus, open], openly, manifestly.

aperētus, -a, -um, adj. [aperē, open], open, exposed; ab latere aperētō, on the unprotected flank. I, 25.

Appollō, -īnis, m., Apollo (ā-pōl' ēs),}

apparō, i, tr. [ad + parō, prepare], prepare, make ready.

appellō, i, tr., accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, 1.

appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr. [ad + pellō, drive], bring to land; bring together. III, 12.

appētē, -petere, -petī [-petī], -itum, tr. and intr. [ad + petē, seek], seek for, aim at; encroach upon; approach, be near. I, 40.

applicō, i, tr. [ad + plīcō, fold], apply; ē eā applicāre, lean.

appōrtō, i, tr. [ad + portō, carry], bring.

approxō, i, tr. [ad + propō, approve], favor, approve.

appropinquō, i, intr. [ad + propin- 

quōs, near], come near or close, approach. II, 10.

appulsus, ses appellō.

April., abbr. for Aprilis, -e, adj., of April, April. I, 6.

aptus, -a, -um, adj., fitted, suited, adapted. III, 13.

apud, prep. with acc., at, among, near, with; (with persons) at the house of, in the presence of. I, 2.

aquā, -ae, f., water. IV, 17.

aquātīō, -ōnīs, f. [aqua, water], getting water. IV, 11.

aquīla, -ae, f., an eagle; a standard, (as the aquīla was the chief standard of the legion). IV, 25.

Aquīlēia, -ae, f., Aquīlia (āk/' wē-lē- ēa), a city of Cisalpine Gaul. I, 10.

aquilīfer, -erī, m. [aqua, eagle + ferō, bear], standard-bearer.

Aquītānia, -ae, f. (DEcd), Aquītania (āk/' wē-tā-ni-ā), Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. I, 1.

Aquitānus, -a, -um, adj., of Aquītania, Aquītānian; pl. as noun, the Aquītānians (āk/' wē-tā-nī), possibly Aquītānians, inhabiting southwestern Gaul. I, 1.

Arar, Ararīs (acc. -im), m. (CDtg), the Arar (ā/rār), the modern Saone. I, 12.

arbiter, -tri, m., umpire, arbitrator.

arbitrium, -ri, m. [arbiter, umpire], decision or judgment (of the arbitrator); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, 36.
arbitror, i, tr. and intr. [arbiter, umpire], decide; think, believe. I, 2.
arbor, -oris, f., tree. II, 17.
arecseô, -ere, -ivi, -itum, summon, send for, invite. I, 31; II, 20.
ardeô, ardére, arsí, ārum, intr., burn, blaze; be inflamed, be eager.
Arduenna, -ae, f. (ABbcg), Arduenna (ar-du-en-a), better the Ardenes, a vast forest of northeast Gaul.
ardus, -a, -um, adj., high, steep; difficult. II, 33.
Arecomici, Arecomici (ār-kō-ˈmī-ˈkī), see Vocontii.
Aremoricæ, -ārum, f. (Bbcd), adj., maritane, Aremorican.
argentum, -i, n., silver; silver plate or coin.
argilla, -ae, f., white clay.
āridus, -a, -um, adj. [āreō, be dry], dry; neut. as noun, dry land. IV, 24.
ariēs, arietis, m., a ram; battering-ram, a long beam for demolishing walls; one end of it was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head; brace, buttress. II, 32.
Arlovistus, -i, m., Arlovistus (ārˈvē-stəs), a king of the Germans. I, 31; IV, 16.
Aristus, -tī, m., Marcus Aristus (mārˈkūs ārˈtī-ˈtīs), a military tribune.
arma, -ōrum, n. pl., arms; equipment; by metonymy, battle, war. I, 4.
armamenta, -ōrum, n. [armō, arm], implements, gear; tackle or rigging of a ship. III, 14.
armātūra, -ae, f. [armō, arm], armor, equipment; levīe armātūræ, light-armed. II, 10.
armō, i, tr. [arma, arms], arm, equip; pass, arm one's self; armātus, pp. part., as adj., armed; armātī, as noun, armed men. I, 40; II, 4.
Arpīnētus, -i, m., Galus Arpīnētus (gāˈlūs ārˈplē-ˈnē-ˈyūs), a knight in Caesar's army.
arrīpiō, -ripere, -ripulī, -reptum, tr. [ad-ripō, seize] take or seize hurriedly.
arroganter, adv. [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogantly, presumptuously. I, 40.
arrogantia, -ae, f. [arrogāns, arro-
gant], arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. I, 33.
ars, artis, f., skill, art; pl., the arts.
artē, adv. [artus, close], closely, firmly. IV, 17.
articulus, -i, m., joint.
articulum, -ci, n. [ars, art + faciō, make], a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick.
atrus, -a, -um, adj., close, dense, thick.
Arverni, -i, m. (CDe), an Arvernian; pl., the Arverni (ārˈvērˈnī), possibly the Arverniāns. I, 31.
ax, ars, f., citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, 38.
ascendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scānu-
sum, tr. and intr. [ad+scendō, climb], climb up, ascend, mount, climb. I, 21.
ascensus, -ūs, m. [ascendō, climb up], a climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, 21.
asciscē, -sciscēre, -sciēri, -scīatum, tr. [ad+sciscē, approve], approve; admit or receive (as ailes). I, 5.
aspectus, -ūs, m. [aspiō, look at], look; appearance, mien, aspect.
asper, -era, -erum, adj., rough, violent.
asiduus, -a, -um, adj. [ad+sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant.
asistō, assistere, astī, —, intr. [ad+sistō, stand], stand by or near.
asuēfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr., accustom, train. IV, 1.
asuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become accustomed], become accustomed.
at, conj., but, at least. I, 43; II, 23.
atque, ac, (ac only before consonants, atque before vowels and consonants), conj., usually adds something especially important, while et usually associates objects of equal importance; and also, and even, and; after words denoting a comparison or difference, than, as, from. I, 1.
Atrebās, -bātis, m., (Ae), an Atrebatic; pl., the Atrebates (ātˈrē-bāˈtēz), II, 4.
Atrius, -rī, m., Quintus Atrius (kwīˈnts atˈri-ˈyz), one of Caesar's officers.
attexō, -tessere, -tessul, -textum, tr. [ad+τεσσε, weave], weave on.
attingō, -tingere, -tīgul, -tāctum, tr. [ad+tangō, touch], touch or border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, 1.
attribuō, -tribuere, -tribul, -tribu- tum, tr. [ad+tribuō, assign], assign, allot. III, 1.
atuuli, see afferō.
Atuatuca, -ae, f. (Af), Atuatuca (اوتدوکا), a stronghold of the Balearic.
Atuatucl, -orum, m. (Af), the Atuatucl (باولدوس). II, 4.
auctor, -ōris, m. [augēō, increase], one who produces, creates, or originates; promoter, instigator, adviser, author; auctor esse, advise. III, 17.
auctōritās, -ātis, f. [auctor, producer], influence, character, authority, reputation. I, 3.
auctus, -a, -um, adj. [adj. part. of augēō, increase], increased, advanced. I, 43.
auďācla, -ae, f. [auďāx, bold], boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, 18.
auďācter, adv. [auďāx, bold], boldly, fearlessly, daringly. Comp., auďācuς; sup., auďācisēmē. I, 15.
audōē, audēre, ausus sum (App. 74), intr., dare, risk, venture. I, 18.
audō, 4, tr., hear, hear of; dictō audiēns, obedient. I, 59; II, 12.
auditiō, -ōnis, f. [audō, hear], hearing, hearsay, report. IV, 5.
augēō, augēre, auxī, auctum, tr., increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, 18.
Aulerci, -orum, m., the Aurerci (اوورسکی), a Gallic people divided into four branches. (1) Aurerci Eubovicies (باوزویسیکی), (Bd), III, 17; (2) Aurerci Cenomani (سدنومانی), (Bd); (3) Aurerci Brannovices (براونویسیکی), location unknown; (4) Aurerci Diabintes (ديابینت), (Bc), II, 34.
aureus, -a, -um, adj. [aurum, gold], of gold, gold.
auriga, -æ, m., charioteer. IV, 88.
auris, -is, f., ear.
Aurunculēius, -i, m., Lucius Aurunculēius Cotta (باوونکیویسیکی), one of Cæsar’s lieutenants. II, 11.
Ausei, -orum, m. (Ed), the Ausei (اویستی). III, 27.
aeus, see audeō.
aut, conj., used where the difference is important or exclusive, or: aut ... aut, either ... or. I, 1.
autem, conj., but (a weak adverative); however, on the other hand; now; moreover. I, 2.
autumnus, -i, m., autumn.
auxi, see augeō.
auxiliaris, -e adj. [auxilium, aid], auxiliary; m. pl. as noun, auxiliary troops. III, 25.
auxillor, 1, intr. [auxilium, aid], give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, 29.
auxilium, -iūm, n. [augeō, increase], help, assistance, aid; pl., auxiliary troops; reinforcements. I, 11.
Avaricēnsis, -ae, adj., of Avaricum.
Avaricum, -i, n. (Ce), Avaricum (اواریکیم), the stronghold of the Bituriges, now Bourges.
avaritā, -ae, f. [avārus, greedy], greed, covetousness. I, 40.
avēhō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, take away.
avertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], turn away, turn aside; turn back, repulse; pf. part. as adj., with back turned. I, 16.
avis, -is, f., bird. IV, 10.
avus, -i, m., grandfather. I, 12.
Axona, -ae, m. (Bo), the Axona (اکسننا), a river, now the Aisne. II, 5.

B.
Bacēnis, -is, f. (Ah), Bacenis (باچنیسی), the forest Bacenis, between the Cheruaci and the Suebi.
Bacula, -i, m., Publius Sextius Baculus (بیولبسیکی), location unknown. II, 25.
Ballāria, -e, adj., Balearic (باپیریکی), (i.e., coming from the island Ma- forca and Minorca). II, 7.
balteus, -i, m., sword belt.
Balventius, -tī, m., Titus Balventius (Balventius bal-vēn'shūs), one of Caesar's centurions.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., foreign (to Greeks and Romans), uncivilized, barbarous; pl. as noun, savages, barbarians. I, 31; II, 35.

Basilus, -i, m., Lucius Minucius Basilius (lu'tu'shi'us mi-nū'ši'huš bās'ə-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Batavi, -orum, m. (Af), the Batavi (bā-tā'vi). IV, 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. (ABdefg), the Belgae (bēl'jē), or Belgians. I, 1.

Belgium, -āgī, n. (ABdefg), Belgium (bēl'jī-um), the country of the Belgae.

bellicosus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or full of war, warlike. I. 10.

bellicosus, -a, -um, adj. [bellum, war], of or in war, military.

bellō, 1. intr. [bellum, war], make or carry on war, war was. I, 2.

Bellovaci, -ōrum, m. (Bde), the Bellovacī (bē-lō'vā-kī). II, 4.

bellum, -ī, n., war. I, 1.

bene, adv. [bonus, good], well, rightly, successfully. Comp., melior; sup., optimē. I, 45; III, 18.

beneficium, -ī, n. [bene, well-facīō, do], well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, 9.

benevolentia, -ae, f. [bene, well-volō, wish], good-will, kindness.

Bibracte, -is, n. (Cef), Bibracte (bī-brāk'tē), the chief town of the Aedui. I, 23.

Bibrax, -ctīa, f. (Be), Bibrax (bī-brāks), a town of the Remi. II, 6.

Bibróci, -ōrum, m. (Ac), the Bibrōci (bī-brō'sī).

biduum, -i, n. [bis, twice-dīēs, day], space or period of two days, two days. I, 23.

biennium, -īn, n. [bis, twice-annus, year], two years. I, 3.

Bigerriones, -um, m. (Ecd), the Bigerriones (bī-gē'rē-ō'nēz or bi-gē'rē-ō'nēz). III, 27.

bīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [bis, twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, 15.

bipedālis, -ae, adj. [bis, twice-pēs, foot], of two feet, two feet thick. IV, 17.

bipertitō, adv. [bis, twice-partīor, divide], in two parts or divisions, in two ways. I, 25.

bis, num. adv. [for dūs, from duo, two], twice. III, 12.

Bituriges, -ūm, m. (Cde), the Bituriges (bī-tū'rē-ēz). I, 18.


Bōli, -ōrum, m. (Ce), the Boii (bō'vī), a Celtic tribe once very powerful in southern Germany and Cisalpine Gaul. Those who joined the Helvetii were afterwards settled by Caesar as indicated on the map. I, 5.

bonitas, -ātīs, f. [bonus, good], goodness; fertility. I, 28.

bonus, -a, -um, adj., good, beneficial, profitable, well-disposed; (with animō) friendly; as noun, bonum, -ī, profit, advantage; bona, -ōrum, goods, property, estate; boni, -ōrum, the good, good men or citizens. Comp., melior; sup., optimus (App. 42). I, 6.

bōs, bovis, m., f., ox; cow; pl., cattle.

bracchium, -chī, n., the arm, forearm. I, 25.

Brannovicēs, see Aulerici.

Bratuspantium, -tī, n. (Be), Bratuspantium (brā'tūs-pān'shūm). II, 13.

brevis, -e, adj., short, brief, transitory; brevī, in a short time. I, 40; III, 4.

brevitās, -ātīs, f. [brevis, short], shortness; brevity. II, 20.

breviter, adv. [brevis, short], briefly.

Britannia, -ae, f. (Aabd), Britannia (britān'i-ā), better Britain, Great Britain (England and Scotland), never Britain. II, 4.

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj. (Britannia, Britain), of Britain, British.

Britannus, -a, -um, adj., of Britain, British; pl. as noun, the Britanni (britān'i), better, the Britons. IV, 21.

brūma, -ae, f., the winter solstice.

Brūtus, -ī, m., Decimus Junius Brutus (dēk'si-jū'nēs bry'tūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompey. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed by order of Antony. III, 11.
Cessius, -nem, m., Gaius Cæsarius Rebil- us (gā'jūs ka-śe-six re-bil'-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

cano, canere. cecini, cantum, intr., sing.; sound.

Cæsarius, -orun, m. (Eab), the Cæsa- bri (kā'se-bri). III, 26.

Cantium, -tium, n. (Ad), Cantium (kān'-shyum), or Kent.

capillus, -i, m., the hair.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captūm, tr., take, capture; seize, catch; take in, beguile; induce; take up (arms); choose, select (a place); form, adopt (a plan); reach, arrive at (a place); make (a beginning); collem capere, take position on a hill; fugam capere, take to flight. I, 1.

capra, -ae, f., goat.

captivus, -i, m. [capiō, take], captive; prisoner. I, 22.

captus, -tus, m. [capiō, take], comprehension, ideas. IV, 3.

captus, see capiō.

caput, capitis, n., the head (of men and animals); person, individual; mouth (of a river); capitis poena, capital punishment. I, 29.

Cārcaso, -onis, f. (Ee), Carcaso (kār'-ka-so). III, 20.

carēs, 1, intr., be without, be free from; miss, want.

carina, -ae, f., keel. III, 13.

Carnutēs, -um, m. (Bcde), the Carnu- tes (kār'nū-tez). II, 35.

carō, carnīs, f., flesh, meat.

carpō, carpere, carpeī, captūm, tr., pluck; censure, jeer at. III, 17.
carrus, -i, m., cart. I, 3.
cārus, -a, -um, adj., dear, valuable.

Cærvilius, -li, m., Cærvilius (kār-vil'-ūs), a British king.

casa, -ae, f., cottage, hut.
caseus, -i, m., cheese.

cassī, -orum, m. (Ae), the Cessi (kā'si).

cassianus, -a, -um, adj., of Cessius, see Cæsarius. I, 13.

cassis, -idis, f., a metal helmet.

Cæsarius, -ei, m., Lucius Cæsarius Longi- nus (lū'šyūs kāsh'yūs long'i-nūs),...
concul 107 B.C., slain in battle by the Tigrinii. I, 7.
Cassivellaunus, -i, m., Cassivellaunus (kæsɪvə-læwənəs), the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Cesar.

castellum, -i, n. [castrum, fort], fortress, redoubt. I, 8.
Casticus, -i, m., Casticus (kæstɪkəs),...

castea, -a, f., [castra, fort], pitched camp. II, 12.
cambus, -us, m. [cadē, fall], what befalls; accident, chance; misfortune, fate; crisis; castus, by chance. I, 12.
Catamantoledis, -is, m., Cataman-...-olis (kætəməntoʊ-ləs), a chief of the Eburones.

copula, -ae, f., cause, reason, grounds, motive; situation, condition; a (legal) case; cause; causam dicere, to plead a case; causā, following a gen., for the sake of, for the purpose of, for. I, 1.

cautē, adv. [cautus, from caveō, be cautious], cautiously.

cautēs, -is, f., reft. III, 13.
Cavarillus, -i, m., Cavarillus (kævərɪləs), a Haedu...n noble.
Cavarinus, -i, m., Cavarinus (kævərɪnəs), a king of the Senones.

caveō, cavēra, cāvi, cautum, intr., be cautious, be on one's guard; obsidibus cavēre, exchange hostages as security. I, 14.
Cavillōnum, -i, n. (Cf), Cavillasum (kævɪlənəm),...

Cebenna, -ae, f. (De), the Cebenna (sə-bənə), or the Cevennes mountains.

cedō, cedere, cessi, cessum, intr., go; go away; give way, yield, retreat. II, 19.

celer, -eris, -ere, adj., swift, quick; precipitatae. IV, 28.

celeritas, -tātis, f. [celer, swift], swiftness, quickness, speed. I, 48; II, 12.

celeriter, adv. [celer, swift], quickly, rapidly, speedily. Compl., celerius; sup., celerrīme (App. 40). I, 18.
cēlō, i, tr., keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; in pass., escape observation, be unnoticed. II, 32.
Celtae, -ārum, m., the Celtae (sēl'tē), better the Celts. I, 1.
Celtillus, -i, m., Celtillus (sēl-ti'lūs), the Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.

Cenabēnsis, -e, adj. [Cenabum], of Cenabum; pl. as noun, the people of Cenabum.

Cenabum, -i, n. (Cd), Cenabum (sēn'a-büm), now Orleans.

Cenimagni, -orum, m. (Ad), the Ceni-magni (sēn'i-mag'nii).

Cenomani, see Aulerci.

cēnsus, cēnsēra, cēnsūl, cēnsum, tr., think, decide (acc. and inf.); propose, advise, vote (ut and subj.); propose, vote for (acc.). I, 35.
cēnsus, -us, m., enumeration. I, 29.

centum, (C), indicd. card. num., a hundred. I, 2.

centuriō, -onis, m. [centum, a hundred], centurion, the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion. I, 39; II, 17.
cēptō, see capiō.
cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, tr., separate; see, perceive.
certāmen, -inis, n. [certō, strive], strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, 14.
certē, adv. [certa, certain], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, 25.
certus, -a, -um, adj. [for crētus, pf. part. of cernō], decided; certain, sure, fixed; certōrem facere, to inform (acc. and inf.); order (ut or nē and subj.); certior fari, be informed. I, 7.
cervus, -i, m., stag.
cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., the rest of, the remainder; as noun, the rest, remaining, others. I, 32; II, 3.

Ceutronēs, -um, m., the Ceutrones (söl'tro-nēz), (I), (Dg), I, 10. (2), (Af).
Cherusci, -örum, m. (Abl), the Cherusci (Cèrùsii), a German tribe.

cibarius, -a, -um, adj. [cibus, food], pertaining to food; n. pl. as noun, provisions; molita cibaria, meal, flour. I. 5.
cibus, -i, m., food. IV. 1.

cicerö, -önus, m., Quintus Tullius Cicero (kwintius tumlius sis'ë-rö), brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.


Cimbrö, -örum, m., the Cimbri (sim-bë-rii). I. 33; II. 4.

Cingetorix, -iger, m., Cingetorix (sin-jë-ör-rëks), (1) a chief of the Treveri; (2) a British king.

cingö, cingere, cingxi, cinctum, tr., encircle, surround, invest, encompass; man (a wall). I. 38.
cippus, -i, m., palisade, stockade.
circius, -ii, m. [circus, circle], a pair of compasses. I. 38.
circiter, adv. [circus, circle], about, near. I. 15.

circuitus, -us, m. [circumeo, go around], a going around; a winding path; circumference, circuit. I. 21.

circum, prep. with acc. [circus, a circle], around, about, near. I. 10.

circumcidö, -cidere, -cidii, -clsum, tr. [caedö, cut], cut around or off, cut; isolate.

circumcidualö, -ciudere, -cïni, -clusum, tr. [claudö, shut], encircle.

circumdö, -dare, -dedii,-datum, tr. [dö, put], put around, encompass, surround. I. 38; IV. 32.

circumducö, -ducere, -dëxi, -duc- 
tum, tr. [ducö, lead], lead or draw around. I. 38; III. 26.

circumdeö, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. [eö, go. App. 84], go or march around, traverse, visit. III. 25.

circumfundö, -fundere,-fëdi,-fësum, 
tr. [fundö, pour], surround; pass., gather round.

circumicio, -icere, -iöci, -iectum, tr. [iacö, throw. App. 7], throw, set or place around. II. 6.
clandestinus, -a, -um, adj. [clam, secretly], hidden, secret.
clārus, -a, -um, adj., clear, loud.
clāsis, -is, f., fleet. III, 11.
Claudius, -di, m., Appius Claudius Pulcher (āp'ī-ūs klāw/dī-ūs pūl'kēr), consul 54 B.C.
claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum, tr., shut, close; agmen claudere, close the line, bring up the rear. I, 25.
clāvus, -i, m., nail, spike. III, 13.
clēmentia, -ae, f. [clēmāns, gentle], gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, 14.
clēns, -entis, m., f. [clueō, hear, obey], client, vassal, dependent, retainer. I, 4.
clientēla, -ae, f. [clēnsa, a client], the relation of client and patron; patronage, vassalage; clients.
clīvus, -i, m., slope, ascent.
Clōdius, -di, m., Publius Clodium Pulcher (pūb'ī-ūs klō/dī-ūs pūl'kēr), murdered by Milo in 52 B.C.
Cn., abbr. for Gnaeus (nā'ūs), a Roman praenomen. IV, 1.
co-, see con-.
coacervō, i, tr. [acervō, heap up; acervus, heap], heap or mass together, pile one upon another. II, 27.
coāctus, see cōgō.
coāctus, -us, m. [cōgō, compel], compulsion.
coaquentō, 1, tr., join, connect.
coartō, 1, tr., crowd together.
Cocosātēs, -um, m. (Dc), the Cocosates (kökōs-a'tēz). III, 27.
cōgī, see cōgō.
cōmō, -emere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, tr. [emō, buy], buy up. I, 3.
coēō, -ire, -ī, —, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], assemble.
coepl, coepisse (App. 86 and a), tr., began, commenced, undertook; coepetus, pf. part., begun, commenced. I, 15.
coerceō, 2, tr. [arceō, shut up], shut up completely, restrain, check. I, 17.
cōgitō, 1, tr. and intr. [co-agitō, consider], consider thoroughly or carefully; ponder, reflect; think, purpose, app. I, 33; III, 24.
cognātiō, -ōnis, f. [co-(g)nātus, born], blood relationship; family, clan.
cognoscō, -noscere, -nōvi, -nītum, tr. [co-(g)nōscō, learn], learn, ascertain; study, investigate; pf., I have learned, I know (App. 183, I, a). I, 19.
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, tr. [co + agō, lead], lead or bring together, collect, draw together, assemble; force, compel, constrain. I, 4.
cohors, -tis, f., cohort. I, 40; II, 5.
cohortātiō, -ōnis, f. [cohortor, encourage], encouragement, cheering. II, 25.
cohortor, 1, tr. [co-hortor, encourage], encourage greatly, cheer, animate. I, 25.
collātus, see cōnferō.
collaudō, i, tr. [con-laudō, praise], praise highly.
colligō, i, tr. [con-ligō, bind], bind or fasten together. I, 25.
colligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [con-legō, gather], gather together, collect; acquire; sé colligere, collect one's self, rally. III, 6.
collis, -is, m., hill. I, 22.
collocē, i, tr. [con-lōcē, place], place, set, station; arrange; nūptum collocāre, to give in marriage. I, 18.
colloquium, -qui, n. [colloquor, talk together], talking together; conference, parley, interview. I, 34.
colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, intr. [con-lōquor, speak], speak with, converse, confer, have a conference. I, 19.
colō, colere, colui, cultum, tr., cultivate, dwell in; honor, worship. IV, 1.
colōnia, -ae, f., colony, settlement.
color, -ōris, m., color.
com-, see con-.
combrūrō, -āre, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [com(b)-brō, burn], burn up. I, 5.
comes, -itiis, m., f., companion.
comitium, -tium, n. [com+ēō, go], place of assembly or meeting; pē, an election.
comitōr, i, tr. [comes, companion], accompany, follow.
commētātus, -ās, m. [commēō, go back and forth], trip, voyage; supplies, provisions. I, 34; II, 5.

commemorō, i, tr. [memorō, call to mind], remind one of; state, mention. I, 14.

commendō, i, tr. [mandō, entrust], entrust; surrender. IV, 27.

commēō, i, intr. [meō, go], go back and forth; with ad, resort to. I, 1.

commitō, -ōnis, m. [miles, soldier], fellow soldier, comrade. IV, 25.

commūnis, adv. [manus, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, 52.

commissūra, -as, f. [committō, join], uniting, joint, juncture.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, tr. [mīttō, send], join, splice; commit (a crime), do; allow, permit; entrust; proelium committōr, join or begin battle. I, 13.

Commūnus, -mī, m., Commius (kōm′ī-ūs), a chief of the Atrebates. IV, 21.

commōdē, adv. [commōdos, convenient], conveniently; readily, easily, fitly; satis commodē, to much advantage, very easily. I, 25.

commodum, -ī, n. [commōdos, convenient], convenience, interest, advantage. I, 35; III, 22.

commodus, -a, -um, adj. [modus, measure], in full measure; convenient, suitable, satisfactory. I, 42.

commanefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [moneō, remind + faciō, make], remind forcibly. I, 19.

commorōr, i, intr. [morōr, tarry], wait, stop.

commoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move or excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate, alarm. I, 13.

commūnicō, i, tr. [commūnis, common], make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, 13.

communiō, 4, tr. [māniō, fortify], fortify strongly, intrench. I, 8.

commūnis, -a, adj., common, general; rēs commūnis, the common interest. I, 50; II, 4.

commūtātio, -ōnis, f. [commutō, change], a changing, change. I, 14.

commūtō, i, tr. [mītō, change], change or alter completely, change, exchange. I, 23.

comparō, i, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare, get ready; acquire, gain, secure prepare for. I, 3.

comparō, i, tr. [parī, equal], place in comparison, compare. I, 31.

compellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive together, assemble, collect; force, compel. II, 23.

compendium, -di, n., gain, profit.

comperīō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, tr. [parīō, procure], find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, 22.

complector, -pletī, -plexus sum, tr. [plectō, fold], embrace, clasp, enclose. I, 20.

compleō, -plēre, -plovesi, -plētum, tr. [solete, pleō, fill], fill up or completely; complete; cover. I, 24.

complexus, see complector.

complūrēs, -a, adj. [plūs, more], several, many; a great many. I, 8.

comportō, i, tr. [portō, carry], carry together, collect, bring. I, 16.

comprehendō, -prehendere, -prehendi, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendō, (=prēndō), seize], grasp or lay hold of, seize, catch, arrest; take, catch (fire). III, 14.

comprobō, i, tr. [probō, approve], approve, sanction, justify.

compulsus, see compellō.

con-, com-, co- [the forms taken by cum in composition], together; completely; or mere emphasis.

cōnātum, -i, n. [cōnōr, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 3.

cōnātus, -ūs, m. [cōnōr, try], attempt, undertaking. I, 8.

cōnātus, see cōnōr.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, tr. and intr. [cēdō, go], go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield; allow, permit. I, 7.

concessus, -ūs, m. [concēdō, permit], concession, permission.

concēdō, -cēdere, -cēdi, -cessum, tr. [casō, cut], cut down, slay, kill; cut off. I, 12.
concídu, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [cadó, fall], fall down, fall. III, 14.
concílió, I, tr. [concílium, assembly], bring together; gain or win over, secure; reconcile, concílísate. I, 3.
concíusus, see concíduó.
concító, I, tr. [cító, put in motion], stir up, rouse, instigate, incite.
concíámó, I, intr. [clámó, cry out], shout or cry out, call aloud. I, 47; III, 18.
concíduó, -clúdere, -clúsi, -clúsium, tr. [cláudó, close], shut up; concílsüum mare, an inland sea. III, 9.
Conconutodumúsus, -I, m., Conconutodumúsus (Kön-Kön's-tó-düm'nús), a chief of the Carnutes.
concépéó, -crepéere, -crepúl, -crepi-tum, intr., clash.
concurreó, -curreérre, -curri, -cursum, intr. [curré, run], run or rush together; hurry, run, rush; run to the rescue; come, gather. I, 48; II, 20.
concursó, I, intr. [freq. of concurreó], run about.
concursus, -ús, m. [concurreó, run], a running together, attack, onset; collision. I, 8.
concursus, see concurreó.
condémnó, I, tr. [dámmó, condemn], convict.
condício, -ólns, f., condition, state; agreement, stipulation, terms. I, 28.
condíneo, I, tr. [dónó, give], give up; pardon, forgive. I, 20.
Condrusi, -órum, m. (Af), the Condrusi (Kon-dru'si). II, 4.
condúco, -ducere, -dúxi, -ductum, tr. [ducó, lead], lead or bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, 4.
confectus, see concífició.
conferó, confferre, contuli, collatúm, tr. [feró, bring. App. 81], bring or get together, collect, gather, carry, bring; crowd together; ascribe to; put off, defer; compare; sê conferre, betake one's self, take refuge. I, 16.
confectusus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of confectició, crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, 24.
confestim, adv., hastily, at once, immediately. IV, 32.
conício, -ficere, -fécí, -fectum, tr. [fació, make], make or do thoroughly, complete, accomplish, finish; finish up, exhaust, weaken; furnish; dress (leather). I, 3.
conídó, -fidere, -físum, intr. [fídó, trust. App. 74], trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; coní-ísumus, pf. part. with present meaning, relying on. I, 23.
conígó, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr. [figó, fix], fasten. III, 13.
conínis, -e, adj. [finís, boundary], adjoining, contiguous.
coníniúm, -ni, n. [finís, boundary], common boundary, neighborhood.
coníarmátio, -ónis, f. [conírmó, assert], assurance. I, 18.
conírmó, I, tr. [firmó, strengthen], establish, strengthen, encourage, console; declare, assert. I, 3.
conísumus, see conídíó.
conítóer, -itéri, -ressus sum, tr. [fa-ter, confess], acknowledge, confess. coníxus, see conígó.
coníagró, I, intr. [flagró, burn], burn, be on fire.
coníctó, I, tr. [freq. of conífigó], strike together; pass., he distressed.
conífigó, -figere, -fixi, -fectum, intr. [figó, strike], strike against; contend, fight. II, 5.
conífluéns, -entis, f. [coníflué, flow together], a flowing together, confluence. IV, 18.
conífluó, -fluere, -fixi, —, intr. [fluó, flow], flow together.
conífigó, -figere, -fugi, —, intr. [figó, flee], flee, take refuge.
conífundó, -fundere, -fúdi, -fusum, tr. [fundó, pour], pour together, bring together.
congregátor, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], meet, encounter, meet in battle; join (peacefully). I, 36; II, 23.
congressus, -ús, m. [congregátor, meet], meeting, engagement, conflict. III, 13.
conício, -icere, -ieó, -lectum, tr. [iació, throw. App. 7], hurl, throw, cast;
conjectura, -ae, f. [coniicere, conjecture], inference, conjecture.

coniectus, see conicius.

coniunctim, adv. [coniungo, join], jointly.

coniungo, -iungere, -iunxi, -iunctum, tr. [iungo, join], join with or together, connect, unite, bind. I, 37; II, 3.

coniänx, -iugias, f. [coniungo, join], wife.

coniüratiä, -önis, f. [coniürö, swear together], a swearing together; plot, conspiracy; secret league, confederacy. I, 2.

coniürö, i, intr. [ürö, swear], swear or take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, 1.

cönor, i, intr., attempt, endeavor. I, 3.

coniüsscö, -quicesso, -quiëvi, -quiëtum, intr. [quiisscö, to rest, quiës, rest], lie down to rest.

coniürö, -quirera, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerö, search], seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, 27.

consciungueus, -a, -um, adj. [sanguis, blood], of the same blood; as noun, kinsman, relative. I, 11.

coniændö, -scendere, -scendi, -scænum, tr. [scandö, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, 23.

coniiscientia, -ae, f. [coniactus, conscious], consciousness, knowledge, sense.

coniisciscö, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum, tr. [sciiscö, resolve], resolve upon; sibi mortem cônisciiscere, commit suicide. I, 4.

coniicus, -a, -um, adj. [sciö, know], conscious; aware. I, 14.

coniiscrivö, -scribere, -scripei, -scriptum, tr. [scribö, write], write together in a list; levy, enroll, enlist; write. I, 10.

coniöerö, i, tr. [sacrö, dedicate], dedicate, consecrate.

coniöector, i, tr. [sector, freq. of se-
conspicor, 1, tr. [speció, look], observe, descry, perceive. I, 25.
conspírō, 1, intr. [spiró, breathe], combine, conspire. III, 10.
constanter, adv. [cónstó, stand firm], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, 2.
constantiæ, -ae, f. [cónstó, stand firm], firmness, steadfastness. I, 40.
consternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, tr. [sternō, stew], strew over, cover over. IV, 17.
consternō, 1, tr. [cónsternō, -ere, strew over], confound, perplex, dismay.
constipō, 1, tr., press or crowd closely.
constituō, -stituere, -stitūtum, tr. [status, set up], set up, erect, construct; appoint, decide, decree, determine, establish, set, settle; (of troops) draw up, station; (of ships) anchor, station; raise (a legion). I, 3.
cónstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm; depend on; be complete; cost; impersonal, it is agreed, certain, evident, known. III, 5.
constrātus, see cónsternō.
cónsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, intr. [suēscō, become used], become accustomed; yf. (App. 193, I, a), be accustomed, be wont; cónsuētus, yf. part. as adj., accustomed, usual, wonted. I, 14.
cónsuētūdō, -inās, f. [cónsuēscō, become accustomed], habit, custom, practice; mode of life. I, 31; II, 17.
cónsuētus, see cónsuēscō.
cónsul, -ulis, m., a consul, one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people. I, 2.
cónsulātus, -ūs, m. [cónsul, consul], consulship. I, 35.
cónsulō, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr. and intr.; tr., take counsel, consult, consider; intr. with dat., take counsel for, study the interests of, take care of; spare. I, 53.
cónsultō, 1, intr. [freg. of cónsulō, take counsel], reflect, consider, take counsel.
cónsultō, adv. [cónsulō, take counsel], deliberately, designedly, on purpose.
cónsultum, -ĭ, n. [cónsulō, take counsel], result of deliberation; decree, enactment, decision. I, 43.
cŏnsāmō, -sāmēre, -sāmpī, -sāp-tum, tr. [sāmō, take], take together or all at once; devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11.
cŏnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxi, -sur-rēctum, intr. [surgō, rise], arise together or in a body; arise.
contabulō, 1, tr. [tabula, board], floor over, build in stories, build up.
contāgiō, -ōnis, f. [contingō, touch], contact.
contāminō, 1, tr., corrupt, contaminate.
contegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr. [tēgō, cover], cover up.
contemnō, -temnerēs, -tempsēi, -temp-tum, tr. [temnō, scorn], despise, disdain.
contemptō, -ōnis, f. [contemnō, despise], disdain, contempt. III, 17.
contemptus, -ūs, m. [contemnō, despise], contempt; an object of contempt. II, 30.
contendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tendent, tr. and intr. [tendō, stretch], push forward, hasten; march; strive, contend, fight; be anxious for; maintain, insist. I, 1.
contentiō, -ōnis, f. [contendō, strive], striving, struggling, contest, dispute. I, 44.
contentus, -a, -um, adj. [yf. part. of contineō, restrain], satisfied, contented.
contexō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr. [texō, weave], weave or bind together, connect. IV, 17.
contigi, see contingō.
continēns, -entīs, adj. [pres. part. of contineō, hold together], holding together; continuous, unbroken; neighboring; as noun, mainland, continent. III, 28.
continenter, adv. [continēns, continuous], without interruption, continually, continuously. I, 1.
continentia, -ae, f. [continentō, hold], self-restraint, moderation.
continentō, -tīnere, -tīnui, -tēntum, tr. [tensō, hold], hold together; hold, keep, restrain; bound, shut in; contain; sē continentēre, with abl., remain in, on or within. I, 1.
contingō, -tīnere, -tīgī, -tāctum, tr. and intr. [tangō, touch], touch, reach; extend to; befall, happen to. I, 38.
continuātiō, -onis, f. [continuus, continuous], continuance, succession. III, 29.
continuō, adv. [continuus, continuous], immediately, forthwith.
continuus, -a, -um, adj. [continentō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48; IV, 34.
cōntiō, -onis, f. [for conventiō; conveniō, come together], assembly, mass-meeting; address (before such a meeting).
contra, adv. and prep. with acc.: (1) as adv., against him or them; on the other hand; contra atque, contrary to what; (2) as prep., against, contrary to; opposite, facing. I, 18.
contrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw or bring together, assemble, collect; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34; IV, 22.
contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [contrā, against], lying over against, opposite, facing; ex contrāriō, on the contrary. II, 18.
contrōversiā, -ae, f. [contrā, against + versus, turned], dispute, quarrel, controversy.
contuli, see cōnferō.
contumēlia, -ae, f., affront, indignity, insult; injury, violence. I, 14.
convalēscō, -valēscere, -valui, —, intr. [valēscō, incept. of vallēs, be well], gain health or strength, recover.
convallis, -is, f. [vallis, valley], enclosed valley, defile. III, 20.
convehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry or bring together, collect.
conveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, tr. and intr. [veniō, come], come together, assemble; convene, meet; come to, arrive; to be agreed upon; impersonal, be convenient, suitable, necessary. I, 6.
conventus, -ūs, m. [conveniō, come together], a coming together, meeting, assembly; court. I, 18.
convertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr. and intr. [vertō, turn], turn completely, turn or wheel around; turn, change; signa converserē, face about. I, 23.
Convictolitāvis, -is, m., Convictollāvis (coni-vict-o-lī-tā-vis), a Has-duan chief.
convincō, -vincere, -vicī, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely; prove. I, 40.
convocō, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call together, summon, assemble. I, 16.
corrīor, -orīri, -ortus sum, intr. [co- + orīre, rise], arise, spring up, break out. III, 7.
cōpia, -ae, f., supply, plenty, abundance, number; pl., resources; forces, troops. I, 2.
cōplōsus, -a, -um, adj. [cōpia, plenty], well supplied, wealthy. I, 23.
cōpula, -ae, f., grappling-hook. III, 13.
cor, cordis, n., heart; cordi esse, be dear.
cōrām, adv., face to face, in person. I, 32.
Coriosolitēs, -um, m. (Bb), the Coriolis (Coriolis [kōr'iol'i-tēz]). II, 34.
corōnum, -rī, n., skin, hide, leather.
cornū, -ūs, n., horn; (of an army) flank, wing. I, 52; II, 23.
corōnā, -ae, f., wreath, chaplet; ring, circle; sub corōnā vēndēre, sell at auction. III, 16.
corpus, -oris, n., body; person; a (dead) body. I, 25.
corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, tr. [con + rumpō, break], destroy, ruin.
cortex, -icis, m., f., bark. II, 33.
Cōrōnus, -i, m., the northwest wind.
Cotidianus, -a, -um, adj. [cotidiē,
cudus, -ūs, m. [colō, cultivate], cultivation; civilization; mode of life; dress. I, 1.
cum, conj., when, as, while; after, as soon as; whenever; since, because; although; cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also, both . . . and; cumprimum, as soon as. See App. 238-242. I, 1.
cum, prep. with abl., with, along with, together with. I, 1.
cunctātiō, -ōnis, f. [cūnctor, delay], delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, 18.
cūnctor, 1, intr., delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, 23.
cunctus, -a, -um, adj. [for cūnctus, joined together], all together, all. II, 29.
cunāsītium, adv. [cūnus, wedge], in wedge-shaped masses.
cūnus, -ī, m., wedge, wedge-shaped mass.
cūniculus, -ī, m., burrow; tunnel, mine. III, 21.
cupīdā, adv. [cupīdus, desirous], desirously, eagerly. I, 15.
cupīdītās, -tātis, f. [cupīdus, eager], eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, 2.
cupīdus, -a, -um, adj. [cupīō, desire], eager, desirous, zealous, fond. I, 2.
cupiō, cupere, cupivi, cupitum, tr. and intr., long or be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, 18.
cūr, inter rog. and rel. adv., why, for what reason; for which reason, wherefore. I, 40; IV, 16.
cūra, -ae, f., care, attention. I, 33.
cūrō, I, tr. [cūra, care], care for, take care of, provide for; with gerundive (App. 285, II, b), have, order. I, 13.
curru, -ūs, m., chariot; wagon. IV, 33.
cursus, -ūs, m. [currō, run], running, speed; course, career; passage, voyage. I, 48; II, 23.
custōdia, -ae, f. [custōs, guard], custody, guard (state of being guarded); pl., guards, keepers. II, 29.
custōdiō, 4, tr. [custōs, guard], guard.
custōs, -ōdis, m., guard, watchman, spy. I, 20.
DEFERO

D., abbr. for praemomen Decimus (dēs-i-mūs). III, 11.

D., sign for quingenti, five hundred. III, 22.

d. = diem. I, 6.

Dāci,-ōrum, m., the Daci (dā'i'i) or Dacians, the inhabitants of Dacia, on the Danube.

damnō, 1, tr. [damnum, damage], declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, 4.

damnum, -ī, n., loss.

Dānuvius, -vi, m. (Bhl), the Danuvius (da-nū'vi-ūs), better, the Danube.

dē, prep. with abl., originally denoting motion from; (1) of place, from, down from, away from, out of; (2) of time, just after, about; (3) variously translated in other relations, about, concerning, of, from, in accordance with, for. I, 1.

dēbēō, 2, tr. [dē+habēō, have], have, or keep from some one; owe; with inf., ought, must; pass., be due. I, 11.

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go from or away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake; die. I, 31.

decem (X), indecl. card. num., ten. I, 4.

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate; decide], decide; vote, decree. II, 35.

dēcērto, 1, intr. [certō, contend], fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely or earnestly, vie, contend. I, 44; II, 10.

dēcessus, -ūs, m. [dēcēdō, depart], departure; ebb, fall (of the tide). III, 13.

Decetia,-ae, f., (Ce), Decetia (dē-se' shya), a town of the Haedu, now Decize.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr. [cadō, fall], fall from or off. I, 48.

decimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [decem, ten], tenth. I, 40; II, 21.

dēcipīō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [cāpī, take], entrap; deceive. I, 14.

dēclārō, 1, tr. [clārus, clear], make plain, declare. I, 50.

dēclīvis, -e, adj. [clīvus, a slope], sloping downward, declining; n. pl. as noun, slopes. II, 18.

dēclīvitās, -tātis, f. [dēclīvis, sloping downward], descent.

dēcrētum, -ī, n. (dēcernō, decide), decision, decree, order.

dēcrētus, see dēcernō.

decumānus, -a, -um, adj. [decimus, tenth], of or belonging to the tenth; decuman; decumāna porta, the rear gate (of the camp). II, 24.

decurīō, -ōnis, m. [decem, ten], decurion, a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten. I, 23.

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run down hurry down. II, 19.

dēdecus, -ōris, n. [decus, honor], dishonor, disgrace. IV, 25.

dēdī, see dō.

dēdīdī, see dēdō.

dēditicium, -ī, um, adj. [dēdō, surrender], surrendered; as nouns, one surrendered, prisoner, subject. I, 27.

dēditō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō, surrender], surrender, capitulation. I, 27.

dēditus, see dēdō.

dēdō, -dre, -dīdī, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give up or over, yield, surrender; devote; sē dēdere, submit, surrender. II, 15.

dēdācō, -ducere, -duxī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead down or away, withdraw; bring, conduct, lead; influence; launch (ships); give in marriage. I, 44; II, 2.

dēfatigātō, -ōnis, f. [dēfatigō, weary], fatigue, weariness. III, 19.

dēfatigō, 1, tr. [fatigō, weary], completely weary, fatigue, tire out, exhaust. I, 40.

defectō, -ōnis, f. [defeciō, fail], falling away, desertion, revolt. III, 10.

defendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, tr. [fendō, strike], keep or ward off, repel; defend, protect. I, 11.

defensō, -ōnis, f. [defendō, defend], a defending, defence. II, 7.

defensor, -ōris, m. [defendō, defend], defender, protector; (means of) defense. II, 6.

deforō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry]. App. 81], bring from or down, carry, take; report, disclose; bring be-
fore, refer; bestow, confer; délátus (sometimes), falling; coming by chance. II, 4.

défessus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of défetiscur, grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, 25.

délciō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. and intr. [fació, make], fall, desert, fall away, revolts. II, 10.

délfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or fasten down, drive in. plant. IV, 17.

définiō, 4, tr. [fīniō, limit], mark off; define, determine.

défixus, see défígō.

défore, fut. inf. of dēsum.

déformis, -e, adj. [fōrma, form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly. IV, 2.

défigūō, -figere, -fugi, -fugitum, tr. [fugō, flee], flee from, shun. 

défuli, see désum.

déliciō, -icer, -īcei, -iectum, tr. [iaciō, throw. App. 7], hurl or cast down; dislodge; kill; poll, disappoint. I, 8.

déléctus, -ūs, m. [délciō, cast down], declivity, slope, descent. II, 8.

déinde, adv., one after the other, in turn, successively. III, 29.

déinde, adv. [dē-inde, thence], thereupon, then, next. I, 25.

délātus, see défarō.

délcto, 1, tr., delight; pass., delight in, take pleasure in. IV, 2.

délēctus, see délígō.

délēo, délère, délēvi, délētum, tr., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, 27.

délēberō, 1, tr. [libra, balance], weigh well; consider, deliberate. I, 7.

délibrō, 1, tr. [liber, bark], peel.

déluctum, -i, n., fault, offence.

délīgō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], bind or tie down, fasten, mnr. I, 53; IV, 29.

déligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], pick out, select, choose. I, 3.

délītāscō, -lītēscere, -litul, —, intr. [lātēscō, except. of lātēō, lie hidden], hide one's self, lurk. IV, 32.

démertia, -ae, f. [mēns, mind], madness, folly. IV, 13.

démētō, -metere, -messui, -messum, tr. [metē, reap], mow, reap. IV, 32.

démigrō, 1, intr. [migrō, move, migrate], move from or away, emigrate, remove. IV, 4.

démīnuō, -minuere, -minui, -minutum, tr. [minuō, lessen], lessen, diminish, impair. I, 18.

dēmittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send, thrust or let down; sink; bow; sē dēmittere, come or get down, descend; sē animō dēmittere lose courage; dēmissus, pf. part. as adj., low. I, 32.

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsē, dēemptum, tr. [dē-emō, take], take down, remove.

dēmōnstrō, 1, tr. [mōnstrō, show], point out, show, explain, describe; declare, state, say. I, 11.

dēmoror, 1, tr. [moror, delay], hinder, delay. III, 6.

dēmum, adv., at length, at last, finally. I, 17.

dēnegō, 1, tr. [negō, deny], refuse. I, 42.

dēnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [decem, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, 43.

dēnique, adv., and then, thereupon, finally at last; at least. I, 22.

dēnus, -a, -um, adj., closely set or packed thick, dense. II, 22.

dēnūntiō, 1, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give or send notice, declare, threaten. I, 36.

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsūm, tr. [pellō, drive], drive from or away, ward off. III, 25.

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perdītum, tr. [perdō, destroy], destroy utterly; forfeit, lose. I, 43; III, 28.

dēperēs, -ire, -ī, -itum, intr. [pereō, perish; ēō, App. 84], go to ruin, perish; be lost or undone.

dēpōnē, -pōnere, -posūl, -positūm, tr. [pōnō, place], lay down or aside, put away, give up; place, station, deposit. I, 14.

dēpopulor, 1, tr. [populō, lay waste], lay waste, ravage. I, 11.

dēportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry off or away. III, 12.
déposco, -poscere, -poscē, —, tr. [poscē, demand], demand; call for.

dépositus, see déposnō.

dēprecatōr, m. [dēprecor, plead for], mediator, intercessor. I, 9.

dēprecor, 1, tr. and intr. [precor, pray], pray for deliverance from; beg off; implore, plead for. II, 31.

dēprehendēre, -prehendere, -prehendē, -prehēnsum, tr. [prehendē (=prēn-
dō), seize], seize, capture, catch.

dēpugnō, 1, intr. [pugnō, fight], 'fight decisively; contend.

dēpulsus, see dēpellō.

dērectē, adv. [dērectus, straight], straight. I, 17.

dērectus, -a, -um, adj. [dērigō, put in line], straight. IV, 17.

dērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr. [regō, direct], put in line; arrange, draw up, put in order.

dērivō, 1, tr. [rivus, stream], draw off.

dērogō, 1, tr. [rogō, ask], take away, withdraw.

dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scendē, -scen-sum, intr. [scandō, climb], climb or go down, descend; have recourse (to), resort.

dēsecō, -secäre, -secul, -sectum, tr. [secō, cut], cut away or off.

dēserō, -serere, -serul, -serum, tr. [serō, entwine, join], disjoint; abandon, desert, forsake; désertus, pf. part. as adj., deserted, solitary. I, 45; II, 25.

dēsērtor, -ōris, m. [dēserō, desert], deserter.

dēsiderō, 1, tr., feel the lack of, miss, lose; desire, wish, wish for. IV, 2.

dēsidia, -ae, f., inactiveness, idleness.

dēsignō, 1, tr. [signō, mark], mark out; mean, indicate. I, 18.

dēsiliō -siliere, -silui, -sultum, intr. [sallīo, leap], leap from or down, alight, dismount. IV, 2.

dēsistō, -eistere, -eiti, -stitum, intr. [ sistō, stand], abandon, cease, give up. I, 8.

dēspectus, see dēspicēō.

dēspectus, -ās, m. [dēspicēō, look down upon], a looking down, view. III, 14.

dēspērātiō, -ōnis, f. [dēspērē, de-
spair], despair, hopelessness.

dēspērō, 1, intr. [spērō, hope], despair, be hopeless, lack confidence; désē-
πrātus, as part., from transitive mean-
ing, despair of; as adj., desperate. I, 18.

dēspicēō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [spēcēō, look], look down; look down upon, scorn, despise. I, 13.

dēspoliō, 1, tr. [spolīō, strip], deprive. II, 31.

dēstinō, 1, tr., fasten, secure; catch firmly; appoint, choose. III, 14.

dēstitī, see dēsītō.

dēstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitum, tr. [statuō, set up], set or place aside, forsake, desert. I, 16.

dēstrīngō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, tr. [stringō, bind tight], unbind, unsheathe, draw (gladium). I, 25.

dēsum, deesse, dēfūi, —, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, 40; II, 21.

dēsuper, adv. [super, above], from above. I, 52.

dēterior, -ius, comp. adj. (App. 49), worse, less. I, 36.

dēterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten away or off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, 17.

dētestor, 1, tr., execute, curse.

dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold off or back; hinder, detain. III, 12.

dētrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, draw], draw off or away, withdraw, take off, remove. I, 42; II, 21.

dētrectō, 1, tr., refuse, avoid.

dētrimentōsus, -a, -um, adj. [dētrimenti-
mentum, harm], hurtful, harmful.

dētrimentum, -I, n. [dē+terō, rub or wear out], harm, loss, injury; dis-
aster, defeat. I, 44.

dētuli, see dēfeô.

dēturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], drive off, dislodge.

dēurō, -ārire, -assum, -ustum, tr. [arō, burn], burn up, destroy.
DEUS

25

DIMITTO

deus, -1 (nom. pl., dili; dat. pl., dis), m., god, deity. I, 12.

dsustus, see deorō.

dēvehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr. [vehō, carry], carry away, bring.

dēveniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, intr. [veniō, come], come down, go, come. II, 21.

dēvexus, -a, -um, adj. [dēvehō, carry away or down], sloping; neut. pl. as noun, slopes, hill-sides.

dēvincto, -vincere, -vīci, -victum, tr. [vincō, conquer], conquer completely, subdue.

dēvōco, 1, tr. [vocō, call], call off or away; bring.

dēvoveō, -vovere, -vōvi, -vōtum, tr. [vovere, vow], vow away, consecrate, devote; dēvōtus, pf. part. as noun, a sworn follower. III, 22.

dextero, -tra, -trum, adj., on the right, right. I, 32; II, 23.

dextra, -a, -e, f. [dexter, right; sc. manus], the right hand. I, 20.

di-, see dis-.

Diablintēs, -um, m. (Bc), the Diablintēs (dīlīq-a-blīntēz). III, 9.

dīciō, -ōnis, f., dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, 31; II, 34.

dīco, 1, tr. [dīcō, say], proclaim; give over, surrender.

dīcō, dicere, dīxi, dictum, tr., say, tell, speak, express, mention; name, appoint; causam dicere, plead a case; īūs dicere, administer justice. I, 1.

dictio, -ōnis, f. [dīcō, say], speaking, pleading. I, 4.

dictum, -ī, n. [pf. part. of dīcō, say], saying, remark; command; dīctō audiēns, obedient. I, 39.

dīduōcē, -duōcre, -dūxi, -ductum, tr. [duōcō, lead], lead or draw apart; separate, divide. III, 28.

dīēs, -ēi, m. and f., day; time; in dīēs, from day to day; diem ex dīēs, day after day. I, 4.

diff-, see dis.

differō, differre, distuli, dillatum, tr. and intr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], scatter, spread; put off, defer; be different, differ. I, 1.

dificilis, -a, adj. [facilis, easy]. not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, 6.

dificultūs, -tātis, f. [difficilis, difficult], difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. II, 20.

dificulter, adv., with difficulty. Comp., dificilitus.

difiō, -fidere, -fius sum, intr. [fidō, trust. App. 74], distrust; lack confidence, despair.

difiūs, -fuere, -fiūxi, —, intr. [fuō, flow], flow in different directions, divide. IV, 10.

dinfeldō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr. [fundō, pour], pour or spread out.

digitus, -ī, m., finger; as measure of length, a finger's breadth, the 16th part of a Roman foot; digitus pollex, the thumb. III, 13.

dignitās, -tātis, f. [dignus, worthy], worthiness, dignity, merit, rank. I, 43; III, 16.

dignus, -a, -um, adj., worthy, deserving.

dil, see deus.

diūdicīō, 1, tr. [lūdīcō, Judge], decide.

dilēctus, see dilīgō.

dilēctus, -us, m. [diligō, choose], choice; levy.

diligenter, adv. [diligēns, careful], carefully; with exactness, pains or care. II, 5.

diligentia, -ae, f. [diligēns, careful], carefulness, heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, 40; III, 20.

dilīgō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [legō, choose], single or choose out, esteem highly, love.

dimētor, -mētiri, -mēnsus sum, tr. [mētor, measure], measure out or off. II, 19.

dimicātiō, -ōnis, f. [dimicō, fight], fight, contest.

dimicō, 1, intr. [micō, brandish], fight, struggle, contend. II, 21.

dimidius, -a, -um, adj. [medius, middle], divided in the middle, half; neut. as noun, a half.

dimmittō, -mittere, -misī, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send in different directions, send away or off, dismiss;
break up; let go, let slip, let pass, give up, lose. I, 18.
dir-, see dis-. dirimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, tr. [emō, take], take apart, interrupt, break off. I, 46.
diripō, -ripere, -ripul, -repidum, tr. [rapō, seize], rend or tear asunder; plunder, pilage. II, 17.
Dis, Ditis, m., Dis (dīs). Pluto (pīlōtō), the god of the lower world.
dis, see deus.
dis- (dī-, dif-, dir-), inept, prefix, apart, asunder, in different directions; negative, = Eng. un., not.
discēō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. (cēdō, go), go away, depart, retire; leave (especially with ab or ex.). I, 14.
disceptātor, -ōris, m., judge, umpire.
discernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr. [cernō, separate], separate, keep apart.
discussus, -ōs, m. [discēō, depart], departure, withdrawal, absence. II, 14.
disciplina, -ae, f. (discō, learn), learning; discipline; instruction; system. I, 40; IV, 1.
discuēō, -cluēdere, -clusi, -clusum, tr. [cluēō, shut], shut off, hold or keep apart, separate. IV, 17.
disco, discere, didici, —, —, tr. and intr., learn, be taught. I, 13.
discrimen, -minis, n., danger, critical condition.
discutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr., clear away.
disciō, -icere, -īeci, -iectum, tr. [iacēō, throw. App. 7], scatter, rout, disperse. I, 25.
dispar, -paris, adj. [pār, equal], unequal, ill-matched.
disparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], separate.
dispersōgō, -speregere, -spersēi, -spermum, tr. [spargō, scatter], scatter, disperse. I, 40; III, 28.
dispoēnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place apart or about; distribute, arrange, station. I, 8.
disputātiō, -ōnis, f. [disputō, discuss], argument, discussion.
disputō, 1, intr. [putō, reckon], discuss, debate about.
dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f. [disseminō, think differently], disagreement, dissection.
dissentō, -sentire, -sēnī, -sēnsum, intr. [sentīō, feel], differ, disagree.
disserē, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, tr. [sērō, sow], sow or set at intervals.
dissimulō, 1, tr. [simulō, make like], disguise, conceal. IV, 6.
dissipō, 1, tr., spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, 24.
dissuādeo, -suādere, -suāsī, -suāsum, intr. [suādeo, advise], advise against.
distineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr. [teneō, hold], hold or keep apart; divide, isolate. II, 5.
distō, -stāre, —, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand apart; be apart, removed or separated. IV, 17.
distrahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [trahō, drag], pull asunder, remove.
distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, tr. [tribuō, assign], assign, divide, distribute. III, 10.
distulī, see differō.
ditissimus, sup. of divers.
dīa, adv., for a long time, long; quam dīa, as long as; comp. dīātus, longer, too long, any longer; sup., dīātissimus, for the longest time. I, 14.
diurnus, -a, -um, adj. [diās, day], of the day, by day, daily. I, 38.
diūtīnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū, long], of long duration, long.
diūtūrnis, -tātis, f. [diūturnus, long], long duration. I, 40; III, 4.
diūtūrnus, -a, -um, adj. [diū, long], long. I, 14.
diversus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of divertō, turn in different directions], diverse, different; separate, remote. II, 22.
dives, divitis, wealthy, rich. Sup., ditissimus. I, 2.
Diviciacus, -i, m., Diviciacus (div[i]-shlakō, 1), a chief of the Haedu, friendly to the Romans. I, 3. (2) a chief of the Sueiones. II, 4.
Divo, -onis, m., Divico (dī’vī-kō), an Helvetian chieftain. I, 13.
dividǔ, dividere, divisă, divisum, tr., divide, separate; divisus, pf. part. as adj., divided. I, 1.
divinus, -a, -um, adj. [divus, divine], of the gods, divine, sacred. II, 31.
dö, dare, dedi, datum (App. 85), tr., give, bestow, present, grant, furnish; offer; yield, give up; in fugam dare, put to flight; dare manūs, yield; dare negōtium, with dat., employ, engage, direct. (Some compounds of dö are derived from an obsolete verb, dō, put.) I, 3.
doceō, docère, docui, doctum, tr., show, teach, instruct; inform. I, 43; II, 5.
documentum, -i, n. [docēo, teach], example; warning.
doleō, 2, intr., feel pain, be distressed or annoyed, grieve. I, 14.
dolor, -onis, m. [doleō, grieve], grief, distress, pain (physical or mental), vexation, annoyance. I, 2.
dolus, -i, m., craft, trick, treachery. I, 13.
domesticus, -a, -um, adj. [domus, house], belonging to the home, domestic; in or of one’s own land. II, 10.
domicilium, -iī, n. [domus, house], residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, 30; II, 29.
dominor, 1, intr. [dominus, master], be master, rule. II, 31.
dominus, -i, m., master.
Domitius, -ti, m., Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus (lū’shō-bar’būs), consul 54 B.C.

Domnotaurus, see Valerius.
domus, -us (App. 29, d), f., house; home; native country. I, 5.
dōnō, 1, tr. [dōnum, gift], give, present; endow with. I, 47.
dōnum, -i, n. [dō, give], present, gift.
dorsum, -i, n., back; ridge.
dōs, dōtis, f. [dō, give], a marriage portion, dowry.

Druīdēs, -um, m., the Druids, an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.
Dūbis, -is, m. (Cf.), the (river) Dubis (dū’bīs), now the Doubs. I, 38.

Dubitātiō, -onis, f. [dubītō, doubt], doubt, uncertainty; hesitation. I, 14.
dubītō, 1, intr. [dubīus, doubtful], be uncertain, doubt; hesitate, delay. I, 17.
dubius, -a, -um, adj. uncertain, doubtful. I, 3.
ducenti, -ae, -a, (CC), card. num. adj. [duo, two + centum, hundred], two hundred. I, 2.
dūcō, dūcere, dūxi, ductum, tr., lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, 3.
ductus, -us, m. [dūcō, lead], leading, command.
dum, conj., while, as long as; till, until. I, 7.
Dumnorix, -īgis, m., Dumnorix (dūm’nor-ūs), a Haeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus. I, 3.
duodecim, card. num. adj. [duo, two + decem, ten], twelve. I, 6.
duodecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [duodecim, twelve], twelfth. II, 23.
duōdēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj. [duo-
decim, twelve], twelve each, twelve at a time.
duōdēviginti, card. num. adj. [duo, two + duē, from + viginti, twenty], eighteen. I, 23.
duplex, -plicis, adj. [duo, two + plicō, fold], twofold, double. II, 29.
duplicō, 1, tr. [duplex, double], double, increase. IV, 36.
dūrtia, -ae, f. [dūrōs, hard], hardness, hardship.
dūrō, 1, tr. [dūrō, hard], make hard, harden.
Durocortorum, -i, n. (Bf), Durocorto-
rum (dūrō rō cort’ō-rūm), the capital of the Remi. now Rheims.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, rough, difficult, dangerous; severe, inclement. I, 48.
Dūrus, -i, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwīn’tus là’ber’ūs dū’rūs), a tri-
bune.
dux, ducis, m. [duco, lead], leader, guide, commander. I, 21.
E

é (only before consonants) ex (before vowels and some consonants) prep. with abl., originally denoting motion out of; (1) of place, out of, from away from; denoting position, in some phrases, on; úná ex parte, on one side; (2) of time, from, after, since; ex itinere, immediately after the march; (3) variously translated in other relations, from, out of, of, because of, in accordance with; é regiône, opposite. I, 2.

Eburônēs, -um, m. (Asg), the Eburones (ébu-ró-nēz). II, 4.

Eburovicēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Aulerdi Eburovicēs (aw-lēr'si ébu-rō-vi'sēz). III, 17.

eóscō, -discere, -didici, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, get by heart.

eéditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of édō, give out, raise up], elevated, lofty. II, 8.

eédō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give out; inflict. I, 31.

eòceō, -docēre, -docui, -docutum, tr. [docēō, teach], teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, 18.

eòcū, -ducēre, -dūxī, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead out or forth; draw (a sword). I, 10.

efémīnō, I, tr. [ex+femina, woman], make effeminate, enervate, enfeebled. I, 1.

effercō, -fercire, —, -fertum, tr., fill completely, stop up.

efferō, efferre, extulī, élātum, tr. [ex +ferō, carry. App. 81], bring or carry out, carry or take away; raise; spread or publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, 5.

efficīō, -ficere, -fécī, -fectum, tr. [ex+faciē, make], make or do completely, complete, accomplish, construct; make, cause, bring about, render. I, 38; II, 5.

effodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossum, tr. [ex+fodiō, dig], dig out.

effugī, -fugēre, -fugi, —, tr. and intr. [ex+fugīō, flee], flee from or away, escape. IV, 35.

egēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of egeo, want], in want, needy, destitute.

egeo, egēre, egul, —, intr., need, want, lack, be without or destitute.

egentās, -tātis, f. [egoē, want], poverty.

égi, pf. of agō.

ego, mei (App. 51), first pers. pron. I; pl., nōe, we, us, etc. I, 40; II, 9.

eomet, emphatic for ego, I myself, I for my part.

egrēdor, -grēdi, -gressum sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (from a ship), disembark. I, 27.

egrēgiō, adv. [ēgrēgius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, 29.

ēgrēgius, -a, -um, adj. [ē+gregus, herd], out of the common herd; excellent, superior, eminent, remarkable. I, 19.

ēgressus, see ēgrēdor.

ēgressus, -a, -um, m. [ēgrēdor, step out], a landing, landing place.

ēlicō, -icēre, -îci, -lectum, tr. [laicō, throw. App. 7], cast or drive out, expel; cast up; sē éicere, rush out, sally. IV, 7.

elus modi, of such a sort or kind, such. III, 3.

ēlābor, -lābl, -lāpsus sum, intr. [lāb-or, slip], slip away, escape.

ēlātus, see éferō.

Elavera, -ريس, n. (Ce), the river Elaver (ēl'a-ver), now the Allier.

ēlēctus, see ēligō.

elephantus, -ī, m., elephant.

Eleutēti, -ŏrum, m. (Dd), the Eleutēti (ē-lō'tē-tī).

ēlīciō, -ere, -ui, -itum, tr., draw or entice out, lure forth.

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [le-gō, choose], choose or pick out, select; ēlēctus, pf. part. as adj., picked (men, etc.). II, 4.

Elusātēs, -um, m. (Ed), the Elusates (ēlūs-sātēz). III, 27.

ēmigrō, I, intr. [migrō, migrate], depart, migrate. I, 31.

emineō, -ére, -ui, —, intr., project.
ēminus, adv. [manus, hand], aloof, at a distance, at long range.
ēmittō, -mittere, -mitteri, -mitterunt, tr. [mittō, send], let go, send out or forth, release; hurl, discharge; drop. I, 25.
emō, emere, emēri, emēptum, tr., take; buy, purchase. I, 16.
ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born from; spring up. III, 17.
änim, conj., in fact, really; for, sed enim, but in fact, however. I, 14.
ēnāntiō, 1, tr. [nāntiō, announce], report, declare, disclose. I, 4.
eō, īre, īi (lvi), ītum (App. 84), intr., go, proceed, march, pass. I, 6.
eō, adv. [old dative of iā], thither, there (in sense of thither), to the place (where, etc.), to them (it, him, etc.). I, 25.
eō, abl. of iā.
eōdem, adv. [old dative of īdem], to the same place, to the same point (result, end, etc.). I, 4.
ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj. [ephippi- um, saddle], using a saddle. IV, 2.
ephippium, -pi, n., horse-cloth, riding-pad, saddle. IV, 2.
epistula, -ae, f., letter, epistle.
Eporōdorix, -igis, m., Eporōdorix (ēpis-rō-de-ō-riks), the name of two Haeduian leaders.
epulae, -ārum, f., feast, banquet.
eques, -ītis, m. [equus, horse], a horseman, a rider; pl., cavalry. Then (as originally serving on horseback), a knight (one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate). Also, a knight (of Gaul, of a corresponding class). I, 15.
equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [eques, horseman], of or belonging to a horseman, equestrian, of cavalry, cavalry. I, 18.
equītātus, -ūs, m. [equitō, ride; equus, horse], cavalry, horsemen. I, 15.
equus, -i, m., horse. I, 22.
Eratosthenēs, -is, m., Eratosthenes (ēr-ō-stōnēs thē-nēz), a Greek geographer, born 276 B.C.
ērēctus, see ērigō.
ēreptus, see ēripio.
of breath, render breathless, exhaust; kill. II, 23.

exardescō, -ardescere, -ārsī, -ārusum, intr. [ardescō, incept. of ardeo, blaze], take fire; be inflamed or enraged.

exaudiō, 4, tr. [audiō, hear], hear (from a distance). II, 11.

excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go out or away, withdraw, retire. II, 25.

excellō, -cellere, —, —, intr., excel, surpass.

excellus, -a, -um, adj. [excellō, surpass], high.

exceptō, 1, tr. [freq. of excipīō, catch], take hold of, catch.

excīdō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [caedō, cut], hew away or down.

excipīō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. and intr. [cāpiō, take]; tr., take up, catch, receive; take up (in turn); meet, withstand; relieve (of soldiers in battle); intr., follow. I, 52; III, 5.

excitō, 1, tr. [cītō, rouse], call forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (towers); kindle (fires). III, 10.

exclūdō, -clūdere, -cūsī, -cūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent.

excogitō, 1, tr. [cōgitō, think], think out, contrive, devise, invent.

excruciō, 1, tr. [crucīō, torture; crux, cross], torture greatly, torment, rack.

excubitor, -ōris, m. [excubō, keep guard], watchman, sentinel.

excubō, -āre, -āi, -ātum, intr. [cubō, lie], lie outside; keep guard.

exculcō, 1, tr., trample, tread down.

excursiō, -ōnis, f. [excurrō, run forth], a running out or forth, sadly, sortie. II, 30.

excūsātīō, -ōnis, f. [excūsō, excuse], excuse, apology.

excūsō, 1, tr. [causa, reason], give reason for; excuse. IV, 22.

exemplum, -ī, n., example, precedent. I, 8.

exeō, -ire, -īi, -ītum, intr. [eō, go]. App. 34, go from or out, depart from, leave. I, 2.

exercēō, 2, tr., practice, train, exercise. I, 48.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, f. [exercītō, freq. of exercēō, exercise], exercise, training; practice, experience. I, 39; III, 19.

exercitātus, -ā, -um, adj. [pf. part. of exercītō, train or practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, 36; II, 20.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [exercēō, train], a trained or disciplined body of men, an army. I, 3.

exhauriō, -haurire, -hausī, -haustum, tr. [hauriō, draw], draw out; empty.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr. [agō, drive], finish, pass. III, 28.

exiguō, adv. [exiguus, scanty], meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitās, -tātis, f. [exiguus, scant], scantiness, meagerness, shortness, want. II, 21.

exiguus, -a, -um, adj., scanty, short, small, meager, limited. IV, 20.

eximius, -ā, -um, adj. [eximīō, take out], taken from the mass; hence choice, eminent. II, 8.

existimātiō, -ōnis, f. [existimō, estimate], judgment, opinion. I, 20.

existimō, 1, tr. [aestimō, estimate, reckon, think, consider]. I, 6.

exitus, -ūs, m. [exēō, go out], a going out, exit, passage; issue, result, end. III, 8.

expediō, 4, tr. [pēs, foot], set free; arrange, prepare.

expeditōr, -ōris, f. [expediō, arrange], campaign, enterprise, expedition.

expeditus, -ā, -um, adj. [pf. part. of expediō, set free], unimpeded, free, unobstructed; without baggage; light armed; as noun, a light armed soldier. I, 6.

expellō, -pellere, -pūlī, -pulsum, tr. [pellō, drive], drive out or forth, expel. II, 4.

expierō, -perīrī, -pertus sum, tr., prove, try, test, experience. I, 31; II, 16.

explō, 1, tr., atone for, expiate; avenge.

explesō, -piēre, -piēvi, -piētum, tr. [pleāō, fill], fill out or up; finish, complete.
explorātor, -ōris, m. [explōrē, search out], explorer, scout, spy. I, 12.

explorātus, -a, -um, adj. [pr. part of explōrō, search out], ascertained; sure, certain. III, 18.

explōrō, 1, tr., search or find out, investigate, spy out, reconnoiter. II, 4.

expōnē, -pōnera, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnē, place], put or set out; set on shore, disembark; draw up; set forth, explain. IV, 23.

exportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry out or away. IV, 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -posposci, —, tr. [poscō, demand], entreat, demand. exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [premo, press], press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, 32.

expugnātiō, -ānis, f. [expugnō, take by storm], a taking by assault, storming.

expugnō, 1, tr. [pugnō, fight], take or carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, II.

exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr. [quaerō, search], seek or search out, inquire, investigate. I, 41; III, 3.

exsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow out, enforce. I, 4.

exsero, -ere, -ui, -tum, tr., thrust or put out; uncover.

existentē, -sisterē, -stitī, —, intr. [sistō, stand], stand or come forth, appear, arise; ensue. III, 15.

exspectō, 1, tr. [spectō, look at], look out for, await, expect; wait to see; anticipate, apprehend. I, 11.

exspoliō, 1, tr. [spoliō, strip], rob.

extinguō, -singuere, -stinxī, -stintum, tr., put out, quench; destroy.

extīō, -stāre, -stitī, —, intr. [stō, stand], stand out, extend above.

exstruō, -struere, -struxī, -strictum, tr. [struō, build], build or pile up, rear, construct, build. II, 30.

exsul, -sulis, m. and f., an exile.

exterior, -lus, adj. [comp. of exterus. App. 44], outer, exterior.

exterreō, 2, tr. [terrēō, frighten],

frighten outright, strike with terror, scare.

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, —, tr. [timēscō, incept. of timeō, fear], dread. III, 13.

extorquēō, -torquere, -torxi, -torquētum, tr. [torquēō, twist], wrest or force from, extort.

extrā, adv. and prep. with acc., out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, 10.

extrahē, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr. [rahēō, draw], draw out; waste.

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of exterus. App. 44], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme; the farthest part of; extrēmi (ās novē), the rear; ad extrēnum, at last, at the end; as a last resort. I, 1.

extrūdēō, -trādere, -trāsi, -trāsum, tr. [trūdō, thrust], thrust or shut out. III, 12.

extuli, see afferēō.

exuō, -uere, -ui, -utum, tr., draw out or off, put or strip off, divest, despoil. III, 6.

exurē, -ūrite, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [ūrō, burn], burn up. I, 5.

F.

faber, -brī, m., workman, mechanic; carpenter.

Fabius, -bī, m. (1) Gaius Fabius (gā'yūs fā'bīūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Lucius Fabius (lū'shyūs fā'bīūs), a centurion of the 8th legion. (3) Quintus Fabius Maximus (kwī'n'tūs fā'bīūs māk'sī-mūs), victor over the Gauls 121 B.C. I, 45.

facilis, adv. [facilis, easy], easily, readily. Comp., facilīs; sup., facilīmē (App. 41). I, 2.

facilis, -e, adj. [faciō, do], easy. I, 6.

facinus -noris, n. [faciō, do], deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. I, 40; III, 9.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr. and intr.; tr., make, construct, form, do, execute (commands, etc.); give (opportunity, etc.); with ut, bring about, cause: intr., do, act. Pass., fīō, fierī, factus sum (App. 58), with passive of above meanings, and, used impersonally, result, happen, come to pass. I, 2.
fació, -onis, f. [fació, make], party, faction. I, 31.

factum, -ī, -īō, n. [pf. part. of fació, half noun, half participle], act, exploit, deed. III, 14.

factus, see fació.

facultàs, -t'às, f. [old adj., facult = faci-lis, easy], power; opportunity, chance; resources, supply. I, 7.

fágus, -ī, -a, -um, f. [fágus, beech tree or timber.

fallo, falliōns, fæellí, falsum, tr., deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, 10.

falsus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of fallō, deceive], false.

falx, falcis, f., sickle, pruning-hook; hook (for pulling down walls). III, 14.

fama, -ae, f. [fæři, to speak], common talk, rumor, report; reputation, fame.

famēs, -is, f., hunger, starvation. I, 28.

familia, -ae, f., household (including slaves); retinue (including all dependents); family. I, 4.

familíāris, -e, adj. [familia, household], personal, private; ae noun, intimate friend; rēs, personal property, estate. I, 18.

familiiāritàs, -t'ātis, f. [familiiāris, intimate], intimacy.

fās, n., indecl., right, divine right, will of Heaven. I, 50.

fastigātē, adv. [fastigātus, sloping], sloping. IV, 17.

fastigātus, -ā, -ām, adj., sloping. II, 8.

fastigium, -ī, n., the top of a gable; elevation, height; deci1vity, descent, slope.

fātum, -ī, n. [fāri, to speak], fate, lot. I, 39.

favo, favère, favēre, favē, fautum, intr., favor. I, 18.

fōx, fācis, f., firebrand, torch.

fēlicitàs, -t'às, f. [fēlīx, happy], happiness, success, good fortune. I, 40.

fēlicitér, adv. [fēlīx, happy], happily, fortunately. IV, 25.

fēmina, -ae, f., female, woman.

femur, -īnis, n., the thigh.

fera, -ae, f. [fem. of ferus, wild], wild animal.

feráx, -ācis, adj. [ferō, bear], productive, fertile. II, 4.

ferē, adv., almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, 1.

ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (App. S1), tr. and intr.; tr., bear, carry, bring; endure, suffer, support, withstand; receive; tell, report; give, render (adiō); offer, propose (termes); graviter or mo-léstē ferre, be annoyed or angry at; pass. (sometimes) rush: intr. almost = verb to he. I, 13.

ferramentum, -ī, n. [ferrum, iron], an iron tool or implement.

ferrària, -ae, f. [ferrum, iron], an iron mine.

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [ferrum, iron], of iron, iron. III, 13.

ferrum, -ī, n., iron, steel; anything made of iron, sword, spear-point. I, 28.

fertiliōns, -a, adj. [ferō, hear], fruitful, fertile, productive.

fertilitàs, -t'às, f. [fertilis, productive], productiveness. II, 4.

ferus, -a, -um, adj., wild, savage, fierce. I, 31; II, 4.

fervēcāriōns, -āre, -fēcil, -fectum, tr. [fervēō, be red hot + fació, make], heat, melt.

fervēns, -entiō, adj. [pres. part. of fervēō, be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.

fibula, -ae, f., clasp; brace, fastening. IV, 17.

fictus, sēs fīngō.

fidēlis, -ae, adj. [fīdēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, 21.

fīdēs, -ei, f. [fīdō, confīde], faith, confidence; faithfulness, loyalty, trustworthiness; allegiance, protection, dependence; pledge, assurance; fidem facere, convince or give a pledge; fidem sequi, surrender. I, 3.

fidūcia, -ae, f. [fīdō, confīde], confidence, trust, reliance.

figūra, -ae, f. [fīgō, form], form, shape, figure. IV, 25.

filla, -ae, f., daughter. I, 3.

filius, -ii, m., son. I, 3.

fīngō, fingere, finxi, fictum, tr., form, imagine, devise, invent. I, 39; IV, 5.

finīō, 4, tr. [finis, limit], limit, bound; determine, measure. IV, 16.

finis, -īs, m., boundary, limit, border,
end; pl., boundaries; territory, country. I, 1.
finītīmus, -a, -um, adj. [finīs, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; pl., as noun, neighbors. I, 2.
fiō, fieri, factus sum, see faciō.
firmīter, adv. [firmus, strong], firmly. IV, 26.
firmūdō, -inis, f. [firmus, strong], strength, firmness, solidity. III, 13.
firmō, i, tr. [firmus, strong], strength, firm
firmus, -a, -um, adj., strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, 3.
flūtus, -ae, f., pile-driver. IV, 17.
Placcus, see Valerius.
dāgitō, i, tr., demand. I, 16.
flamma, -ae, f., fire, blaze.
flexō, flexere, flexī, flexum, tr., bend, turn, direct. IV, 33.
flētus, -ūs, m. [flēō, weep], weeping, lamentation. I, 32.
fiō, i, intr., blow.
flōrenς, -entis, adj. [flōreō, flower], flourishing, prosperous, influential. I, 30; IV, 3.
flōs, flōris, m., blossom, flower.
fluctus, -ūs, m. [flūo, flow], flood, bilow, wave. III, 13.
flūmen, -īnis, n. [flūō, flow], river, stream. I, 1.
flūo, fluere, flūxi, —, intr., flow, run. I, 6.
fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, tr., dig.
foedus, -eris, n., compact, treaty, alliance.
forem = essem; see sum.
fore = futūrus esse; see sum.
foris, adv., out of doors, without.
forma, -ae, f., form, shape, appearance. III, 14.
foris, fortis, f., chance; forte, abl. as adv., by chance, perchance. II, 21.
fortis, -e, adj., strong, valiant, brave. I, 1.
fortiter, adv. [fortis, brave], bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, 11.
fortūtūdō, -inis, f. [fortis, brave], bravery, courage. I, 2.
fortūtō, adv. [fors, chance], by chance.
fortūna, -ae, f. [fors, chance], fortune, luck, chance, opportunity; lot, condition; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, 11.
fortūnātus, -a, -um, adj. [fortūna, fortune], prosperous, fortunate.
forum, -ī, n., public square, market place.
fossa, -ae, f. [pf. part. fem. of fodiō, dig], trench, ditch. I, 8.
fovea, -ae, f., pitfall.
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, tr., break, wreck; crush, discourage. I, 31; IV, 29.
frātēr, -tris, m., brother. I, 3.
frāternus, -a, -um, adj. [frāter, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, 20.
frāus, -dis, f., cheating, deception.
frēmitus, -ūs, m., a confused noise, uproar, din. II, 24.
frequēns, -entis, adj., in great numbers, in crowds. IV, 11.
frētus, -a, -um, adj., relying upon. III, 21.
frigidus, -a, -um, adj., cold. IV, 1.
frīgus, -oris, n., cold weather, cold; pl., frīgora, cold seasons. I, 16.
frōns, frentis, f., forehead; front. II, 8.
fructuosus, -a, -um, adj. [frūctus, fruit], fruitful, productive. I, 30.
frucītus, -ūs, m. [fruor, enjoy], fruit; profit, reward.
frumentarius, -a, -um, adj. [frumentum, grain], of or pertaining to grain; of placēs, fruitful, productive of grain; res frumentaria, supply of grain, provisions. I, 10.
frumentātio, -onis, f. [frumentor, get grain], getting grain, foraging expedition.
frumentor, i, intr. [frumentum, grain], get grain, forage. IV, 9.
frumentum, -ī, n., grain; pl., crops. I, 3.
fruor, frui, frūctus sum, intr., enjoy. III, 22.
frustrā, adv., without effect, in vain, to no purpose. III, 4.
frūx, -gis, f. [fruor, enjoy], fruit; pl., crops, produce. I, 28.
Füius, see Cita.

fuga, -ae, f., flight; in fugam concerere or dare, put to flight. I, 11.

fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitum, tr. and intr. [fuga, flight], intr., flee, run away, escape; tr., shun, avoid. I, 53; II, 11.

fugātīvus, -a, -um, adj. [fugīō, flee], fleeing; as noun, runaway slave. I, 23.

fugō, 1, tr. [fuga, flight], put to flight, rout.

fūmō, 1, intr. [fūmus, smoke], smoke.

fūmus, -i, m., smoke. II, 7.

funda, -ae, f., sling. IV, 26.

funditor, -ōris, m. [funda, sling], slinger. II, 7.

fundō, fundere, sub, sūsum, tr., pour, throw; rout, put to flight. III, 6.

funebris, -e, adj. [fūmus, funeral], of a funeral; n, pl. as noun, funeral rites.

fungor, fungī, functus sum, intr., perform, execute, discharge.

fūnis, -is, m., rope, cable. III, 13.

fūnus, -eris, n., funeral.

furor, -ōris, m., rage, frenzy, madness. I, 40; II, 3.

furtum, -i, n., theft.

fusile, -e, adj. [fundō, pour], liquid, molten.

fütūrus, see sum.

G.

Gabali, -ōrum, m. (De), the Gabalı (gaba'li).

Gabinius, -nī, m., Aulus Gabinius (awa'tus gab'ni:yö), consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B.C. I, 6.

gaesum, -i, n., a heavy iron javelin (of the Gauls). III, 4.

Galba, -ae, m., (1) Galba (gāl'ba), a king of the Suesiones. II, 4. (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba (sēr'vi:i-us sul-pis'hīyus gāl'ba), one of Caesar’s legates, and said to have been one of his assassins. III, 1.

gales, -ae, f., a leather helmet. II, 21.

Galīa, -ae, f., Gallia (gāl'īa), better, Gaul, including either (1) Belgium, Celtica, and Aquitania, or (2) only Celtica. See map. I, 1.
glória, -as, f., glory, renown, honor, fame, reputation. I. 2.
glórior, 1. intr. [glória, glory], glory, glory in, boast of. I. 14.
obannonitiā, -onis, m., Gobannitio (gōb'ā-nish'ō), an Arvernian chief.
gorgobina, -ae, f. (Ce), Gorgobina (gōr-gōb'ā-ō-nā), a city of the Boii after they had settled in the territory of the Helvetii.
graecus, -a, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian; pl. as noun, the Greeks. I. 29.
graecocell, -orum, m. (Dg), the Graecocell (grā-yēs'ē-lī). I. 10.
grandis, -e, adj., great, large, bulky. I. 43.
grātia, -ae, f. [grātūs, pleasing], favor, good will, gratitude, esteem, influence, popularity; grātīās agere, thank; grātiam habère, to feel grateful; grātiam referre, to return a favor; hanc grātiam referre, to return a favor in this way; grātiam inire, to gain favor; grātīa following a gen., for the purpose of, in order to. I. 9.
grātulātiō, -onis, f. [grātulor, express joy], expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I. 53.
grātulor, 1. intr. [grātūs, pleasing], express joy, congratulate, thank. I. 30.
grātus, -a, -um, adj., pleasing, agreeable, acceptable. I. 44.
gravis, -e, adj., heavy, oppressive, hard, severe, serious; advanced (in years). I. 20.
gravitās, -tātis, f. [gravis, heavy], heaviness, weight; power. IV. 3.
gravitēr, adv. [gravis, heavy], with great weight, with force; severely, seriously; graviter ferre, take to heart, be annoysed or vexed (at); graviter premere, press hard. I. 14.
gravor, 1. intr. [gravis, heavy], be unwilling. I. 35.
grudī, -orum, m. (Afr), the Grudii (grū'dī-i).
gubernator, -ōris, m., steersman, pilot. III. 9.
gustō, 1. tr., taste, eat.

habeō, 2, tr., have, hold, possess; think, consider, regard; deliver (with ērā-tionem); in animō habère, intend; rationem habère, have regard for; take care or see that (followed by an ut clause); consilium habère, form a plan; in numerō hostium habère, consider as enemies; aliter sē habère, be otherwise or different; for habère with pf. pass. part., e.g. vectigalia redempta habère, ses App. 286, b. 1. 2.
haeduus, -a, -um, adj., of the Haedu (hē-dū'i), Haeduan; as noun, a Haeduan; pl. the Haedu, possibly Haedians, one of the most powerful of the Gallic tribes. I. 3.
haestō, 1. intr. [freq. of haeresō, stick], stick or cling fast, remain fixed.
hāmus, -i, m., hook, barb.
harpagō, -onis, m., grappling hook.
harudēs, -um, m. (Ch), the Harudes (ha-rū'dēz), a German tribe. I. 31.
hau, adv., not, by no means, not at all.
helvēticus, -a, -um, adj. (Helvētius), of the Helvetii, Helvetcian.
Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. (Cgh), of the Helvetii (hēl-vē'shīl), Helvetcian; as noun, one of the Helvetii, an Helvetician; pl., the Helvetii, possibly Helvetians. I. 1.
Helvī, -orum, m. (Df), the Helvī (hēl-vī'i).
hercynia, -ae, f. (Bhi), Hercynia (hēr-sī'nī-a), the Hercynian forest.
hérēditās, -tātis, f. [hērēs, heir], inheritance.
hiberna, -orum, n. [sc. castra, camp], winter camp, winter quarters. I. 10.
hibernia, -ae, f., Hibernia (hi-bē'rī-nī-a), better, Ireland.
hic, haec, hoc, dem. pron. (App. 54), used for what is near in space, time or thought, with more emphasis than is; this, this man, woman or thing; he, she, it; abl. sing. hōc, on this account; in this respect; the (with comparatives); hic . . . ille, the latter . . . the former. See App. 170, a. I. 1.
hic, adv., here, in this place; (of a place just mentioned), there, in that place;
of an incident just mentioned), then, at this time. IV, 19.

_hiemō, _intr. [hiems, winter], pass the winter, winter. I, 10.

_hiems, -mis, f., winter time, winter. III, 7.

_hinc, _adv., from that point or place, hence.

_Hispánia, -ae, f. (Eaboc), Hispania (his-pá'ní-a), better, Spain. I, 1.

_Hispánus, -a, -um, adj., Spanish.

_homō, -inis, m., human being, man, as distinguished from the lower animals; in pl., mankind, humanity, men. I, 2.

_honestus, -a, -um, adj. [honōs, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, 53.

_honōris, -ae, -um, adj. [honōs, honor + faciō, make], conferring honor. I, 43.

_honōs, -ōris, m., honor, regard, glory, distinction; honorable position, office. I, 18.

_hōra, -ae, f., hour. The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night, (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), and hence varied according to the season. I, 26.

_horrēō, -ēre, -ui, —, _tr., shudder at, dread. I, 32.

_horribilis, -a, adj. [horreō, dread], dreadful, horrible, frightful, hideous.

_hortor, _tr., exhort, encourage, incite, urge strongly. I, 19.

_hostes, -itis, m., f., host, entertainer; guest, friend; stranger. I, 53.

_hostium, -ti, n. [hostes, host or guest], the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, 31.

_hostis, -is, m., (public) enemy or foe in distinction from inimicus, a personal enemy; pl., the enemy. I, 11.

_hūc, _adv. [old form for hóc from hic], to this place, hither, here; against these, to these. I, 38.

_humānitās, -tātis, f. [humānus, human], humanity, refinement, culture. I, 1.

_humānus, -a, -um, adj. [humō, man], natural to man, human; civilized, cultured, refined, cultivated. IV, 3.

_humilis, -a, adj. [humus, the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject, weak. IV, 8.

_humilitās, -tātis, f. [humilis, low], humility, lowness; weakness.

I.

_iacēō, -acere, -iacui, —, _intr., lie; lie slain. II, 27.

_iaciō, iacere, lēci, iactum, _tr., throw, cast, hurl; (of an agger), throw up, construct. II, 6.

_iactā, _tr. [freq. of iaciō, throw], throw or hurl repeatedly, toss about; talk about, discuss. I, 18.

_iactūra, -ae, f. [iaciō, throw], loss, sacrifice.

_iaculum, -i, n. [iaciō, throw], javelin, dart.

_iam, _adv., now, at this time; already, by this time, at last; really, indeed, even; neque iam or iam nōn, no longer; ubi iam, as soon as. I, 5.

_ibi, _adv., there, in that place. I, 10.

_ictus, -i, m., Ictus (ik'shyüs), a chief of the Remi. II, 3.

_ictus, -ūs, m., stroke, blow. I, 25.

_i, _abbr. for Isūs.

_idcirco, _adv., therefore.

_idem, _eadem, _idem (App.58), _dem. _pron. [is, this, that], the same; this very; _idem atque, the same as. I, 3.

_identidem, _adv. [idem, the same], repeatedly. II, 19.

_idōneus, -a, -um, adj., fit, suitable, adapted. I, 49; II, 8.


_ignīa, -is, m., fire. I, 4.

_ignōbilis, -e, adj. [in-+(g)nōbilis, well known], ignoble, unknown.

_ignōminia, -ae, f., disgrace, dishonor.

_ignōrō, _tr. [ignārus, not knowing], not know, be ignorant of; fail to observe, overlook. I, 27.

_ignōsco, -nōscere, -nōyi, -nōtum, _intr. [in-+(g)nōscēns, knowing; nōscō], forgive, pardon. I, 45; IV, 27.

_ignōtus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+(g)nōtus, known; nōscō, know], unknown, unfamil iar. IV, 24.
illātus, see inferō.

ille, illa, illud, gen. illius, dat. illī
(App. 59), dem. pron. (of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc., cf. hic), that, that man, woman, or thing; he, she, it; hic... Ille, the latter... the former, see App. 170. a. I, 3.

illic, adj. [ille, that], in that place, there. I, 18.

illīgō, 1, tr. [ligō, bind], attach, hold or bind together. IV, 17.

illī, adv. [old dat. of illīle, thither, to that place, there (=thither). IV, 11.

illistrīs, -e, adj., distinguished, illustrious.

Illyricum, -ī, n., Illyricum (I-lir'i-kūm), Illyria, lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province. II, 35.

imbecillītās, -tātis, f., weakness.

imber, -bris, m., a rainstorm, rain. III, 29.

imitor, 1, tr., imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e, adj., huge, immense. IV, 1.

immīneō, -minēre, —, —, intr., project, hang over; threaten, menace.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsē, -mīsium, tr. [in-mittō, send], send or let into, insert; send against, direct towards or against; trabibus immissis, beams being placed between. IV, 17.

immolō, 1, tr., sacrifice.

immortalīs, -e, adj. [in-mortālis, mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, 12.

immūnis, -e, adj. [in-mūnus, burden], unburdened, by taxes, requirements of service, etc.

imparātus, -a, -um, adj. [in-parātus, prepared; parō, prepare], unprepared, not ready.

impedimentum, -ī, n. [impediō, hinder], hindrance, obstacle, impediment; pl., baggage, luggage (of an army), baggage-train (including the draught animals). I, 24.

impediō, 4, tr. [in-pēs, foot], entangle the feet, hamper, obstruct, hinder, impede, delay.

impeditus, -a, -um, adj. [pf. part. of impediō, hinder], hindered, burdened, impeded, delayed; hindered or burdened by baggage; occupied or engaged in; at a disadvantage; of places, difficult of passage. I, 12.

impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr. [in-pellō, drive], drive or urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, 40; II, 14.

impendeō, -pendēre, —, —, intr. [in-pendeō, hang], overhang, impend. I, 6.

impēnsus, -a, -um, adj., expensive; with pretium, great. IV, 2.

imperātor, -ōris, m. [imperō, command], commander-in-chief, general. I, 40; II, 25.

imperātum, -ī, n. [imperō, command], command, order. II, 3.

imperitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-peritus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, 40; IV, 22.

imperium, -ri, n. [imperō, command], command, order; authority, sway, supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, 2.

imperō, 1, tr. and intr. [in-parō, procure], demand from, enjoin or levy upon; command, order, instruct, rule. I, 7.

impetrō, 1, tr. [in-patrō, accomplish], obtain (by request, entreaty, exertion), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (one's request); impetrāre a (ab), gain permission from, persuade. I, 9.

impetus, -ūs, m., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, 22.

implius, -a, -um, adj. [in-pius, pious], wicked.

implicio, 1, tr. [in-plioē, fold], interlace, interweave.

implōrō, 1, tr. [in-plōrō, call out], beseech, entreat, implore. I, 31.

impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [in-pōnō, place], place upon, set on, put or impose on; mount. I, 42.

importō, 1, tr. [in-portō, carry, carry or bring in. import. I, 1.

improbus, -a, -um, adj. [in-probus, good], unprincipled. I, 17.

imprōvisō, adv. [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly, without warning. I, 13.

imprōvisus, -a, -um, adj. [in-prōvi-


eus, foreseen; prōvīdeo], unforeseen, unexpected; dē imprōviāsō, unexpectedly, suddenly. II, 8.

imprōdēns, -antis, adj. [imprōduēns, prudent], imprudent, off one's guard, unwary. III, 29.

imprōdentia, -ae, f. [imprōduēns, imprudent], imprudence, want of foresight or forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, 27.

impūbēs, -eris, adj. [in- + pūbēs, mature], immature; unmarried, chaste.

impugnō, 1, tr. [in + pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assail. I, 44; III, 26.

impulsus, see impellō.

impulsus, -ūs, m. [impellō, impel], impulse, instigation.

impūns, adv. [in- + poena, punishment], without punishment. I, 14.

impūnitās, -tātis, f. [in- + poena, punishment], impunity, freedom from punishment. I, 14.

imus, sup. of inferus.

in-, negative prefix.

in, prep. with acc. and abl. With acc. (1) of motion, from one place into or towards another place, into, to; in, among; towards, for, against; at; upon; (2) of time, till, into; for, on, at; (3) other uses, in, in respect to, for, under, over, on; in diēs, from day to day; in fugam concīrēs, put to flight; in Cassarem incīderēs, meet with Caesar; summum in cruciātum vendēre, be severely punished. With abl. (1) of rest or motion within a place, in, among, over, within, throughout; on, upon; (2) of time, in, during, in the course of; on, (3) other uses, in the case of; in consequence of, in view of; on, upon; in Arāri, over the Arar; in sō, in his case; in ancoris, at anchor; in opere aesse, be engaged in the work. I, 1.

inānte, -e, adj., empty, vain, idle.

incautē, adv. [incautus, incautious], incautiously, unwarily.

incautus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + cautus, cautious; caveō, be cautious], incautious, unwary.

incendium, -di, n. [incendō, burn], fire, burning, conflagration.

incendō, -cendēs, -cendi, -cēnsum, tr. [cf. candō, shine], set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite. I, 5.

incertus, -e, -um, adj. [in- + certus, decided], undecided, uncertain, untrustworthy; indefinite, vague; disordered. IV, 5.

incidō, -cidēre, -cīdī, —, intr. [ca- dō, fall], fall into or upon; fall in with, meet; happen, arise. I, 53; II, 14.

incidō, -cidēre, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [cas- dō, cut], cut into. II, 17.

incipió, -cipēre, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr. [capió, take], undertake; begin, commence. II, 2.

incitā, -tr, tr. [citā, put in motion], set in motion; incite, arouse, urge on, stimulate, exasperate; cursū incitā- tō, at full speed. I, 4.

incognitus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + cognitus, known; cognōscō, learn], unknown. IV, 20.

incolō, -colere, -colūi, —, tr. and intr. (cōlō, cultivate), inhabit, dwell in; live. I, 1.

incolumis, -e, adj., unhurt, uninjured, safe and sound, unimpaired. I, 53; III, 6.

incommodē, adv. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconveniently, unseasonably.

incommodum, -i, n. [incommodus, inconvenient], inconvenience, disadvantage, trouble, disaster, defeat, loss, injury. I, 13.

incrēdibilis, -e, adj. [in- + crēdibilis, credible], incredible, unlikely; extraordinary. I, 12.

increpitō, 1, tr. [freq. of incrēpō, chide], chide, blame; make sport of, taunt. II, 15.

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubū- tum, intr. [cf. cubō, lie], recline upon; devote one's self to.

incursō, -ōnls, f. [incurrō, rush into or upon], invasion; onset, attack.

incursus, -ūs, m. [incurrō, rush into or upon], attack. II, 20.

incūsō, 1, tr. [causa, cause or case], bring a case or charge against; censure, upbraid, blame. I, 40; II, 15.
inde, adv., from that place, thence; then, thereupon. I, 10.

indicium, -cl. a. [indicō, disclose], disclosure, information; per indicium, through informers. I, 4.

indicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, tr. [dicō, say], say publicly, proclaim, appoint, call. I, 36.

indictus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+dictus; pf. part. of dicō, say], unsaid; causā indicā, without a trial.

indignō, adv. [indignus, unworthy], unworthily, dishonorably.

indignitās, -tātis, f. [indignus, unworthy], unworthiness; outrage, disgrace. II, 14.

indignor, 1, intr. [indignus, unworthy], deem unworthy; be indignant.

indignus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+dignus, worthy], unworthy, disgraceful.

indiligēns, -entis, adj. [in-+diligēns, careful], not careful; negligēnt, lax.

indiligenter, adv. [indiligēns, careless], carelessly. II, 33.

indiligentia, -ae, f. [indiligēns, careful], negligence.

indūcō, -ducere, -dixi, -ductum, tr. [dūcō, lead], lead or draw on; induce, influence, instigate, cover. I, 2.

indulgentia, -ae, f. [indulgeō, indulge], forbearance, clemency.

indulgeō, -dulgiere, -dulsi, —, intr., be indulgent to, favor. I, 40.

induō, -duere, -dui, -datum, tr., put on; sē induere, be impaled or pierced. II, 21.

industriē, adv. [industrius, diligent], diligently.

indūtiae, -ārum, f., truce. IV, 12.

Indutiomārus, -i, m., Indutiomarus (in-dū'ti-shō-mā'rūs), a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, -ire, -il, -itum, tr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go into; enter upon, begin; inire consilium, form; inire rationem, make an estimate, decide; inire grātiam, gain; inire numerum, enumerate. II, 2.

inermis, -e, adj. [in-+arma, arms], without arms or weapons, unarmed. I, 40; II, 27.

inermis, -is, adj. [in-+ares, skill], without skill; unmanly, cowardly. IV, 2.

infāmia, -ae, f. [in-+fāma, renown], dishonor, ill repute.

infāns, -antis, adj. [in-+fāne, speaking], not speaking; as noun, infant.

infactus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+factus, done; faciō, do], not done, unaaccomplished, unfinished.

inferior, -itus, comp. of inferus.

inferō, inferre, intuli, illātum, tr. [ferō, bear], bear into, import, inflect, cause, produce; cast into; in equum inferre, mount on a horse; causā illātā, making an excuse; signa inferre, advance the standards, attack. I, 2.

inferus, -a, -um, adj., low, below; comp., inferior, lower; inferior; ab inferiōre parte, below, down stream; sup., infimus or imus, lowest, last: with collis, the base of: ad infānum, ab infimō, at the bottom. I, 1.

infestus, -a, -um, adj., hostile; infestis signis, with standards in battle array.

inflcīo, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr.[facīo, make], stain.

infādelis, -ae, adj. [in-+fādelis, faithful], faithless, untrustworthy.

infīgō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum [figō, fix], tr., fasten in.

infimus, sup. of inferus.

infinitus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+finitus, ended; finīō, limit], endless, boundless, vast, countless.

infārmītās, -tātis, f. [infirmus, not strong], weakness; fickness, inconstancy. IV, 5.

infārmus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+firmus, strong], not strong, weak, feeble. III, 24.

inflectō, -flectere, -flexi, -flexum, tr. [flectō, bend], bend down; with reflex., become bent. I, 26.

infūō, -fluere, -fluxi, —, intr. [fūō, flow], flow into, empty into. I, 8.

infodiō, -fodere, -fodiō, -fossum, tr. [fodiō, dig], dig or cut into.

infrā, adv. [inferus, below], below; prep. with acc., below, smaller than. IV, 36.
INGENS, -entis, adj., enormous, huge, vast, large. I, 39; IV, 10.

ingrátus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + grátus, pleasing], displeasing, disagreeable.
ingredior, -redi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, go, go or come into, enter. II, 4.
iniciō, -icere, -icēi, -iectum, tr. [laciō, hurl. App. 7], throw into or upon; put or place on; inspire, infuse. I, 46; IV, 17.
inimicītia, -ae, f. [inimicus, unfriendly], enmity.
inimicus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + amicus, friendly], unfriendly, hostile; as noun, an enemy (personal), rival, to be distinguished from hostis, a public enemy. I, 7.
iniquītās, -tātis, f. [iniquus, unequal], inequality, unfairness; disadvantage. II, 22.
iniquus, -a, -um, adj. [in- + aequus, even, just], uneven; unjust, unfair; unfavorable, disadvantageous. I, 44; II, 10.
initium, -tī, n. [incē, go into], beginning, commencement, origin; cāge, of a country, borders. I, 1.
inungō, -ungere, -īnxi, -iunctum, tr. [ungō, join], join to; impose.
inuria, -ae, f. [in- + ārīs, right], wrong, injustice; outrage, injury, harm, violence. I, 7.
inuēs, abl. of inuēsus, -ēs, m. [inūō, order], without command or order. I, 19.
nāscor, -nāsi, -nātus sum, intr. [nāscor, be born], be born in, be engendered; innātus, pf. part. as adj., inborn, natural.
nnitor, -nītī, -nīxus sum, intr. [nītōr, rest upon], lean upon. II, 27.
innocēns, -entis, adj. [in- + nocēns, injurious], not injurious; innocent.
innocentia, -ae, f. [innocēns, innocent], integrity. I, 40.
inopia, -ae, f. [inops, needy], need, want, poverty, lack; want of provisions, hunger. 1, 27.
inopīnāns, -anus, adj. [in- + opināns, expecting], not expecting, not suspecting, unawares, off one's guard. I, 12.
inquam, -is, -it, def. verb, tr., used only with direct quotations. and following one or more words of the quotation, say. IV, 25.
insciēns, -entis, adj. [in- + sciēns, knowing], not knowing, unaware, ignorant. I, 19.
insciēntia, -ae, f. [insciēns, ignorant], ignorance. III, 9.
inscius, -a, -um, adj. [sciō, know], not knowing, ignorant, not aware. IV, 4.
insequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow up or after, follow-close upon, pursue. I, 15.
inserō, -serere, -serul, -serunt, tr., insert, thrust in. III, 14.
insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. [sedeō, sit], a sitting or lying in wait; ambush; ambuscade; treachery; artifice, crafty device. I, 13.
insidiō, i, intr. [insidiae, ambush], lie in ambush.
insignis, -ae, adj. [signō, mark], marked, remarkable; n. as noun, mark, sign; ornament, trapping. I, 12.
insilīō, -silire, -silū, -sultum, tr. [sallō, leap], leap upon. I, 52.
insimulō, i, tr., charge, blame, accuse.
insinuō, i, tr. [sinuō, wind], wind into; make one's way into, penetrate. IV, 33.
insistō, -sistere, -stitī, —, tr. and intr. [sīstō, stand], stand upon; stand firm, take a stand; press on, pursue; with ratiōnem, adopt, use. II, 27.
insolenter, adv. [insolēns, unwonted], unusually; arrogantly, insolently. I, 14.
inspectō, i, tr. [spectō, look], look at, view.
instabilis, -ae, adj. [in- + stabilitas, firm], not firm, unsteady. IV, 23.
instar, n., indecl. likeness; with gen., like. II, 17.
instigō, i, tr., urge on, incite.
instituō, -stituere, -stitūi, -stitūtum, tr. and intr. [statūō, set up], set up or put in order, draw up; train, educate; procure, prepare; build, construct; begin, determine, decide upon, adopt; institūtus, pf. part. as adj.,
usual, customary; finished, in addition to definitions above. I, 14.

Institütum, -i, n. [Instituō, set up, establish], a fixed course or principle; habit, institution, custom. I, 1.

Instō, -stāre, -stī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand upon or near, be at hand, press on; threaten. I, 16.

Instrümentum, -i, n. [Instruō, build], tool; apparatus, equipment.

Instrüb, -struere, -strüxi, -strüctum, tr. [strüō, build], build upon, build, construct; form, draw up in battle array; equip, furnish. I, 22.

Insuēfactus, -a, -um, adj. [suēscō, become accustomed, faciō, make], accustomed, trained. IV, 24.

Insuētus, -a, -um, adj. [in-suētus, accustomed], unaccustomed, not used to.

Insula, -ae, s., island. III, 9.

Insuper, adv. [super, above], above, on the top, from above. IV, 17.

Integer, -gra, -grum, adj., untouched, intact, whole, unimpaired; fresh; ré integrā, before anything was done. III, 4.

Integō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr. [tegō, cover], cover over; protect.

Intelligō, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr. [inter-legō, choose, select], select or distinguish between; understand; know; see, perceive, realize; find out, learn. I, 10.

Intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, tr. [tendō, stretch], stretch out or to; intentus, pf. part., intent on, absorbed in, attentive to. III, 22.

Inter, prep. with acc. (sometimes following its noun), (1) of place, among, between: (2) of time, during, within, for: (3) in other relations, among, between, in; in among or between; to; over; along with: (4) with reflex. pron., of reciprocal action, (App. 160), with, to, or from each other or one another, as, inter sē differunt, differ from one another; each other, one another, as, cohortāti inter sē, encouraging one another. I, 1.

Intercēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go or come between, lie between, intervene, be between; pass. I, 7.

Intercipiō, -cipere, -cipī, -ceptum, tr. [capō, take], take or catch between (one point and another); interrupt; intercept; cut off. II, 27.

Interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [claudō, shut], shut or cut off, separate, hinder; with itinera, block. I, 23.

Interdicō, -dicere, -dīxi, -dīctum, intr. [dicō, say], prohibit, exclude, forbid, interdict; aquā atque ignī interdicerē, forbid the use of fire and water, banish. I, 46.

Interdiū, adv. [diēs, day], during the day, by day. I, 8.

Interdum, adv. [dum, while], in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, 14.

Interē, adv. in the meantime, meanwhile. I, 8.

Interēs, -i, -iī, -iūm, intr. [eō, go]. App. 84], perish, die.

Interesse, see intersum.

Interficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -iectum, tr. [faciō, make], make away with, kill, destroy. I, 12.

Interficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -iectum, tr. [lacīō, hurl. App. 7], throw or hurl between; put or place between; interlectus, pf. part. as adj., lying between, intervening, interspersed; mediocrī interiectō spatiō, not far away. II, 17.

Interim, adv., meanwhile, in the meantime. I, 16.

Interior, -īlus, adj. (App. 43), interior, inner; as noun, interiōres, inhabitants of the interior; occupants of a town.

Interitus, -īús, m. [interōe, die], destruction, death.

Intermittō, -mittere, -missī, -missum, tr. and intr. [mittō, send], send between; intervene, separate; abate, cease, let up, discontinue; delay, neglect; omit; let pass. I, 26.

Internecīō, -ōnīs, s. [neō, destroy], extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, 13.

Interpellō, 1, tr., interrupt, hinder. I, 44.
INTERPONÔ, -pônerè, -posul, -positum, tr. [pònô, place], place between, interpose; allege; cause; fidem interpônerè, pledge. I, 42; IV, 9.

Interpres, -stis, m., f., interpreter; mediator. I, 19.

Interpretor, 1, tr. [Interpres, interpreter], explain.

Interrogô, 1, tr. [rogô, ask], ask, question.

Interrumpô, -rumpere, -rûpî, -ruptum, tr. [rumpô, break], break off or through; destroy.

Interscindô, -scindere, -scîdî, -scissum, tr. [scindô, cut, destroy], cut through, cut in two; destroy. II, 9.

Intersum, -esse, -fûl, intr. [sum, be. App. 66], be or lie between; intrude; be present at, take part in; imperse., interest, it concerns, it is important; there is a difference or an interval; magni interest, it is of great importance. I, 15.

Intervallum, -i, n. [vâllus, palisade], the space between two palisades; interval (of space or time); distance. I, 22.

Interveniô, -veniére, -vênî, -ventum, intr. [veniô, come], come between, come up; arrive.

Interventus, -âs, m. [Interveniô, come between], coming; aid. III, 15.

Intexô, -texere, -textul, -textum, tr. [textô, weave], weave in or together. II, 33.

Intoleranter, adv., intolerably; impatiently, eagerly.

Intrâ, prep. with acc. [inter, between], within, inside; into. I, 32; II, 4.

Intritus, -âs, -um, adj. [in-tritus, worn], unwaried. III, 26.

Intrô, 1, tr., go or walk into, enter, penetrate. II, 17.

Intrôducô, -ducere, -dûxî, -ductum, tr. [intrô, within+dûcô, lead], lead or bring into. II, 5.

Introeô, -ire, -i, -itum, intr. [intrô, within+eô, go. App. 84], go or come in, enter.

Introitus, -âs, m. [Introœ, go in], entrance, approach.

Intrômitô, -mittere, -mîsî, -missum, tr. [intrô, within+mittô, send], send or let in. II, 33.

Intrôrusus, adv. [intrô, within+versus, pf. part. of vertô, turn], within, on the inside. II, 16.

Intrôrumpô, -rumpere, -rûpî, -ruptum, tr. [intrô, within+rumpô, break], break in or through.

Intueor, 2, tr. [tueor, look], look at. I, 32.

Intus, adv., within, on the inside.

Inuináltus, -a, -um, adj. [in-+úsitatus, usual], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, 31.

Inûtilis, -â, adj. [in-+utilis, useful], useless, worthles; disadvantageous. II, 16.

Inveniô, -veniére, -vênî, -ventum, tr. [veniô, come], come upon, find, meet with; find out, learn. I, 53; II, 16.

Inventor, -âris, m. [Inveniô, find], inventor, author.

Inveterásco, -veteráscere, -veterâvi, -veterâtum, intr., grow old; become established. II, 1.

Invictus, -â, -um, adj. [in-+victus, conquered], unconquerable, invincible. I, 36.

Invideô, -videre, -vidî, -visum, intr. [videô, see], look askeant at; envy. II, 31.

Invidia, -ae, f. [invideô, envy], envy, hatred.

Inviolâtus, -â, -um, adj. [in-+violâtus, injured], uninjured; inviolate, sacred. III, 9.

Invitô, 1, tr., invite, summon; allure, persuade. I, 35; IV, 6.

Invitus, -â, -um, adj., against one’s wish or will, unwilling, reluctant; sê invitô, against his will. I, 8.

IoviS, see Iuppiter.

Ipsê, ipsa, ipsum, gen. ipsius (App. 59) intensive pron., self (as opposed to some one else; not to be confused with the reflexive sê, self. App. 163); himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, she, it, they; as adj., very; in gen., his, her, its, or their own. I, 1.

Irâcundia, -ae, f. [Irâcundus, irritable], irritability, anger.
IRACUNDUS

iracundus, -a, -um, adj. [ira, anger], irritable. I, 31.
irideō, -ridēre, -risi, -risum, intr. [in-+rideō, laugh], laugh, jeer. II, 30.
iridiculā, adv. [in-+ridicus, witty], without wit, unwittily. I, 42.
irrupmō, -rumpere, -rūpi-, rūptum, tr. [in+-rumpō, break], break into; rush into; force a way into, storm. IV, 14.
irruptiō, -ōnis, f. [irrupmō, break into], a breaking into, attack.
is, ea, id, gen. eius (App. 57), weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context, this, that, these, those; he, she, it, they; the, a; is locus quō, a, or the, place where; ea quae, (the) things which; eo, with comp., the; sō magis, all the more; eō ... quō, with comparatives, the ... the. I, 1.
iste, -a, -ud, gen. istius (App. 55), dem. pron. used of something near the person addressed, that, this.
ita, adv., so, thus, in this way; as follows; ut ... ita, in proportion as ... in such proportion, as ... so; nōn ita, not so very, not very; ita ... ut, just ... as; so ... that. I, 11.
italia, -ae, f., Italy, sometimes (in Caesar) including Cisalpine Gaul, but usually including only the rest of the peninsula. I, 10.
itaque, conj. [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, 9.
item, adv., in like manner, so, also, just so. I, 3.
iter, itineris, n. [eō, go], route, road; journey, march; passage; facere iter, march, travel; magnis itineribus, by forced marches. I, 3.
itrum, adv., again, a second time; semel atque iterum, again and again. I, 31.
Itius, -tī, m. (Ad), Itius (Ish’yūs), a harbor.
itūrus, see eō.
Ituba, -ae, f., mane. I, 48.
Iūdicium, -cī, n. [index, judge], judicial proceedings, trial; opinion, judgment; iūdicium facere, express an opinion; iūdictō, by design, purposely. I, 4.
Iūdicō, i, tr. [index, a judge], pass judgment on, judge, decide, determine; think, consider. I, 12.
Iugum, -I, n. [iungō, join], yoke; ridge, crest. I, 7.
Iūntum, -I, n. [iungō, join, yoke], yoke or draft animal, beast of burden. I, 3.
Iūntūra, -ae, f. [iungō, join], joining. IV, 17.
iungō, iungere, iānxis, iūntum, tr., join or unite together, attach, connect. I, 8.
iūnior, see iuvenis.
Iūnius, -ni, m., (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, see Brūtus; (2) Quintus Junius (kwin’tūs jū’ni-ūs), a Spaniard in Caesar’s service.
Iuppiter, Iovis (App. 27), m., Jupiter (jü’pī’ter), or Jove, god of the heavens, the chief god of the Romans.
Iūra, -ae, m. (Cg), the Jura (jü’ra) mountains. I, 2.
iūrō, i, tr. and intr. [iūs, right], take oath; swear. I, 31.
iūs, iūris, n., right, justice, law; rights; power, authority. I, 4.
iūs iūrandum, iāris iūrandī, n. [iūs, right+-iūrō, swear], an oath. I, 3.
iussus, m., abl. of iussus, -iūs, [iubeō, order], by command, by order.
iūstitia, -ae, f. [iūstus, just], justice, fair dealing, uprightness. I, 19.
iūstus, -a, -um, adj. [iūs, right], in accordance with law or right, lawful, valid, just, fair; proper, regular; with funera, appropriate. I, 43; IV, 16.
iuvenis, -e, adj., young; comp., iūnior, in plur. as noun, men of military age.
iuventūs, -ūtis, f. [juvenis, young], period of youth, from seventeen to forty-five years; the youth, the young men. III, 16.
Iūxtē, adv. [iungō, join], next, near. II, 26.
K.
Kal., abbr. for Kalendae, -arum, f., the Kalends, the first day of the Roman month. I, 6.

L.
L., abbr. for Lucaeus, Lucius (lū'bus), a Roman praenomen. I, 6.
L., sign for quinquaginta, fifty.
Laberius, -ri, m., Quintus Laberius Durus (kwī'ns ūs lā'ē-rī-dū's), a tribune.
Labienus, -i, m., Titus Atius Labienus (lī'tus ā'bus lāb'ē-nūs), Caesar’s most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45 B.C. I, 10.
labōr, labōri, lápus sum, intr., slip; go wrong; hac spē lápus, disappointed in this hope.
labor, -ōris, m., toll, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, 44; III, 5.
lāborō, 1, intr. [labor, toll], toll, work hard; be anxious, troubled, or perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, 31; IV, 26.
labrum, -ae, n., lip; edge.
lāc, lactis, n., milk. IV, 1.
lacessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum, tr., arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, 15.
lacrimō, 1, intr. [lacrima, tear], weep.
lactus, -ūs, m., lake. I, 12.
laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, tr., hurt, damage; laedere fidem, to break faith.
laetitia, -ae, f. [laetus, joyful], joy, rejoicing.
laetus, -a, -um, adj., joyful. III, 18.
languidē, adv. [languidus, faint], faintly, sluggishly.
languidus, -a, -um, adj., weak, faint, sluggish. III, 5.
languor, -ōris, m., weakness, faintness, lazzitude.
lapis, -idis, m., stone. I, 46; II, 6.
laqueus, -ae, m., noose, snare.
largior, 4, tr. [largus, large], give largely or freely; bribe. I, 18.
largiter, adv. [largus, large], largely, freely, much; largiter posse, to have great influence. I, 18.
larītūdō, -onis, f. [largior, bribe], bribery. I, 9.
lasseitūdō, -onis, f. [lassus, weary], weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, 23.
lātē, adv. [lātus, wide], widely, extensively; longō lātēque, far and wide. I, 2.
latebra, -ae, f. [lātē, lie hidden], hiding place.
lateō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr., escape notice, lurk, lie concealed or hidden. II, 19.
lāttītūdō, -onis, f. [lātus, wide], width, extent, breadth. I, 2.
Latrobrigi, -ōrum, m. (Br.), the Latorbrigi (lā'tō-brī'jī), a Gallic tribe east of the Rhine. I, 5.
latrō, -ōnis, m., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, 17.
latrōcinium, -nī, n. [latrō, robber], robbery, brigandage.
lātus, -a, -um, adj. broad, wide, extensive. I, 2.
lātus, see ferō.
latus, -eris, n., side; wing or flank of an army. I, 25.
laudō, 1, tr. [laus, praise], praise.
laus, laudis, f., praise, commendation; renown, popularity, glory. I, 40; IV, 3.
lavō, lavāre, lávi, lautum, tr., wash; in pass., bathe. IV, 1.
laxō, 1, tr., stretch out, extend, open. II, 25.
lēgātiō, -onis, f. [lēgō, delegate], embassy,legation; commission. I, 3.
lēgātus, -ī, m. [lēgō, delegate], one with delegated powers; ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, 7.
lēgīō, -onis, f. [lēgō, choose], a legion. I, 7.
lēgĭōnārius, -a, -um, adj. [lēgīō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, 42; II, 27.
Lemmānus, -i with or without laecus, m. (Cg), Lake Lemmannus (lē-mān'ūs), better Lake Leman, or the Lake of Geneva. I, 2.
Lemovices, -um, m. (CDd), the Lemovices (lēmô′vīsā). 45

libēns, -e, adj., gentle, mild, smooth. IV, 25.

lēntās, -ātās, f. [lēnis, smooth], smoothness, gentleness. I, 12.

lēniter, adv. [lēnis, smooth], softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, 8.

Lepontīi, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Lepontii (lē-pōn′ shīl). IV, 10.

lepūs, -ōris, m., hare.

Leūci, -ōrum, m. (Bf), the Leuci (lē-vā′sī). I, 40.

Levāci, -ōrum, m. (Af), the Levaci (lē-vā′sī). 45

levis, -e, adj., light (in weight), light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, 10.

levitās, -ātis, f. [levis, light], lightness; fickleness, restlessness. II, 1.

levō, 1, tr. [levis, light], lighten, ease, relieve.

lēx, lēgis, f., law, statute, enactment. I, 1.

Lexovii, -ōrum, m. (Bd), the Lexovii (lēk-sō′vīl). III, 9.

libentem, adv. [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. I, 44; III, 18.

līber, -era, -erum, adj., unrestrained, free; undisputed. I, 44.

līberāltās, -ātās, f. [līber, free], freedom in giving, etc.; generosity. I, 18.

līberālīter, adv. [līber, free], gladly, generously, kindly. II, 5.

līberē, adv. [līber, free], freely, without restraint, boldly. I, 18.

līberī, -ōrum, m. [līber, free], the free members of the household (as opposed to slaves); children. I, 11.

līberō, 1, tr. [līber, free], make or set free, release, deliver. IV, 19.

līberātās, -ātās, f. [līber, free], freedom, liberty, independence. I, 17.

librīlis, -e, adj. [librā, a pound], of a pound weight; funda librīlis, a sling for throwing heavy missiles.

licēns, see līceor.

licentia, -ae, f. [licest, it is permitted], lawlessness, presumption.

līceor, 2, intr., bid (at an auction). I, 18.

licest, līceā, līcuit and līcitum est, intr., impera., it is lawful, one has permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; līcēt mini, I may; peters ut līcesat, to ask permission. I, 7.

Liger, -eris, m. (Cec), the river Liger, (lī′jér), better the Loire. III, 9.

 lignātiō, -ōnis, f. [lignum, wood], the procuring of wood.

 lignātor, -ōris, m. [lignum, wood], one sent to get wood, wood-farer.

līlium, -li, n., lily; a kind of pitfall, named from its resemblance to a lily.

linea, -ae, f. [linum, flax], linen thread; line.

Lingonēs, -um, m. (Bf), the Lingones (lin′go-nēz). I, 26.

lingua, -ae, f., tongue; language. I, 1.

lingula, -ae, f. [lingua, tongue], a little tongue; a tongue of land. III, 12.

linter, -tris, f., skiff, rowboat, canoe. I, 12.

linum, -i, n., flax; linen, canvas. III, 13.

līs, lītīs, f., strife; lawsuit; damages.

Liscus, -i, m., Liscus (lis′kūs), a chief magistrate of the Haedu. I, 16.

Litaviccus, -i, m., Litaviccus (lī′ta-vīk′ūs), a Haeduuan nobleman.

littera, -ae, f., a letter of the alphabet, a written sign, mark, or character; in pl., letters of the alphabet; letter, epistle. I, 26.

lītus, -ōris, n., seashore, beach, shore. IV, 23.

locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.), place, position, locality, situation; topic, subject; condition, state; rank, family; opportunity; obsidium locō, as hostages. I, 2.

locitus, see loquor.

longē, adv. [longus, long], far, far away, distant; longē lātēque, far and wide. I, 1.

longinquis, -a, -um, adj. [longus, long], far off, distant, remote; long, long continued. I, 47; IV, 27.

longituōdō, -ōnis, f. [longus, long], length, extent; long duration. I, 2.

longurius, -ri, m. [longus, long], a long pole. III, 14.
longus, -a, -um, adj., long, distant; of long duration; tedious. I, 40; II, 21.

loquor, loqui, locutus sum, intr., speak, talk, converse. I, 20.

lorica, -ae, f., coat of mail; parapet, breastwork.

Lücanus, -̣ni, m. Quintus Lucanus (kwin’tus lů-kā’ni-tüs) a centurion.

Lucerius, -̣ri, m., Lucerius (lů-kēr’i-us), a chief of the Cadurci.

Lugotorix, -̣rigis, m., Lugotorix (lů-gōt’ō-rīks), a British chief.

lūna, -ae, f., the moon. I, 50; IV, 29.

Lutetia, -ae, f. (Be), Lutetia (lů-tē’te-shä), the capital of the Parisii, now Paris.

lūx, lūcis, f., light, daylight; primā lūce, at daylight. I, 22.

lūxuria, -ae, f., luxury, high living. II, 15.

M.

M., abbr. for Marcus (mär’kūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 2.

M., sign for mille, thousand.

māceria, -ae, f., wall.

māchinātiō, -onis, f. [māchinor, contra-], a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, 30.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. [maereō, be sad], dejected, sad.

Magetobriga, -ae, f. (Cf, Magetobriga (mág’e-tōb’ri-ga), a Gallic town where Ariovistus defeated the Gauls. I, 31.

magis, adv., comp. [magnus, great], more, rather, in a higher degree; sup., maxime, especially, in the highest degree; mostly, mainly. I, 3.

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [magister, master], public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate. I, 4.

magnificus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, great + faciō, make], magnificent, splendid.

magnitūdō, -inis, f. [magnus, great], greatness, great size, size, extent; stature (corporum); violence (venti); severity (poenae); magnitudō animi, courage. I, 39; II, 12.

magnopere, adv. [magnus, great + opus, work], with great labor; especial-


magnus, -a, -um, adj., great (in size, quantity, or degree), large, abundant, much; important, extensive; loud (voice); high (tide); magni (gen. sing. neut.), of great importance; magnus itineribus, by forced marches. Comp., major; sup., maximus. I, 2.

maiestās, -tātis, f. [major, greater], greatness, honor, majesty.

major, māius, adj. [comp. of magnus, great], greater (in degree, size, time, etc.); older, elder; as noun, maiōrēs nātū, elders, old men; maiōrēs ancestors. I, 13.

malacia, -ae, f., a calm at sea. III, 15.

male, adv. [mālus, bad], badly, ill, adversely. Comp., pelus; sup., pessimē. I, 40.

maleficium, -ei, n. [malum, evil + faciō, do], evil doing, mischief, harm, injury. I, 7.

mālō, mālē, mālūi, — (App. 83), tr. and intr. [magia, more+volō, wish], wish more or rather, prefer. III, 8.

mālus, -ī, m., mast; pole, beam (upright). III, 14.

malus, -a, -um, adj. [evil, evil + faciō, do], evil, bad, injurious; comp., pelus, pelus; n. as noun, a worse thing; sup., pessimus. I, 31.

mandātum, -i, n. [mandō, command], charge, injunction, order, command; message. I, 35; II, 5.

mandō, i, tr. [manus, hand+dō, give], give into one’s hands; entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12.

Mandubii, -ōrum, m. (Cf, the Mandu-
bii (mān-dū’bi-I)).

Mandubractus, -cī, m., Mandubractus (mān-dū-brāk’tshūs), a British chief.

māne, adv., in the morning, early. IV, 13.

manēō, manēre, mānēi, mānsum, intr., remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36; IV, 1.

manipulāris, -ae, adj. [manipulus, manipule], of a maniple; as noun, common soldier; suus manipulāris, a soldier of his own company.

manipulus, -i, m. [manus, hand+pleō, fill], a handful (esp. of hay, about a
pole, anciently used as a standard, a company (of two centuries, the third of a cohort), maniple. II, 25.

Manlius, -ii, m., Lucius Manlius (lū'-shyūs mān'-li'-ūs), proconsul in 73 b.C. III, 20.

mānsuēfacīō, -facere, -feci, -factum (pass.), mānsuēfiō), tr. (mānsuētus, tame + facīō, make), tame.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, f. (mānsuētus, tame), gentleness, clemency, compassion. II, 4.

manus, -ūs, f., the hand; in manibus, near at hand; manū, by hand, by art; ferrea manus, a grappling-book; dare manus, yield; an armed force, troop, band, company. I, 25.

Marcomanni, -orum, m. (HJ), the Marcomanni (mār'-kō-mān'-i). I, 51.

mare, -is, n., sea; mare Oceanum, the ocean. III, 7.

maritimus, -a, -um, adj. (mare, sea), of the sea, sea; maritime, naval, on the sea; òra, the sea shore. II, 34.

Marius, -ri, m., Gaius Marius (gā'-yūs ma'-ri'-ās), the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutoni. I, 40.

Mārs, -tis, m., Mars (mārz), god of war; war; aequō Mārte, with equal advantage.

mās, māris, adj., male; as noun, a male.

mātara, -ae, f., Celtic javelin. I, 28.

mātēr, -tris, f., mother; mātēres fami- liae, matrons. I, 18.

māteria, -ae, f., material; wood, tim- bcr. III, 39.

māterior, 1, intr. (māteria, material, wood), procure wood.

Mātiscā, -ōne, m. (Cf), Mātisco (mā-tis'kō), a city of the Haeduī, now Macon.

mātrimōnium, -ni, n. (mātēr, mother), marriage, wedlock, matrimony; in mātrimōnium dare, to give in marriage; in mātrimōnium ducere, to marry (said of the man). I, 3.

Mātrons, -ae, m. (Be), the river Matro- na (māt'rō-nā), now the Marne. I, 1.

mātūrē, adv. (mātūrus, ripe), early, speedily, soon. I, 33; IV, 6.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūrui, —, intr. (mātūrus, ripe), become ripe, ripen.

mātūrō, 1, tr. and intr. (mātūrus, ripe), ripen; quicken, accelerate; make haste, hasten. I, 7.

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., ripe; early. I, 16.

maximē, see magic.

maximus, -a, -um, adj. (sup. of magna, great. App. 42), greatest, largest. I, 3.

Māxi-mus, -i, m., Quintus Fabius Max- imus (quīn'-tūs fā'-bī-ūs māk'-sl-mūs), victor over the Gauls, 121 b.C. I, 45.

medeor, medēri, —, intr., remedy, cure.

mediocris, -cre, adj. (medius, the middle of), middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20.

mediocris, -cre, adv. (mediocris, moderate), moderately; nōn mediocris, in no small degree. I, 39.

Mediomatrici, -orum, m. (Bfg), the Mediomatri (mē-di-ō-mātrī-si). IV, 10.

mediterraneus, -a, -um, adj. (medius, middle + terra, land), midland, inland.

medius, -a, -um, adj., in the middle of; in the middle, intervening, intermediate; locus medius utriusque, a place midway between the two. I, 24.

Meldi, -orum, m. (Be), the Meldi (mēl'-di).

mcior, comp. of bonus.

membrum, -i, n., member of the body, limb. IV, 24.

memini, -isse (App. 86), tr., remember, bear in mind. III, 6.

memoria, -ae, f. (memor, mindful), the faculty of memory; recollection, memory, remembrance; tradition; memoria tenēre, remember; patrum memoriā, in the time of our fathers. I, 7.

Menapii, -orum, m. (Afg), the Menapii (mē-nā'pl-i). II, 4.

mendācium, -ci, n., lie, falsehood.

mēns, mentis, f., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought; disposition, feelings; mentēs animōsequ, minds and hearts; alienātā mente, bereft of reason. I, 39; III, 19.

mēnsis, -is, m., month. I, 5.

mēnsura, -ae, f. (mētior, measure), measure.
mentio, -onis, f. naming, mention.
mercator, -oris, m. [mercor, trade], merchant, trader. I, 1.
mercaturae, -ae, f. [mercor, trade], a commercial enterprise, trade.
Mercurius, -ri, m., Mercurius (mēr-kū-rī-ús), the god Mercury.
mercē, and mero, 2, tr., deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn, incur (odium); serve as a soldier (i.e., earn pay). I, 11.
meridīnus, -a, -um, adj. [meridiēs, midday], of midday or noon.
meridiēs, -ēi, m. [for mediēs, from mediūs, middle, day], the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, 50.
meritus, adv. [meritum, desert], justly, deservedly.
meritum, -i, n. [mercor, deserve], desert, merit, service; favor, kindness, benefit. I, 14.
Messēla, -ae, m., Marcus Valerius Messala (mār′kus vā-lēr′i-ús mē-sā′la), consul, 61 B.C. I, 2.
mētior, mētīri, mēnsue sum; tr., deal or measure out, distribute. I, 16.
Metiośedum, -i, n. (Be), Metiosedum (mē′shyō′-sē′dūm), a town of the Senones, now Melun.
Mētius, -ti, m., Marcus Metius (mār′kus mē′shyō′). I, 47.
metō, metere, messui, messum, tr., mow, reap. IV, 32.
metus, -ūs, m. [metuō, fear], fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension; metu territūre, terrify; hoc metu = metu lūnus res; from fear of this. IV, 4.
meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. pron. [cf. oblique cases of ego], my, mine, my own. IV, 25.
miles, -itis, m., soldier, private soldier; infantry (opposed to equites); militēs imperāre, levy soldiers upon. I, 7.
militia, -ae, f. [miles, soldier], military service, warfare.
mille, indecl. num. adj., a thousand; pl. as noun, milia, -ium, n., thousands, (usually followed by part. gen.); milia passuum, thousands of paces, miles. I, 2.
Minerva, -ae, f., Minerva (mī-nēr′vā), goddess of wisdom and the arts.
minimē, adv. [minimus, least], least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, 1.
minimus, -a, -um, sup. of parvus.
minor, comp. of parvus.
Minucius, -iī, m., Lucius Minucius Bassus (lū′shyō′ mī′nū′shyō′ bás′iūs), a commander of cavalry.
iminō, minuere, minul, minūtum, tr. and intr. [minus, less], lessen, impair, diminish; settle (contra-versāsiae); minuentē aestū, the tide ebbing. I, 20.
iminuō, adv. comp. [parvus, little], less; not at all, too little; quō minus, see quōminus. I, 2.
miror, 1, tr. and intr., wonder or marvel at; wonder, be astonished. I, 32.
mirus, -a, -um, adj [miror, wonder at], strange, astonishing; mirum in modum, surprisingly. I, 34.
missar, -era, -erum, adj., wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate; poor, worthless. I, 32; II, 28.
missicordia, -ae, f. [misereō, pity+cor, the heart], pity, mercy, compassion. II, 28.
miseror, 1, tr. [miser, wretched], bewail, lament over, deplore. I, 39.
is, see mittō.
missus, -ūs, m. [mittō, send], a sending, dispatching; missū Caesaris, sent by Caesar.
missus, see mittō.
mittissimē, superl. adv. [mitis, mild], very mildly or gently.
mittō, mittere, misi, missum, tr., send, send off, dismiss, let go, dispatch; hurl, discharge. I, 7.
mōbilis, -e, adj. [moveō, move], changeable. IV, 5.
mōbilītās, -tātis, f. [mōbilis, movable], movability, activity; speed.
MOBILITER 49

changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, 1.

mobiliter, adv. [mobilitas, movable], readily, easily. III, 10.

moderor, I, tr. [modus, limit], manage, govern, control, guide. IV, 33.

modestia, -ae, f. [modus, limit], moderation, self-control, sobriety of behavior.

modo, adv. [modus, measure], with measure or limit; only, merely; even, just, at least, but; of time, just now, recently; non modo ... sed etiam, not only, ... but also. I, 16.

modus, -i, m., measure, quantity, size; manner, method, style; eius modi, of such a kind, such; abl., modo, with gen., in the character of, like. I, 41; II, 31.

moenia, -i, m. pl., defensive walls, city walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses. II, 6.

mōlēs, -is, f., mass; dike. III, 12.

molesté, adv., with annoyance; molestē ferre, be annoyed. II, 1.

mōlimentum, -i, n. [mōlīor, exert one’s self], effort, difficulty. I, 34.

molitus, -a, -um, see molō.

molīō, 4, tr. [molīs, soft], soften, make easy.

molīlis, -ae, adj., soft; smooth; weak. III, 19.

molīlitia, -ae, f. [molīlis, soft], weakness.

molīlītis, -ēī, f. [molīlis, soft], weakness.

molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, tr., grind. I, 5.

mōmentum, -i, n., weight, influence, importance.

Monā, -ae, f., Monā (mō'na), an island off the coast of Britain, probably the Isle of Man.

moneō, 2, tr., warn, advise, instruct, order. I, 20.

mōnōs, montis, m., mountain; mountain range; hill, height. I, 1.

mora, -ae, f., delay. II, 15.

morbūs, -i, m., illness, sickness, disease.

Morīnī, -ōrum, m. (Ae), the Morīnī (mōr'īni). II, 4.

morīor, morī, mortuus sum, intr. [mors, death], die. I, 4.

Morītāsgus, -i, m., Morītāsgus (mōr'ītāsgus), a chief of the Semones.

mōrō, 1, tr. and intr. [mōra, a delay], delay, hinder; tarry, linger. I, 26.

mōrs, -tis, f., death; sibi mortem consiciscere, commit suicide. I, 4.

mortuus, see morīor.

mōs, mōris, m., manner, custom, practice; pl., customs, habits; character. I, 4.

Mossa, -ae, m. (ABf), the river Mosa (mō'sa), now the Meuse or Maas. IV, 9.

mōtus, -ōs, m. [moveō, move], movement, motion; political movement, rising, disturbance. IV, 23.

moveō, movēre, mōvi, mōtum, tr., set in motion, move; affect, influence; with castra, move camp from one place to another, or break camp. I, 16.

mulier, -arēs, f., woman; wife. I, 29.

mūliō, -ōnis, m. (mūlius, mule), mule driver, muleteer.

multītādō, -inis, f. [multus, much], a great number, multitude; the multitude, the common people, the populace. I, 2.

multō, 1, tr., fine, deprive ons of something as a fine.

multē, adv. [abl. of multus, much], by far, much.

multum, adv. [acc. of multus, much], much, very, greatly, especially; comp. plūs, more; plūs possē, be more able or powerful, have more influence; sup. plūrimum, most, very; plūrĭnum possē, be most powerful; be very powerful or influential. I, 3.

multus, -a, -um, adj., much, great; pl. many; with abl. denoting time when, late; as noun, many persons or things; comp. plūs, plūria, more; as noun, more; pl. more, several, many; sup., plūrĭmus, -a, -um, most; pl. very many. I, 3.

mūlus, -i, m., a mule.

Munātius, -tī, m., Lucius Munātius Plancus (lū'shyūs mú-nā'shyūs plāng'kūs), a lieutenant of Cæsar.

mundus, -i, m., universe, world.
munimentum, -i, a. [mūniō, fortify].
defense, fortification. II, 17.
mūniō, 4, tr., defend with a wall,
fortify, defend, protect; mūnitus, p.
part. as adj., fortified, defended,
protected, I, 24.
mūnītīō, -ōnis, f. [mūniō, fortify],
fortifying; fortification, rampart,
works, intrenchments. I, 8.
mūnus, -ēris, m., duty, service, task;
present. I, 43.
mūrālis, -ēs, adj. [mūrus, wall],
pertaining to a wall, mural; mūrale pi-
lum, mural javelin, *a heavy javelin
to be thrown from the top of a wall.* III,
14.
mūrus, -i, m., a wall. I, 8.
musculus, -i, m. [dim. of mus, mouse],
shed, mantlet.
mutilus, -a, -um, adj., mutilated, broken.

N.
nactus, -a, -um, see nanciscor.
nam, conj., for. I, 12.
Nammēlius, -i, m., Nammēlīus (nā-mē-
Nammētēs, -um, m. (Cc), the Nammētes
namque, conj. [nam, for], for. I, 38;
III, 13.
nanciscor, nanciscī, nactus sum, tr.,
get, obtain possession of; meet with,
find. I, 53; IV, 23.
Nantuātes, -lum, m. (Cdγ), the Nantu-
Narbō, -ōnis, m. (Ee), Narbo (nār'bō),
now Narbonne. III, 20.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, intr., be
born or produced; rise, spring up, be
reared; be found. II, 18.
Nasua, -ae, m. Nasua (nāsh'ū-a), a
leader of the Suebi. I, 37.
nātālis, -e, adj. [nāscor, be born],
pertaining to birth; diēs, birthday.
nātēs, -ōnis, f. [nāscor, be born], race,
tribe, people, nation. I, 53; II, 25.
nātivus, -a, -um, adj. [nāscor, be
born], native; natural.
nātūra, -ae, f. [nāscor be born], na-
ture; natural disposition, character;
constitution. I, 2.

nātus, -ās, m. [nāscor, be born], birth:
maiōrēs nātū, greater by birth, elders.
II, 13.

nātus, -a, -um, see nāscor.
nauta, -ae, m. [for nāvīta; nāvīs,
ship], sailor. III, 9.

nauticus, -a, -um, adj. [nauta, sailor],
pertaining to sailors; nautical, naval.
III, 8.
nāvālis, -e, adj. [nāvīs, ship], pertaining
to ships, naval. III, 19.

nāviculo, -ae, f. [dim. of nāvīs, ship],
small boat, skiff. I, 53.
nāvīgātīō, -ōnis, f. [ēnāvīgō, sail],
sailing, navigation; voyage. III, 9.

nāvīgium, -gi, m. [ēnāvīgō, sail], a sail-
ing vessel, ship, craft. III, 14.
nāvīgō, 1, intr. [nāvīs, ship], set sail,
sail. III, 8.
nāvīs, -is, f., ship, boat; nāvīs longa,
galley, ship of war; nāvīs onerāria,
transport. I, 18.
nāvō, 1, tr., do zealously or well. II, 25.
nē (App. 188, b), (1), conj. with subj.,
that ... not, so that ... not, in order that
... not, lest; after verbs of fear-
ing, that, lest. (2), adv., not; nē ... quidem
(enclosing the emphatic word), not even. I, 4.

ne-, nec-, neg-, inseparable negative
prefixes.

-ne, interrog. enclitic: in direct ques-
tions, simply sign of a question (App.
213, a); in indirect questions, whether;
-nē ... -ne, -ne ... an, utrūm
... -ne, whether ... or. I, 50; IV, 14.

cenc, see neque.
necessāriō, adv. [abl. of necessārius,
necessary], necessarily, of necessity,
unavoidably. I, 17.
necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [necessē,
necessary], necessary, requisite, press-
ing; with tempus, critical; as noun,
kinsman, friend. I, 11.
necessē, indecl. adj., necessary, un-
avoidable, indispensable. IV, 5.
necessitās, -tātis, f. [necessē, neces-
sary], necessity, constraint, need. II,
11.

necessitūdō, -inis, f. [necessē; cf.
necessārius, friend], friendship,
alliance. I, 43.
nece, conj. [nec, nor—which, or not. I. 50.
necō, i., tr. [nex, death], put to death, kill, murder. I. 33, III. 15.
néquid, conj. adv. [né, not (c)ubil, where], that nowhere, lest anywhere.
nefārius, -a, -um, adj. [nēfas, sin], wicked, impious.
nēfas, n., indecl. [nē—fās, divine right], contrary to divine right; sin.
neque, conj. [nē—que, and], and at all, nor.
neg-, see ne-
neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr. [neg—legō, choose, regard], not heed, disregar, neglect. I. 35; III. 10.
negō, i., tr. and intr. say no, refuse, say... not. I. 8.
negōtor, i., intr. [negōtium, business], carry on business, traffic, trade.
negōtium, -tī, n. [neg—ōtium, leisure], concern, business, undertaking; trouble, difficulty, labor; negōtium dare, employ, direct; quid negōti, what business; nihil negōti, no difficulty. I. 34; II. 2.
Netmetēs, -um, m. (Bh), the Nemetes (nēmētēs). I. 51.
nēmō, acc. nēminem, m. and f. [nē—homō, man], no man, no one, nobody. I. 18.
nēsquāquam, adv. [nē—squāquam, in any way], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV. 23.
nēques (nec) (App. 188, a), conj. [nē—que], and not, nor; but; nēque... neque, neither... nor. I. 4.
nēquiquam, adv. [nē—quī(d)quam, anything], in vain, to no purpose. II. 27.
Nervicus, -a, -um, adj. [Nervius], of the Nervii. III. 5.
Nervius, -a, -um, adj. (Aet), of the Nervii; m. sing. as noun, one of the Nervii; m. pl. as noun, the Nervii (nērīvī). II. 4.
nervus, -ī, m., sinew; in pl., vigor, strength, power. I. 20.
neu, see nēve.
neuter, -tra, -trum (gen. -trīus, dat. -trī), adj. used as noun, [nē—uter, which of two], neither; in pl., neither side, neither party. II. 9.
nēve (neu) (App. 188, b), conj. [nē—ve, or], and not, nor. I. 26.
nex, necis, f., violent death, death, execution. I. 16.
nihil, indecl. noun, n., nothing; with gen., no, none of; acc. as adv., not, not at all, by no means; nōn nihil, something. I. 11.
nihilō, adv., by no means; nihilō minus, nevertheless; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless. I. 5.
nimius, -a, -um, adj. [nimia, too much], beyond measure, too great, excessive.
nisi, conj. [nē—si, if], if not, except, unless. I. 22.
Nituobrogēs, -um, m. (Dd), the Nituobroges (nishī-'ōbrōjēs).
nitor, nīti, nīxus sum, intr., rest or rely upon; exert one's self, strive, endeavor. I. 13.
nix, nīvis, f., snow.
nōblis, -a, adj. (nōscō, know), well known, distinguished, noted; of noble birth, noble; as noun, a noble. I. 2.
nōbilitās, -tātis, f. [nūbilia, well known], celebrity; noble birth, nobility, rank; the nobility, the nobles. I. 2.
nocē, nocērs, nocētum, intr., injure, hurt; nocēns, pres. part. as noun, guilty person. III. 13.
nocēta, adv. [nōx, night], by night. I. 8.
nocēturnus, -a, -um, adj. [nox, night], at night, nocturnal, nightly. I. 88.
nōdis, -ī, m., knot; joint.
nōlō, nōlē, nōlui, —— (App. 82), tr. and intr. [nē—vōlō, wish], not wish, be unwilling; refuse; imp. nōlī or nūlīte, with inf. (App. 219), do not. I. 16.
nōmen, -inis, n., name, title; reputation, prestige; nōmine with gen., in the name of, as; suō nōmine, on his or their own account, personally. I. 13.
nōminātim, adv. [nōmīnō, name], by name; expressly; in detail. I. 29.
nōminō, i., tr. [nōmen, name], call by name, name, mention. II. 18.
nōn (App. 188, a), adv., not; no. I, 3.
nōndum, adv. [nōn, not+dum], not yet. I, 6.
nōnus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj., ninth. II, 23.
Nōrei̇a, -ae, f. (Ck) Noreia (nō- rē'ya), a town in Noricum, now Neumarkt. I, 5.
Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., pertaining to Noricum (a country between the Danube and the Alps), Norican. I, 5.
nōs, see ego.
nōscō, nōsecere, nōvä, nōtum, tr., learn, become acquainted or familiar with; nōvä, pf., have learned, hence, know; nōtus, pf. part. as adj., known, well known, familiar. III, 9.
nōmet, see egomet.
nōster, -stra, -strum, pose. adj. [nōs, we], our, ours, our own; in pl. as noun, our men, our troops. I, 1.
nōtitia, -ae, f. [nōscō, know], knowledge, acquaintance.
nōtus, -a, -um, see nōscō.
novem, indecl. card. num. adj., nine.
Noviodūnum, -i, n., Noviodunum (nō- vi-ō-du'nūm) (1) the capital of the Sueiones, the modern Solssons (Be); (2), a city of the Bituriges (Ce); (3), a city of the Haeduùs (Ce). II, 12.
novitās, -ātis, f. [novus, new], newness; strangeness, novelty. IV, 34.
novus, -a, -um, adj., new, novel, unusual; fresh; rēs novae, a change of government, revolution; susp., novisimūs, -a, -um, latest, last; as noun or with agmen, those in the rear, the rear. I, 9.
nox, nocte, f., night; media nox, middle of the night, midnight; multā nocte, late at night. I, 26.
nɔxia, -ae, f., crime, offense.
nūbō, nūbere, nūpel, nūptum, trntr., veil one's self for the marriage ceremony, marry. I, 18.
nullō, I, tr. [nullus, bare], strip, uncover, make bare, expose. II, 6.
nullus, -a, -um, adj., naked, unclothed, bare; exposed, unprotected. I, 25.
nōlīus, -a, -um, gen., nōlīus, adj. [ne+nullus, any], not any, no; as noun, no one, none; nōn nūllus, some; as noun, some, some persons. I, 7.
num, interrog. particle implying the expectation of a negative reply. I, 14.
nūmen, -inis, n., divinity; divine will.
numerus, -ī, m., number, quantity, amount; account; in numeros, with gen., among. as. I, 3.
Numidae, -ārum, m., the Numidae (num'i-dē), better the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers. II, 7.
nummus, -ī, m., coin.
numquam, adv. [ne+umquam, ever], not ever, never; nōn numquam, sometimes. I, 8.
nunc, adv., now, at present, at this time. I, 31; II, 4.
nūntiō, I, tr. [nūntiō, messenger], announce, send news, report, make known; order, direct. I, 7.
nūntius, -ī, m., messenger; message, news, report. I, 26.
numerus, -ā, adj., recently, not long ago. I, 8.
nūtus, -ās, m. [nūs, nod], nod; sign, command; ad nūtum, at one's nod or command. I, 31; IV, 29.
O.
ob, prep. with acc., on account of, for; in compounds, opposed to, to, toward, against; quam ob rem, wherefore, why. I, 4.
obaerātus, -a, -um, adj. [asē, money], in debt; as noun, debtor. I, 4.
obūcō, -būcere, -būxi, -buctum, tr. [būcō, lead], lead towards; extend, dig. II, 8.
obē, -ire, -ii, -itum, tr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go to or towards; perform, attend to.
obiciō, -icere, -īcī, -iectum, tr. [iāciō, throw. App. 7], throw against or in the way; place in front or opposite, present; expose; obiciōtus, pf. part. as adj., lying in the way or opposite, in the way. I, 28.
obitus, -ūs, m. [obēō, go to death], destruction. II, 29.
oblātus, see offerē.
obliquē, adv. [obliquus, slanting], obliquely, slantwise. IV, 17.

obliquus, -a, -um, adj., running obliquely, slanting.

obliviōr, obviviēi, oblitus sum, intr. [oblivīō, forgetfulness], forget.

I, 14.

obsecrō, 1. tr. [sacēr, sacred], implore, entreat, beseech. I, 20.

obsequentīa, -ae, f. [obsequō, comply], complaisance, compliance.

observō, 1. tr. [servō, give heed], observe, mark, watch; regard, obey; celebrate. I, 45.

obesse, -idīs, m. and f. [obsīdeo, blockade], one that is guarded, hostage; pledge, security. I, 9.

obesseō, -ōnis, f. [obsīdeo, blockade], blocking up, blockade, siege.

obsidēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, tr. [sedeō, sit], sit in the way of, obstruct, besiege, blockade. III, 23.

obsidīō, -ōnis, f. [obsīdeo, blockade], siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, 13.

obsignō, 1. tr. [signō, mark], seal, sign and seal. I, 39.

ob sistō, -sistere, -stīti, -stītum, intr. [sistō, stand], oppose, resist, withstand.

obstinātē, adv. firmly, resolutely.

obstringō, -stringere, -strīni, -strictum, tr. [stringō, tie], bind, hold under obligations, pledge. I, 9.

obstruō, -struere, -strīxi, -strīctum, tr. [struō, pile up], block up, barricade, obstruct.

obtemperō, 1. intr. [temperō, rule], be subject to rule, comply with, obey. IV, 21.

obtestor, 1. tr. [testor, witness], call to witness; beseech, entreat. IV, 25.

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinī, -tentum, tr. [tenseō, hold], hold, retain, possess, maintain; acquire, obtain. I, 1.

obtuli, see offerō.

obvenīō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come to, happen upon, meet; fall to by lot. II, 23.

obviriam, adv [via, way], in the way; to meet, towards, against.

occāsiō, -onis, f. [occidō, fall, happen], occasion, opportunity. III, 18.

occāsus, -sus, m. [occidō, fall, set], falling down, setting; with sōlis, sunset; the west. I, 1.

occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cāsum, intr. [ob+caēdō, fall], fall down, set; happen; be slain, perish; occidēns sōl, the west.

occidō, -cidere, -cīdī, -cīsum, tr. [ob+caēdō, cut, slay], cut down, kill, slay. I, 7.

occūltātiō, -onis, f. [occultō, hide], concealment.

occultē, adv. [occultus, secret], secretly.

occultō, 1. tr. [occultus, secret], hide, keep secret, conceal. I, 27.

occultus, -a, -um, adj., covered, hidden, concealed, secret; n. as noun, a hidden place, an ambush. I, 32; II, 18.

occupātiō, -onis, f. [occupō, seize], seizing; occupation, business, engagement. IV, 16.

occupō, 1. tr. [ob+capiō, take], take possession of, seize, occupy; engage, employ. I, 3.

occurrō, -currere, -curī, -cursum, intr. [ob+currō, run], run in the way of, meet; happen upon; go to, come to; oppose, counteract; occur. I, 33; II, 21.

ōceanus, -i, m., the ocean; as adj., with mare, the ocean. I, 1.

Ocelum, -i, n. (Dg), Ocelum* [Ostē-lum]. I, 10.

octāvus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighth. II, 23.

octingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight hundred. IV, 12.


Octodūrus, -i, m. (Cg), Octodurus [ōktō-dū-rus]. III, 1.

octōgēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eighty sachi, eighty.

octōgintā (LXX), card. num. adj. indecl. [octō, eight], eighty. I, 2.

octōnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [octō, eight], eight at a time, sight.
oculus, -I, m., eye. I, 12.
odium, -di, n., hatred.
offendō, -fendere, -fendi, -fēnsum, tr. [ob-fendō, strike], strike against, hurt, harm; a mínimum offendere, hurt the feelings, offend. I, 19.
offensīō, -ōnis, f. [offendō, hurt], offense. I, 19.
offerē, offerre, obtuli, oblātum, tr. [ob-ferō, bear], bring before, present; offer, confer upon, give; with sē, expose one's self to, charge upon, encounter. II, 21.
officium, -ō, n., service, allegiance, duty; official duty, business; esse, manère, or permanere in officīō, to remain faithful. I, 40; III, 11.
Olovīcō, -ōnis, m., Olovico (ō-lov'i-kō), a king of the Nītobroges.
omittō, -mittere, -misse, -missum, tr. [ob-mittō, send], let go or fall, drop; give up, neglect, disregard. II, 17.
omīnā, adv. [ōmnis, all], at all; whatever; altogether, entirely, wholly; in all, only. I, 6.
ōmnis, -a, adj., all, every, all the, every kind of; the whole, as a whole; m. pl. as noun, all, every one; all the rest; n. pl. as noun, all possessions or goods. I, 1.
onerārius, -a, -um, adj. [ōnum, burden], fitted for burdens; with nāvis, transport, freight ship. IV, 22.
onēr, 1, tr. [ōnum, load], load.
onus, -eris, n., load, burden; weight, size. II, 30.
opus, -ae, f. [opus, work], work, exertion; service; pains, attention; dare operam, give attention, take pains. II, 25.
opiniō, -ōnis, f. [opinor, think], way of thinking, opinion; impression; expectation; reputation; opinīō timōris, impression of cowardice. II, 3.
oporetet, -ēre, -vlt, —, intr. impere., it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; when translated as personal verb, must, ought. I, 4.
oppidānus, -a, -um, adj. [oppidum, town], of or pertaining to a town; in pl. as noun, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, 7.
opponē, -pōnera, -posui, -positum, tr. [ob-pōnē, place], place against or opposite, oppose; opposītus, pf. part. as adj., in front, opposite.
opportūnē, adv. [opportūnus, fit], fortunately, seasonably. IV, 22.
opportūnītās, -tātis, f. [opportūnus, fit], fitness; fit time, opportunity; advantage; with loci, favorable situation or position; with temporīs, favorable opportunity. III, 12.
opportūnus, -a, -um, adj., fit, fortunate, lucky, suitable; favorable, advantageous. I, 30; II, 8.
opposita, see oppōnē.
opprimō, -primēre, -pressi, -pressum, tr. [ob-primō, press], press down, oppress; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, 44; III, 2.
oppugnātiō, -ōnis, f. [oppugnō, storm], a storming, besieging, siege, assault, attack; plan or method of storming. II, 6.
oppugnō, 1, tr. [ob-pugnō, fight], fight against, attack, assault, storm, besiege. I, 5.
opṭātus, -a, -um, adj. [optō, wish], wished for, desired, welcome.
opṭimē, eup. of bene.
opṭimus, sup. of bonus.
opus, operis, n., work, labor; military work or works, fortifications, defenses; a work of engineering or architecture; nātūra st opere, by nature and art; opera, crafts. I, 3.
opus, indecl. noun, n. [cf. opus, work, deed], need, necessity; opus est, it is necessary, there is need, the thing needed being expressed either by the nom. or obl. (App. 149). I, 84; II, 8.
ōra, -ae, f., border, margin; coast, shore. III, 8.
ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [ōrō, speak], a speak-
ing, speech, language, words, address, argument. I, 3.

ôrâtor, -ôris, m. [ôrî, speak], speaker; ambassador, envoy. IV, 27.

ôrîs, -i, m., orb, ring, circle; orbis terrarum, the world. IV, 37.

Orcynia, -ae, f. Orcynia (ôr-sîn'î-a), some as Hercynia.

ôrîdô, -înis, m., row, tier, layer; rank, line of soldiers; arrangement, order; degree, rank; primi ôrdinês, centuries of the first rank. I, 40; II, 11.

Orgettoix, -îgis, m., Orgetorix (ôr-jê-tô-ô-rik's), a chief of the Helvetii. I, 2.

ôrîor, orîri, ortus sum, intr., arise, begin, spring up, rise, start; be born, descend; orîêns sol, the rising sun, sunrise; the east. I, 11.

ôrnmamentum, -i, n. [ôrnô, adorn], ornament; mark of honor. I, 44.

ôrî, i, tr., adorn; furnish, supply; ôrnâitus, pf. part. as adj., equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, 14.

ôrî, i, tr. [ôs, mouth], speak; beseech, entreat. I, 20.

ortus, -ûs, m. [ôrîor, rise], rising. ôs, ôris, n., mouth; face, countenance.

ôsîsî, -ôrûm, m. (Bb), the ôsîsî (ô-sî'si), a Gallic people in modern Brittany. II, 34.

ôstendô, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, tr. [obs-tendô, stretch], stretch before; present, show, bring into view, reveal; tell, declare; point out, mention. I, 8.

ôstentâtîo, -ônîs, f. [ôstentô, show], show, display; pretence, pride.

ôstentô, i, tr. [freq. of ôstendô, show], show frequently; show, exhibit.

ôtium, -tî, n., leisure, inactivity, quiet. ôvum, -i, n., egg. IV, 10.

P.
P., abbr. for Pûblius, a Roman praenomen. I, 21.

ôpûlâtîo, -ônîs, f. [ôpûlûr, forage], getting fodder, foraging. I, 15.

ôpûlâtôr, -ôris, m. [ôpûlûr, forage], forager.

ôpûlûr, i, intr. [ôpûlûrûm, fodder], forage.

ôpûlûrûm, -i, n. [cf. pâscô, fesû], fodder,provender. I, 16.

pâcô, i, tr. [pâx, peace], make peaceful, subdue, pacify; pâcûtus, pf. part. as adj., peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, 6.

pactum, -i, n. [pâcûtor, agree to], agreement; manner.

pâdus, -i, m. (Dh), the Pâdus (pâ'dûs), better, the Pô, the largest river of northern Italy.

pâene, adv., nearly, almost. I, 11.

pænitet, pænîtère, pænituit, —, tr., imper. it causes regret; makes one repent; when translated as pers. verb, repent (App. 109). IV, 5.

pâgus, -i, m., village; district, province, canton. I, 12.

palam, adv., openly, publicly.

palmâ, -ae, f., palm of the hand.

pallûs, -ûdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. I, 40; II, 9.

pallûster, -tris, -trê, adj. [pâlûs, swamp], swampy, marshy.

pandô, pandere, pandi, passum, tr., spread or stretch out, extend; passûs capillîs, with disheveled hair; passûs manibus, with outstretched hands. I, 51; II, 13.

pâr, pâris, adj., equal, like, similar; equal to, a match for; with words of number and quantity, the same; pâr atque, the same as. I, 28.

pârceô, adv. [pârcûs, frugal], frugally, sparingly.

pârceô, parcere, peperci, parsûm, intr. [pârcûs, frugal], be frugal or economical; spare, not injure.

pârens, -entis, m., f. [pâriô, bring forth], parent.

pârentô, i, intr. [pârens, parent], make funeral offerings especially for parents; avenge.

pârô, 2, intr. [cf. pâriô, bring forth], appear; obey, yield to, be subject to. I, 27.

pâriô, parere, peperi, partum, tr., bring forth; gain, acquire, win.

Parisi, -órum, m. (Be), the Parisî (pâ-ri'shâ'), a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.

pârô, i, tr., prepare, get ready; procure, acquire; prepare for, get ready for;
parátus, pf. part. as adj., ready, prepared; equipped. I, 5.

pars, partis, f., part, portion; party, faction; direction, side, place; district. I, 1.

partim, adv. [acc. of pars, part], partly, in part; partim . . . partim, some . . . others. II, 1.

partior, 4, tr. [pars, part], part, share, divide. III, 10.

partus, see parió.

parum, adv. [parvus, little], little, too little, not sufficiently. III, 18.

parvulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of parvus, little], small, insignificant; slight; parvula proelii, skirmishes; parvuli, children. II, 30.

parvus, -a, -um, adj., little, small, insignificant; comp., minor, minus, lesser, smaller; shorter; minus, as noun, less; sup., minimus, -a, -um, icast, very small. I, 8.

passim, adv., in all directions. IV, 14.

passus, -ūs, m. [pandó, extend], a pace, the distance from where the foot leaves the ground to where the same foot strikes it again, a measure of 4 feet, 10 1/4 inches (five Roman feet); mille passus or passuum, a Roman mile, 4851 feet. I, 2.

passus, see pandó and patior.

patefació, -facere, -feci, -factum, tr. [pateó, be open + fació, make], make or throw open, open. II, 32.

patefició, -feri, -factus sum, pass. of patefació.

páteus, -entis, adj. [pateó, be open], open, unobstructed, accessible. I, 10.

páteó, -ère, -ui, —, intr., lie or be open, be passable; stretch out, extend. I, 2.

pater, -tris, m., father; in pl., forefathers, ancestors; pater familias, father or head of a family. I, 3.

patien
ter, adv. [patiēns; patior, endure], patiently.

patientia, -ae, f. [patiēns; patior, endure], endurance, patience.

patiō, pati, passus sum, tr. and intr., endure, withstand, suffer; permit, slown.
beat, defeat, rout; drive out, expel. I, 7.
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, tr., weigh, weigh out; weigh out money, pay, pay out; with poenas, suffer. I, 36.
penitus, adv., deeply; far within.
per, prep. with acc., through, throughout; by means of, through the agency of, on account of, through the efforts or influence of; per sē, of their own accord, on their own responsibility; sometimes with intensive force, in itself, themselves; in composition, through, very, thoroughly, completely. I, 3.
peragō, -agere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [āgō, lead], lead through; complete, finish.
perangō, -angere, -āgi, -āctum, tr. [angus-, narrow], very narrow.
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [capiō, take], take completely, obtain; learn of, hear.
percurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run along or over. IV, 33.
percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, tr., strike or thrust through, slay.
perdiscō, -discere, -dīdi, —, tr. [discō, learn], learn thoroughly, learn by heart.
perdō, -dere, -dīdi, -ditum, tr. [dō, give], give over, ruin; perditus, pf. part. as adj., desperate, ruined. III, 17.
perdūcō, -ducere, -duxi, -ductum, tr. [dücō, lead], lead through or along, conduct, bring over, bring; construct, extend; influence, win over; draw out, prolong. I, 8.
perendinus, -a, -um, adj., after to-morrow.
pererō, -ire, -ēi, -ētum, intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], be destroyed or killed, perish. I, 52; IV, 15.
pererquitō, 1, intr. [equitō, ride], ride about, ride through or around. IV, 32.
perexiguus, -a, -um, adj. [exigus, little], very little.
perfacilīs, -e, adj. [facilis, easy], very easy. I, 2.

perfectus, see perficiō.
perferō, -ferre, -tuli, -tātum, tr. [ferō, bear], hear or carry through, convey, deliver; announce, report; submit to, endure, suffer. I, 17.
perficiō, -ficere, -feci, -fectum, tr. [faciō, make, do], make or do thoroughly or completely, complete, finish; construct, build; achieve, accomplish, cause. I, 3.
perfidia, -ae, f. [perfidus, faithless], treachery, perfidy; falsehood, dishonesty. IV, 13.
perfringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -frāctum, tr. [frangō, break], break or burst through. I, 25.
perfugia, -ae, m. [perfugia, flee for refuge], refugee, deserter. I, 28.
perfugīō, -fugere, -fugi, -fugitum, intr. [fugiō, flee], flee for refuge, take refuge; desert. I, 27.
perfugium, -gi, n. [perfugium, flee for refuge], place of refuge, refuge. IV, 38.
pergō, pergera, perrēxi, perrēctum, intr. [per + regō, keep straight], go on, proceed. III, 18.
pericilitor, i, tr. and intr. [periculum, trial, danger], try, test; be in danger or peril. II, 8.
periculōsus, -a, -um, adj. [periculum, danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, 33.
periculum, -i, n., trial, test, attempt; risk, danger, peril. I, 5.
peritus, -a, -um adj. [cf. experīor, try], tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, acquainted with. I, 21.
perītus, see perfērō.
perlēgō, -legere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [lēgō, read], read through, read.
perlūo, -luere, -lui, -lūtum, tr. [lūō, wash], wash completely, bathe; pass. as middle voice, bathe one's self.
permagnus, -a, -um, adj. [magnus, large], very large, very great.
permaneō, -manēre, -mānī, -mānsum, intr. [manēō, remain], stay through or to the end, stay, remain; continue, persist. I, 32; III, 8.
permisceō, -miscēre, -miscui, -mixtum, tr. [miscēō, mix], mix thoroughly, mingle.
permitto, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr. [mittere, send], give up or over, surrender; entrust, commit; permit. allow. I. 30; II. 3.
permixtus, see permisceō.
permoveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [moveō, move], move thoroughly, arouse, incite, excite; affect, influence. I. 3.
permulcēō, -mulcre, -mulei, -mulsum, tr. [mulcēō, soothe], soothe completely, appease. IV. 6.
perpauci, -ae, -a, adj. [pauci, few], very few, but very few; m. pl. as noun, very few. I. 6.
perpendicularum, -ī, n., plummet, plumb-line. IV. 17.
perpetitor, -petī, -pessus sum, tr. [patior, suffer], suffer, bear patiently.
perpetuō, adv. [perpetuus, continuous], continuously, constantly; forever. I. 31.
perpetuus, -a, -um, adj., continuous, uninterrupted; permanent, lasting, continual; whole, entire; n. as noun in phrase in perpetuum, forever. I. 35; III. 2.
perquirō, -quirere, -quisivī, -quisi-tum, tr. [quaerō, ask], ask about, make careful inquiry.
perrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpl, -ruptum, tr. and intr. [rumpō, break], break through, force one's way through, force a passage. I. 8.
perscribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write out, report, describe.
persequor, -sequī, -secútus sum, tr. [sequor, follow], follow through, continue in; pursue, follow up; avenge. I. 13.
persevērō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. I. 13.
perseverō, 1, intr., persist, persevere. I. 13.
persolvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, tr. [solvō, pay], pay in full; suffer [punishment]. I. 12.
perspicīō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr. [speciō, look], look or see through, view, examine, inspect; perceive, realize, learn, find out, ascertain. I. 40; II. 11.
perstō, -stāre, -stītī, -stātum, intr. [stō, stand], stand firm, persist.
persuādēō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, tr. and intr. [suādeō, advise], advise prevailingly; convince, persuade, prevail upon; inculcate: sibi persuādēri, be convinced. I. 2.
perterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I. 18.
pertināciā, -ae, f. [pertineō, hold through or fast], obstinacy, stubbornness, pertinacity. I. 42.
pertineō, -tineō, -tinuī, —, intr. [teneō, hold], hold or reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, concern; tend, aim at; eōdem pertinēre, tend to the same purpose or result, amount to the same thing. I. 1.
pertulli, see perferō.
perturbātīō, -ōnis, f. [perturbō, disturb], disturbance, disorder, confusion. IV. 29.
perturbō, 1, tr. [turō, disturb], disturb greatly, throw into confusion, embarrass, disturb; alarm, terrify. I. 39; II. 11.
pervagor, 1, intr. [vagor, wander], wander about, scatter.
perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. [venīō, come], come through; come to, arrive at, reach; of property, fail, revert. I. 7.
pēs, pedis, m., the foot; a foot, 11.65 inches in length; pedibus, on foot; pedem referre, retreat. I. 8.
pētō, -ere, -ivi or -ii, -imtum, tr. and intr., seek, hunt for, aim at, make for, attack, go to, direct one's course to or toward; seek to obtain, strive after; ask, request, beseech. I. 19.
Petrocoriī, -ōrum, m. (Dod), the Petrocoriī (pētrō-kōrī).-
Petrōnius, -nī, m., Marcus Petronius (mar'kūs pē-trō-nī-ūs), a centurion of the 8th legion.
Petrosidius, -dī, m., Lucius Petrosidius (lū'shūs pētrō-sīdī-ūs), a standard bearer.
**PHALANX**


**Pictone**, -um, m. (Ced), the Pictones (pik'to-nëz). III, 11.

plata, -tattis, f. [plus, dutiful], devotion, loyalty.


pilus, -i, m., century of soldiers; primus pilus, first century of a legion; primi pilii centurió, or primipilus, the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. III, 5.

pinna, -ae, f., feather; battlement, parapet.

**Pirúste**, -arum, m., the Pirustae (pi'rú-Te), a tribe of Illyricum.

piscis, -is, m., fish. IV, 10.

pisó, -ónis, m. (1), Marcus Fulvus Piso Calpurnianus (mär'kūs pī'us pī'us pī'sō kāl-pŭr'ne-ŭs), consul with Messelá, 61 B.C. I, 2. (2), Lucius Calpurnius Piso (lū'kī shūs kāl-pŭr'ne-ūs pī'sō), killed in the defeat of Cassius' army by the Tigríni, 107 B.C. I, 12. (3), Lucius Calpurnius Piso, Caesar's father-in-law; consul 58 B.C. I, 6. (4), Piso, an Aquitanian. IV, 12.

pix, piscis, f., pitch.

placeó, 2, intr. [cf. placó, appease], please, satisfy; often impers., seem good to one, hence, decide, resolve, determine. I, 34; III, 3.

plácídē, adv. [plácidus, calm], calmly.

plácó, 1, tr., appease.

plancus, see Munátius.

pláně, adv. [plánus, even, plain], plainly, distinctly. III, 26.

plánítíes, -ēi, f. [plánus, level], level ground, plain. I, 43; II, 8.

plánus, -a, -um, adj., even, level, flat, plain. III, 13.

plēba, plēbis, or plēbés, -ēi, f., populace, common people. I, 3.

plēně, adv. [plēnus, full], fully. III, 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [pleō, fill], full, whole, complete. III, 2.

plérīque, -aeque, -aque, adj. pl., very many, the most of; as noun, a great many, very many. II, 4.

plérumque, adv. [plérusque, the greater part], for the most part, mostly, generally; again and again, very oft. a I, 40; II, 30.

Pleumoxii, -órum, m. (Af), the Plenomoxii (plī-mōk's-i),

plumbum, -i, n., lead; plumbum album, tin.

plúrimum, see multum.

plúrimus, see multus.

plus, see multus and multum.

plúteus, -i, m., parapet; a mantelet or screen of movable shields.

póculum, -i, n., cup.

poena, -ae, f., punishment, penalty. I, 4.

pollex, -lícis, m., the thumb, with or without digitus. III, 13.

pollécitor, 2, tr. and intr. [prō + lícitor, bid, offer], hold forth, offer, promise, pledge. I, 14.

pollicitātio, -ónis, f. [pollécitor, promise], promise, offer. III, 18.

pollicitus, see pollécitor.

Pompeius, -i, m. (1), Gnaeus Pompeius (nē'us pómp-pē'yūs), better, Pompey, triumvir with Caesar and Crassus in 60 B.C., defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B.C. IV, 1. (2), Gnaeus Pompeius, an interpreter of Quintus Titurium.

pondus, -sris, n. [cf. pondō, weigh], weight. II, 29.

pōnĕ, pōnerē, posui, positum, tr. place, put, place over; lay down, set aside; station, post; regard, consider; make, build; with castra, pitch; pax, be situated; with in and abt., depend on, in addition to above meanings. I, 16.

pōns, pontis, m., bridge. I, 6.

poposcē, see poscē.

populātio, -ónis, f. [populor, ravage], ravaging, pillaging. I, 15.

populor, 1, tr., devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, 11.

populus, -i, m., the people, the mass, the crowd, as opposed to individuals; a people or nation. I, 3.

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rectum, tr. [prō + regō, keep straight], extend; porrectus, pf. part. as adj., extended, in extent. II, 19.

porrō, adv. further on; furthermore, then.
postulātum, -i, n. [postulātum, demand], demand, claim, request. I, 40; IV, 11.

potestātus, -ās, m. [potēns, powerful], chief power, supremacy. I, 31.

potentia, -ae, f. [potēns, powerful], power, authority, influences. I, 18.

potēns, -entis, adj. [pres. part. of possum, be able], powerful, influential. I, 3.
praecipuus, -a, -um, adj., especial.
praecipitātō, -clādere, -clūsī, -clūsum, tr. [prae + claudō, shut], close or shut in front, block up, close.
praecēō, -ōnis, m., herald.
praecōnīnus, see Valerius.
praecurīrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run before, hasten on before, precede; outstrip, surpass.
praedā, -ae, f., booty, plunder, spoil.
praedīcō, 1, tr. [dicō, proclaim], proclaim publicly or before others; declare, report, tell of. I, 39; IV, 34.
praedōr, 1, tr. [praedā, booty], make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, 17.
praedūcō, -duere, -duxī, -ductum, tr. [ducō, lead], lead before, construct before or in front.
praefactus, -ās, m. [praeficīō, place over], overseer, prefect, commander, officer, captain (usually of cavalry). I, 39; III, 7.
praefero, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, tr. [ferō, bear, bring. App. 81], place before, esteem above, prefer to with quam; praeferre sé alicui, surpass. II, 27.
praeficīō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [facīō, make], make before; place over, put in command of, put at the head of, place in charge of. I, 10.
praefigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], fix or set in front.
praeful, see praesum.
praemeturū, -metuere, -metulī, -metum, intr. [metūō, fear], fear beforehand, be apprehensive.
praemittō, -mittere, -mise, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send before or in advance. I, 15.
praemulūm, -mi, n., distinction, prize, reward. I, 43; III, 18.
praeoccupō, 1, tr. [occupō, setze], seize upon beforehand, preoccupy, take possession of.
praeoptō, 1, tr. [optō, wish], wish before; prefer. I, 25.
praeparō, 1, tr. [parō, prepare], prepare beforehand, provide. III, 14.
praepōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr. [pōnō, place], place before or over, put in command of, put in charge of. I, 54.
praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpĭ, -rup tum, tr. [rumpō, break], break off, tear away; praeruptus, pf. part. as adj., steep, precipitous. III, 14.
praesaepō, -aeptīre, -aeptī, -aeptum, tr. [saepō, hedge], hedge or block up.
praescribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr. [scribō, write], write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe, dictate to. I, 36; II, 20.
praescriptum, -ī, n. [praescribō, order], order, dictation, command. I, 36.
praesēns, -entīs, pres. part. of praesum.
presentia, -ae, f. [praesēns; prae sum, be present], presence; the present moment; in praeventā, for the present; then. I, 15.
presaentīō, -sentēre, -sēnsī, -sēnsūm, tr. [sentīō, feel], feel beforehand, foresee.
presertim, adv., particularly, especially. I, 16.
praesidium, -ī, n. [praessideō, guard], guard, garrison; safeguard, protection; fortification, stronghold; help, aid; safety. I, 8.
preaktō, adv., at band, ready; with sum, meet.
preaktō, -stāre, -stīti, -stātum, tr. and intr. [stō, stand], stand or place before; show, exhibit, supply, furnish; be superior, excel, surpass; impers., praestat, it is better or more advisable. I, 2.
presum, -esse, -sūlī, intr. [sum, be. App. 77], be before or over, be in command of, rule over, be at the head of; praesēns, pres. part. as adj., present, in person; for the present. I, 16.
praeter, prep. with acc. [prae, before], before; beyond, past; contrary to; in addition to, except, besides. I, 11.
praeterēa, adv. [praet, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, 34; III, 17.
praeterēō, -ire, -īi, -itum, tr. and intr. [ēō, go. App. 84], go beyond, pass by,
omit; praeteritus, p.f. part. ae adj., past; n. plu. as noun, the past. I, 20.

praetermittō, -mittere, -misī, -misum, tr. [mittō, send], send by; let pass, overlook. IV, 13.


praetor, -ōris, m., praetor; commander. I, 21.

praetōrus, -a, -um, adj. [praetor, commander], praetorian, belonging to the general. I, 40.

praeércō, -ārere, -ussī, -ustum, tr. [ārō, burn], burn in front or at the end.

praeverto, -verti, -versum, tr. [vertō, turn], forestall, anticipate.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., perverse, wrong.


pretium, -tī, n., price. I, 18.

prex, præcis, f. (in sing. only in dat., acc. and abl.) [precor, pray], prayer, entreaty; imprecation. I, 16.

priidē, adv. [diēs, day], on the day before. I, 23.

primipilus, -i, m. [primus, first - pilus, a century], the centurion of the first century, chief centurion. II, 25.

priūmō, adv. [primus, first], at first, in the first place. I, 31; II, 8.

primum, adv. [primus, first], first, at first. in the first place, for the first time; cum primum, or ubi primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible, very soon. I, 25.

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43), first, foremost; first part of; pl. as noun, the first, the front rank or ranks: leaders, chiefs; in primis, especially. I, 10.

prīnceps, -īpis, adj. [prīmus, first - capiō, take], taking the first place; chief, most prominent, first; as noun, chief or principal person, leader, chief. I, 7.

prīncipātus, -ās, m. [prīnceps, chief],

chief place or position; chief authority, leadership. I, 3.

priōr, prīus, adj., comp. (App. 43), former, previous, prior, first; pl. as noun, those in front. II, 11.

prīstinus, -a, -um, adj. [for prīstīnus from priōr, former], former, original; previous, preceding. I, 13.

prīus, adv. [prīor, former], before, sooner, previously; prius quam, see priuquam.

priuquam or prius . . . quam, conj., sooner than, before; until. I, 19.

privātīm, adv. [privātus, private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, 17.

privātus, -a, -um, adj., private, personal, individual; as noun, person, individual. I, 5.

prō, prep. with abl. [cf. prae, before], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in return for; as, in the disguise of; in place of, instead of; in proportion to, according to; in compounds (written prōs, pro, and prōd), for, before, forward, forth. I, 2.

probō, I, tr. [probus, good], consider good, approve; prove, show, demonstrate. I, 3.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, intr. [cēdō, go], go forth or forward, proceed, advance. I, 38; II, 20.

Procillus, see Valerius.

prōclinō, I, tr. [clīnō, incline], bend forward, incline; prōclinātus, p.f. part. as adj., tottering, critical.

prōcōnsul, -is, m., a proconsul, one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province. III, 20.

procul, adv. afar off, from afar, at a distance, at a distance. II, 80.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubī, -cubitum, intr. [cubō, lie down], lean forwards, fall down, lie down; be beaten down; incline. II, 27.

prōcurāō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr. [currō, run], run or rush forward, rush out, charge. I, 52.

prōdeo, -ire, -iī, -itum, intr. [prō- eō,
As Flig5, near (App. intr., App. I, PROPIUS (2) tr., intr.,
produc, prodare, proditor, proditor, prodigium.
proficio, profectus, proelium. -li, proficiscor, profero, profectus,
profugio, præfugius, profici, proficere, præfugius, profugum.
transmit, transmitto, transmittere, transmitto, transmito.
proluci, produc, prodare, proditori, ponere, ponere,
ponit, ponere, ponere, ponit.
proelum, -II, n., battle, contest, engagement;
proelium committere, join or begin battle, risk a fight, engage in battle, fight. I, 1.
profection, -onis, f. [profection, set out], a setting out, start, departure.
I, 8.
profectus, see præfication. -onis, f. [profection, set out], a setting out, start, departure.
profecus, see præfication.
præfero, -ferre, -tuli, -latum, tr. [ferro, bring. App. 81], bring forth or out, produce.
præfication, -icere, -icui, -fictum, tr. and intr. [faciatur, make, progress, advance; effect, accomplish, gain. III, 21.
proficiscor, proficiscitur, profectus sum, intr. [cf. præfication, advance], set out, start, depart; set progress for, start for; go, proceed. I, 3.
profiteor, -àtēri, -fessus sum, tr. [fateor, confess], admit, acknowledge, declare, offer.
præfìgō, I, tr. [fingō, strike], strike down; overcome; put to flight. II, 23.
praeu, fluere, -flus, ---, intr. [fluus, flow], flow forth, rise. IV, 10.
profugia, -fugere, -fugis, -fugitum, intr. [fugio, flee], flee, flee from, run away, escape. I, 31; II, 14.
præfuri, see præsum.
prægnatus, -a, -um, adj. [nascor, be born], born; descended, sprung. II, 29.
prægedror, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [gradior, step], step or go forward, advance, proceed, go. I, 48; II, 10.
prohibe, 2, tr. [habeo, have, hold], keep from, keep, restrain, prevent, prohibit; keep out or away from; protect, guard. I, 1.
præcius, -icere, -icui, -fictum, tr. [facci, throw. App. 7], throw forward or away; throw, cast; reject, give up; se præcere, cast one's self; jump. I, 27.
præinde, adv., hence, accordingly, therefore.
prælatus, see præfero.
præmineo, -minère, -minui, ---, intr., project, lean out.
præmiscus, adv., promiscuously, in common.
præmittus, -a, -um, adj., ready, active. III, 19.
præmontium, -ri, n. [præmineo, project], promontory, headland. III, 12.
præne, adv. [prænus, inclined], sloping downwards. IV, 17.
prænuntiō, I, tr. [nuntiō, announce], announce, give out publicly, tell, relate, report, say; give orders; with sententia, pronounce. IV, 5.
prope, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) As prep., near, close to. (2) As adv., almost, nearly; recently. I, 22.
præpellē, -pellere, -puli, -pulsus, tr. [pellō, drive], drive forward, put to flight, rout; dislodge, drive back. I, 15.
properō, I, intr. [properus, quick], hasten, hurry. II, 11.
præproquinus, -ātīs, f. [præproquinus, neighboring, near], nearness, vicinity, relationship. II, 4.
præproquinus, -a, -um, adj. [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; pl. as noun, relatives. I, 17.
praeius, adv. and prep. with acc. (App. 322, b) [comp. of prope, near], nearer. I, 42; IV, 19.
PUGNO

prōpenō, -pōnere, -posul, -positum,  
tr. [pōnō, place], place or put forward,  
present, offer; relate, tell of, explain;  
propose, purpose; expose. I, 17.

proprius,-a,-um, adj., one’s own, character-  
istic, indicative.

propter, prep. with acc. [prope, near],  
on account of, because of, in conse-  

propereā, adv. [proptēr, because of],  
on this account; propterea quod, be-  
cause. I, 1.

propugnātor, -ōris, m. [propugnō,  
fight for], defender.

propugnō, 1, intr., fight for, defend;  
rush out to fight, attack. II, 7.

propulī, see propellō.

propulāō, 1, tr. [Freg. of propellēō,  
drive forward], drive back, repel; ward  
off. I, 49.

prōra, -ae,f. prow. III, 13.

prōruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, tr. [ruō,  
fall], overthow. III, 26.

prōsequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr.  
[sequor, follow], follow, accompany;  
pursue; with orātione, address. II, 5.

prōspectus, -ās, m. [prōspectō, look  
forth], view, prospect; sight. II, 22.

prōspicīō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum,  
intr. [spicō, look], look forward;  
look to beforehand, see to, provide,  
take care. I, 23.

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvi, -strā-  
tum, tr. [sternō, stretch out], pro-  
strate, destroy.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui, intr. [sum,  
be. App. 79], be useful, benefit.

prōtēgō, -teger, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr.  
[tēgō, cover, protect.

prōterreō, 2, tr. [terreō, frighten], ter-  
riy, frighten off.

prōtinus, adv. [tenues, as far as], con-  
tinuously; forthwith, immediately.  
II, 9.

prōturbō, 1, tr. [turbō, disturb], drive  
in confusion; dislodge. II, 19.

prōvehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, tr.  
[vehō, carry], carry forward; pass.,  
be carried forward, sail. IV, 28.

prōveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum,  
intr. [venīō, come], come forth, grow;  
be produced, yield (of grain).

prōventus, -ās, m. [prōvenīō, come  
forth], a coming forth, result.

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -viērum, tr.  
[videō, see], see beforehand, foresee;  
care for, provide. II, 22.

prōvincia, -ae, f., office of governor of  
a province; province, a territory subject  
to Rome and governed by a Roman go-  
vovernor; especially the Province, the  
southern part of France. I, 1.

prōvinciālis, -e, adj. [prōvincia, prov-  
ince], of a province; of the Province.

prōvisus, see prōvideō.

prōvolō, 1, intr. [volō, fly], fly or rush  
forth. II, 19.

proximē, adv. [proximēs, last], last;  
lately. I, 24.

proximus, -ae, -um, adj., sup. (App. 43),  
nearest, next; last, previous; with acc.  
(App. 122, b), next to. I, 1.

prudentia, -ae, f. [prūdēna, foresee-  
ing], prudence, foresight. II, 4.

Ptiliāni, -orum, m. (Ec), the Ptiliāni  
(ti-a'n-i). III, 27.

pūbēs, -eria, adj., grown up, adult; pl  
as noun, grown men, adults.

pūblicē, adv. [pūblicus, public], pub-  
licly, in the name of the state, on be-  
half of the state. I, 16.

pūblicō, 1, tr. [pūblicus, public], ad-  
judge to public use; confiscate.

pūblicus, -ae, -um, adj. [pūpilus, peo-  
ples; of the state or people, common,  
public; n. as noun, public, public view;  
res publica, common weal, state. I,  
12.

pudēt, -ēre, -uit, -itum, tr., imper., it  
shames; translated as personal, be  
ashamed, feel shame.

pudor, -ōris, m. [pudet, it shames],  
shame, sense of shame; sense of hon-  
or. I, 39.

puer, -erī, m., boy, child, son; in pl.,  
children (of both sexes); a pueris, from  
childhood. I, 29.

pueīlis,-e, adj. [puer, child], childish.

pugna, -ae, f. [pugnō, fight], fight,  
battle, contest; genus pugnae, meth-  
od of fighting. I, 25.

pugnō, 1, intr., fight, give battle, con-  
tend; strive; often imper., as pugnā-  
tur, it is fought, i.e., they fight. I, 25.
PULCHER

Pulcher, -chra, -chrum, adj., beautiful; noble, glorious.

Pullo, -ōnis, m., Titus Pullo (ti̇tūs pul'o), a centurion of Cicero's legion.

Pulsus, -ūs, m. (pellō), stroke.

Pulvis, -ēris, m., dust. IV, 32.

Puppis, -is, f., stern of a ship. III, 13.

Purgō, I, tr. (pūrus, clean + agō, do, make), clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; purgātus, pf. part. as adj., freed from blame, exonerated. I, 28.

Puto, I, tr., think, consider, believe. I, 7.

Pyrenaicus, -a, -um, adj., Pyrenean.

Pyreneae Montēs (Ecēde), the Pyrenees (pyr'ē-nē-i), better, Pyrenees Mountains. I, 1.

Q.

Q., abbr. for Quintus, Quintus (kwīn-tūs), a Roman praenomen. I, 45; II, 2.

Qua, adv. [abl. fem. of quī], by which way or road; in which place, where. I, 6.

Quadrāgēnī, -āo, -a, distr. num. adj., [quadrāgintā, forty], forty each. IV, 17.

Quadrāgintā (XL), card. num. adj., indecl., forty. I, 2.

Quadrāgingenti, -ae, -a, card. num. adj., four hundred. I, 5.

Quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaestūm, tr. and intr., seek or look for; inquire, ask or inquire about. I, 18.

Quaestīō, -onis, f. [quaerō, inquire], inquiry; examination, investigation.

Quaestor, -ōris, m. [quaerō, seek], a quaestor (kwēstōr), one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army. I, 52; IV, 13.

Quaestus, -ūs, m. [quaerō, seek], gain, acquisition.

Quāīlis, -e, interrog. adj., of what sort, kind or nature? I, 21.

Quam, (1) adv., (a) interrog., how? (b) rel., as; with sup. and with or without posse, as ... as possible, very; quam diū, as long as; (2) conj. with comp., than; prius ... quam, before; post ... quam, postea ... quam, after. I, 3.

Quamvis, adv. [quam, as + vis, you wish], as you wish, however, very. IV, 2.

Quandō, indef. adv., ever, at any time. III, 12.

Quantopere, adv. [quantus, how much + opus, work], (1) interrog., how greatly? how much? (2) rel., as much as. II, 6.

Quantus, -a, -um, adj. [of quam, how? as], (1) interrog., how much? how great? how large? what? quantum, as adv., how much? (2) rel., as much as, as; quantum, as adv., as much as, as; quantō ... tantō (with comparatives), the ... the. I, 17.

Quantuevis, -avis, -umvis, adj. [quantus, as great as + vis, you wish], as great as you wish, however great.

Quārē, adv. [qui, which + rēs, thing], (1) interrog., why? wherefore? (2) rel., wherefore; on this account, therefore. I, 13.

Quārtus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quattuor, four], fourth. I, 12.

Quasi, conj. [qua(m), as + -i, if], as if, just as if.

Quattuor (IV), card. num. adj., indecl., four. I, 12.


-que, conj. (always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects), and; que ... que, or que ... et, both ... and. I, 1.

Queror, queri, questus sum, tr. and intr., complain, bewail, lament. I, 16.

Qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. (and see quis), who, which, what; often implying an antecedent, he who, those who; with force of dem., this, that; quam ob rem, wherefore; quem ad modum, in what manner, how, as; quō, with comparatives, the; quō ... oō, the ... the. I, 1.

Quoquam, see quisquam.

Quicunque, quaequumque, quodcumque, indef. (or generalising) rel. pron., whoever, whatever; whosoever, what-
soever, any . . . whatever; everyone
who, everything that. I, 31; III, 4.

quid, interrog. adv., why? with posse,
how? e. g., quid Germāni possent,
how strong were the Germans. I, 38;
II, 4.

quidam, quaedam, quiddam and quid-
dam, quaedam, quoddam, indef. pron.
(App. 62 and b), a certain one,
some one; a certain, some, a; a kind
of. I, 30; II, 17.

quidem, adv, indeed, at any rate, at
least, truly; on the other hand; nē . .
quidem, not even. I, 16.

quiēs, -ētis, f., quiet, rest, repose.
quiētus, -a, -um, adj., in repose,
undisturbed, peaceful, calm, quiet.

quin, conj. [qui, who or how+ne, nega-
tive], that not, but that; after negative
words of doubt or hindrance, but that,
that, from, to; quin etiam, nay even,
moreover. I, 3.

quinam, see quisnam.

quinquēns, -uncis, m., quincunx, an ar-
angement like the five spots on a die.

quindecim (XV), card. num. adj., in-
decl. [quinque, five+decem, ten], fif-
teen. I, 15.

quinenti, -ae, -a (D), card. num. adj.
[quinque, five + centum, hundred],
five hundred. I, 15.

quinī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [quin-
que, five], five each, five at a time, five.
I, 15.

quinquāgentā (L), card. num. adj., in-
decl., fifty. I, 41; II, 4.

quinque (V), card. num. adj., in-
decl., five. I, 10.

 quintus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [quin-
que, five], fifth. I, 6.

quis, quid, and qui, quae, quod (App.
61 and 62), (1) interrog. pron., who?
quam ad modum, how? (2) indef.
pron., especially after si, nisi, nē, num,
any one, anything, any; somebody,
something, some. I, 7.

quisnam, quidnam, and quinam,
quisnam, quoddam, interroga. pron.
(App. 61 and a), who? which? what?
who then? what pray? II, 80.

quaepliam, quodpliam, and quispiam,
-QUIENTIENS

quiaquam, quiquid, indef. pron.
(App. 62), any one, any.

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron.
(App. 62), any; any person or thing
I, 19.

quisque, quidquid, and quisque, que-
quod, quodque, universal indef. pron
(App. 63), each one, each; every one
all. I, 5.

quisquis, quicquid, indef. (or general
zing) rel. pron. (App. 60, a), whoever
whatever. II, 17.

quīvis, quaevis, quidvis, and quīvis
quaevis, quodvis, indef. pron. (App
62), [qui, who+vis, you wish], whom
or what you wish; any one, anything
any whatever, any. II, 31.

quō, adv. [old dat. case form of qui, who
which], (1) interrog., whither? to what
place? (2) rel., to which, to whom; to
where, whither; toward which; where
wherein; (3) indef., to any place, any
where. I, 48; II, 8.

quō, conj. [adi. case form of qui, who
which], in order that, so that, that. I, 8
quoad, adv. [quō, whither+ad, to], to
where; as long as, far as; till, untill.
IV, 12.

quod, conj. [adv. acc. of the neuter o
qui, who, which], as to which, in that
that; as to the fact that, in so much
as; because; quod si, but if; propter-
eā quod, because. I, 1.

quōminus, conj. [quō, so that+minus
not], so that not, that not; from. I
31; IV, 22.

quoniam, conj. [quom = cum, since+1
am, now], since now, since, inas
much as, because, whereas. I, 35.

quoque, conj., following the word em
phasized, also, too, likewise. I, 1.

quoqueversus, adv., in every direction
all around. III, 23.

quot, adj., indecl., (1) interrog., how
many? (2) rel., as many as, the numbe
that. I, 29.

quotannis, adv. [quot, ae many as
annus, year], every year, yearly. I
86; IV, 1.

quotiēns, adv. [quot, how many], (1
interroga, how many times? how of
ten? (2) rel., as often as. I, 43.
R

rädix, -ís, f., root; in pl. with montis or collis, foot, base. I, 38.

rädō, rädere, rāsī, rāsum, tr., scrape, shave.

raeda, -ae, f., wagon with four wheels. I, 25.

rāmus, -i, m., branch, bough. II, 17.

rapiditās, -tātis, f. [rapidus, swift], swiftness. IV, 17.

rapina, -ae, f. [rapīō, seize], plunder; pl., plundering. I, 16.

rārus, -a, -um, adj. scattered, far apart; in small detachments, a few at a time; few. III, 12.

rāsus, see rādō.

rațiō, -ōnis, f. [reor, reckon], reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, strategy, science; method, arrangement; cause, reason; regard, consideration; condition, state of affairs; manner, way; condition, terms; in pl., transactions. I, 28.

ratis, -is, f., raft. I, 8.

Rauraci, -ōrum, m. (Og), the Rauraci (raw'ra-si). I, 5.

re- and re-, inseparable prefixes, again, back, un-, re-

rebelliō, -ōnis, f. [rebellō, renew war], renewal of war, rebellion, revolt. III, 10.

Rebilus, -i, m., see Caninius.

recēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr. [recērō, go], go back, retire.

recēns, -centis, adj., recent, late; fresh, new, vigorous. I, 14.

recēnsērō, -cēnsōre, -cēnsulī, -cēnsum, tr., inspect, regard. II, 14.

receptāculum, -i, n. [recipio, receive], retreat, refuge.

receptus, see recipiō.

receptus, -ūs, m. [recipio, receive], retreat; refuge, shelter. IV, 33.

recessus, -ūs, m. [recēdō, go back], going back, retreat; chance to retreat.

recidē, -cidere, -cīdi, -cāsum, intr. [cadō, fall], fall back; fall upon; be reduced.

recipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re- + capio, take], take or get back, recover; admit, receive, receive in surrender or submission; admit of, allow; with sē, withdraw one's self, retreat, escape, flee, run back; recover one's self. I, 5.

reclarī, 1, tr., read aloud.

reclīnō, 1, tr. [re- + clīnō, incline], lean back, recline, lean.

rectē, adv. [rēctus, straight], properly, rightly.

rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [regō, keep straight], straight.

recuperō, 1, tr., recover, regain. III, 8.

reclusō, 1, tr. and intr., refuse, reject; object to, make objections, complain; with periculum, shrink from. I, 31; III, 22.

redāctus, see redigō.

reddō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr. [red- + dō, give], give back, return, restore; give something due; make or cause to be, render. I, 35; II, 5.

redemptus, see redimō.

redēse, -ire, -ii, -itum, intr. [red- + sē, go, App. 84], go or turn back, return; come; fail to, descend; be referred. I, 29.

redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red- + agō, put in motion], bring back, bring under; render, make; reduce. I, 48; II, 14.

redimō, -imere, -ēmi, -ēmptum, tr. [red- + sē, buy], buy back; buy up, purchase. I, 18.

redintegrō, 1, tr. [red- + integrō, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, 25.

reditiō, -ōnis, f. [rēdeō, return], return. I, 5.

redivus, -ūs, m. [reduē, return], returning, return. IV, 30.

Redonēs, -um, m. (BCC), the Redones (rēd'ō-nēz). II, 34.

redduē, -duere, -düxi, -ductum, tr. [re- + dūō, lead], lead or bring back; draw back, pull back; extend back. I, 28.

refectus, see reficiō.

referō, referre, retulī, relatūm, tr. [re- + ferō, bear, App. 81], bear, carry or bring back, report; pedem referre, go back, retreat; grātiam referre, show one's gratitude, make a requital. I, 25.
reficio, -ficere, -ficē, -ficiē, tr. [re-+facē, make], remake, repair; allow to rest; with sē, refresh one's self, rest. III. 5.

refringō, -fringere, -frēgē, -frāctum, tr. [re-+frangō, break], break in or open; break, diminish. II. 33.

refugīō, -fugere, -fugē, -fugitum, intr. [re-+fugīō], flee back, retreat; escape.

Rēgīnus, -i, m., see Antistium.

regīō, -ōrie, f. [reğīō, keep straight], line, direction; quarter, region, country, territory, place; ē regione, with gen., opposite. I. 44; II. 4.

rēgūs, -a, -um, adj. [rēx, king], of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, intr. [rēgnum, royal power], reign, rule.

rēgnum, -i, n. [rēx, king], kindly or royal authority, royal power, sovereignty; kingdom. I. 2.

rēgō, regere, rēxi, rēctum, tr., keep straight; guide, direct, control. III, 13.

rēcīō, -icere, -īeci, -iectum, tr. [re-+-iāculō, hurl. App. 7], hurl or drive back, repel; cast down or off; drive off or out. I, 24.

relanguēscō, -languēscere, -languē, —, intr. [re-+languēscē, become weak], become weak or enfeebled. II, 15.

rēlātus, see referō.

rēlēgō, 1, tr. [re-+lēgō, deputē], send away; remove.

relāctus, -a, -um, see relinquō.

rēligiō, -ōnis, f., religion; in pl., religious observations, rites; superstitions, relinquō, -līquere, -līquē, -līctum, tr. [re-+līnuō, leave], leave behind, leave, abandon; pass., be left, remain. I, 9.

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [relinquō, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; future, subsequent; n. as noun, remainder, rest. I. 1.

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, intr. [re-+manēō, remain], stay or remain behind, remain. I. 33; IV. 1.

rēmex, -igis, m. [cīt. rēmus, oar], oarsman, rower. III, 9.

rēmigō, 1, intr. [rēmex, rower], row.

remigrō, 1, intr. [re-+migrō, move], move back, return. IV. 4.

reminiscor, -i, intr. [mēns, mind], call to mind, remember. I. 13.

remittō, -mittere, -miē, -mīsum, tr. [re-+mittō, send], send or despatch back, return, restore, remit; release, relax, give up; remisēus, pf. port. as adj., mild. I. 43; II. 15.

remollēscō, -mollēscere, —, —, intr., become weak, become enervated. IV, 2.

removeō, -moveō, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr. [re-+moveō, move], move back or away, remove, withdraw; remōtus, pf. port. as adj., remote, far away. I, 19.

remūneror, 1, tr. [re-+mūnerō, present], repay, reward. I. 44.

rēmūs, -i, m., oar. III, 13.

Rēmus, -a, -um, adj., belonging to or one of the Remi; pl. as noun, Rēmi, m. (Bef), the Remi (rē'mī). II. 3.

rēnō, -ōnie, m., deerskin.

renovō, 1, tr. [re-+novōs, new], renew. III, 2.

renūntiō, 1, tr. [re-+nūntiōs, message], bring back word, bring news, report; declare elected. I, 10.

repellō, repellere, repulli, repulsum, tr. [re-+pellō, beat, drive], beat or drive back, repel, repulse. I. 8.

repente, adv. [repēns, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, 59; II. 33.

repentinus, -a, -um, adj. [ropēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected, hasty. I, 13.

reperiō, reperire, repērī, repertum, tr. [re-+parīō, procure], procure; find; find out, discover, ascerta

nion; devise. I. 18.

repetō, -petere, -petīvi, -petītum, tr. [re-+petō, seek], seek or ask again demand back; with poenās, exact, in fict. I. 30.

repleō, -pleēre, -pleēvi, -pleētum, tr. [re-+pleō, fill], fill again, replenish supply.

reportō, 1, tr. [re-+portō, carry], carry or bring back, convey. IV, 29.

reposcō, -poscere, —, —, tr. [re-
poscō, demand; demand back, exact, ask for.

repullī, see repellō.

repraesentō, I, tr. [re- + praesēns, present], make present; do at once. I, 40.

reprehendō, -prehendere, -prehenduī, -prehēnsum, tr. [re- + reprehendō (=prēndō), seize], hold back; criticize, blame, censure. I, 20.

reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, tr. [re- + pressō, press], press or keep back; check, restrain. III, 14.

repudiō, I, tr., reject. I, 40.

repugnō, I, intr. [re- + pugnō, fight], fight back; resist, oppose. I, 19.

repulsus, see repellō.

requīrō, -quirere, -quisīvī, -quisītvum, tr. [re- + quaerō, seek], seek again; require, demand; miss, desire, long for.

rēs, rei, f., of indefinite meaning; variously translated according to the context; thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence; circumstance, case; act, action, deed; reason, ground; rēs familiāris, property; rēs frumentāria, supplies; rēs militāria, warfare; novae rēs, revolution; rēs publica, state; rēs ācta, deeds, achievements; quām ob rem, see quī and quē. I, 2.

reścindō, -scindere, -scīdī, -scīsuum, tr. [re- + scindō, cleave], cut away or down, break down, destroy. I, 7.

reściscō, -sciscere, -scīvī, -scītvum, tr. [re- + sciscō, inquīre], find out, learn. I, 28.

reścribō, -scribere, -scripsi-, -scripsum-, tr. [re- + scribō, write], write again; transfer. I, 42.

reśervō, I, tr. [re- + servō, save, keep], keep back, save up, reserve. I, 53; III, 3.

residēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, ---, intr. [re- + sedēō, sit], sit back; remain.

residēō, -sidēre, -sēdī, ---, intr. [re- + sitō sit down], settle, become calm.

resistō, -sistere, -stitī, ---, intr. [re- + stīstō, stand], stand back, remain behind, halt, stand still; withstand, resist, oppose. I, 25.

respiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, tr. [re- + speciō, look], look back; look at, take notice of; consider, regard. II, 24.

repondeō, -pondēre, -pondī, -spōnsum, tr. ond intr. [repondeō, promise], reply, answer. I, 7.

reponsūm, -i, m. [repondeō, answer], reply, answer. I, 14.

reṣpūsō, -spuere, -spūlī, ---, tr., reject, spurn. I, 42.

restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctum, tr., extinguish.

restitū, see resistiō.

restituō, -stituere, -stītī, -stīttum, tr. [re- + statūō, set up], set up again, rebuild, renew, restore. I, 18.

retīnēō, 2, tr. [re- + teneō, hold], hold back, detain, keep; restrain, hinder; detain forcibly, seize; retain, preserve, maintain. I, 18.

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, tr. [re- + trahō, drag], drag back; bring back.

reτullī, see referō.

revelλō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, tr. [re- + vellō, pluck], pluck or tear away, pull out. I, 52.

revertō, -vertere, -verī, -versum, intr., used almost exclusively in the present tenses, and revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, intr., used in the tenses formed on the present stem [re- + vertō, turn], turn back, come back, return. I, 7.

revincīō, -vincīre, -vinxi, -vinctum, tr. [re- + vincō, bind], bind back; fasten, bind. III, 13.

revocō, I, tr. [re- + vocō, call], call back, recall; withdraw. II, 20.

rēx, rēgis, m., king. I, 31; II, 4.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. (ABCfghi), the river Rhenum (Rēnūs), better the Rhine. I, 1.

Rhōdanus, -ī, m. (CDfghi), the river Rhōdanus (Rōdānūs), better the Rhone. I, 1.

ripa, -ae, f., bank (of a stream). I, 6.

rivus, -ī, m., small stream, brook.

röbur, -oris, m., oak. III, 13.

rogō, I, tr., ask; request, ask for. I, 7.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [Rōma, Rome], Roman; as noun, a Roman. I, 3.

Roscius, -ci, m., Lucius Roscius (lū-\-shyūs rōs'byūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

röstrum, -i, n. [rōdō, gnaw, consume], beak of a bird; beak or prow of a ship. III, 13.

rota, -ae, f., wheel. IV, 33.

rubus, -i, m., bramble. II, 17.

Rūfus, -i, m. See Sulpicius.

rumor, -ōris, m., hearsay, report, rumor. II, 1.

rüpes, -is, f., rock, cliff. II, 29.

rürus, adv. [for reversus, from revertō, turn back], again, back, anew; in turn. I, 25.

Rūtēnī, -ōrum, m. (DĒde), the Ruteni, (rū-te'nī). I, 46.

Etulus, -i, m., Marcus Sempronius Rusīlius (mār'kūs sēm-prō'ni-ūs rūs'ti-lūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Sābinus, -i, m., Quintus Titurius Sabīnus (kwīn'tūs ti-tūr'i-ūs sa-bī'nūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. II, 5.

Sābis, -is, m. (Aēf), the river Sabis (sā-bīs). II, 16.

sacerdōs, -ōris, m. [sacer, sacred], priest.

sacramentum, -i, n. [sacērō, sacer, sacred], oath.

sacrificium, -i, n. [sacer, sacred + faciō, make], sacrifice.

saepes, often, frequently; many times, again and again; saepe numerō, often, time and again, frequently; comp. saepius, oftener, more frequently; time and again; too often. I, 1.

saepēs, -is, f., hedge. II, 17.

saevīō, -īre, -ītum, intr. [saevus, raging], rage; be fierce. III, 13.

saigitta, -as, f., arrow. IV, 25.

saigittārius, -ri, m. [saigitta, an arrow], bowman, archer. II, 7.

sagulum, -i, n., a military cloak.

sālus, salútis, f. [salvus, safe], welfare, security, safety; preservation, deliverance; place of safety; life (when in danger). I, 27.

Samarbriva, -ae, f. (Be), Samarobriva (sāmərō-brī'va).

sancīō, sancire, sānxi, sānctum, tr. [cf. sacer, sacred], make sacred, sanction; bind; sānctus, pf. part. as adj., sacred, inviolable; established. I, 30; III, 9.

sanguis, -inis, m., blood.

sānitās, -tātis, f. [sānue, sound], soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, 42.

sānō, 1, tr. [sānus, sound], make sound; make good, repair.

Santoni, -ōrum, or Santonēs, -um, m. (Dcd), the Santoni (sān'tō-nī), or Santones (sān'tō-nēs). I, 10.

sānus, -a, -um, adj., sound; sensible, sane.

sānxi, see sancīō.

sapiō, -ere, -ivi, ---, intr., taste; be wise, understand.

sarcina, -ae, f., pack, luggage; pl., baggage, packs (of individual soldiers, which they carried). I, 24.

sarcīō, sarcirs, sarsi, sartum, tr., make good, repair, compensate for.

sartmentum, -i, n., brushwood, fagots. III, 15.

satis, adv., and indecl. adj. and noun, (1) as adv., enough, sufficiently; rather; very; well; (2) as adj., sufficient; (3) as noun, enough. I, 3.

satisfaciō, -facere, -feci, -factum, intr. [satis, enough + faciō, make], make or do enough for; give satisfaction, satisfy; make amends, apologize, ask pardon. I, 14.

satisfactiō, -onis, f. [satisfaciō, give satisfaction], satisfaction, excuse, apology. I, 41.

saucius, -a, -um, adj., wounded. III, 4.

saxum, -i, n., rock, large stone. II, 29.

scālae, -ārum, f. [scandō, climb], stairs; scaling ladder.

Scaldi, -is, m. (Aēf), the river Scaldis (skāl'dis) or Scheidt.

scapha, -as, f., skiff, boat. IV, 26.

scelerātus, -a, -um, adj. [scelerō, pollute], accursed, infamous; as noun, criminal.
s cienter, adv. [sciēō, know], knowingly, skillfully.
s ci entia, -ae, f. [sciēō, know], knowledge, science, skill. I, 47; II, 20.
s cindō, scindere, scidi, scisuum, tr., split; tear down, destroy. III, 5.
s ciō, 4, tr., distinguish; know, understand. I, 20.
s corpiō, -onis, m., scorpion, a military engine for hurling missiles.
s cribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum, tr., write, record or make mention in writing. II, 29.
s crōbis, -is, m. and f., pit.
s cūtum, -i, n., shield, buckler; oblong, convex (2½ x 4 ft.), made of wood covered with leather or iron plates, with a metal rim. I, 25.
s sē- and sēd-, inseparable prefix, apart, away.
sē, see sui.
sēbum, -i, n., tallow.
sēco, secāre, secul, sectum, tr., cut, reap.
sēcrētō, adv. [sēcernō, separate], separately, privately, secretly. I, 13.
sēctōr, -onis, f. [secō, cut], cutting; dividing of captured goods; booty. II, 38.
sēctor, 1, tr. [freq. of sequor, follow], follow eagerly, chase after.
sēctūra, -ae, f. [secō, cut], cutting; shaft, mine. III, 21.
sēcum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], along; in the direction of; besides, in addition to. I, 33; II, 18.
sēcum, prep. with acc. [sequor, follow], following, next, second; favorable, successful, prosperous; secundō flūmine, down the river. I, 14.
sēcirōs, -is, f., axe; Roman authority, because the axe and fasces of the lictor were symbols of authority.
sēcutus, see sequor.
sēd-, see sē-.
sēd, conj., but, but yet (a stronger adverative than autem or at). I, 12.

sēdēs, -is, f. [sedeō, sit], seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, 31; IV, 4.
sēditō, -onis, f. [sēd- + sēō, go], insurrection, sedition.
sēditoreus, -a, -um, adj. [sēditō, sedition], sedulous, meticulous. I, 17.
sedulius, -ī, m., Sedulius (sē-dū'ī-lūs), a chief of the Lemovices.
sedūnī, -orum, m. (Cgh), the Seduni (sē-dū'ni). III, 1.
sedusī, -ōrum, m. (Bh), the Sedusī (sē-du'shīl), I, 51.
seges, -stis, f., growing grain, field of grain.
segni, -ōrum, m. (Afg), the Segni (sē-gō'ni).
segontiacē, -ōrum, m. (Acē), the Segontiacē (sē-gōnti-shā'sē or sēgōnti-shā'sē).
segovax, -actis, m., Segovax (sē-gō'vāks), a king of Kent.
seguināvi, -ōrum, m. (Def), the Seguināvi (sē-gō'ūn-ā've), I, 10.
semal, adv., once, a single time; semal atque iterum, repeatedly; ut semal, as soon as. I, 31.
sēmentis, -is, f. [sēmen, seed], sowing. I, 3.
sēmita, -ae, f., narrow path, by-way, foot-path.
semprōnius, -ni, m., see Rutilius.
senātor, -ōris, m. [senex, old], elder; senator. II, 28.
senātus, -ae, m. [senex, old], a body of old men; senate; esp., the administrative council of Rome. I, 3.
senex, senis, adj., old; as noun, old man. I, 29.
sēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., six each, six. I, 15.
sēnapēs, -um, m. (Bef), the Senones (sē-nōpē'ēz). II, 2.
samentia, -ae, f. [sentiō, think], way of thinking, opinion, sentiment; purpose, design, scheme, plan; decision, resolve; verdict; sentence. I, 48; II, 10.
sentiō, sentire, sēnī, sēnsum, tr., perceive, be aware of, notice; expe-
rience, undergo; realize, know; decide, judge; sanction, adhere to. II, 18.

sentis, -ls, m., briar. II, 17.

separātum, adv. [separō, separate], separately, privately. I, 19.

separō, l, tr. [sē-+parō, prepare], prepare apart; separate; separātus, pf. part. as adj., separate. IV, 1.


septentriones, -um, m. [septem, seven +triōnes, plough oxen], the seven plough oxen, the stars of the Great Bear, hence the North. I, 1.

septimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [septem, seven], seventh. I, 10.

septingenti, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj. [septem, seven], seven hundred.

septuāgintā (LXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [septem, seven], seventy. IV, 12.

sepultūra, -ae, f., burial. I, 26.

Sēquana, -ae, m. (BCode), the river Sequana (sēk'twa-nā), better, Seine. I, 1.

Sēquana, -ae, -um, adj., of or belonging to the Sequani; pl. as noun, Sēqua-
ni (CfG), the Sequani (sēk'twa-ni). I, 1.

sequor, sequi, sequēs'sum, tr. and intr., follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend; follow in point of time; with poena, be inflicted; fidem sequi, seek the protection. I, 4.

sermō, -onis, m., conversation, interview, speech.

sērō, adv., late, too late.

sērō, serere, sēvi, sēnum, tr., sow, plant.

Sertōrius, -rī, m., Quintus Sertorius (kwī'n/tus sēr-tō'ri-lūs), a partisan of Marius; after the death of the latter, he continued the war in Spain against the senatorial party, until murdered in 72 B.C. III, 23.

servīa, -e, adj. [servus, a slave], of or like a slave, servile. I, 40.

servīō, 4, intr. [servus, slave], be a slave to, be subservient to; pay attention to, devote one's self to, follow. IV, 5.

servitūs, -ūtūs, f. [servus, a slave], slavery, servitude. I, 11.

Servius, -vi, m., Servius (sēr'vi-ūs), a
Roman praefect. III, 1.

servō, l, tr., save, preserve; maintain, keep; guard, watch; reserve. II, 33.

servus, -i, m., slave, servant. I, 27.

secentī, -ae, -a (DC), card. num. adj., [sex, six], six hundred. I, 38; II, 15.

sēsē, see sui.

sēsequedălis, -i, adj. [sēsequi, one and a half+pēs, foot], a foot and a half thick. IV, 17.

sētius, adv., less, otherwise; nihilō sētius, none the less, nevertheless, likewise. I, 49; IV, 17.

seu, see sive.

severitās, -tātis, f., sternness, severity.

sēvocō, l, tr. [sē-+vocō, call], call aside or apart.

sex (VI), card. num. adj., indecl., six. I, 27.

sexāgintā (LX), card. num. adj., indecl. [sex, six], sixty. II, 4.

Sextius, -ti, m. (1) Publius Sextius Bāculus (pūb'li-ūs sēks'ti-lūs bāk'u-
lūs), a centurion in Caesar's army. II, 25. (2) Titus Sextius (ti'tūs sēks'ti-
us), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

si, conj., if, if perchance; to see whether or if; whether; quod si, but if, now if. I, 7.

sibi, see sui.

Sibusātes, -um, m. (Ec), the Sibusates (sib'ū-sātēz). III, 27.

sic, adv., so, thus, in this manner; sic . . . ut, so . . . that; so . . . as. I, 38; II, 4.

siccītās, -tātis, f. [slocus, dry], drought, dryness. IV, 38.

sicut or sicuti, adv. [sic, so+ut(ī), as, so as; just as, as; just as if. I, 44.

sidus, -eris, a., star; constellation.

signifer, -eri, m. [signum, standard], bearer, standard-bearer. II, 25.

significātīō, -onis, f. [significō, make signs], making of signs, signal; indication, intimation. II, 33.

significō, l, tr. [signum, sign+faciō, make], make signs; show, indicate, signify. II, 7.

signum, -i, n., mark, sign, signal, watchword; signal for battle, standard, ensign; ab signis discedere,
withdraw from the ranks; signa inferre, advance to the attack; signa convera inferre, face about and advance to the attack; signa ferre, advance on the march; direct the attack; signa convertentes, face or wheel about; ad signa convenire, join the army. I, 26.

Silius, -i, m., Marcus Silius (mâr'kús sî-lús' ), one of Caesar's lieutenants.

silentium, -i, n., silence, stillness.

Silius, -ii, m., Titus Silius (ti'tús sî-lús' ), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III,7.

silva, -ae, f., a wood, forest, woods. I,12.

silvestris, -e, adj. [silva, forest], of a wood, wooded; in a wood or forest. II,18.

similis, -a, adj., like, similar. III,13.

similitudō, -inis, f. [similis, like], likeness, resemblance.

simul, adv., at once, at the same time, therewith; simul ... simul, both and, partly ... partly; simul atque, as soon as. I,19.

simulārum, -i, n. [simulō, make like], image, statue.

simulātō, -onis, f. [simulō, make like], simulation, pretense, deceit, disguise. I,40; IV,13.

simulō, 1, tr. [similis, like], make like; pretend. I,44; IV,4.

simultās, -tātis, f., jealousy, rivalry. sin, conj., if however, but if. I,13.

sincērē, adv. [sincērus, sincere], sincerely, truly, faithfully.

sine, prep. with abl., without. I,7.

singi̇li̇tim, adv. [singuli, one each], singly, one by one; individually. III,2.

singuliāris, -a, adj. [singuli, one each], one at a time, one by one; single, alone; singular, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II,24.

singuli, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj., one each, one; one at a time, single, separate; each, every; the several; in annum singulōs, annually. I,6.

sinister, -tra, -trum, adj., left; fem. sing. as noun (sc. manus), the left hand; sub sinistrā, on the left. I,25.

sinistrōrus, adv. [sinister, left- + versus, from vertē, turn], to the left.

situs, -ūs, m. [sinō, put down], situation, site, position. III,12.

sive and seu, conj. [sī, if- + ve, or], or if, if; or whether; sive ... sive, either ... or, whether ... or, to see if ... or, I,12.

soccer, -eri, m., father-in-law. I,12.

socistūs, -tātis, f. [socius, ally], alliance.

socius, -ci, m. [cf. sequor, follow], companion; confederate, ally. I,5.

sōl, sōlis, m., the sun; ad occidentem sōlem, toward the setting sun or west; ad orientem sōlem, toward the rising sun or east. I,1.

sōlicium, -cin, n. [sōlar, console], comfort, solace.

soldurius, -rī, m., vassal. III,22.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum (App. 74), intr., he wont, be accustomed.

sōlūtōdō, -inis, f. [sōlus, alone], lonesomeness, solitude; a lonely place, wilderness. IV,18.

sollertia, -ae, f. [sollers, skillful], skill, expertness; ingenuity.

solicitūs, I, tr., move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II,1.

solicitūdō, -inis, f. [solicitus, anxious], anxiety, worry, apprehension.

solum, -i, n., bottom; ground, soil, earth. I,11.

sōlus, adv. [sōlus, alone], only, merely. I,12.

sōlus, -a, -um, gen. sōlius (App. 32), adj., alone, only; the only. I,18.

solvō, solvere, solvi, solutum, tr., loosen, untie; with or without nāvēs, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV,23.

sonitus, -ūs, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound, din.

sonus, -ī, m. [cf. sonō, sound], sound.

soror, -ōris, f., sister. I,18.

sors, sortis, f., lot, chance, fate; casting or drawing of lots. I,50.

Sotiates, -um, m. (Deod), the Sotiates (sō'tē- 'ē-tēz). III,20.

spatium, -i, n., space, distance, extent, length of space; period or length of time, hence time, opportunity. I,7.
SPECIES

74

SUBITO

spectūs, -ēī, f. [specīō, see], seeing, slight; look, appearance, show, pre- tence. I, 61; II, 31.
spectō, I, tr. [freq. of specīō, see], look at, regard; look, face, lie. I, 1.
speculātor, -ōris, m. [specular, spy], spy, scout. II, 11.
speculātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [speculā- tör, spy], of a spy, spying, scouting. IV, 26.
speculor, I, intr. [cf. specīō, look]. spy. I, 47.
spērō, I, tr. [spēs, hope], hope, hope for, anticipate. I, 3.
spēs, -ēī, f., hope, anticipation, expectation. I, 5.
spīritus, -ūs, m. [spīrō, breathe], breath, air; in pl., haughtiness, pride. I, 33; II, 4.
spoliō, I, tr., strip, despoil.
spontis, gen. and spontes, abl. (obsolete nom., spōns), f., of one’s own accord, willingly, voluntarily; by one’s self. I, 9.
stabiliō, 4, tr. [stabilis, firm], make firm, fix.
stabilitās, -tātis, f. [stabilis, firm], firmness, steadiness. IV, 33.
statim, adv. [stō, stand], as one stands, hence, forthwith, immediately, at once. I, 53; II, 11.
statō, -ōnis, f. [stō, stand], standing or stationing; a military post or station; sentries, pickets, outposts; in stationes esse, be on guard. II, 18.
status, statuere, statui, statūtum, tr. [status, position], put in position, set up, place; determine, resolve; judge, pass sentence; think, consider. I, 11.
statūra, -ae, f. [status; stō, stand], a standing upright; size or height of the body, stature. II, 30.
status, -ūs, m. [stō, stand], standing, condition, status; position.
stimulus, -i, m., goad; stake with barbed iron point set in the ground as a defence.
stipendiarius, -a, -um, adj. [stipendium, tribute], paying tribute, tributary; pl. as noun, tributaries. I, 30.
stipendium, -di, n., tax, tribute. I, 36.

subpes, -itis, m., log, trunk; stake.
stirpis, -pis, m., stem, stock; race.
sto, stāre, stet, stātum, intr., stand; abide by.
strāmentum, -i, n., covering; straw, thatch; pack-saddle.
streptus, -ūs, m. [streptō, make a noise], noise, rattle, uproar. II, 11.
studeō, -ēre, -ēi, —, intr., be eager or zealous; desire, strive after, devote one’s self to; pay attention to; accustom one’s self to. I, 9.
studīōsē, adv. [studīōsus, eager], eagerly, zealously.
studium, -di, n. [studeō, be zealous], zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm, desire; good will, devotion; pursuit, occupation. I, 19.
stultitia, -ae, f. [stultus, foolish], foolishness, folly.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl. (1) With acc. (a) with verbs of motion, under, beneath; up to: (b) of time, just at, about, toward. (2) With abl., (a) of position, under, beneath; toward, near to; at the foot or base of: (b) of time, during, within; in compound, sub or sube, under; up, away; from beneath; secretly; in succession; slightly. I, 7.
subactus, see subigō.
subdolus, -a, -um, adj. [dolus, deceit], subtle, crafty.
subdācō, -dācere, -dāxi, -dactum, tr. [dūcē, lead], draw or lead up; lead or draw off, withdraw; with nāvēs, haul up, beach. I, 22.
subductō, -ōnis, f. [subdācō, beach], beaching.
subeō, -e, -ē, -itum, tr. [sē, go. App. 84]. come or go under, come up to, come up; undergo, endure. I, 5.
subesse, see subsum.
subiectō, -icere, -iēci, -iectum, tr. [iacē, hurl. App. 7], hurl or put under; throw from beneath; place below; subject to, expose to. I, 26.
subigō, -igere, -egi, -ectum, tr. [agō, lead, drive], subdue, reduce.
subitō, adv. [subitus, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, 39; II, 19.
subitus, -a, -um, adj. [subseô, come up, come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, 7.

sublatus, see tollô.

sublevô, I, tr. [levo, lift], lift from beneath, lift or raise up, support; assist, aid; lighten, lessen. I, 16.

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake. IV, 17.

subluô, -luere, —, -luitum, wash, flow around the base.

subministrô, I, tr. [ministrô, wait upon], furnish, supply, give. I, 40; III, 25.

submitô, -mittere, -misî, -missum, tr. [mittô, send], send up, send to the assistance of. II, 6.

submoveô, -movîre, -môvi, -mûtum, tr. [moveô, move], move away, drive away, dislodge. I, 25.

subruô, -ruere, -ruî, -rutum, tr. [ruô, fall], cause to fall from beneath, overthrow; dig under, undermine. II, 6.

subsequôr, -sequi, -secûtus sum, tr. and intr. [sequor, follow], follow closely, follow up or on, follow. II, 11.

subsidiûm, -dî, n. [subsideô, sit near or in reserve], sitting in reserve; reserve force, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, 52; II, 6.

subsido, -sidere, -sêdi, -sessum, intr. [sedeô, sit], sit down, remain.

subsistô, -sistere, -stîti, —, intr. [sîstô, stand], halt, make a stand; be strong enough, hold out. I, 16.

subsum, -esse, -fui, intr. [sum, be]. App. 77, be under or below; be near or close at hand. I, 25.

subtrahô, -trahere, -traxî, -tractum, tr. [trahô, draw], draw or carry off from beneath; take away, withdraw. I, 44.

subvectîô, -onis, f. [subvehô, convey], conveying; transportation.

subvehô, -vehere, - vexî, -vectum, tr. [vehô, carry], bring or carry up; convey. I, 16.

subvenîô, -venire, -vênî, -ventum, intr. [venîô, come], come or go to help, aid, succor.

succeôdô, -cedere, -cessî, -cessum, intr. [sub+côdô, go], go or come under; come up to, come up, advance, be next to; succeed, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, 24.

succeedô, -cenderé, -cendi, -censum, tr. [candô, shine], set on fire below, kindle, burn.

succidô, -cidera, -cîdi, -cîsum, tr. [sub+caedô, cut], cut from beneath, cut down, fell. IV, 19.

succumbô, -cumbere, -cubui, -subiitum, intr. [cf. cubô, lie], sink under; yield.

sucurrô, -currere, -curri, -cursum, m. [sub+currô, run], run to help, aid, assist.

sudis, -is, f., pile, stake.

Suêbus, -a, -um, adj., of or pertaining to the Suebi, Sueban; pl. as noun, Suêbi (Bbi), the Suebi (swê'bi), a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern Swabians. I, 37; IV, 1.

Susssionês, -um, m. (Be), the Susssionêse (swês's/nês). II, 3.

sufficô, -ferre, -feci, -fectum, intr. [sub+faciê, make], be sufficient.

suffodiô, -fodere, -fodi, -fossum, tr. [sub+jodiô, dig], dig under; stab underneath. IV, 12.

suffrâgium, -gî, n., vote, ballot.

Sugambri, -ôrum, m. (Ag), the Sugambri (sû-gam'brî). IV, 16.

suggestus, -us, m., platform, stage, tribunal.

sui, sibi, sâ, or sêsa, reflex. pron. of sâ person (App. 163, 164, 165), himself, herself, itself, themselves; be, she, they, etc.; inter sê, see inter and App. 166. I, 1.

Sulla, -ae, m., Lucius Sulla (lû'shyûs sû/la), the dictator; leader of the nobility; engaged in civil war with Marius, leader of the popular party; lived from 138 B.C. to 78 B.C. I, 21.

Sulpicius, -oi, m., Publius Sulpicius Rufus (pûb'lês sûl-plsh/yûs ryfûs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. IV, 22.

sum, esse, fui, (App. 60), intr., be, exist; live; stay, remain; serve for; with gen. in predicate, be the mark or sign of; belong to; be the duty of; with dat. of possessor, have. I, 1.

summa, -ae, f. [summus, highest], the
main thing or point, sum total, aggregate, the whole; general management, control, direction; summa imperi, the chief command. I. 29.

summus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of superus, high. App. 44], highest, very high; the highest part of the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme; all. I. 16.

sümō, sümere, sümpai, sümpium, tr., [sub+emē, take], take away, take; assume; with supplicium, inflict; with labor, spend. I. 7.
sümptuōsus, -a, -um, adj. [sümpimus, expense], expensive.
sümpus, -us, m. [sümō, spend], expense. I. 16.
sümpus, see sümō.
super, adv. and prep. with acc., above, over, on.
superior, -ius, adj. [comp. of superus, high. App. 44], (1) of place, upper, higher; superior; (2) of time, previous, former. I. 10.
superō, I, tr. and intr. [super, over], go over; overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer, master, overcome, prevail; be left over, remain; vitā superāre, survive. I. 17.
supersedeō, -āre, -ādi, -āssum, intr. [sedēō, sit], sit above, be above, be superior to; refrain from. II. 8.
supersum, -esse, -fuī, intr. [sum, be]. App. 77, be over or above; be left, remain, survive. I. 23.
superus, -a, -um, adj. [super, 'above'], over, above; comp., see superior; sup., see summus.
suppētō, -perēta, -petīvi, -petītum, intr. [sub+petē, seek, obtain], be near or at hand; be in store, be supplied, hold out. I. 3.
supplēmentum, -I, n. [suppleō, fill up], a filling up; supplies, reinforcements.
supplex, -icis, m. and f., suppliant. II. 28.
supplicātiō, -ōnis, f. [supplex, suppliant], public prayer to the gods in thanksgiving for successes, hence thanksgiving. II. 35.
suppliciter, adv. [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, humbly. I. 27.
supplicium, -cium, n. [sub+plicō, bend], a bending over to receive punishment; punishment, death. I. 19.
supportō, I, tr. [sub+portō, carry], carry or bring up from beneath; bring, convey; supply, furnish. I. 39; III. 3.
suprā, adv. and prep. with acc. (1) as adv., before, previously; (2) as prep. with acc., above, before. II. 1.
suscipiō, -cipere, -cipī, -ceptum, tr. [sub(b)+capīō, take], take or lift up; undertake, assume, take on one's self; begin, engage in. I. 3.
spectus, -a, -um, adj. [suscipiō, suspect], suspected, distrusted.
suscipiō, -ānis, f. [suscipior, suspect], suspicion, distrust; cause for suspicion; indication, appearance. I. 4.
suscipior, I, tr. [suscipio, suspect], suspect, distrust; surmise. I. 44; IV. 6.
sustentō, I, tr. and intr. [freq. of sustinēō, hold up], hold up, sustain; maintain; hold out; endure, withstand. II. 6.
sustinēō, 2, tr. and intr. [sub(b)+steneō, hold], hold up from below; hold up; sustain; hold back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure, bear; hold out. I. 24.
sustuli, see tollō.
suis, -a, -um, reflex. pronominat adj. referring to subject (App. 163, 164, 165, 167,a), [sui, himself, herself, etc.], of or belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, their own; his, hers, its, theirs; sua, n. pl. as noun, one's property; sui, m. pl. as noun, their men (friends or countrymen). I. 1.

T.

T. abbr. for Titus (ti'tūs), a Roman praenomen. I. 10.
tabula, -as, f., board; tablet; list. I. 29.
tabulātum, -I, n. [cf. tabula, board], flooring of boards; story.
taceō, 2, tr. and intr., be silent; keep
silent, pass over in silence; tacitus, 
gf. part. as adj., silent. I. 17.
tálea, -ae, f., rod, bar; piece of wood, 
 stake.
tális, -e, adj., such, such a; such a 
great; so great a.
tam, adv., so, so very. I, 14.
tamen, adv. (opposed to some expressed 
or implied concession), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still; however; at least. I, 7.
Tamesis, -is, m. (Acd), the river Tame-
sis (tán'ę-sis), better, the Thames.
tametsi, conj. [tamen, however + eteí, 
even if], although, though, notwithstanding. III, 50.
tandem, adv., at last, at length, finally; 
in interrog. clauses to add emphasis, as 
tango, 'tangere, tetigí, tæctum, tr., 
touch, border on.
tantopere, adv. [tantue, so great + 
opus, work], so greatly, so earnestly. I, 31.
tantulus, -a, -um, adj. [dim. of tantus, 
sogreat], so small or little, so diminu-
tive; trifling. II, 30.
tantum, adv. [tantus, so great], so much, so much, so far; only, merely.
tantummodo, adv., only. III, 5.
tantundem, adv. [tantue, so great], so 
much or so far.
tantus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. tam, so], so much, so great, so powerful, such; 
quantó ... tætö, with comparatives, 
see quantō. I, 15.
Tarbelli, -órum, m. (Ec), the Tarbelli 
(tàr-bél'i). III, 27.
tardè, adv. [tardus, slow], slowly; 
comp. tardius, too slowly. IV, 23.
tardō, i, tr. [tardus, slow], make slow, 
delay; hinder, check. II, 25.
tardus, -a, -um, adj., slow, sluggish. II, 25.
Tarusætès, -ium, m. (DEc), the Taru-
sates (tàrū-sátēz). III, 23.
Tagetius, -ti, m., Tagetius (tās-je-
shyus), a chief of the Carnutes.
taurus, -i, m., bull.
Taximagætis, -i, m., Taximagælus(tāx-
si-mag'ey-lūs), a king of Kent.
taxus, -i, f., yew-tree, yew.

tectosagés, -um, m. (Ede), the Tectos-
ages (ték-tös/-a-jēz).
tectum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], covering, 
roof; house. I, 35.
tectus, see tegō.
tegimentum, -i, n. [tegō, cover], a 
covering. II, 21.
tegō, tegere, téxi, tectum, tr., cover, 
hide; protect, defend.
tēlum, -i, n., a weapon for fighting at a 
distance, missile, dart, javelin. I, 8.
temerarius, -a, -um, adj. [temerē, 
 rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, 31.

temerē, adv., rashly, blindly, without 
good reason. I, 40; IV, 20.
temeritās, -tātis, f. [temerē, rashly], 
rashness, indiscretion.
tēmō, -ōnis, m., pole (of a wagon). IV, 
33.
temperantia, -ae, f. [temperō, control 
one's self], prudence, self-control. I, 
19.
temperō, 1, intr., restrain or control 
one's self, refrain; temperātus, pf. 
part. as adj., temperate, mild. I, 7.
tempestās, -tētis, f. [temperē, rashly], 
rashly, without good reason. I, 40; 
IV, 20.
tempestus, -i, n., a storm, tempest. III, 12.
temptō, i, tr., make an attempt upon, 
try to gain possession of, attack; try, 
test; try to win over. I, 14.
temps, -oris, n., a division or section 
of time, a time, time (in general); oc-
casion, crisis; omni tempore, always; 
in quod time, for the future; 
unō tempestū, at the same time, at 
one. I, 5.

Tēncertē, -órum, m., the Tēncertē 
(tēnktē-rē). IV, 1.
tendō, tendere, tetendi, tentum or 
tēneum, tr., stretch, stretch out, ex-
tend; stretch a tent, pitch; encamp. 
II, 13.
tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl., darkness.
teneō, tenère, tenui, tentum, tr., hold, 
keep, occupy, possess, hold possession of; hold in, restrain, bind; se tenere, 
remain; memoriā tenere, remember. I, 
7.
tener, -era, -erum, adj., tender. II, 17.
tennis, -e, adj., slim, thin; slight, insignificant; delicate.
tenuitâs, -tâis, f. [tennis, thin], thinness, poverty.
tenuiter, adv. [tennis, thin], thinly. III, 13.
ter, num. adv. [cf. trê's, three], three times. I, 53.
teres, -etis, rounded; tapering.
tergum, -i, n., the back: terga vertere, to flee; post tergum or ab tergo, in the rear. I, 53; III, 19.
terni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj. [ter, thrice], three each, three apiece. III, 15.
terra, -ae, f., earth, land, soil, ground; region, district; terrae (pl.) and orbis terrarum, the world. I, 32; III, 15.
Terraeâdiius, -âdi, m., Titus Terraeâdius [tû'tâ's târ'i-sâd/-i-us], a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.
terrænus, -a, -um, adj. [terra, earth], of earth. I, 43.
terreô, 2, tr., frighten, terrify.
territô, I, tr. [freq. of terreô, frighten], frightened, terrify, alarm.
terror, -ôris, m. [terreô, frightened], fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, 12.
tertius, -ae, -a, -um, num. adj. [ter, thrice], third. I, 1.
testamentum, -i, n. [testor, a witness], will. I, 39.
testimônium, -âni, n. [testor, a witness], testimony, evidence, proof. I, 44.
testis, -is, m. and f., witness. I, 14.
testudo, -inis, f., tortoise; shed; a testudo, a column of men, holding their shields overlapped over their heads. II, 5.
Teutomatus, -i, m., Teutomatus (tû'tô-mû-tâ's), son of Oltovic, king of the Nittobroges; later king himself.
Teutoni, -ôrum or Teutonês, -um, m., the Teutoni (tû'ô-toni) or Teutones (tû'ô-tonês). I, 33; II, 4.
têxî, see tegô.
tignum, -i, n., log, timber, beam, ple. IV, 17.
Tigurinus, -âs, -um, of or belonging to the Tigurini; pl. ae noun, Tigurini (Cg), the Tigurini [tîg'/ûr'i-nî]. I, 12.
timeo, -ôre, -uli, —, tr. and intr., fear, to be afraid of, dread; with dat., be anxious about, be anxious for, dread; nihil timère, have no fear. I, 14.
timidé, adv. [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, 25.
timidus, -a, -um, adj. [timeô, fear], fearful, frightened, timid, cowardly, afraid. I, 39.
timor, -ôris, m. [timeô, fear], fear. III, 16.
timor, -ôris, m. [timeô, fear], fear. III, 16.
tolére, I, tr. [cf. tollô, lift up], bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support; with famem, appease, alleviate. I, 28.
tollô, tollere, sustull, substâtum, tr., lift, elevate; take on board; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; cancel; substâtus, pf. part as adj., elevated. I, 5.
Tolosa, -ae, f. (Ed), Tolosa (tô-lô'sa), now Toulouse. III, 20.
Tolosatês, -ânum, m., the Tolosates (tôlôsâtêz), the people of Tolosa. I, 10.
tormentum, -i, n. [torqueô, twist], means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, e.g. catapulta and ballista; windlass, hoist; device for torturing, hence, torment, torture. II, 8.
torreô, torrêre, torrui, testum, tr., scorch, burn.
tot, indecl. adj., so many. III, 10.
totidem, indecl. adj. [tot, so many], just as many, the same number. I, 48; II, 4.
totus, -a, -um, gen. totius (App. 32), adj., the whole, the whole of; entire, all; with force of adv., wholly, entirely. I, 2.
trabe, trabiès, f., beam, timber, ple. II, 29.
tractus, see trahô.
trâdô, -dere, -didî, -ditum, tr. [trâns +dô, give], give over, give up, surrender, deliver; intrust, commit; hand down, transmit; teach, communicate; recommend. I, 27.
trâducô, -ducere, -dûxi, -ductum, tr. [trâns +ducô, lead], lead across, lead
over; take across, transport; transfer, convey, pass over; win over. I, 11.

trągula, -ae, f., a javelin or dart used by the Gauls. I, 26.

trahō, trahere, tráxi, tractum, tr., drag, drag along. I, 53.

tráció, -icere, -iécī, -iectum, tr. [trans + iacē, hurl. App. 7], hurl across; pierce, transfix.

tráiscetūs, -ūs, m. [tráció, hurl across], a hurling across; crossing, passage. IV, 21.

tránō, 1, intr. [trāns+nō, swim], swim across. I, 53.

tranquillitās, -ātis, f., calmness, stillness; a calm. III, 15.

trans, prep. with acc., across, beyond, over; in compounds, trāns or trā, across, over, through. I, 1.

Trānsalpinus, -a, -um, adj. [Alpēs, the Alps], across the Alps, Transalpine.
	ranscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, tr. and intr. [scandō, climb], climb over; board. III, 15.

transēō, -ire, -ī, -ītum, tr. and intr. [sēō, go. App. 84], go across or over, cross; march through, pass through; move, migrate; of times, pass by. I, 5.

transferō, -ferre, -tullī, -lātum, tr. [ferō, carry. App. 81], carry or bring over, transfer.

transfigō, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, tr. [figō, fix], thrust or pierce through, transfixed. I, 25.

transfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr. [fodiō, dig], dig through; pierce through, impale.

transagredior, -gradī, -gressus sum, tr. [gradior, 'step'], step over, cross. II, 19.

transitus, -ūs, m. [trānsō, go across], crossing, passage.

translātus, see transferō.

transmarinus, -a, -um, adj. [mare, sea], across the sea, foreign.

transmissus, -ūs, m. [transmittō, send across], sending across; passage.

transmittō, -mittere, -míti, -missum, tr. [mittō, send], send across.

transportō, 1, tr. [portō, carry], carry across or over, bring over, convey, transport. I, 37; IV, 16.

Trānhēnānus, -a, -um, adj., beyond or across the Rhine; pl. as noun. Trānhēnānī, the people across the Rhine. IV, 16.

trānstrum, -i, m., cross-beam, thwart. III, 13.

transversus, -a, -um, adj. [trans-vertō, turn across], turned across, cross. II, 8.

Trēbius, -bi, m., Marcus Trebius Gallus (māri kūs trē/bi-ūs gāl'ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Trēbonius, -nī, m. (1) Gaius Trebonius (ga'yūs trē-bō'nī-ūs), one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) Gains Trebonius, a Roman knight.

trecentī, -ae, -a (CCC), card. num. adj. [tres, three + centum, hundred], three hundred. IV, 37.

trepidō, 1, intr. hurry about in alarm; pass., be disturbed or in confusion.

trēs, tria, gen. trium (III), card. num. adj., three. I, 1.

Trēvir, -erī, m., one of the Treveri; pl. Trēverī (Bfgh), the Treveri (trēv'er-i). I, 87; II, 24.

Trībocī, -ōrum, m. (Bgh), the Triboci (trib'o-sī). I, 61; IV, 10.

tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs; tribūnus militum or militāris, a military tribune. I, 39; II, 26.

tribū, tribueri, tribui, tribūtum, tr. [tribus, a tribe or division], divide, distribute; attribute, assign, allot, ascribe; grant, do for the sake of, render. I, 13.

tribūtum, -ī, n. [tribū, render, pay], tribute, tax.

trīduum, -ī, n. [tres, three + diēs, day], three days. I, 26.

triennium, -ī, n. [tres, three + annus, year], three years. IV, 4.

trigintā (XXX), card. num. adj., indecl. [tres, three], thirty. I, 26.

trīnī, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., three each; three, triple. I, 53.

Trīnovantēs, -um, m. (Ad), the Trīnovantes (trīn'o-vān'tēz).
TRIPERTITO 80  UNIVERSUS

ubi, adv. (1) of place, in which place, where; (2) of time, when, whenever; as soon as; ubi primum, as soon as I, 5.

Ubi, -orum, m. (ABgh), the Ubi (ų́bl̯), I, 54; IV, 3.

ubique, adv. [ubi, where], anywhere, everywhere. III, 16.

ulcisor, ulciscer, ultus sum, tr., avenge; punish, take vengeance on. I, 12.

ullus, -a, -um, gen., allus (App. 32), a single, any; as noun, any one, anybody. I, 7.

ulterior, -ius, adj., comp. [ultra, beyond. App. 48], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, 7.

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. [ultra, beyond. App. 43], farthest, most distant or remote; as noun, those in the rear. III, 27.

ultra, prep. with acc., beyond, on the farther side of. I, 48.

ultró, adv., to or on the farther side, beyond; of one’s own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously, without provocation; besides, moreover; ultró citróque, back and forth. I, 42; III, 27.

ultus, see ulcisor.

ululátus, -ús, m., yell, shriek.

umerus, -i, m., the shoulder.

umquam, adv., at any time, ever; neque . . . umquam, and never, never. I, 41; III, 28.

äná, adv. [unus, one], (1) of place, together, along with, in one place. (2) of time, together, along with, at the same time, also. I, 5.

unde, adv., from which place, whence. I, 28.

ündecim (XI), card. num. adj., indecl. [unus, one + decem, ten], eleven.

ändecimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [ändecim, eleven], eleventh. II, 23.

ändevisiónti, card. num. adj., indecl. [unus, one + dé, from + vīgintī, twenty], nineteen. I, 8.

undique, adv. [unde, whence], from all parts; on all sides, everywhere. I, 2.

úniverse, -a, -um, adj. [unus, one+
vertē, turn], turned into one; all together, whole, universal, all as a mass. II, 33.

ūesus, āna, ānum, gen. ānius (App. 32), card. num. adj., one, the same one; single, alone; the sole, the only; the sole or only one. I, 1.

urbaaux, -a, -um, adj. [urbs, city], of or in the city.

urba, urbis, f., city; especially, the city, Rome. I, 7.


ūrus, -i, m., wild ox.

Usipetēs, -um, m., the Usipetēs (ū-alp'-ē-tēz). IV, 1.

usitātus, -a, -um, adj. [ūsitor, use often], ordinary, familiar.

usque, adv. (1) of place, all the way to, even to, as far as; (2) of time, up to, till; with ad, until. I, 50; III, 9.

ūsus, see ĭtūr.

ūsus, -úsus, m. [ūtor, use], use, experience, practice, skill; service, advantage; need, necessity; ĭsus est, there is need; ĭsus esse or ex ĭsus esse, be of advantage or service; īsus venire, come by necessity; happen. I, 30; II, 9.

ut and ulti, adv. and conj. (1) as interrog. adv., how? (2) as rel. adv. and conj., as, in proportion as, just as; insomuch as; as if: (3) as conj. (a) with ind., when, after; (b) with subj., that, in order that, to; that, so that, as so to; though, although; after words of fearing, that not. I, 2.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. utrius (App. 32), adj. (1) as interrog., which one or which of two; (2) as rel., the one who, of two, whichever. I, 12.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, adj. [uter, which of two], each of two. either of two; both. I, 34; II, 8.

util, see ĭtūt.

ūtī, see ĭtūr.

ūtilis, -e, adj. [ūtor, use], useful, serviceable. IV, 7.

ūtilītās, -ātīs, f. [ūtilis, useful], usefulness, advantage, service. IV, 19.

ūtór, ĭtī, īsus sum, intr., make use of, employ, use, avail one’s self of, exercise; have, enjoy, experience, possess, show; adopt, accept; ĭeus, pi. part. often translated with. I, 5.

utrimque, adv. [uterque, each of two], on each side, on both sides. I, 50; IV, 17.

utrum, conj. [uter, which of two], whether; utrum . . . an, whether . . . or; utrum . . . necne, whether . . . or not. I, 40.

uxor, -ōris, f., wife. I, 18.

V.

V, sign for quinque, five.

Vacalus, -i, m. (Aff), the Vacalus (vāk'-a-lus) river, now the Waal. IV, 10.

vacō, i, intr., be empty or unoccupied; lie waste. I, 28.

vacuus, -a, -um, adj. [vacō, be empty], empty, unoccupied; free from, destitute of. II, 12.

vadum, -i, n., ford, shallow. I, 6.

vāgīnā, -ae, f., sheath, scabbard.

vagor, 1, intr. [vagus, roaming], roam about, rove, wander. I, 2.

valēo, 2, intr., be strong or vigorous, have weight, influence or strength; plurimum valere, be very powerful. I, 17.

Valerius, -rī, m. (1) Gaius Valerius Troucillus (gāi'īús va-lē'rī-ús tri-'sil'-ūs), a Gallic interpreter and confidential friend of Caesar. I, 19. (2) Gaius Valerius Flaccus (see (1) flāk'-ūs), Governor of Gaul 83 B.C. I, 47. (3) Gaius Valerius Caburus (see (1) kā-bú'-rūs), a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship. I, 47. (4) Gaius Valerius Proculus (see (1) prōs'-il'-ūs), son of No. 3. I, 47. (5) Lucius Valerius Praenoxicus (lu'-shyūs va-lē'rī-ús prōk'-ē-nū'-nūs), a Roman lieutenant in Gaul, before Caesar’s time. III, 20. (6) Gaius Valerius Domnotaurus (see (1) dom'-nō-taw'-rūs), son of No. 3.

Valetiācūs, -i, m., Valetiaccus (vāl'-ē-shi'-ā-kūs), a nobleman of the Haeduī.

valētūdō, -inis, f. [valēo, be strong], health, poor health.

vallis, -is, f., vale, valley. III, 1.

vāllum, -i, n. (vāllus, palisade), wall
or rampart of earth set with palisades; entrenchments, earthworks. I, 26.

vālōs, -i, m., stake; palisade.

Vangiones, -um, m. (Brh), the Vangiones (vān-jō-nēz). I, 51.

varietās, -tātis, f. [varīlus, diverse], diversity, variety.

varius, -a, -um, adj., diverse, changing, various. II, 22.

vāstō, i, tr. [vāstus, waste], lay waste, ravage, devastate. I, 11.

vāstus, -a, -um, adj., waste; boundless, vast. III, 8.

vāticaūtiō, -ōnis, f., divination. I, 50.

-ve, conj., eundūtīc = vel, or.

vectīgālis, -ālis, n. [vectīgālis, tributary], tax, tribute; pl., revenues. I, 18.

vectīgālis, -e, adj. [vehō, carry], paying revenue or tribute; tributary. III, 8.

vectōrīus, -a, -um, adj. [vehō, carry], for carrying; vectōria nāvis, a transport.

vehemens, adv. [vehemēns, violent], violently, severely, strongly, very much, greatly. I, 37; III, 22.

vehō, vehere, vexi, vectum, tr., carry; bring along. I, 43.

vel, conj. and adv. (1) as conj., or; vel . . . vel, either . . . or; (2) as adv., even. I, 6.

Vēlanīus, -nī, m., Quintus Velanius (kwan-tūs vē-lā-nī-ūs), a military tribune in Caesar's army. III, 7.

Vēliocassēs, -um, m. (Bd), the Veliocasses (vē-lē-ō-kās'ēz). II, 4.

Vēllanodūnum, -i, n. (Be), Vellauno-dunum (vē-law-nō-dū'nŭm or vē-lawn-no-dō'nŭm), a town of the Senones.

Vellāvi, -ōrum, m. (De), the Vellāvi (vē-lā/vi-lī).

vēlōcitās, -tātis, f. [vēlōx, swift], swiftness, speed.

vēlōcītēs, adv. [vēlōx, swift], swiftly, speedily.

vēlōx, -ōcīs, adj., swift, rapid. I, 48.

vēllum, -i, n., covering, veil; sail. III, 13.

velut, adv., as, just as. I, 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [vēnor, hunt], hunting, the chase. IV, 1.

vēnātor, -ōris, m. [vēnor, hunt], hunter.

vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr. [vēn-um, sale+dō, give], put to sale, sell, sell at auction. II, 33.

Vēnelli, -ōrum, m. (Be), the Venelli (vē-nē/lī). II, 34.

Vēntī, -ōrum, m. (Ch), the Veneti (vēn'/ē-tī). II, 34.

Vēnētiās, -ae, f., Venetia (vē-nē/shyā), the country of the Veneti. III, 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, adj., of the Veneti, Venetian. III, 18.

venia, -ae, f., indulgence, favor; pardon.

venīō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 'intr.' come, arrive, go, advance; in spem venīre, have hopes; pass. often imper. as ventum est, they came, it came, etc. I, 8.

ventītō, i, intr. [freq. of venīō, come], keep coming, resort; go back and forth, visit. IV, 3.

ventus, -i, m., wind. III, 13.

vēr, vēris, n., the spring.

Vēragri, -ōrum, m. (Cdgl), the Veragri (vē-rā'gri). III, 1.

Verbīgenus, -ī, m. (Cgh), Verbīgenus (vēr-bij-e-nūs), a canton of the Helvetii. I, 27.

verhum, -i, n., word; pl., speech; entreaty; verba facere, plead. I, 20.

Vercassivellanus, -ī, m., Vercassivellaunus (vēr-kās/'sī-vē-law'nuś). Veringetorix, -īgis, m., Veringetorix (vēr'ēn-jēt/'ō-rīks), an Arverний, the greatest leader produced by the Gauls.

verseor, verērī, veritus sum, tr., reverse; fear, dread, be afraid of. I, 19.

vergo, -ere, —, —, intr., look or lie towards, be situated; slope. I, 11.

vergobretus, -ī, m., vergobret (vēr-gō-brēt), the title of the chief magistrates of the Helvetii. I, 16.

veritus, see verseor.

vērō, adv. [vērus, true], in truth, truly, really, indeed; but, however, on the other hand. I, 32; II, 2.

versō, 1, tr., turu; deal with; pass. as
deponent, turn one's self; be, remain; engage in; fight. I, 48; II, 1.

versus, adv. [vertō, turn], turned to; toward.

versus, -us, m. [vertō, turn], turning; verse.

Vertice, -onis, m., Vertico (vēr'ī-kō), one of the Noviit.

vertō, vertere, verti, versum, tr., turn, turn around; terga vertere, flee. I, 53; III, 19.

Verucloetius, -i, m., Verucloetius (vērū'-kī-sh'yūs), an Helvetian envoy, sent to Caesar. I, 7.

vērus, -a, -um, adj., true; n. as noun, the truth; vēri similis, likely, probably. I, 18.

verūtum, -ī, n., dart, javelin.

Vesontiō, -onis, m. (Cf), Vesontiō (vēsōn'sh'yō), the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Dous, modern Besançon. I, 38.

vesper, -ōrī, -e, m., evening; sub vesperum, towards evening. I, 26.

vēster, -tra, -trum, poss. pron. [vēsō, you], your, yours.

vēstigitum, -ī, n. [vēstigō, trace out], trace, track, footprint; spot, place; moment, instant. IV, 2.

vestītus, -i, m., clothe, clothing.

vestitus, -us, m. [vestīo, clothe], clothing.

vestigium, -ī, n., vestigium, trace out, footprint, spot, place; moment, instant.


vetus, -ēris, adj., old, ancient, former; with militēs, veteran. I, 13.


 vexō, 1, tr. [intensive of vehō, carry], carry or drag hither and thither; harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, 14.

via, -ae, f., way, road, route; journey, march. I, 9.

viātor, -ōris, m. [via, road], traveler. IV, 6.

viciēni, -ae, -a, distr. num. adj., [cf. vigintī, twenty], twenty each, twenty.

vicesimus, -a, -um, ord. num. adj. [cf. vigintī, twenty], twentieth.

viciēs, num. adv. [cf. vigintī, twenty], twenty times.

vicinitas, -ātis, f. [vicinus, near], neighborhood; pl., neighbors.

victa, gen. (no nom.), change; only in the adv. phrase in vicem, alternately, in turn. IV, 1.

victima, -ae, f., victim; a sacrificial animal.

victor, -ōris, m. [vincō, conquer], conqueror, victor; as adj., victorious. I, 31; II, 24.

victoria, -ae, f. [victor, victor], victory. I, 14.

victus, see vincō.

victua, -ūs, m. [vīvō, live], living, mode of life; provisions, food. I, 31.

victus, -i, m., hamlet, village. I, 5.

videō, videre, vidi, visum, tr., see, perceive, observe, examine, understand; see to, take care; in pass., he seen; seem, appear; seem proper, seem best. I, 6.

Vienna, -ae, f. (Df), Vienna (vi-en'a), modern Vienne.

vigilia, -ae, f. [vigī, awake], wakefulness, watching; a watch, one of the four equal divisions of the night, used by the Romans in reckoning time. I, 12.


vimen, -inis, n., a plant twig, switch, osier. II, 33.

vincō, vincere, vinxi, vincum, tr., bind. I, 53.

vincō, vincere, vicī, victum, tr., conquer, overcome, vanquish; prevail; have one's way or desire. I, 25.

vinctus, see vincō.

vinculum, -i, n. [vincō, bind], bond, fetter, chain. I, 4.

vindicō, 1, tr., assert authority, assert, claim; set free, deliver; inflict punishment. III, 16.

vinea, -ae, f. [vinum, wine], vine arbor, hence, a shed for the defense of a besieging party. II, 12.

vinum, -i, n., wine. II, 15.

violō, 1, tr., harm, injure; devastate.
vir, viri, m., man; husband; a man of distinction or honor; cf. homō, a human being as distinguished from the lower animals. II, 25.

virēs, see vis.

virgo, -inis, f., maiden, virgin.

virgūlitum, -ī, n., thicket, brush, brushwood. III, 18.

Viridōmarus, -ī, m., Viridomarus (virō-marō-rus), a chief of the Haeduī.

Viridovix, -īcis, m., Viridovix (vi-rīd'-ō-viks), a chief of the Venelli. III, 17.

virūs, -ūtus, -ī, m., manliness, valor, merit, worth, virtue, courage; strength, energy; pl., good qualities, virtues, merits. I, 1.

vis, vis (App. 27), f., force, might, energy, strength; violence, severity; authority, power; a force, a great number; pl., viriēs, strength, force; vim facere, use violence. I, 6.

visus, see videoē.

vīta, -ae, f. [cf. vivō, live], life; manner of living, living. I, 16.

vītō, 1, tr., avoid, shun, evade, escape. I, 20.

vītrum, -ī, n., woad, a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vivō, vivere, vīxi, victum, intr., live; subsist on. IV, 1.

vīvus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. vivō, live], alive, living.

vīx, adv., with difficulty, barely, hardly, scarcely. I, 6.

Vocātēs, -īnum, m. (Dcd), the Vocates (vō-kā'tēz). III, 23.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., Voccio (vōk'shyō), a King of Noricum. I, 53.

 vocō, 1, tr. [vōx, voice], call, summon; invite. I, 19.

Vocontli, -ōrum, m. (Df), the Vocontli (vō-kō'n'shyli). I, 10.

Volcāclus, -ūs, m., Gaius Volcalliús, (gā'yūs vōl-kā'shyūs tūl'ūs), a young man in Caesar's army.

Volcae, -ārum, m. (1) Volcae Arcō-

VIR 84  X

comici (Eef), the Volcae Arcō-

vōl'sē är'ō-kōm'i-sī). (2) Volcae Tec-

tosagōs (Ede) (vōl'sē tēk-tōs'a-jēz).

volō, velle, volui, — (App. 83), tr. and intr., wish, be willing, want, desire: prefer, choose; intend; mean; quid sibi velit, what did he intend or mean? I, 7.

voluntārius, -a, -um, adj. [voluntās, will], willing; pl. as noun, volunteers.

voluntās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], wish, will, desire, inclination; good will; favor; consent, approval. I, 7.

voluptās, -tātis, f. [volō, wish], what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment. I, 53.

Volusēnus, -ī, m., Gaius Volusēnus Quadrātus (gā'yūs vōlū'-sē'ns kwa-

drā'tūs), a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry. III, 5.

Vorangus, -ī, m., Lucius Vorengus (lū-

shyūs vō-re'nūs), a centurion in Caes-

sar's army.

vōs, see tū.

Vosegus, -ī, m. (BCg), the Vosegus (vōs'ē-gūs), better, the Vosges Mountains. IV, 10.

voveō, vovere, vōvi, vōtum, tr., vow.

vōx, vocis, f., voice, tone; outcry, cry; word; pl., words, language, variously translated according to context, as entreaties, complaints, tales, etc. I, 32; II, 13.

Vulcānus, -ī, m., Vulcānus (vōl-kā'-

nūs), better Vulcan, the god of fires.

vulgō, adv. [vulgar, the crowd], commonly; everywhere. I, 39; II, 1.

vulgarō, -ī, m., the common people, the multitude, the public, the masses; a crowd. I, 20.

vulnērō, 1, tr. [vulnus, a wound], wound. I, 26.


vultus, -ūs, m., countenance, looks. I, 39.

X.

X, sign for decem, ten.
INDEX

TO THE INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND APPENDIX

References in plain-faced type are to pages; in bold-faced type, to sections of the Appendix.

Ablative:

absolute, 150: 1, 2, 2; 3, 21; 8, 6; II, 1, 6; 2, 2; 7, 7.
of accordance, 142, a: I, 4, 1; 8, 8; 14, 3: II, 4, 21; 13, 11; 19, 4.
of agent, 137: I, 3, 11; 7, 13; 14, 17: II, 1, 7; 5, 3; 10, 1.
of attendant circumstance, 142, b: I, 18, 22; 22, 15: II, 1, 14; 23, 13.
of cause, 138: I, 2, 6; 9, 5; 14, 11: II, 1, 10; 4, 7; 9, 10.
of comparison, 139: I, 15, 14; 22, 2; 41, 11: II, 3, 1; 7, 10.
of degree of difference, 146: I, 5, 1; 6, 14, 3: II, 7, 8, 20; 4, 30, 7.
with deponent verbs, 145: I, 2, 5; 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 2, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10.
descriptive, 141: I, 6, 11; 7, 15; 18, 6: II, 6, 10; 15, 3; 18, 4.
with dignus and indignus, 148, a:
duration of time, 152, a: I, 26, 13.
of manner, 142: I, 7, 2; 10, 8; 25, 10: II, 6, 2; 7, 8; 11, 1.
of means, 143: I, 1, 2; 2, 7; 8, 1: II, 1, 2; 3, 7; 8, 3.
for partitive genitive, 101, b: II, 6, 11.
of penalty, 108.
of place from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10.
of place in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17.
with prepositions, 153.
of separation, 134: I, 1, 13; 2, 8; 8, 11: II, 6, 6; 9, 13; 11, 15.
of source, 136: II, 4, 3; 29, 10: IV, 12, 13.
with special verbs and adjectives, 143, a: I, 13, 16; 63, 4: II, 27, 2: III, 9, 12; 21, 1.
of specification, 149: I, 3, 2; 5, 6, 4: II, 4, 13; 8, 6; 13, 6.
of time, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3.
of the way, 144: I, 6, 1; 9, 1; 16, 5: II, 19, 21: III, 1, 5: IV, 25, 7.
absum, 78.
Accent, 10-12: in gen. of nouns in -ius and -is, 16, c.

Accusative:

with adjectives and adverbs, 122, b: I, 46, 2; 54, 3: III, 7, 7: IV, 3, 3.
cognate, 128: I, 38, 1.
with compound verbs, 127: 1, 12, 5: II, 6, 12; 10, 2.
direct object, 124: I, 1, 1; 2, 15; 5, 11: II, 1, 4; 2, 1; 7, 2.
in exclamations, 129.
extent of space, 130: I, 2, 16: 8, 4: II, 6, 2; 11, 12; 16, 1.
in inner, 125, b: 128, a.
with passive verbs, 125, c; 127, a: II, 4, 3.
place to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.
as subject of infinitive, 123: I, 1, 14; 2, 15; 7, 1; II, 1, 3; 2, 7; 6, 13.
INDEX

Clauses: coordinate. 222; coordinate relative in ind. disc., 269: a: II, 17, 11; subordinate, in ind. disc., 269: I, 3, 17; 6, 11; 10, 14: II, 1, 6; 3; 9; 10, 13; see also, Adversative, Causal, Characterizing, Comparison, Conditions, Determining, Generalizing, Indirect questions, Infinitive, Proviso, Purpose, Parenthetical, Result, Substantive, and Temporal.

cœpī, 86.
cognōvī, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.
Commands: in 1st person pl., 217; in 2nd person, 218; in 3rd person, 220; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10. For negative commands see Prohibitions.
Comparatives, declension, 34; occasional meaning, 161.
Comparison, of adj., 39-45; of adverbs, 46; clauses of, 261: I, 32, 11.
Complementary infinitive, 275.
Condemning, verbs of, 108.
Conditions, 249-259: connectives, 250.
undetermined present or past, 263: I, 31, 44; 34, 6; 40, 24: III, 22, 5.
present or past contrary to fact, 264: I, 34, 5.
more vivid future, 256: I, 31, 7; 35, 12; 40, 9.
mixed, 258.
 omitted or implied, 259.
in indirect discourse, 272: I, 34, 5.
cōnfidō, with abl., 143, a: I, 53, 4: III, 9, 12.
Conjugation of verbs: four regular, 67-70; four regular, how distinguished, 63; capiō, 71: sum, 66; irregular, 77-85; deponents, 73; semi-deponents, 74; defective, 86; periphrastic, 75, 76; impersonal, 87.
cōnsuēvī, use of tenses, 193, I, a; 194, a; 195, a.
Consonants, sounds of, 6; doubled, 6, a; division of, into syllables, 8.
cōnsulō, constr., 114, b.
Contracted verb forms, 72: I, 12, 10; 18, 12: II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6.
Convincing, verbs of, constr., 108.

Coordinate relative clause, 173, a: I, 1, 11; 2, 13; 11, 13: II, 4, 7; 5, 3; 13, 4; in indirect discourse, 269: a: II, 7, 11.
Council of war, 26: III, 3, 5.
cum, uses as conj., 238-242; causal or adversative, 239: I, 2, 5; 9, 2; 14, 16: II, 3, 2; 11, 3; 22, 4; temporal, rules, 240; indic. temporal, 241: III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: VI, 12, 1; subjunctive temporal, 242: I, 4, 8; 7, 1; 12, 13; 26, 7: II, 1, 1; 2, 4; 6, 8.
cum primum, 237.

D
Dative:
with adjectives, 106, b: 122: I, 1, 9; 3, 14; 9, 6: II, 2, 5; 3, 2; 9, 6.
of agent, 118: I, 11, 13; 31, 47; 36, 6: II, 17, 21; 20, 1.
double, see Purpose.
with fidem habēre, 115, a: I, 19, 15; 41, 11.
indirect object with compound verbs, 116: I, 2, 5; 5, 13; 10, 7; 42, 16: II, 6, 5; 9, 10; 14, 6.
indirect object with intr. verbs, 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9: 9, 8: II, 1, 11; 10, 18; 16, 5.
indirect object with tr. verbs, 114: I, 3, 15; 4, 1; 10, 1: II, 2, 5; 4, 8; 10, 19.
with passive verbs, 114, c; 115, d; 115, II, c: I, 4, 1; 22, 8.
of possessor, 117: I, 7, 9; 10, 1; 11, 12; 34, 5: II, 6, 9; 15, 9; 16, 9.
of purpose, 119: I, 18, 27; 25, 5; 33, 2: II, 7, 3; 9, 13; 19, 6.
of reference, 120: I, 3, 6; 5, 8; 20, 20; 31, 4: II, 11, 17; 26, 14; 31, 9.
Declensions, of nouns, how distinguished, 14; nouns, 15-30; adjectives, 31-33; pronouns, 51-62; cardinals, 48, 49.
Defective verbs, 86.
Demonstratives, declension, 54-58; uses, 165-171.
Deponent verbs, 73; with abl., see abl.
Desire, subjunctive of, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 228.
ETERMINING CLAUSE, 231: III, 4, 1; 22, 5: IV, 29, 11.
EUS, DECLENSION OF, 16.
ExTER, COMPARISON, 42.
ESE, GENDER, 30, a: I, 4, 3.
GNDUS WITH ABL., 149, a.
IPHTHONGS, SOUNDS OF, 5.
RECT DISCOURSE, 255.
SIMILIS, COMPARISON OF, 41; WITH GEN., 106, b; WITH DAT., 122.
ISTRIBUTIVES, 47.
5, 85.
OMUS, DECLENSION AND GENDER, 28, a; 29, d.
ÖNEC, WITH IND., 234, b; 235, a; WITH SUBJ., 235, b.
ÖNO, CONSTR., 114, a.
SUBLING, EXPRESSIONS OF, WITH SUBJ., 229, d.
RUIDS, VI, 13, 7.
SUBTÉ, WITH SUBJ., 229, d; II, 2, 8.
UM: IND. TEMPORAL CLAUSES, 234; 235, a: I, 27, 7; 39, 1; 46, 1: III, 17, 1; SUBJ. TEMPORAL CLAUSES, 235, b: IV, 13, 4; 23, 10; PROVISO CLAUSES, 260.
UMMODO, WITH SUBJ., 280.
UO, 48.
EMOTION, VERBS OF, WITH GEN., 109: IV, 6, 9.
INCITICS, EFFECT ON ACCENT, 12; CUM, WITH PERS. PRON. 51, c; CUM, WITH REFLEX. PRON. 52, a: I, 5, 5; CUM, WITH REL. PRON. 60, b: I, 1, 10; CUM, WITH INTERROG. PRON. 61, b; NAM, WITH INTERROG. PRON. 51, a.
NIM, 243.
Ö, CONJ. OF, 84.
Ö . . . ÖÜO, 148, a: I, 14, 3.
TENIM, 243.
TAIL, WITH IND., 246.
F
EXERING, EXPRESSIONS OF, 228, b: I, 19, 11: 27, 9; 39, 24; II, 1, 7; 26, 5.
ERÖ, 81.
IDÖ, WITH ABL., 143, a.
FILLING, VERBS AND ADJ. OF, WITH ABL., 148, a.
10, 83.
FLEET, 36, 37.
FORE UT, FOR FUTURE INF., 205, b: I, 42, 8.
FORGETTING, VERBS OF, WITH -GEN., 107: I, 14, 7.
FRÔTUS, WITH ABL., 143, a: III, 21, 1.
FRUOR, WITH ABL., 145; USE OF GERUNDIVE, 289, I, a.
FUNGOR, WITH ABL., 145; USE OF GERUNDIVE, 289, I, a.
FUTURE TENSE, 192; USE, 199.
FUTURE PERFECT TENSE, 195; EQUIVALENT TO FUTURE, 195, a; USE, 199.
G
GALEA, 24.
GALIC CAMPAIGNS, IMPORTANCE, 9; EFFECT, 9, 10.
GAULS, FIRST APPEARANCE IN HISTORY, 20; DECLINE OF THEIR POWER, 20; INVASION OF CIMBRI AND TEUTONI, 21; THEIR CIVILIZATION, 22.
GAUL Factions, 22; GEOGRAPHICAL DIVISIONS IN CAESAR'S TIME, 21.
GENDER, GENERAL RULES, 13; EXCEPTIONS, 15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; OF 1ST DECLENSION, 15, a; OF 2ND DECLENSION, 16, a; OF 3RD DECLENSION, 28, a; OF 4TH DECLENSION, 29, a; OF 5TH DECLENSION, 30, a.
GENERALIZING, RELATIVE, 60, a; CUM CLAUSES, 241, b; 242, b: I, 25, 7; III, 14, 15: IV, 17, 10: V, 19, 7: RELATIVE CLAUSES, 250.
GENITIVE:
WITH ADJ. 106: I, 14, 4; 18, 8; 21, 9: III, 21, 9.
APPosITIONAL, 97, a.
WITH CAUSA AND GRATIÅ, 99, a.
DESCRIPTIVE, 100; 104: I, 5, 7; 8, 4; 26, 11: II, 5, 20; 10, 3; 25, 12.
OF MATERIAL, 102: 1, 24, 4.
OBJECTIVE, 98: 1, 2, 4; 3, 14, 8, 30, 3: II, 4, 7; 7, 4; 21, 4.
PARTITIVE, 101: I, 1, 5; 3, 3; 7, 5: II, 2, 4; 4, 19, 10, 5.
POSSESSIVE, 99; 103: 1, 1, 3; 2, 7, 10, 15: II, 1, 9, 2, 11; 7, 8; IV, 6, 4.
SUBJECTIVE, 98 a, 30, 3: II, 1, 3; 4, 5, 11, 15.
GERUND, 287; 289-294: I, 2, 3; 3, 2; 7, 18: II, 7, 4: 9, 3; 10, 10.
INDEX

Gerundive, 286, II; 288-294: I, 3, 6; 5, 7; 16; 44, 9: II, 7, 5; 9, 13; 10, 8; III, 4, 12; 6, 4: IV, 13, 14.
gladius, 24.
grātīā, position, 99, a.

H
hic, declension, 54; uses, 168; 170, a.
hindering, verbs of, 228, c.
Historical, tenses, 203; present, 190, a: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5; 6, 12; 12, 14: infinitive, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6: III, 4, 8.
Hollow square (orbis), 32.
hoping, verbs of, 280, c.
Hostages, (obsidēs), I, 9, 10.

I
I, consonant and vowel, 5-7.
faciō, in composition, 7.
Iam dīū, etc., with pres., 190, b; with impf., 191, b: I, 31, 10: III, 5, 1.
īdem, 58.
Ides, 298.
Inōneus, constr., 122, a.
ille, declension, 66; use, 170, a.
Imperative mood, 185; in commands, 218; in indirect discourse, 267: I, 7, 20; 13, 10; 26, 17.
imperō, constr., 115, b.
Impersonal verbs, 87; with substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12: II, 11, 5; 17, 11; with infinitives, 278; gen.
Implied indirect discourse, 273: I, 16, 1; 16, 14; 22, 9; 23, 8: II, 2, 6.
Indicative mode, 183; in statements, 206; in questions, 209; in relative clauses, 231; 232; in causal clauses, 244; in adversative clauses, 246; in temporal clauses, 234; 235, a; 236, a; 237; 241; in conditions, 253; 254, a; 256.
Indignus, constr. with, 149, a.
Indirect discourse:
discussion of, 265: I, 13, 7.
conditional sentences in, 272: I, 34, 5.

coördinate relative clauses in, 269, a:
II, 17, 11.
declarative sentences in, 266: I, 1, 14;
2, 5; 7, 1: II, 1, 4: 2, 8; 6, 13.
impersonal sentences in, 267: I, 7, 20;
13, 11; 26, 17.
interrogative sentences in, 268: I, 8,
13; 14, 8; 44, 24.
subordinate clauses in, 269: I, 3, 17;
6, 11; 10, 4: II, 1, 6; 3, 9; 10, 13.
Indirect questions, 262-264: I, 8, 13;
12, 3; 15, 4.

Infantry, 27.

Infinitive, 186; 275-281; tenses of, 205:
I, 31, 11; 31, 36; 35, 18; complementary, 276; historical, 281: I, 16, 2: II, 30, 6: III, 4, 3; as subject, 276; clause, 186; 277-280; in indirect discourse, 266: I, 1, 14: 2, 5; 7, 1: II, 1, 4; 2, 8;
6, 13.
Intensive pronoun, (Ipse), declension, 59; use, 172.

interest, with genitive, 110: II, 5, 5.
Interrogative pronoun, declension, 61;
uses 212; 264, a.
Interrogative particles, 213; 264, b.
Ipse, declension, 59; use, 172.
Irregular verbs, conjugation, 66; 77-85.
Is, declension, 57; use, 171.
1ste, declension, 65; use, 169.
Iuppiter, declension, 27

J
Judicial action, verbs of, 108.

L
laccōs, constr., 143, a.
lēgātus, 25; Plate II, 2.
Legion, number of men in, 23; baggage
of, 27; officers of, 25, 26; organization
of, 23; standards and signals of, 26.
Legionary soldiers, clothing and arms,
24; baggage, 25. See also Plate I, 3.
Locative, of 1st declension, 15, b; of
second declension, 16, b, used to ex-
press place, 151, a: I, 18, 13; 20, 4;
28, 6.
lōrica, 24.

M
magis, comparison with, 45.
magnus, comparison, 42.
mālō, 82.
maius, comparison, 42.
March line of, 31; length of, 31.

mare, declension, 25, a.

maximē, comparison with, 45.

memini, conjugation, 86; with gen., 107.

metuō, constr., 114, b.

mille, milia, 48.

minus, constr., 139, b: II, 7, 8.

misereor, constr., 109.

misericet, constr., 109.

modo, with subj., 260.

Modes, 182-185. See also Indicative, Subjunctive, and Imperative.

multus, comparison, 42.

musculus, 34, 35.

Musical instruments, 27.

N

nam, 243; see also Enclitics.

-ne, 213, a; 264, b.

né, 188, b; conj.: with purpose clause, 225, b: I, 4, 7; II 6, 7; with substantive purpose clause, 228: I, 19, 11; 27, 9: II, 1, 7; 26, 5; in commands and prohibitions, 216-220.

e né . . . quidem, 188, b.

nece, 264, c.

Negatives, 188.

eaqve, 188, a.

aesciō quis, 178.

āève, with subjunctive of desire, 188, b.

aisti, 250.

aìtor, constr., 143, a: I, 13, 16.

díōi, or dīitē, to express prohibition, 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23.

díō: 82.

Nominaive, as subject, 96; in predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; 2, 1.

ñōn, 188, a.

ñones, 298.

ñonne, 213, b.

Nouns, 1st declension, 15; 2nd declension, 16; 3rd declension, 17-27; 4th declension, 29; 5th declension, 30; gender of, 13; 15, a; 16, a; 29, a; 30, a; predicate, 95, a: I, 1, 3; appositive, 95, b: I, 1, 4; 3, 10; 6, 2: II, 2, 3; 5, 11; 9, 11.

róvī, translation of tenses 193, I, a; 194, a; 196, a.

ñum, 213, c; 264, b.

Numerals, 47-50.

O

Object, direct, see accusative; indirect, see dative.

oblívīscor, with gen., 107: I, 14, 7.

ódī, 86.

onager, 36; Plate III, 4.

Optative subjunctive, 184, a. See also wishes.


Ordinal numerals, 47.

ós, declension, 27.

P


Parenthetical relative clauses, 232.

Participles, used attributively, 157; used predicatively, 157; used substantively, 158; tenses of, 205; used for clause 283: I, 4, 3; future active, 285, I; future passive, 285, II: I, 13, 2; 19, 3: III, 11, 10: IV, 22, 18: V, 1, 4; 23, 9; see also Periphrastic; perfect passive 286: I, 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 38: II, 4, 9; present, 284; see also Ablative absolute.

parvus, comparison, 42.

Passive voice, 181; intransitive verbs in, 115, d; dative retained with, 114, c: 115, d: II, II: c: I, 4, 1: 22, 8; constr. of passive verbs of saying, 279, a.

Perfect tense, with force of pres., 193, I, a; historical, 193, II.


Personal pronouns, declension, 51; uses, 162; as partitive or objective genitives, 51, b; with similis and dis-similis, 106, b.

persuādēō, constr., 115: I, 2, 3; 3, 9: II, 10, 18; 16, 5.

Phalanx, I, 24, 11.

pīlum, 24.

piget, with gen., 109.

Place, from which, 134, a: I, 5, 8; 6, 1; 10, 10; in which, 151: I, 6, 8; 7, 5; 15, 5; 39, 17: to which, 131: I, 5, 6; 7, 4; 23, 5: II, 10, 12; 11, 3; 18, 2.

plēnus, with gen., 106, a.
INDEX

Pluperfect tense, 194; with force of imperfect, 194, a: III, 1, 6; in narration, 197, 198.

Plús, declension, 34, a; constr., 139, b.
Pompey, 14.
Possessive pronouns, declension, 53; used for possessive gen., 99; position with causā or grátiā, 99, a; with interest, 110; omission of, 187.

possum, 80.

postquam, with ind., 227: I, 24, I; 27, 5; II, 6; 12; as two words, 236, c.
Potential subjunctive, 184, b; 208, 209.
potior, with abl., 145: I, 2, 5; with gen., 111: I, 3, 22; use of gerundive, 289, I a: III 6, 4.
prefectus fabrum, 25.
presertim, 245.
Predicate, accusative, 126: I, 16, 12: 38, 13: II, 2, 7; 3, 3; adjectives, 156; 157, a, 2: 275, a; 276, a: I, 2, 1; 7, 7: II, 1, 3; 2, 2; 10, 1; noun, 95, a; 126: 275, a; 276, a: I, 1, 3.
Prepositions, with abl., 153, a; with acc., 155; with acc. or abl., 156; verbs compounded with, 116, I; 124, c; 127.

Present tense 190; historical present, 190, a: I, 3, 7; 5, 2; 10, 1: II, 5, 5, 6; 12, 14; with iam dīū and iam pridem, 190, b; with dum, 234, a: I, 27, 7; 39, I; 46, I: III, 17, 1.
Principal parts of verbs, 65.
Principal tenses, 203.

pristquam, with ind., 236, a; with subj. 236, b: II, 12, I: III, 10, 9, 18; 15: IV, 14, 2: VII, 71, 1; as two words, 236, c: III, 26, 8.

Prohibitions negative in, 215; expressed by subj., 217; 220; expressed by nōl or nōlīte with inf., 219: I, 35, 7; 43, 24: VII, 77, 23; in indirect discourse, 267: I 26, 17.

Pronouns, 51-62; 162-178; in indirect discourse, 271; see also Demonstrative, Generalizing Indefinite, Intensive, Interrogative, Personal, Possessive, Reflexive, and Relative.
Pronunciation, 1-12; of proper names, 1, 1, 1.

proplus, with acc., 122, b: I, 46, 2: IV, 9, 3.
prōsum, 79.
Proviso clause 260.
prōvidia, 9.
proximus, with acc., 122, b: I, 1, 9; 54, 3: III, 7, 7.
proximē, with acc., 122, b.
pudet, with gen., 109.
Purpose clauses, 225: I, 3, 4; 4, 7, 6, 14: II, 2, 3; 5, 7; 9, 4; 17, 15: V, 3, 18; substantive, 228: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 19, 11; 23, 9; 31, 24; 39, 24: II, 6: 10, 19.

Q

Quaestor, 25.
quam, with comparatives, 139, a: with superlatives, 161, a.
quam diū, with ind., 234, b.
quam si, with subj., 261.
quamquam, with ind., 246.
quamvis, with subj., 247.
quandō, in causal clause, 244.
Quantity, of syllables, 9; of vowels, 1-3.

quasi, with subj., 261.
Questions, introductory words, 212, 213: modes in, 209; deliberative, 210: I, 40, 6: III, 14, 9; double, 214; indirect, 262-264: I, 12, 3; 15, 4; 20, 17; 63, 20: II, 4, 2; 8; 3; 11; double indirect, 264, c: I, 40, 43; 60, 12: IV, 14, 5; rhetorical, 211.

qui, relative, 60; indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61. See also Relative.
quīa, in causal clause, 244.
quicumque, 60, a.
quidam, 62, b.
quidem, 62.
quilibet, 62.
quis, indefinite, 62; interrogative, 61; with si, nisi, né, and num, 174: I, 7, 19; 15, 21; 20, 2: II, 14, 13; 32, 3.
quispîam, 62; 176.
quisque, 62.
quisquis, 60, a.
INDEX

quivis, 62.
quō, in purpose clauses, 226, a, 2: I, 8, 6: II, 17, 15: V, 3, 18.
quod, with ind., 234, b; 235, a; with subj., 235, b.
quod, in causal clauses, 244: I, 1, 7; 2, 6, 7, 12; 16, 14: II, 1, 13, 8, 8; 15, 2, 30, 7; in substantive clauses, 248; 248, a: I, 1, 8, 19, 2, 25, 6; 36, 14, 40, 36: II, 10, 18; 17, 12; 20, 10.
quōminus, with substantive clause of desire, 228, c: I 31, 24: IV, 22, 16.
quoniam, in causal clause, 244.

R

Reciproc production, 155.
rēferta, constr., 110.

Reflexive pronouns, declension, 62; use, 163; to express reciprocal idea, 166; direct reflexive, 164: I, 30, 6; 33, 14, 40, 11; indirect reflexive, 165: I, 30, 3; 33, 11; 40, 5.

Relative clauses, ad\ervative, 247: V, 4, 13; causal 245: I, 15, 13; 31, 4: IV, 23, 14; characteristic, 230: I, 6, 4, 14, 6, 19, 6; 28, 7; 29, 4; 31, 26; 39, 12: II, 4, 7, 16, 9, 21, 6: IV, 34, 9; 38, 3, conditions, 250; co\ordinate, 173, a: I, 1, 11, 2, 13, 11, 13: II, 4, 7, 5, 3, 13, 4; co\ordinate in indirect discourse, 269, a: II, 7, 11; determining, 231: I, 4, 1, 22, 5: IV, 29, 11; parenthetical, 232; of purpose 225, a: I 6, 14: II, 2, 3; result, see Characterizing.

Relative pronouns, declension, 80; agreement of, 173; see also Relative clauses.

re\miniscor, constr. 107: I, 13, 11.

Repeated action, 191, a.


Result clauses 226: I 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13, 18, 6, 31, 12; sequence of tenses in, 204, a: II, 21, 12, V, 15, 3: substantive, 229: I, 2, 12, 10, 5, 13, 4, 31, 51, 33, 18: II, 3, 14, 4, 8, 17, 11.

Rhetorical question, 211.

S

scorpiō, 36.

scūtum, 24.

Semi-deponent verbs, 74.

senex, declension, 27.

Sentences, defined, 88; simple, 89; complex 91; compound, 90.

Separation, see Dative and Ablative.

Sequence of tenses, 202, 203: I, 12, 2; 13, 7, 19, 1: II, 12, 14, 17, 28: exceptions, 204: II, 21, 12: V, 15, 3.

si, in conditions, 250, see also Conditions; meaning to see whether, 264, b.

signum, 27.

similis, with gen. 105, b; with dat., 122; comparison of, 41.

simul ac, with ind., 237.

sin, with conditions, 250.

Spain, Caesar's idea of location, V, 13, 5.

Subjunctive:


of desire, 184, a; in commands and prohibitions, 217; 220; in wishes, 221; in purpose clauses, 225; in substantive clauses, 228.

of contingent futurity, 184, b; in conclusion of conditional sentences, 207; 254; 257; 259; in questions, 209; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.

of fact, 184, c; in result clauses, 226; in substantive clauses, 229; in characterizing clauses, 230, a, b.

See also ac, si, antequam, cum, dōnec, dum, dummodo, modo, nē, nēve, priusquam, quam si, quamvis, quasi, quin, quō, quoad, quōminus, tamquam, ut, and ut si.

Subordinate clauses, see Clauses.

Substantive clauses, see Indirect questions, Infinitive clauses, Purpose, quod, and Result.

Substantives, agreement of, 95.

Sulla, 11, 12.

sum, conjugation, 66; compounds of, 77-80.

Supine, acc., 295: I, 11, 4; 18, 17; 30, 2; abl., 296: IV, 30, 6.

suus and sūi, declension, 62; reflexives, 163-168.

Syllables, 8; quantity of, 9.
INDEX

T

taedet, with gen., 199.
tametsi, with ind., 246.
tamquam, with subj., 261.

Temporal clauses, 233-242; see cum, dum, postquam, priusquam, quoad, ubi, ut.

Tenses, stems of, 64; of ind., 190-199; of subj., 200, 201; of infinitive and participle, 205; sequence of, 202-204; see also Sequence of tenses, Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future perfect.

testudō, 33; Plate III, 3.
testudō arietāria, 35; Plate III, 2.

Cimbri and Teutoni, invasion of, 21.

Time, at which, 152: I, 3, 14; 4, 3; 12, 13: II, 2, 10; 4, 18; 6, 3; duration of, 130; 152, a: I, 3, 11; 26, 13: II, 29, 14; see also Temporal clauses.

très, declension, 49.

Tower, 33; Plate III, 1.

tribūnus, 26.

Triumvirate, 13; IV, 1, 1.

tū, 51.

U


ullus, 177.

ānus, declension, 32.

ut, in purpose clause, 225, a: I, 3, 4: II, 9, 4; in result clause, 226: I, 6, 4; 11, 6; 12, 2: II, 3, 13; 18, 6; 21, 12; in substantive clauses of purpose, 228, a, b: I, 2, 4; 3, 12; 7, 11; 39, 24; in substantive clauses of result, 229, b: I, 2, 12; 10, 5; 13, 4: II, 4, 8; 17, 11; in adversative clause, 247: III, 9, 16; omitted, 228, a: I, 20, 13: III, 11, 2.

ut nōn, in result clauses, 226; in substantive result clauses, 229.

ut sī, with subjunctive, 261.

utinam, with subjunctive of desire, 221.

ütor, with abl., 145: I, 5, 9; 16, 5: II, 3, 12; 7, 1; 14, 10; gerundive of, 289; I, a.

utrum . . . an, 214.

V

vāgina, 24.

vēlūt, with subj., 261.

vēlūt sī, with subj., 261: I, 32, 11.

Verbs, 1st conj., 67; 2nd conj., 68; 3rd conj., 69; 3rd conj., in -īō, 71; 4th conj., 70; irregular, 66; 77-85; deponent, 73; semi-deponent, 74; defective, 86; impersonal, 87; act. periphrastic, 75; pass. periphrastic, 76; principal parts, 65; three stems of, 64; agreement of, 179, 180; voices of, 181; modes, 182-185; tenses, 189-205; contracted forms, 72: I, 12, 10, 18, 12; II, 3, 6; 14, 13; 17, 6; singular with plural subject, 180, b: I, 1, 5; intransitive in passive voice, 115, ò: I, 33, 18, 40, 7: III, 14, 2.

Verbal adjective, 187.

Verbal nouns, 187.

vēscor with abl., 145; gerundive of, 289; I, a.

vinea, 35.

vis, declension, 27.

Vocative, 132.

Voices, 181; see Active and Passive.

Volitive subjunctive, 184, a.

vōlō, 82.

Vowels, sounds of, 4; quantity of, 1-3.

W

Wishes, subjunctive in, 221; introduced by utinam, 221.

Wall, Gallic, 32, 33.